

Jarmila Fictumová, John Ceccarelli, Tony Long

# Angličtina

## konverzace pro pokročilé

*Topic-based Vocabulary  
for Advanced Learners*

Moderní učebnice prověřená mnohaletou praxí  
doplněná e-learningovou podporou



Společnost pro odbornou literaturu – Barrister & Principal



## To the teacher

This new edition of the *Green Book* seeks to make your classroom work easier and more efficient. By using it, you can prepare students for various higher-level exams or simply improve their word-power and language competence in general. **An answer key with tapescripts and an English-Czech vocabulary** have been included in the textbook. The authors - American, British and Czech - have tried to maintain a balance by providing both **British** and **American** usage.

## To the student

This textbook should give you an idea of the level of English required for more advanced examinations. Relevant and interesting material has been supplemented with lexical exercises. **Practice makes perfect, And more practice...** are exercises aimed at providing more context, idioms, metaphors and euphemisms. The other exercises are mostly meant for classroom use. However, you can work on your own, without a teacher, since there is an **answer key**. There are a few longer texts for **reading** comprehension, and each unit has a **listening** comprehension exercise.

## Prioritising Vocabulary

It would be unrealistic to expect any student to learn and retain all the words related to any topic. If you have already dealt with the topic, you can put your knowledge to use in the many speaking and discussion activities provided, as well as “topping up” your vocabulary in each topic. If you are seeing much of the vocabulary for the first time, a process of prioritising is recommended. You should decide for yourself if you need an item, and should not try to learn everything at once. **We recommend methodical revision.** After studying several topics, you should revise earlier ones and in the process, add some of the vocabulary that you did not study the first time round. In closing, we hope that you will enjoy using the book and wish you all the best for your further studies of English. *The authors* .

## Acknowledgements

This book has evolved from vocabulary lists added to by generations of teachers of the Brno Language School. After the Velvet Revolution, the first booklet was published with the help of the native speakers working at the school at that time, the major part being rewritten by Tony Long. The greater part of the second edition, published by the State Language School in Brno, was added by John Ceccarelli in collaboration with many others (in particular Ondřej Matuška, who formatted the book), all of whom I would like to thank here. My thanks also go to Anne Johnson for proofreading this new edition of the textbook. Last but not least, my thanks go to my friends and family for their support and understanding. *JF*



# ANGLIČTINA

## KONVERZACE PRO POKROČILÉ

*Topic-based Vocabulary for Advanced Learners*



# ANGLIČTINA

## KONVERZACE PRO POKROČILÉ

*Topic-based Vocabulary for Advanced Learners*



## Slovo úvodem

Kniha vznikala v průběhu několika desetiletí na Státní jazykové škole v Brně (SJŠ), nejprve jako průběžně aktualizovaný seznam slovíček. Tak také poprvé vyšla tiskem v roce 1993, doplněna otázkami. Když byl během pěti let náklad rozebrán, vznikl nápad přidat cvičení a obrázky a vytvořit tak učebnici. Byla psána s představou, že bude sloužit nejen studentům SJŠ, ale také pokročilým studentům angličtiny u nás i jinde v Evropě. Poprvé ji vydala SJŠ začátkem roku 1999 nákladem 3 000 výtisků. Součástí učebnice byla kazeta. Užívání učebnice si vynutilo vytvoření anglicko-českého glosáře výrazů z jednotlivých lekcí s uvedením výslovnosti u obtížných výrazů, který je nyní v upravené verzi součástí této učebnice. Po celou dobu se na tvorbě učebnice podíleli vyučující SJŠ, kteří prováděli velmi podrobné korektury a zároveň materiály používali ve výuce. Učebnice proslula jako „zelená kniha“ kvůli barvě obálky. „Vocabulary Lists“ vyšly v roce 2002, stejně jako opravená a doplněná učebnice se dvěma kazetami – nákladem 7 000 výtisků.

Spoluautor John Ceccarelli (Američan) žije v současné době v Praze a Tony Long (Brit) žije střídavě v ČR a ve Velké Británii. (Jeho texty jsou v knize označeny iniciálami *TL*.) Jarmila Fictumová učí praktický jazyk a překlad na Katedře anglistiky a amerikanistiky Filozofické fakulty Masarykovy univerzity v Brně.

Učebnice svým pojetím vyhovuje mentalitě českých, slovenských i německy mluvících studentů. Zároveň však vychází z tradice anglických učebnic a soustavně rozvíjí všechny čtyři řečové dovednosti – mluvení, poslech, čtení i psaní – má celou řadu rozmanitých typů cvičení. Témata jsou logicky seřazena do skupin:

FAMILY, HOME, FOOD, SHOPPING, CLOTHES,  
WORK & LEISURE, COMMUNICATION, TOWN & COUNTRY, SIGHTSEEING, TRAVEL  
  
FARMING, CLIMATE, NATURE,  
THE HUMAN BODY, HEALTH, SPORT,  
MEDIA, CULTURE, EDUCATION, HOLIDAYS, MODERN SOCIETY

Toto nové, moderní vydání učebnice může sloužit širokému okruhu pokročilých studentů, kteří se připravují na **různé typy zkoušek u nás i v zahraničí (úroveň B2–C2 dle Společného evropského referenčního rámce)**, v kurzech nebo sami, neboť **obsahuje klíč ke cvičením** a další doplňkové materiály. Poslechová cvičení na přiloženém CD jsou ve formátu MP3. Toto CD rovněž obsahuje další studijní materiály – otázky a překladové věty k jednotlivým tématům. Je také možno využívat ZDARMA on-line testy a podrobné slovníčky k jednotlivým stranám učebnice na e-learningovém portálu Masarykovy univerzity:

**<http://eldum.phil.muni.cz/course/view.php?id=19>**

*Jarmila Fictumová*



# FAMILY

**1** In groups of four, based on what you know from television or personal experience, describe the typical British or American family. In your group prepare a short report for the other students. Then in pairs briefly describe your own families and report to the other pair.

**2** Try to answer the questions on the right before reading the text. Then read it and see if you were right.

## FAMILY VALUES, OLD AND NEW

In Britain and around the world, the image of the family continues to change. The traditional "Victorian family", in which the man was the breadwinner, the woman the homemaker, and the children numerous and obedient, is giving way to new ideas about what the modern family should look like.

One of the most obvious characteristics of the new family is that there are not always two parents. Due mostly to the rise in divorces since World War II, single-parent families are becoming more and more frequent and accepted in British society. Usually, it is the mother who takes responsibility for raising the child, and she has to balance the pressures of earning a living and raising her children at the same time.

However, even in families with both parents present, many mothers are giving up the role of homemaker and pursuing their own careers. Some go on maternity leave after their children are born and then take up part-time work when the child is old enough to go to school. Others feel that their careers come first, and wait until they have fully established their career before having children.

Another area that has changed significantly is what happens before marriage. In the past, people lived with their parents until they got married, and each marriage was supposed to be a "white wedding". Today, premarital sex and living together before marriage are considered normal, and many people "try out" their relationship by living together before getting married.

These changes, together with other changes such as mixed marriages, have altered the face of British society. Some people deplore them as a breakdown of traditional values. Others praise them as expressions of greater tolerance and diversity. But one thing is for sure: British families are changing and will continue to change.

**1** In the traditional Victorian family, the man

- a was never contradicted.
- b made bread for the family.
- c was the sole provider for the family.
- d shared responsibility for the family budget with the wife.

**2** The main reason for the rise in single-parent families is

- a the increase in premarital sex.
- b that many men were killed in World War II.
- c that some women put their careers before their children.
- d the increase in broken marriages.

**3** One of the main reasons for living together before getting married is that

- a couples want to see how well they get on before getting married.
- b couples have to balance earning a living with raising a child.
- c traditional values have broken down in Britain.
- d premarital sex is on the rise.

**4** Find a word in the text that means:

- a changed
- b acceptance of different lifestyles
- c speak with approval of
- d say that one strongly dislikes something



# DATING



**1** You are working in a computer dating agency. Here are the personal descriptions of six of your clients. Try to find the best match for each client. Give reasons for your choice. Then decide which is the least likely match. You may find some help in the 'Dating' box on the following page.

## Jane

- 28 years old.
- Beautician.
- Short; wonderful figure.
- Shoulder-length curly blonde hair.
- Talkative and easy-going, loves to have a laugh.
- Enjoys throwing parties in her flat, going out with girlfriends, or just curling up in front of the TV with a glass of wine. Says she just wants somebody to have some fun with.

## Susan

- 21 years old.
- University student.
- Tall and slim.
- Long dark hair.
- Relaxed in small groups but rather shy in big groups; quite serious and ambitious but likes to have fun as well.
- Loves animals; likes taking her dogs on long walks in the countryside, going to the pictures, and quiet evenings at home. Wants a meaningful relationship.

## Ed

- 29 years old.
- Researcher on a scientific project.
- Tall and well-built.
- Long, straight brown hair and brown eyes.
- Very talkative and sociable, energetic, always on the go.
- Likes mountain biking, outdoor life, and going to parties and to the pub. Prefers big groups of people but also likes more intimate situations.

## Peter

- 19 years old.
- Bricklayer.
- Short and stocky.
- Very short blond hair.
- Outgoing and friendly; has a very cynical sense of humour.
- Likes playing football, hanging out with his friends, and going for ski-trips to the mountains. Likes his free time and doesn't want too serious a relationship.

## Mike

- 42 years old.
- University professor.
- Medium height.
- Short curly grey hair and beard.
- Quiet and reserved; can be moody, intellectual.
- Likes going to the theatre and classical concerts; prefers one-to-one situations to large groups. Is looking for a like-minded woman to share a serious relationship.

## Mary

- 37 years old.
- Computer programmer.
- Fairly short and very pretty.
- Divorced with one adult child.
- Quiet but energetic. Doesn't mind big groups of people but prefers smaller intimate situations.
- Likes jogging, swimming, and travelling. Wants someone to have fun with but nothing too serious.

**2** Underline the adjectives describing personal qualities on the preceding page and then position them in the space below. They do not have to be in columns. Your positioning of them is personal – there is no right or wrong answer.

NEGATIVE	NEUTRAL	POSITIVE
	intellectual	
		quiet

**3** You think of yourself as an accomplished matchmaker and you think your friend needs help. Write a computer dating profile about them – use your imagination!

**4** Now write a description of your ideal partner. In pairs, compare the descriptions of your ideal partners. In what ways are they similar? In what ways do they differ?

**5** Look at the pictures on the right. Agree on a name for each person. Which characteristics would you use when talking about them?



## Dating

### Expressing opinion

I think / believe / feel that...

In my opinion...

It seems to me that...

As I see it...

Personally, I think...

### Talking about people

always on the go

mellow

tolerant

funny

eternal optimist

irritable

moody

hilarious

hypercritical

aggressive

can't get it together

to sleep with anybody /

sleep around

sharp-tongued

sarcastic

talented

intelligent

thoughtful

do anything for anyone

broad / open-minded

considerate

fun-loving

cheerful

sympathetic

### Getting together

to make small talk

to see each other

to date sb (US)

to go out together

to go steady (US)

to take sb out

to make a good match

to chat sb up (GB)

dating agency

computer dating

handsome

"lonely hearts" ads (GB) /

personal ads (US)

childhood sweetheart

matchmaker

high-school

sweetheart (US)

infatuation / crush

to break off the

engagement

to dump sb

to split up / break up

to let sb down

to walk out on sb

fiancé, fiancée

to become engaged to


engagement ring

to move in with sb

living together



# INVITATIONS

**1**  Below are two scrambled dialogues in which someone invites someone else to do something. Put the dialogues into order. Then listen and check if you were right.

**Mark calls up Jamie and asks her out to a movie.**

- J: Great. I'll see you then. Bye.  
 M: How about tomorrow night at 8:00? We could go and get something to eat first and then maybe go out for a drink afterwards.  
 J: Sounds great! When should we do it?  
 M: Bye.  
 J: Mmm. You know, tomorrow's out for me. I've already got something planned. Why don't we make it Thursday night instead?  
 M: Hi, Jamie! This is Mark. Listen, I was wondering if you wanted to go and see that new Spielberg film.  
 J: Hello, Jamie speaking.  
 M: Sounds good to me. So I'll pick you up at around 6:00, okay?

**Joe meets Anne in the street and invites her to a party.**

- J: Well, you can always come out after dinner. We'll be going all night.  
 A: Yeah, I'd love to... Oh, wait a minute. What time on Saturday?  
 J: Sure. Maybe next time.  
 A: I know, but I have to work early on Sunday morning. Thanks anyway.  
 J: I don't know. It'll probably start sometime around nine. Why?  
 A: Oh, shame! I can't make it on Saturday night. I'm going to dinner with my mother.  
 J: Hey Anne! I'm having a party on Saturday. Would you like to come?

**2** The people in the picture are discussing invitations. Choose either of the two pictures and write a similar conversation between the two people. Then, act it out to the class.

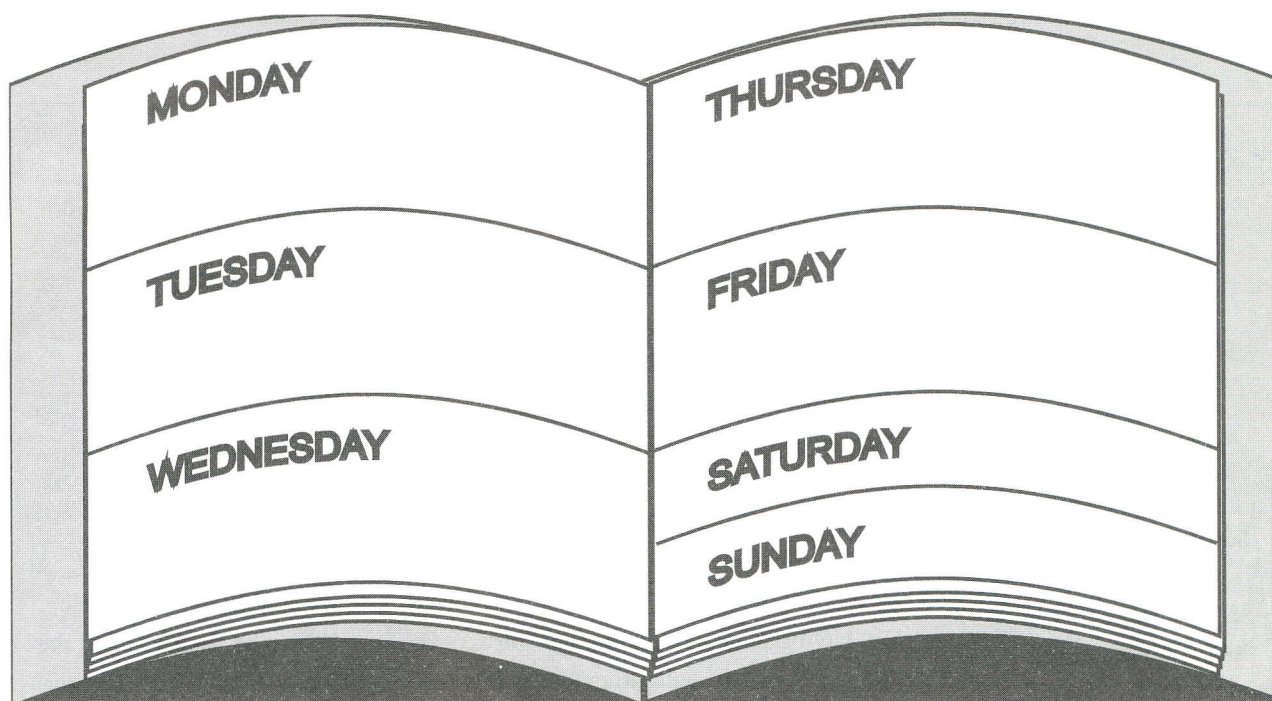
*N.B. A good invitation starts by saying what is planned and then asking the person to join in.*

Example: *I'm having a party on Saturday. Would you like to come?*

**!** Try **NOT** to start off a spoken invitation with "I would like to invite you to ...." or "Do you have time tonight?"



**3** Look at the pages of the appointment book below and fill in any three days with appointments. Then turn to your neighbour and arrange a date on a day that is free for both of you, using some of the phrases in the box below.



**4** After you have arranged everything, find another student and tell him/her about your plans for the following week. Use structures such as:

*On Monday I'm meeting...*

*On the 25th I'm leaving for...*

## Invitations

### Making invitations

Would you like to... ?  
I was wondering if you wanted to / you'd like to... ?  
Would you care to come round?  
Do you think you'll be free?  
Have you got anything special on tonight?  
What have you got on tonight?  
Do you want to come round / go out for dinner?  
Does seven o'clock suit you?  
How about seven o'clock?  
Is that all right with you?  
Let's make it seven o'clock.

### Accepting invitations and asking about an invitation

I'd love to.  
Sounds great.  
That'd be lovely / wonderful / fun.  
Great! Thanks.  
Thank you very much.  
That would be fun / wonderful.  
Would you like me to bring anything?  
Can I bring something?  
Let me bring dessert.  
What time should I be there?  
Can I bring a friend?  
What should I wear?  
Is it casual or formal?

### Declining invitations

I'm sorry, but...  
That's very kind of you but...  
I'm busy on Saturday.  
I've already got something planned.  
Something's come up.  
I can't make it to the party on Friday...  
Thanks anyway.  
Maybe next time.

### Hesitation strategies

I appreciate the invitation, but ...  
Could I let you know later?  
Could I get back to you tonight?  
I have to see if Charles wants to come.  
I have to check my diary.



# WEDDINGS

**1** What are the traditions or even superstitions that have to do with marriage? Can you think of any “dos and don’ts” for the bride and groom on the big day?

**2** Read the following text and fill in the blanks using the words and phrases on the left. In which country do you think the wedding might have taken place?

aisle  
altar  
banns posted  
best man  
big day  
ceremony  
church wedding  
church bells  
civil wedding  
guest list  
honeymoon  
honeymoon suite  
lace veil  
limousine  
husband and wife  
minister  
organ  
rice  
tuxedo  
marriage vows  
wedding dress  
wedding invitations  
wedding reception  
wedding rings  
white wedding

I know it sounds corny, but my wedding day really was the most beautiful day of my life. We had a big **1**\_\_\_\_\_ in my parents’ church, with the grand **2**\_\_\_\_\_ playing “Here Comes the Bride” and **3**\_\_\_\_\_ ringing as we left and everything. It cost a fortune, but we just felt that a **4**\_\_\_\_\_ wouldn’t be special enough. All of the preparations, like sending out the **5**\_\_\_\_\_, making up the **6**\_\_\_\_\_, and going to get the **7**\_\_\_\_\_ left us completely exhausted, but when the **8**\_\_\_\_\_ finally arrived we were so excited that we didn’t have any time to be tired.

I had a beautiful long **9**\_\_\_\_\_ with a lovely **10**\_\_\_\_\_ and a long train. As I walked down the **11**\_\_\_\_\_ on my father’s arm, I saw Dave standing at the **12**\_\_\_\_\_ in his brilliant white **13**\_\_\_\_\_ and I thought I would just faint! Somehow I managed to hold on, and the next thing I knew I was in front of the **14**\_\_\_\_\_ with Dave at my side. I can barely remember reciting our **15**\_\_\_\_\_ to each other or the rest of the **16**\_\_\_\_\_, (although I do remember the **17**\_\_\_\_\_ having to search his pockets for five minutes before he finally found the **18**\_\_\_\_\_). All I can remember is this feeling inside of intense burning joy and amazement. Finally, the minister said “I now pronounce you **19**\_\_\_\_\_,” and Dave lifted my veil and kissed me, and I just started crying and crying. Everybody was throwing **20**\_\_\_\_\_ as we ran to the limousine, and a piece got caught right in Dave’s eye. We had a lovely **21**\_\_\_\_\_ at the biggest hotel in town, and everyone was drinking, dancing, and laughing (or, in my mother’s case, crying). That night we slept in the **22**\_\_\_\_\_ at the hotel, and although it certainly wasn’t a **23**\_\_\_\_\_, it felt completely different sleeping together as husband and wife. The next day we climbed back into the **24**\_\_\_\_\_ and sped off on our two-week **25**\_\_\_\_\_ in the Bahamas. It was, in a word, perfect.

**3** Look at the pictures. How could they be linked to weddings?



TUXEDO  
RENTAL

BRIDAL  
SHOP



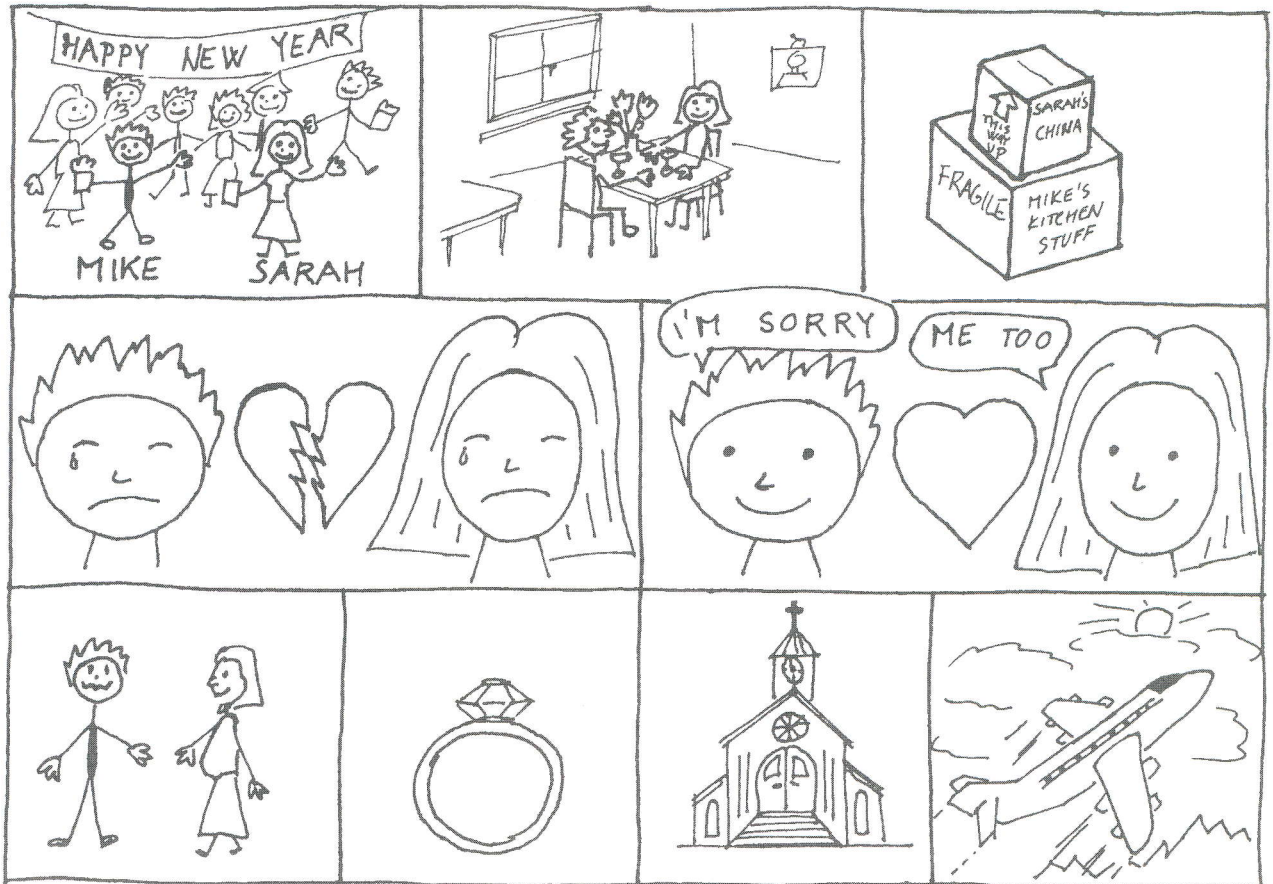
**4** Below are some pictures which tell the story of Mike and Sarah's love affair. Write a story to go along with the pictures. Each picture should be a paragraph. Start with about 10 words per paragraph, then expand.

You could start like this:

... and finish like this:

*This is a story of two young people – Sarah and Mike. They first met at ...*

*... and they lived happily ever after.*



## Weddings

to propose to sb  
catering company  
special license  
stag night / bachelor party  
"big day"  
church wedding  
white wedding  
civil wedding  
shotgun wedding  
registry office / register office  
bride, bridegroom  
wedding announcements (in newspapers and to friends)  
wedding invitations (to guests)

banns  
marriage vows  
ceremony  
bridesmaid  
maid of honour  
matron of honour  
best man  
witness  
wedding cake  
wedding reception  
wedding ring  
trousseau × dowry  
newlyweds  
to leave on / for one's honeymoon

## Congratulations

My warmest congratulations.  
All the best.  
The very best of luck.  
May you be happy together.  
May all your dreams come true.  
Please accept my most sincere congratulations and best wishes on the occasion of your wedding. (formal)



# BABIES

**1** Here are some pictures that have to do with children. Say what the things are and what they are used for.

**2** In America and Britain, many families use babysitting agencies to find someone to look after their child when they have to go out. How do you feel about this? Could you trust a complete stranger with your child? If not, what are some other ways to find babysitters?

**3** You are going to leave your baby alone for the first time. Your friend has agreed to babysit for you. In small groups, write a short note thanking your friend for their help and explaining exactly what they should do.

**4** Imagine that you are visiting a friend who has just had a baby. She is a proud mother. You have no experience with newborns. What can you say? Look at the phrases in the box below.



## Babies

### Talking to or about babies

Was he / she early / late / premature / overdue?

What an adorable baby!

Can I hold him / her?

Does she sleep through the night yet?

His eyes are just like his father's.

She has her father's eyes.

She really takes after her father.

That's a good boy / girl...

### Nursery

changing table / mat / pad

to breast-feed

to bottle-feed / the baby is on formula (US)

to change, wash and iron the nappies

(disposable / cloth) nappies (GB) / diapers (US)

to cry / howl / scream

to hug

to rock the baby

to burp the baby

to take a child on your lap

to take a child in your arms

to pamper a child

to spoil a child

dummy (GB) / pacifier (US)

toddler

infant

kid

crèche (GB) / nursery school (US)

babysitter

au-pair / nanny

play groups / schools / schemes

day nursery / day care / kindergarten

cradle

rattle

bib

cot (GB) / crib (US)

high chair

baby-bouncer

baby-walker

baby-carrier / baby-backpack

pram / baby carriage (US) /

buggy (US)

playpen

pushchair (GB) / stroller (US)

carry-cot

toy chest

teddy bear

stuffed / fluffy animals / soft toys

squeaky toys

potty

to toilet-train

maternity leave / baby break

dependents

## HIGH SCHOOL PRINCIPAL DEFENDS FREE CONDOM PROGRAM

## INTERNET PORNOGRAPHY RANKS HIGH AMONG PARENTS' CONCERNS


## CRIME AND VIOLENCE ON THE RISE AMONG TEENAGERS

## SPANKING YOUR CHILD MAY MAKE HIM EVEN NAUGHTIER

**1** What kind of a child were you when you were growing up – well-behaved or naughty? Illustrate your answer with examples.

What was the worst trouble you ever got into when you were younger? What was your punishment? Did you “learn your lesson”?

**2** On the left are the headlines to some newspaper articles dealing with some youth issues. Write three short paragraphs to tell the story for each headline. Can you spot the US headline and make it British?

**3**  You are going to listen to a dialogue between a father and a son. Here are some questions for you to answer.

- What is the problem?
- Which subjects did Mark fail?
- Which names of schools and universities come up in the dialogue?
- What are they like?

**4** In groups of two or three act out an argument between parents and a teenager who is having one of the problems you wrote about. Do young people face similar problems in your country? What other problems do they face?

### Youth

adolescent  
teenager  
youngster  
brat  
to bring up / raise  
to behave yourself  
to indulge / pamper  
to spoil  
to talk back  
to scold / tell off  
to spank / slap  
to punish  
to get the cane / stick / strap  
corporal punishment  
detention  
borstal / reform school  
child abuse  
to beat a child  
to be grounded / gated  
to rebel  
to show off  
to play truant / cut class (US)

generation gap  
rebellion  
**Talking about children**  
going through puberty / adolescence  
obedient × disobedient  
polite × rude  
well brought-up  
naughty  
stubborn  
selfish  
greedy  
cheeky (GB) / to be/get smart (US)  
independent  
impressionable  
easily led  
a show-off

**Parents often say**  
Wait till Daddy / your father gets home...  
What are you up to?  
It's just a phase.

Possible problems and issues  
peer pressure  
bad company  
counterculture  
TV violence  
addiction  
lack of physical exercise  
couch potato  
“copycat” crime  
shoplifting  
pornography  
alternative lifestyles  
miscarriage  
protection / contraception  
pregnant / expecting  
pregnancy  
family planning clinic  
to have / get an abortion  
to terminate the pregnancy  
drinking age  
voting age  
(legal) age of consent

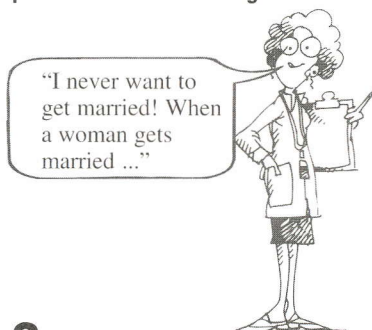


# MARRIED LIFE

**1** English often uses different words to express the same or similar ideas. Sometimes the difference is as simple as using a different preposition or verb with a noun. At other times, there are slight changes in the meaning. Fill in the blanks in the sentences below with the correct word, then write new sentences correctly using the other words.

- 1 Mary knew that Mike was \_\_\_\_\_ on her. She regarded \_\_\_\_\_ as the limit.  
a having extramarital relationships  
b cheating  
c being unfaithful  
d committing adultery
- 2 As a poor family, they had many \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ was never enough to ease the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a money problems  
b family allowance  
c economic pressure  
d weekly budget
- 3 When Jane got pregnant, she had to decide whether to have the baby and \_\_\_\_\_ or have \_\_\_\_\_.  
a miscarriage  
b a pregnancy  
c some contraception  
d an abortion  
e adopt it out
- 4 Their marital problems were so bad that they had to get some \_\_\_\_\_. When that failed they agreed to get \_\_\_\_\_.  
a marriage counsellor  
b marriage guidance  
c separation  
d divorced  
e incompatible
- 5 Mark always said that he shouldn't have to help with the chores because he was the \_\_\_\_\_. His wife found that a bit \_\_\_\_\_.  
a feminist  
b homemaker  
c breadwinner  
d sexist

**2** Finish the statement below. What would she say if she were a man? What is the other side of the coin? Can you say something positive about marriage?



**3** The following is a soap opera outline. In small groups tell the story and try to act out some scenes.

- 1960** John and Sue got married.  
**1962** Steven was born.  
**1963** Sylvie and Fiona (twins) were born.  
**1968** John often went out with his secretary.  
 Sue found out. Ended.  
**1971** John met Anna.  
 Sue found out. "Trial" separation.  
 John and Anna set up house.  
 John paid alimony.  
 Sue looked after three children.  
**1973** Divorce.  
 John and Anna couldn't have children.  
**1975** Adopted two.

## Married Life

### Some positive aspects of marriage

to set up home  
 emotional warmth and security  
 love and happiness  
 longevity of relationship  
 tolerance of foibles  
 stability for children  
 tax deductions / less taxes to pay

### Marital problems

to get regular marriage guidance  
 marriage counselling service / counsellor  
 entrenched attitudes  
 incompatibility  
 nagging  
 spouse  
 infidelity / unfaithfulness  
 extramarital relationships / adultery

jealousy  
 wife beater × hen-pecked husband  
 to cheat on sb  
 lover / mistress  
 to have a drinking problem  
 gambling  
 skeleton in the cupboard (GB) / closet (US)  
 to get a divorce  
 separation  
 alimony  
 custody  
 visiting rights  
 stepfather  
 stepmother  
 stepbrother × half-brother  
 sole provider / single parent  
 sexism  
 housewife / homemaker / stay-at-home mother

househusband  
 breadwinner  
 chores / housework  
 stereotypes / roles  
 routine / rut

### Social policies

money problems  
 to be under severe economic pressure  
 budget  
 to receive child support / child benefits  
 family allowance

### Adoption

guardian  
 foster parents  
 to foster sb  
 to adopt sb (out)  
 adoption agency  
 orphan  
 orphanage  
 children's home / youth home

# OLD AGE AND RETIREMENT

**1** Discuss these questions with a partner.

Are there any elderly people in your family?  
Are they energetic or tired of life, or...  
What kinds of problems do they face?  
What options are there to help them with these problems?  
What are some advantages of being older?

**2** Now read the diary entry and fill in the gaps using the words below.

arthritis  
senile  
widow's pension  
nursing home  
home help  
meals on wheels  
hard of hearing  
live-in nurse  
granny flat

**3** With a partner act out a discussion between the writer's parents. Try to come to some kind of agreement.

Dear Diary,

Mum and Dad were fighting again today. It's about Grandma. She's getting really old and she can't take care of herself anymore. She lives in a little **1** \_\_\_\_\_ across town, and has her meals delivered by **2** \_\_\_\_\_, but her **3** \_\_\_\_\_ has been getting worse and worse and she just can't look after the place anymore. She is also getting a little bit **4** \_\_\_\_\_, and she's so **5** \_\_\_\_\_ that you have to shout everything in her ear for her to hear it. All she has to live on is her **6** \_\_\_\_\_, so she doesn't have enough money to hire a **7** \_\_\_\_\_ or any kind of **8** \_\_\_\_\_, and Mum doesn't even want to talk about sending her to a **9** \_\_\_\_\_. She wants her to come and live with us, but Dad is against it. He says the place is too small, and that she should go to Mum's sister's house, but I know that the real reason is that they don't really get on very well. I hope they work it out soon. I hate it when they argue.



## Old Age and Retirement

### Disagreeing

I don't agree with you.  
I respect your opinion, but I think...  
That's ridiculous.  
You can't be serious.  
Yes, that's true but my feeling is that...  
I hate to disagree with you but I believe...

### Expressing and receiving sympathy

Please accept my deepest sympathy.  
My condolences (on your loss).  
I'm really sorry to hear about...  
Too bad that... (US) / Shame about (GB)

Thank you for your sympathy / concern / great support.  
I'll call you if I need you, thanks.

### Positive aspects of being old

joys of grandparenthood  
senior citizen clubs  
bowling clubs  
going on coach tours  
going on a cruise  
state × private pension  
superannuation  
widow's pension

### What can be done

to take early retirement  
(frail) elderly  
OAP (old age pensioners)  
meals on wheels

old people's / folks' homes  
nursing homes  
telegram from the Queen  
granny flat (GB)  
home help

### Being old and ill

ageism  
confusion  
senile  
hard of hearing / deaf  
arthritis  
rheumatism  
euthanasia  
to die of (e.g., cancer)  
to die of old age  
no longer with us  
passed away / passed on  
to commit suicide  
life-support systems  
to carry out an autopsy on sb

to hold the inquest on sb's death  
post mortem

### Funeral

death notice  
hearse  
grave  
undertaker  
obituary  
tombstone / gravestone  
wreath  
to leave / bequeath st to sb  
to inherit  
inheritance  
to be cremated / buried  
to be in mourning  
cemetery / graveyard / churchyard  
garden of remembrance



# FAMILY – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**I Find the wrong word in each sentence and replace it with a correct one by choosing a, b, c or d.**

**II Match the following verbs and adjectives with the two nouns: FAMILY (6) and LOVE (7).**

1 He was born with a gold spoon in his mouth.

- a raised
- b bed
- c silver
- d under

2 She has thrown head over heels in love with him.

- a fallen
- b hills
- c from
- d bed

3 The child was born outside wedlock.

- a kid
- b torn

- c grown
- d out of

4 She's old enough to be his grandfather.

- a father
- b mother
- c grandmother
- d lover

5 They should kiss and wake up.

- a ought to
- b hiss
- c make up
- d or

to start a

undying

to break up the

to inspire

an adoptive

an extended

to send

a single-parent

to fall out of

to look after the

puppy

to declare

a large

blind

everlasting

to feed the

unrequited

to show

to leave the

the immediate

**III Read the following passage and fill in the missing words.**

By the 1970s, the prototypical nuclear family had yielded somewhat to modified structures including the one-parent family, the stepfamily, and the childless family. **8** O\_\_\_\_\_ families in the past were usually the result of the death of a **9** s\_\_\_\_\_. Now, however, most one-parent families are the result of **10** d\_\_\_\_\_, although some are created when unmarried mothers bear children. In 1991, more than one out of four children lived with only one parent, usually the mother. Most one-parent families, however, eventually become two-parent families through **11** r\_\_\_\_\_.

A stepfamily is created by a new **12** m\_\_\_\_\_ of a single parent. It may consist of a parent and children and a **13** c\_\_\_\_\_ spouse, a parent and children and a spouse whose children live elsewhere, or two joined one-parent families. In a **14** s\_\_\_\_\_, problems in relations between nonbiological parents and children may generate tension; the difficulties can be especially great in the marriage of single parents when the children of both parents live together as **15** s\_\_\_\_\_.

**IV Match the sayings on the left with their definitions on the right.**

16 Lucky at cards, unlucky in love. **a** completely unable to get something

17 Not able to get something for love or money. **b** if something has hurt you once, you avoid it

18 Burn the candle at both ends. **c** if you often win, you will not be happy in love

19 A burnt child dreads the fire. **d** you should punish your child

20 Marriages are made in heaven. **e** to work much too hard

21 Time works wonders. **f** sun brings good luck to the couple

22 Shrouds have no pockets. **g** the passing of time can solve many problems

23 Happy is the bride that the sun shines on. **h** you cannot predict who will marry whom

24 Spare the rod and spoil the child. **i** you cannot take any material goods with you when you die

**V Match the expressions and use them in sentences.**

**25** retirement **a** newborn, premature, stillborn, test-tube

**26** nursery **b** to go into, to take early

**27** relationship **c** to cultivate, to break (off), to enter into

**28** baby **d** strict, (un)conventional, religious

**29** relative **e** rhymes

**30** upbringing **f** blood, close, distant, near(est)

# FAMILY – AND MORE PRACTICE...

**I Find the wrong word in each sentence and replace it with a correct one by choosing a, b, c or d.**

- 1 She had to cope with the upwards and downs of life all by herself.  
a work  
b ups  
c downwards  
d all herself
- 2 Her father used to tell her: "Out of site, out of mind." – and he was right.  
a head  
b sigh  
c mine  
d sight
- 3 He was old enough to be her uncle.  
a son  
b grandfather
- 4 By that time they planned to be husband and woman.  
a wife  
b spouse  
c mistress  
d mother
- 5 In a quarrel he always makes a mountain out of a hill.  
a downhill  
b molehill  
c gnat  
d bull

**II Match the following verbs and adjectives with the two nouns: CHILD (6) and MARRIAGE (7).**

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| arranged             | ..... break-up      |
| foster               | to consummate a     |
| hasty                | to end a            |
| illegitimate         | to keep an eye on a |
| loveless             | to neglect          |
| mixed                | to scold a          |
| naughty              | to abuse a          |
| ..... of convenience | well-behaved        |
| an only              | ..... collapse      |
| to announce a        | to spoil a          |

**III Read the following passage and fill in the missing words.**

Childless families may be increasingly the result of deliberate choice and the availability of birth **8 c** \_\_\_\_\_. For many years the proportion of couples who were childless declined steadily as venereal and other diseases that cause **9 i** \_\_\_\_\_ were conquered. In the 1970s, however, the changes in the status of women reversed this trend. Couples often choose not to have children or to postpone having them until their careers are well established.

Since the 1960s, several variations on the family unit have emerged. More **10 u** \_\_\_\_\_ couples are living **11 t** \_\_\_\_\_, before or instead of marrying. Some elderly couples, most often widowed, are finding it more economically practical to **12 c** \_\_\_\_\_ without marrying. Homosexual couples also live together as a family more openly today, sometimes sharing their **13 h** \_\_\_\_\_ with the children of one partner or with adopted or **14 f** \_\_\_\_\_ children. Communal families, made up of groups of related or unrelated people, have long existed in isolated instances. Such units began to occur in the United States during the 1960s and 1970s as an **15 a** \_\_\_\_\_ life-style, but by the 1980s the number of communal families was diminishing.

**IV Match the sayings on the left with their definitions on the right.**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>16</b> Don't throw the baby out with the bathwater.                | <b>a</b> death makes everyone equal  |
| <b>17</b> Every family has a skeleton in the cupboard / closet.       | <b>b</b> you cannot always be having fun   |
| <b>18</b> Life isn't all beer and skittles.                           | <b>c</b> a child who is very much like one of his / her parents                                    |
| <b>19</b> A growing youth has a wolf in his belly.                    | <b>d</b> teenagers are hungry all the time   |
| <b>20</b> To be the black sheep of the family.                        | <b>e</b> you can present someone with an opportunity but you cannot force them to make use of it   |
| <b>21</b> Blood is thicker than water.                                | <b>f</b> people who are related stick together more than people outside a family                   |
| <b>22</b> A chip off the old block.                                   | <b>g</b> do not discard something valuable in your enthusiasm for getting rid of something useless |
| <b>23</b> You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it drink. | <b>h</b> to be considered as the worst member of the family  |
| <b>24</b> Death is the great leveller.                                | <b>i</b> every family has an unpleasant secret   |

**V Match the expressions and use them in sentences.**

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>25</b> pension      | <b>a</b> to keep to / within, to exceed               |
| <b>26</b> miscarriage  | <b>b</b> to contribute towards, to live on            |
| <b>27</b> relationship | <b>c</b> please accept my deepest, I have every...    |
| <b>28</b> budget       | <b>d</b> holiday, secret, teenage, whirlwind          |
| <b>29</b> sympathy     | <b>e</b> of justice                                   |
| <b>30</b> romance      | <b>f</b> close, love-hate, intimate, platonic, uneasy |



## DIFFERENT KINDS OF HOUSING

are a retired couple.


are on a tight budget.

have trouble sleeping at night.

are too old to drive.

love walking in the country.

18 • Topic-based Vocabulary •

**2**  Listen to the telephone conversation about a flat that is for rent and fill in the missing information in Peter's notes.

**3** Choose one of the advertisements on the preceding page and with a partner roleplay a similar phone conversation. You can take the part of Joe or Jamie. Your partner is the landlord/landlady.

**4** Complete the paragraphs on the right choosing some of the following comments.

It was very cramped.

It is nice and cosy.

It was so spacious you could get lost in it.

It had a kitchen corner.

I had to share the bathroom with the other tenants.

There was a large swimming pool and hot tub in the back.

The commute to work was too long.

The couches folded down into a double bed.

The living room doubled as my office, so it was rather messy.

It was in a bad part of town.

The walls were so thin you could hear everything your neighbours said.

It was right up the street from the university.

**5** What other advantages and disadvantages of each kind of house can you think of?

Ringmer Road, Brighton - 01273-946192

1 \_\_\_\_\_-bedroom flat in a 2 \_\_\_\_\_ house

3 \_\_\_\_\_ flats in the house, the 4 \_\_\_\_\_ lives in one of them.

*Special features:*

5 \_\_\_\_\_ floors

tall 6 \_\_\_\_\_

7 \_\_\_\_\_ in the garage – share with other tenants

8 \_\_\_\_\_ in the back that leads to a 9 \_\_\_\_\_

with a 10 \_\_\_\_\_.

They are looking for someone who is 11 \_\_\_\_\_.

12 \_\_\_\_\_, 13 \_\_\_\_\_.

## THESE ARE THE FLATS OF OUR LIVES

When I was at university, I hardly had any money at all. I couldn't get a room in the halls of residence, so I had to live in a bedsitter. There were some nice things about it. For example, ...

But it also had its disadvantages.

When I graduated from university, I found a job as an accountant and started to earn decent money. My girlfriend and I moved into a flat in a housing estate. It was much nicer than my previous place.

But it still wasn't perfect. My girlfriend eventually broke up with me and moved out because she said...

My career went ahead very well, and soon I was a rich stockbroker. I got married, and when my wife became pregnant we decided to buy a house in the suburbs. It was very expensive and luxurious. ...

Having such a large place, however, presented some problems. For instance, ...

When I retired, we decided that we needed a change of pace, so we bought a nice mobile home, with a piece of land in the country where we could park it when we weren't travelling. It was perfect for our lifestyle.

Now I'm dead and I rest in a pine box, apparently. ...



# TYPES OF DWELLINGS

**1** Match the following expressions to the pictures. Put a number in each box.

1 semi-detached house (GB)  
duplex/two-family house (US)

2 chalet

3 terraced house (GB)  
row house (US)

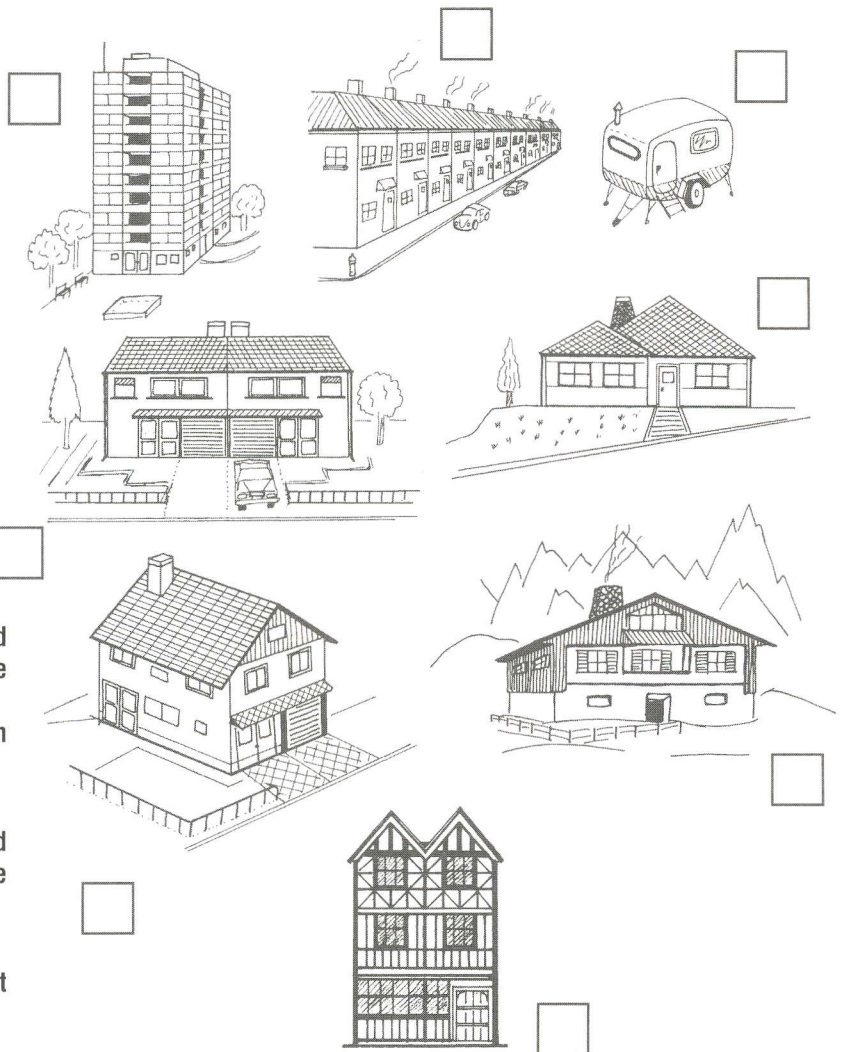
4 block of flats (GB)  
apartment building (US)

5 detached house (GB)  
(single-family) house (US)

6 bungalow (GB)  
ranch house (US)

7 caravan (GB)  
trailer (US)

8 half-timbered house  
Tudor-style house (GB)



**2** Where would you be most likely to find each of these houses? Can they all be found in your country?

What kinds of people do you think live in each?

**3** Which type of house do you live in and what other type of house might you like living in?

**4** Describe the house of the future. What will be different?  
What will stay the same?

## Types of Dwellings

redbrick house  
(without plaster)  
housing estate  
council houses and  
flats (GB) / housing  
project (US) / public  
housing (US)  
condo(minium) (US)  
high-rise / towerblock /  
multi-storey building  
skyscraper  
town house  
country house  
mansion  
manor house  
castle  
chateau

stately home  
palace  
half-timbered house /  
Tudor-style house (GB)  
cottage  
summer cottage  
weekend cottage /  
"second home"  
log cabin  
grass hut  
igloo  
teepee  
mobile home  
a squat  
halls of residence (GB) /  
dorm(itory) (US)

flat (GB) /  
apartment (US)  
bachelor flat / bachelor  
pad  
bedsitter / bedsit  
studio  
basement flat  
**Positive qualities**  
comfortable  
cosy  
luxurious / exquisite  
pleasant  
roomy / spacious  
large  
tidy / spotless  
well-kept

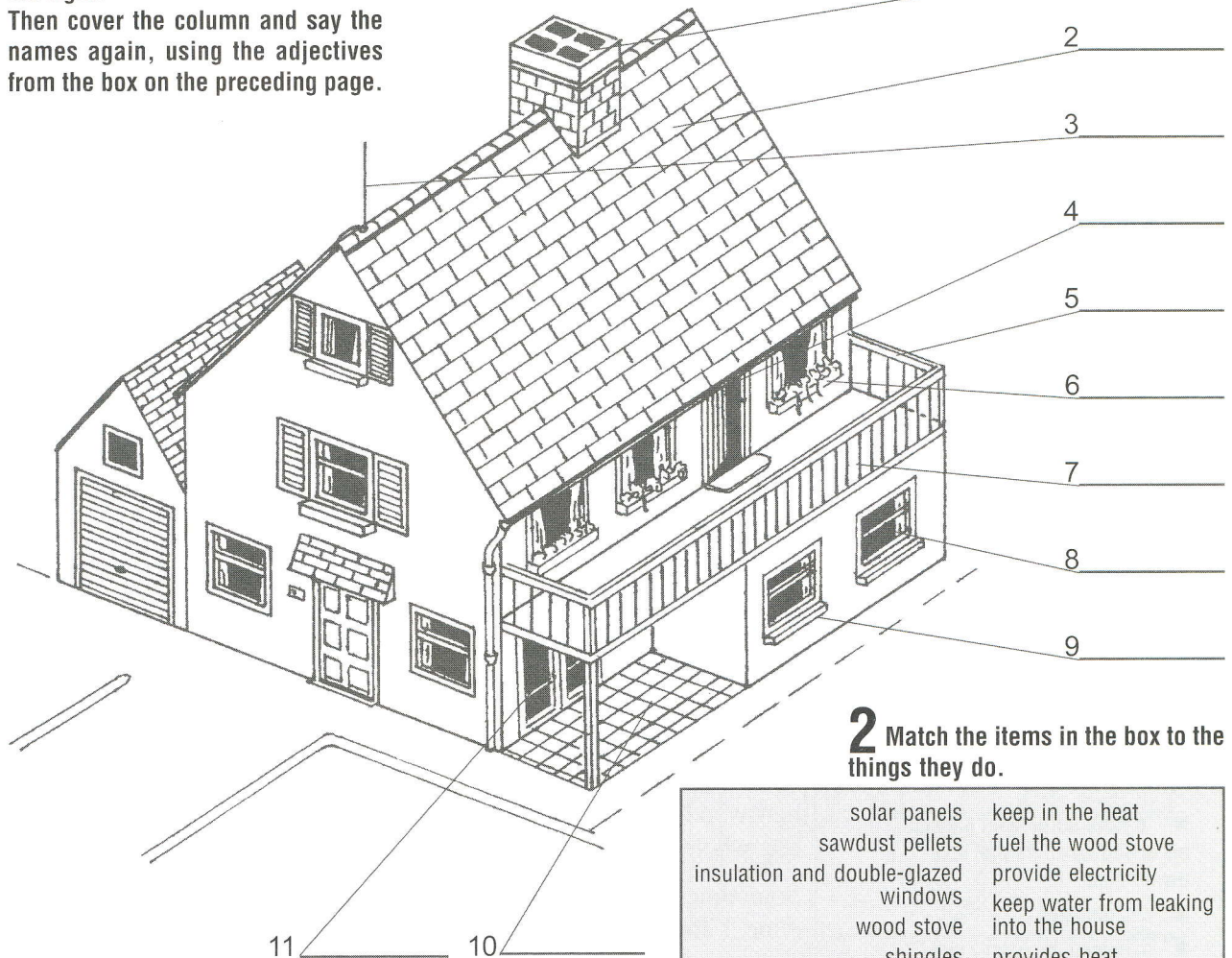
attractive  
elegant  
magnificent  
newly built  
**Negative qualities**  
dilapidated  
haunted  
ramshackle  
hideous  
cramped  
shabby  
dingy  
poky  
leaky  
damp

**Activities**  
to move into  
to move out of  
to move house  
to rent (out)  
to lease  
to (re)decorate  
to furnish  
to renovate  
to refurbish  
to alter  
to pull down /  
demolish

# PARTS OF A HOUSE

**1** What are the marked parts of the house called? Write their names on the right.

Then cover the column and say the names again, using the adjectives from the box on the preceding page.



**2** Match the items in the box to the things they do.

solar panels	keep in the heat
sawdust pellets	fuel the wood stove
insulation and double-glazed windows	provide electricity
wood stove	keep water from leaking into the house
shingles	provides heat

## Parts of a House

roof  
flat or sloping or butterfly  
thatched  
corrugated iron  
shingled / tiled  
chimney / chimney-stack  
lightning conductor (GB) / rod (US)  
TV aerial (GB) / antenna (US)  
skylight  
gutter  
attic conversion / converted attic  
garret  
loft  
loft conversion  
sash-window  
dormer window

bay window  
casement window  
storm windows (US)  
corridor  
basement  
cellar  
utility room  
storeroom  
workshop  
laundry  
drying room  
airing cupboard (GB)  
boiler room  
library  
study  
reception room  
foyer / entrance hall  
pantry / larder

## In the garden

shed  
conservatory  
gazebo  
patio  
greenhouse / hothouse  
swimming pool  
garden gate  
garden path  
flagstones  
garden gnome  
courtyard  
back garden (GB) / back yard (US)  
drive (GB) / driveway (US)  
letter box (GB) / mail box (US)  
bird table / feeder



# BUILDING A HOUSE

**1** Try answering some of these questions before reading the text. Then read it to correct and check the answers and complete the task.

- 1 When the author first saw the house, she was
  - a excited.
  - b sceptical.
  - c relieved.
  - d angry.
- 2 According to George, what was the most important part of the house?
  - a the roof
  - b the rafters
  - c the foundations
  - d the environmentally-friendly features
- 3 Now that the house is finished, the author
  - a wishes they were still building it.
  - b thinks it wasn't worth all of the problems they had to deal with.
  - c is happy it is finished.
  - d wishes they had done some things differently.

**2** Find a word in the text that means the following.

- to have something passed on to you when its previous owner dies
- discouraged
- damaged by water / age
- to press together
- empty
- small sores caused by rubbing the skin too much

## GRANDFATHER'S GIFT

When we inherited this old house from my grandfather, my first thought was to pull it down and start all over again. The roof had collapsed in several places, the floor was sagging, and it just generally looked a mess. My husband, George, is a building contractor, and he wasn't put off by how bad the house looked. He went straight to the cellar to inspect the foundations. If the foundations were solid, he said, the rest could be repaired. They were, so we called an architect and started drawing up plans for renovating the house.

The biggest problem was the roof. It had several holes in it, and the beams and rafters were rotten almost all the way through. So we replaced the roof altogether, put in new rafters, then covered the roof with new shingles. We replaced the floorboards and then covered them with lovely wall-to-wall carpeting.

George and I didn't just want to build a house that would last. We also wanted it to be environmentally sound, something that we could feel proud to live in. We therefore installed state-of-the-art solar panels on the roof. We lined the walls with extra-thick insulation and installed double-glazed windows so the house would keep in the heat. We even reused the huge piles of sawdust that were left over from the job. We had them compressed into wood pellets that could be burned in our new wood-stove. It's amazing. One scoop of pellets burns for as long as a whole log of wood, and heats the whole house.

Sometimes, when I'm sitting in front of the stove with a glass of wine, I almost miss the days when this old house was just a barren skeleton, full of possibilities. Then I think of all of the sore muscles and blisters, of all of the problems we ran into along the way, and I'm glad it's all behind us and that now we can just sit back and enjoy it.

### Building a House

building site / construction site  
to renovate an old house  
to rebuild  
to level the ground  
to dig the foundations  
to apply for a mortgage  
building society (GB) / savings and loan institution (US)

#### Building materials

bricks  
built of brick  
stone  
breeze-blocks

mortar  
concrete  
cement  
gravel  
prefabricated sections  
ferro-concrete  
timber (GB) / lumber (US)  
floorboards  
beams and rafters  
plank  
tile  
slate  
shingle

#### Tools and construction machinery

excavator  
bulldozer  
cement mixer  
scaffolding  
wheelbarrow  
shovel  
trowel  
bucket

## 1 Find the following in the picture.

- 1 doormat
- 2 hinge
- 3 doorhandle
- 4 peephole
- 5 keyhole
- 6 letter box (GB)  
mailbox (US)
- 7 lock and (security) chain
- 8 threshold
- 9 doorstep
- 10 wall-to-wall carpet × rug
- 11 entry phone / intercom
- 12 keys
- 13 staircase
- 14 staircase landing
- 15 handrail / railing
- 16 bannister

- 17 (light-)switch
- 18 clock
- 19 coat rack
- 20 cupboard

## 2 Customs and manners vary from country to country. Are there “front-door” behaviour differences between your country and Britain / US?

*to wipe (one's) feet*

*to take sb's coat / hang one's coat*

*to turn*

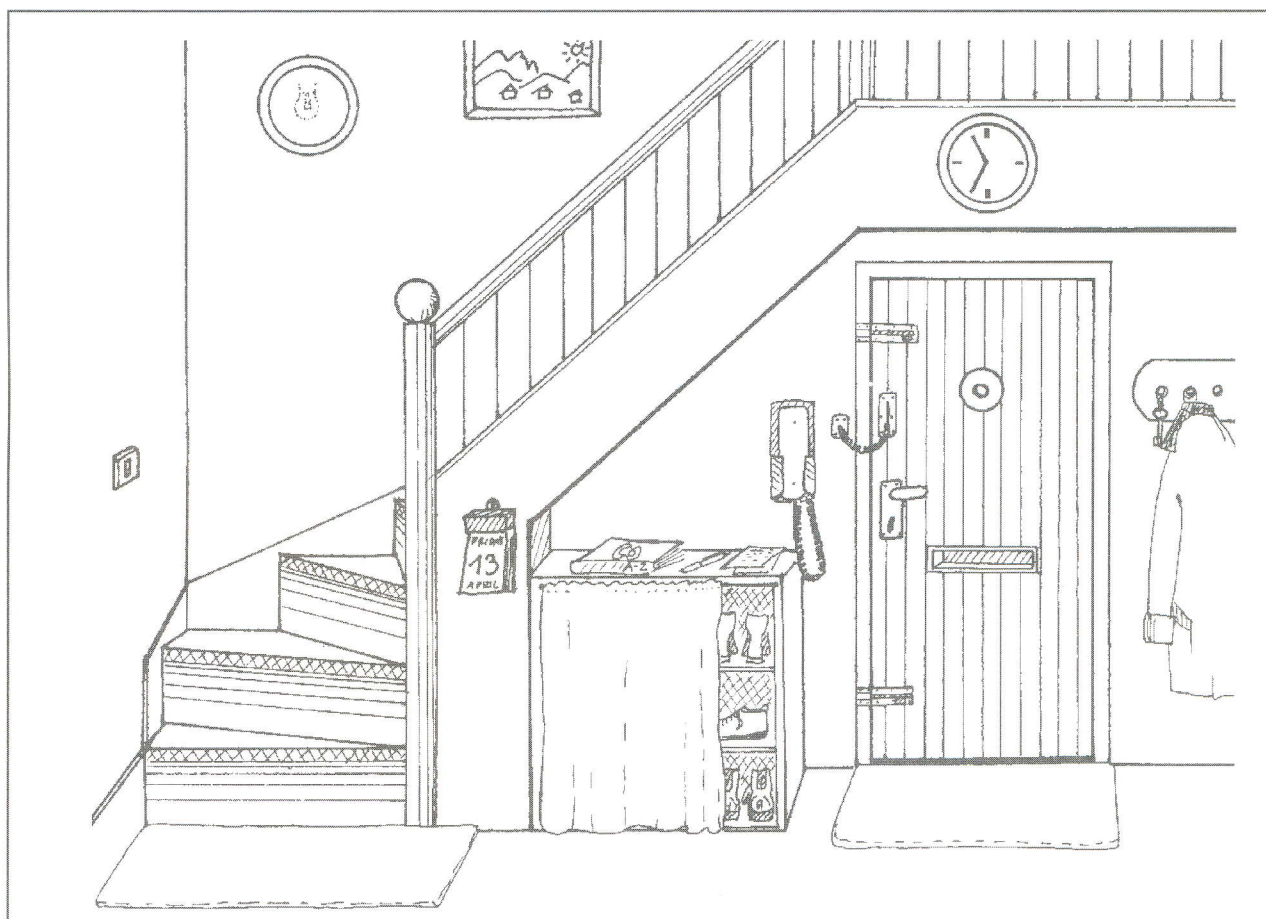
*to look through*

*to take off one's shoes*

*to ring the (door)bell*

*to bolt the door*

## 3 Look at the picture carefully again and spot one mistake the artist has made.





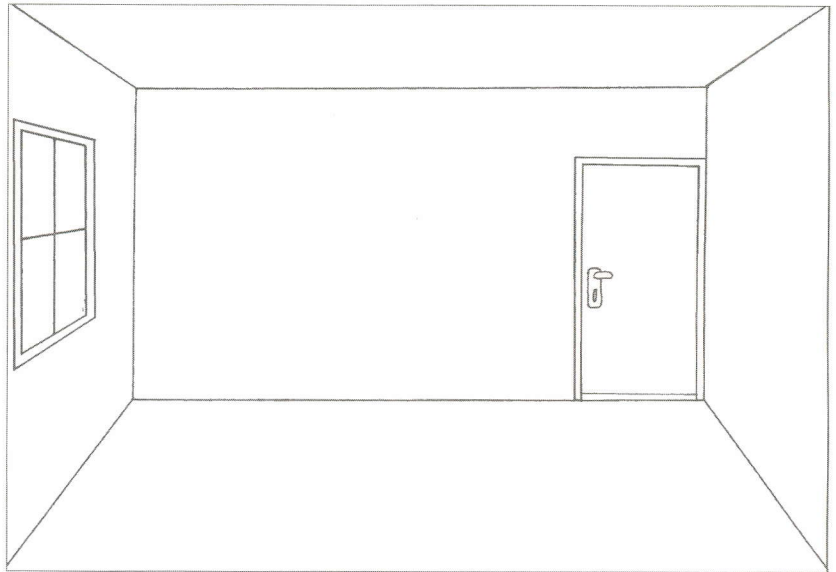
# BEDROOM

**1** Find the following in the picture below.

- 1 double bed
- 2 headboard
- 3 sheets and blankets
- 4 bed linen
- 5 pillowcase
- 6 eiderdown (GB) / duvet (GB)/down comforter (US)
- 7 mattress
- 8 chest of drawers
- 9 dressing table
- 10 mirror
- 11 stool
- 12 bedside table
- 13 bedside lamp
- 14 alarm clock
- 15 wedding photo
- 16 fitted wardrobe / built-in wardrobe (GB) / closet (US)
- 17 curtain
- 18 head of the bed × foot of the bed
- 19 window sill
- 20 power point (GB) / socket

**2** You may not like the bedroom below. Draw your ideal one, adding the missing things. You could also just write their names into the picture.

*e.g. exercise bike, piles of dirty clothes on the floor, a dog or a cat, a bible, a cradle, etc.*



# BATHROOM

## 1 Find the following in the picture.

- 1 bath / bathtub / tub
- 2 shower
- 3 laundry basket (made of cane)
- 4 hand / bath / beach towel
- 5 washbasin / handbasin
- 6 towel rail / rack
- 7 bath mat
- 8 bidet
- 9 medicine cabinet / chest
- 10 shower curtain
- 11 bathroom scales
- 12 soap: a bar of soap
- 13 plug
- 14 sponge
- 15 flannel (GB) / wash cloth (US)
- 16 comb
- 17 brush
- 18 toothbrush
- 19 toothpaste
- 20 toothmug
- 21 toilet
- 22 roll of toilet paper

- 23 toilet seat
- 24 pedestal
- 25 cistern
- 26 (bathroom) mat
- 27 tiled floor / floor tiles
- 28 back scrubber
- 29 shampoo and conditioner
- 30 rod / rail

## 2 Here are some verbs connected with the nouns in exercise 1 – try to match them.

- to take / have a long*  
*to stand on*  
*to fill / run*  
*to spray everything*  
*to pull*  
*to flush*  
*to squeeze*  
*to go to / sit on / read on*  
*to clean*  
*to overflow*  
*to slip on*

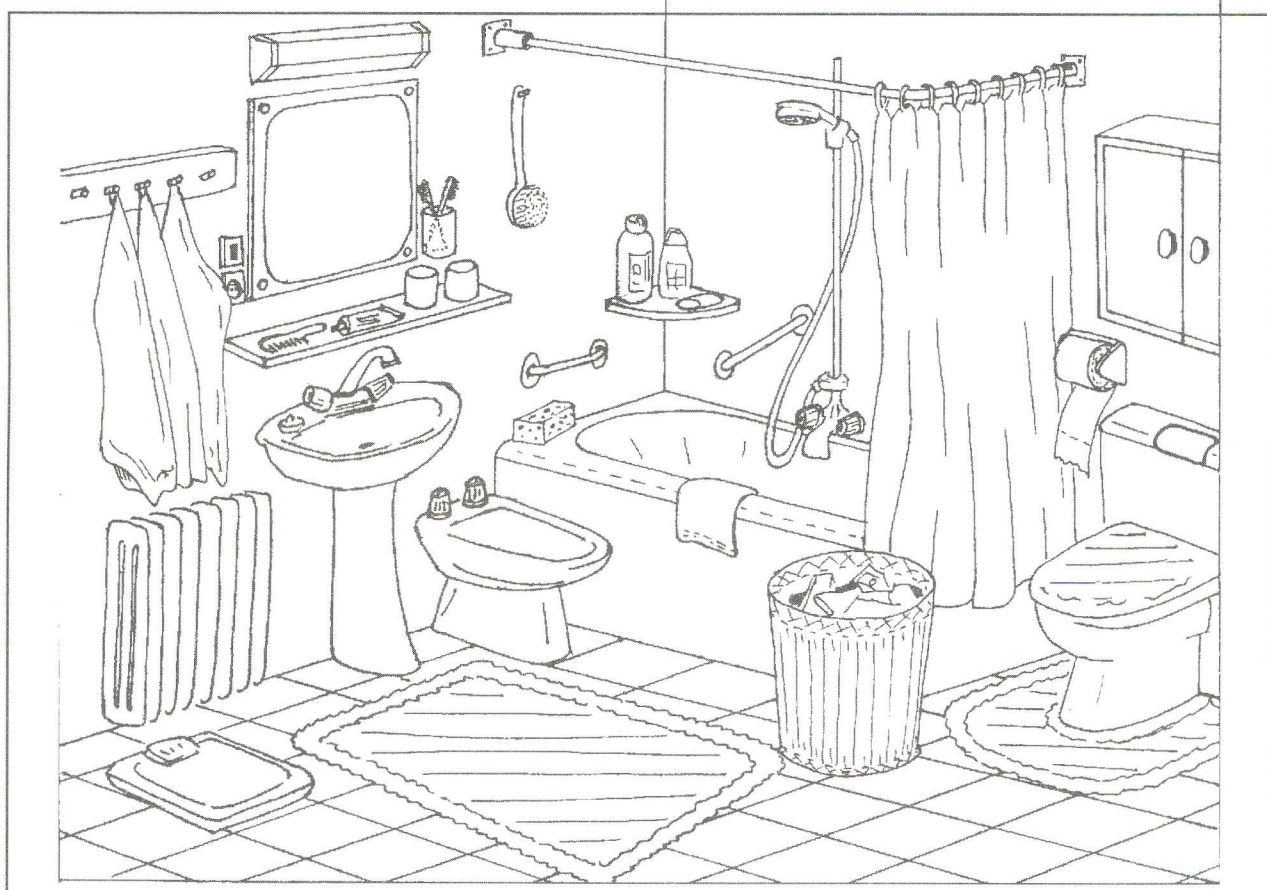
## 3 Discuss the usage of the following words with your teacher.

- toilet  
 bathroom  
 restroom  
 WC  
 loo  
 lav  
 lavatory  
 bog  
 the john

## 4 “To go to the toilet” is a very direct expression in English.

**Note these expressions:** *to powder one's nose, to wash one's hands, to be excused, to spend a penny, etc.*

**Do any of them translate from your own language?**



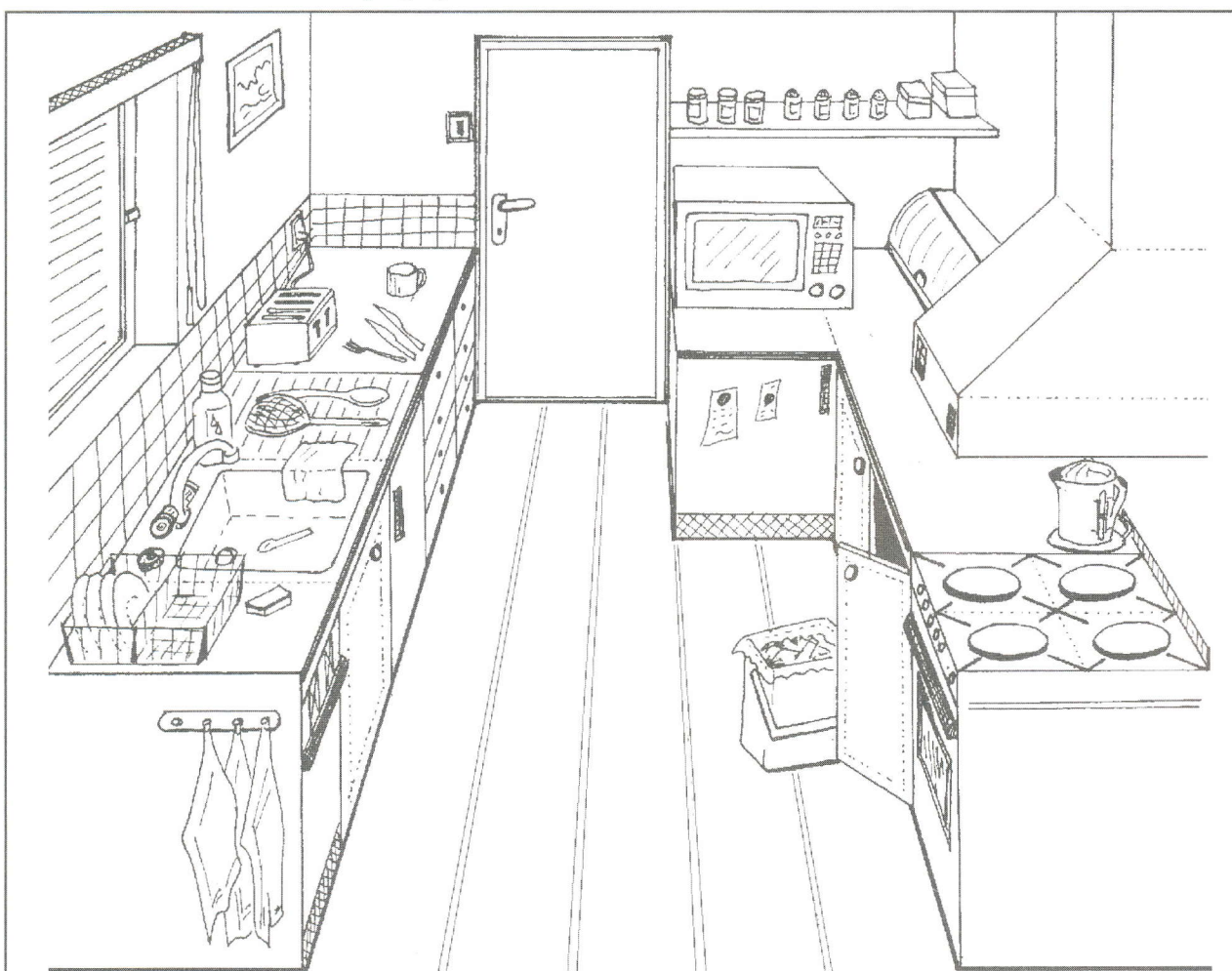


# KITCHEN

**1** Find the following in the picture and group them under the following headings:

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1 kitchen unit                 | 15 microwave oven                                   |
| 2 cupboard                     | 16 refrigerator / fridge                            |
| 3 kitchen sink                 | 17 rubbish bin (GB) / trash can (US)                |
| 4 tap (GB) / faucet (US)       | 18 electric kettle                                  |
| 5 bread bin                    | 19 toaster  |
| 6 draining board               | 20 shelf  |
| 7 dish rack                    | 21 sieve / strainer                                 |
| 8 pelmet / curtain rail        | 22 washing-up liquid (GB) / dishwashing liquid (US) |
| 9 Venetian blind               | 23 dishcloth  |
| 10 dishwasher                  | 24 ladle / mixing / wooden spoon                    |
| 11 stove / cooker              | 25 mug  |
| 12 knife and fork              | 26 kitchen towel / tea-towel / drying-up cloth      |
| 13 extractor fan / cooker hood |   |
| 14 oven                        |   |

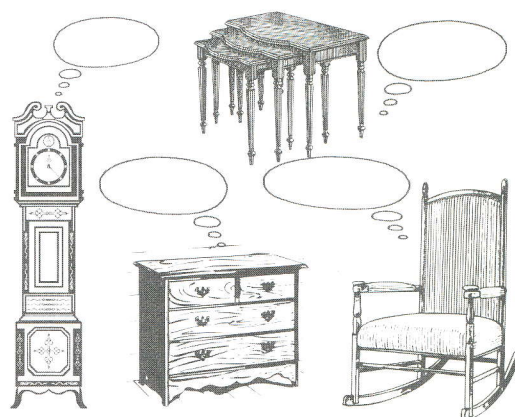
KITCHEN FIXTURES	UTENSILS	ELECTRICAL APPLIANCES	OTHER



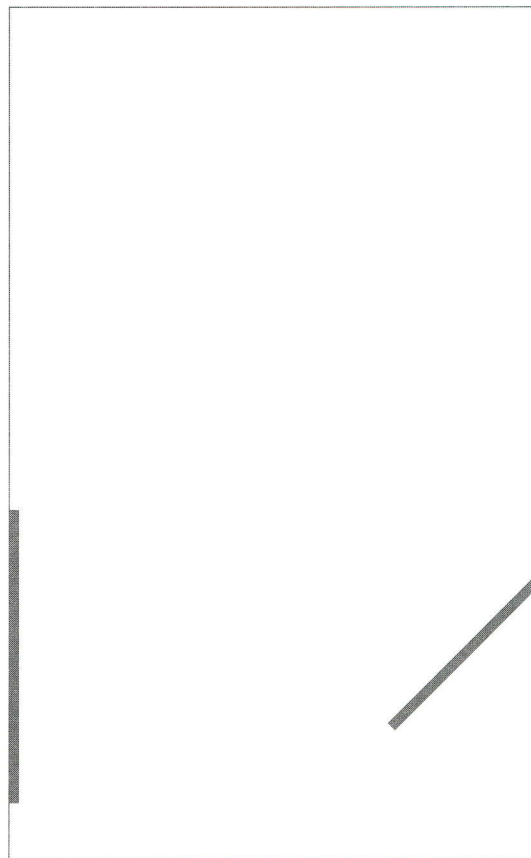
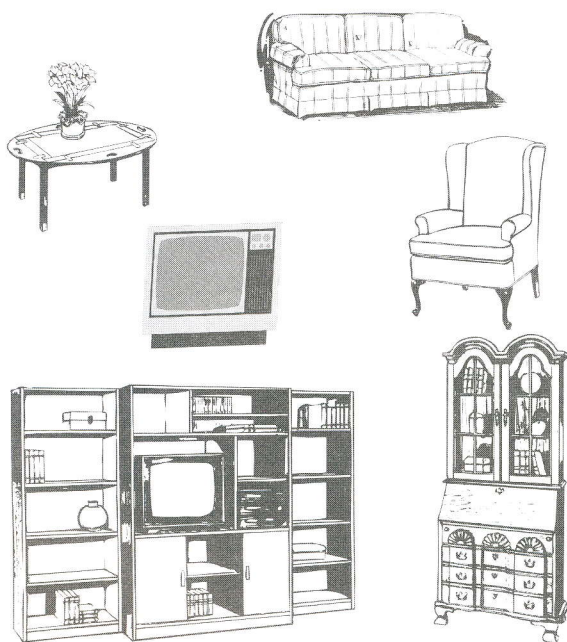
# LIVING ROOM

**1** On the right there are some old pieces of furniture found in the living room. If each of them could talk, what would they say?

rocking chair  
chest of drawers  
grandfather clock  
nest of tables



**2** How do you like to relax?  
What would be in your dream living room that could help you unwind after a hard day at work or at school?  
Using the empty diagram on the right, describe your ideal living room. Would you use any of the pieces of furniture in the pictures on this page?



## Living Room

wall unit  
fireplace  
mantelpiece  
painting  
bookcase  
shelves  
wardrobe  
sofa / couch / settee  
sofa-bed  
coffee table

nest of tables  
magazine rack  
plant rack  
drinks cupboard / cabinet  
rocking chair  
reclining chair  
swivel chair  
wing chair  
oak table  
sideboard (GB) / china cabinet (US)  
piano

grandfather clock  
French windows  
shutters  
vertical blinds  
chandelier  
standard lamp  
spotlight  
dimmer switch  
electric fire  
gas fire  
double glazing



# GARDEN

**1** Do you have a garden at your house? Do you enjoy working in it, or do you see it as just another chore?

**2** Look at the pictures below. Name the actions and/or the tools.

**3** Match the pictures and the phrases on the right.

**4** Your neighbour is getting a little bit too old to take care of the garden by herself and has asked you to help. Take a look at the list of chores on the right and decide which ones you should do, which ones she can do by herself, and which jobs can be done by both of you.



prune the fruit trees

mow the grass

rake the leaves

dig the garden

water the plants

weed the flowerbed

trim the hedge with shears

prick out the seedlings

thin out the carrot patch

spread manure in  
the vegetable plot

plant the lettuce  
and cabbage

lay × sow the lawn

## Garden

allotment × garden × land

fence × hedge

rockery (GB) / rock garden (US)

shrub

bush

fertile × barren / infertile / poor soil / earth

manure / dung × compost

lawn × flowerbed × vegetable plot

to plant st × sow seeds

to prick out (GB) / transplant (US)

to graft

to be in bud

to bloom (flowers)

to be in blossom (trees)

to dig the garden

flowerpot

window box

nursery box

sapling

spade

trowel

shovel

hoe

pitchfork

rake

lawn / grass rake

scythe

sickle

lawnmower

watering can

hose(pipe)

wheelbarrow

deckchair

spray nozzle

garden clippers / shears

secateurs

work gloves / garden gloves

vegetable seeds

grass seed

step ladder

chainsaw

# MAINTENANCE

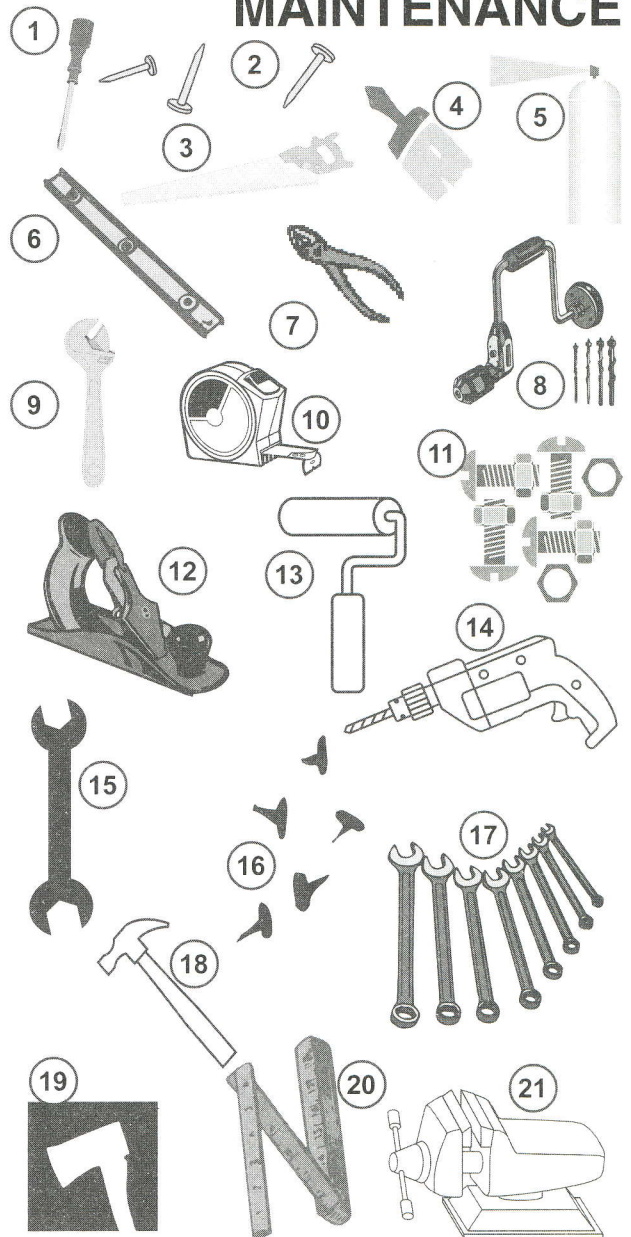
**1** Look at the pictures and name the tools and actions you do with them.

**2** How handy are you? Which of the following things would you attempt to fix yourself and which of them would you call in a specialist for? Circle the letter for these.

- a a dripping tap  
\_\_\_\_\_
- b peeling paint on the window frames  
\_\_\_\_\_
- c a gas leak  
\_\_\_\_\_
- d a broken water heater  
\_\_\_\_\_
- e installing new shelves in the larder  
\_\_\_\_\_
- f building a conservatory  
\_\_\_\_\_
- g putting in a satellite dish  
\_\_\_\_\_
- h fixing a broken lawnmower  
\_\_\_\_\_
- i installing a high-voltage electrical outlet for a new washing machine  
\_\_\_\_\_
- j putting in a phone jack in the study  
\_\_\_\_\_

**3** If you did decide to call in a specialist, who would you call?

What tools and materials would be needed for each job? Write at least two next to each job.



## Maintenance

(N.B. The nouns printed in *italics* can also be used as verbs.)

saw × fretsaw ×  
hacksaw

hammer

axe / hatchet

nail

screw

drawing pin

glue

(paint)brush

(paint) roller

tape *measure*

folding ruler

nuts and *bolts*

screwdriver

file

(spirit) *level*

T-square

(electric) *drill*

*plane*

*chisel* set

mallet

brace

pair of pliers × pincers

*clamp*

to service

to renovate

to maintain

to repair / mend /

fix (up)

toolbox

socket set

vice (GB) / vise (US)

spanners (GB) / wrenches  
(US)

open-ended × ring (GB) /  
box end (US)

adjustable (GB) / crescent  
wrench (US)

mole grips (GB) / vise

grips (US)

### Skilled labourers / tasks

bricklayer

plasterer

carpenter × joiner

electrician

plumber

locksmith

glazier

interior decorator

roofer

tiler

to whitewash

to distemper

to lay the tiles

to build the walls

to paint the furniture

to hang wallpaper /

*wallpaper*

to assemble × make furniture



# HOME – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**I** Read the following passage and fill in the missing words.

Largely depending on their means, people in Britain live in a diverse variety of **1 a**\_\_\_\_\_ ranging from country **2 m**\_\_\_\_\_ to single rooms or hostels in the inner cities. The majority, however, live in **3 h**\_\_\_\_\_ and (to a lesser extent) flats, either as owner-occupiers or as **4 t**\_\_\_\_\_ paying rent. About 19 per cent of houses are **5 d**\_\_\_\_\_, 31 per cent are semi-**6 d**\_\_\_\_\_ and 29 per cent are **7 t**\_\_\_\_\_. Owner-occupation increased substantially between 1971 and 1994. Most people buy their homes with a **8 m**\_\_\_\_\_, with the **9 p**\_\_\_\_\_ as security. **10 B**\_\_\_\_\_ societies are the largest source of such loans, although banks and other financial institutions also take a significant share in the mortgage market.

**II** Match the following expressions with the four nouns **ACCOMMODATION (a)**, **NEIGHBOURHOOD (b)**, **LOAN (c)** and **INTEREST/MONEY (d)** and translate the collocations.

- |           |                     |           |                         |
|-----------|---------------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| <b>11</b> | to hunt for         | <b>19</b> | to move into / out of a |
| <b>12</b> | to calculate        | <b>20</b> | bank                    |
| <b>13</b> | to pay back / off a | <b>21</b> | suitable                |
| <b>14</b> | ... rate            | <b>22</b> | to provide              |
| <b>15</b> | shortage of         | <b>23</b> | ... accumulates         |
| <b>16</b> | to grow up in a     | <b>24</b> | dangerous               |
| <b>17</b> | middle-class        | <b>25</b> | generous                |
| <b>18</b> | to take on / out a  | <b>26</b> | to live off the         |

**III** Insert the following words into the sentences and try to interpret the metaphor; what are the equivalents in your own language?

**HOME CEMENTED BRICK WALL ROOF**

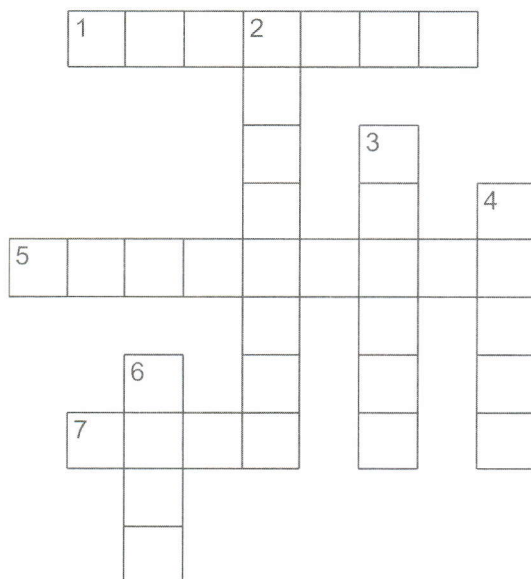
In recent years, her career has gone through the **27**\_\_\_\_\_.

In the process, he **28**\_\_\_\_\_ his control over the company.

It was like talking to a **29**\_\_\_\_\_: nobody paid attention to what I was saying.

There was a huge propaganda campaign to drive **30**\_\_\_\_\_ the message.

**IV** Try this crossword.



## Across

1. a large impressive house
5. a room used for both living and sleeping in
7. space directly under the roof of a house, used for storing things

## Down

2. a small window in a roof or ceiling
3. a long metal or plastic channel fixed under the edge of a roof to carry away the water when it rains
4. a private road or area between a house and the street for the use of vehicles
6. a structure covering or forming the top of a building

# HOME – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Read the following passage and fill in the missing words.

There are some 5 million houses and flats in the public housing sector. Most of the public **1** h\_\_\_\_\_ in Great Britain is provided by local housing authorities. Thirty-seven per cent of local authority tenants live in **2** f\_\_\_\_\_, thirty-three per cent in **3** t\_\_\_\_\_ houses, and twenty-five per cent in semi-**4** d\_\_\_\_\_ houses. Most have the right to buy the homes they **5** o\_\_\_\_\_ if they wish. Housing associations are the main providers of additional low-cost housing for **6** r\_\_\_\_\_ and for sale to those on low incomes and in the greatest housing **7** n\_\_\_\_\_. Associations now own, manage, and **8** m\_\_\_\_\_ almost a million homes and about 65 thousand hostel bed-spaces in Great Britain. Almost 10 per cent of **9** h\_\_\_\_\_ are rented from private **10** l\_\_\_\_\_.

Match the following verbs and adjectives with the four nouns INHERITANCE (a), HOME (b), HOUSE (c), and DOOR (d) and translate the collocations.

- |    |                 |    |                         |
|----|-----------------|----|-------------------------|
| 11 | to work from    | 19 | to answer the           |
| 12 | to (re)decorate | 20 | to claim                |
| 13 | to set up       | 21 | to demolish             |
| 14 | worthless       | 22 | sliding                 |
| 15 | revolving       | 23 | to squander             |
| 16 | sprawling       | 24 | to refurbish / renovate |
| 17 | to come into    | 25 | magnificent             |
| 18 | second          | 26 | to slam                 |

Insert the following words into the sentences and try to interpret the metaphor; what are the equivalents in your own language?

**RUINS FOUNDATIONS CEILING WINDOW**

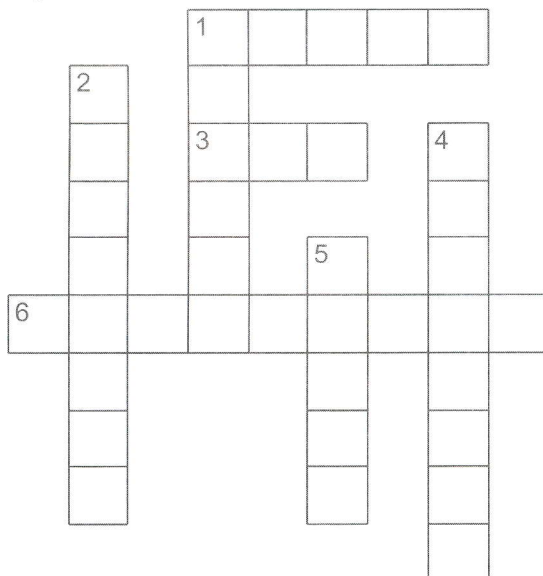
The convention offered a **27**\_\_\_\_\_ on the latest green technology.

They decided to put a **28**\_\_\_\_\_ on the income of MPs.

The **29**\_\_\_\_\_ are being laid for a steady increase in energy prices for the next year.

Her career was in **30**\_\_\_\_\_.

Try this crossword.



## Across

1. a seat without a back or arms
3. a large long container for water in which a person sits to have a bath
6. the floor or ground at the bottom of a doorway, considered as the entrance of a house

## Down

1. a long soft seat with a back and usually with arms, for two or more people
2. a small opening in a wall, door, curtain, etc through which one may look
4. sheets and pillowcases
5. a flat board fixed to a wall or forming part of a cupboard, bookcase, etc for things to be placed on



# FOOD

Look at the pictures below and match them with the following words:

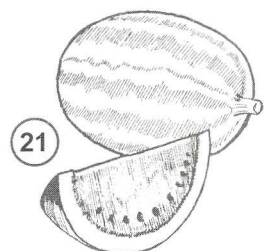
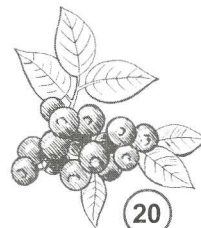
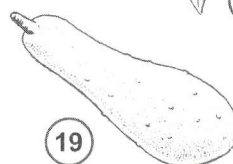
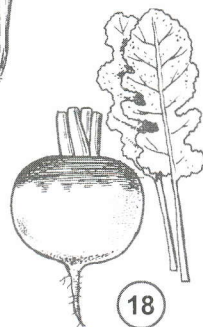
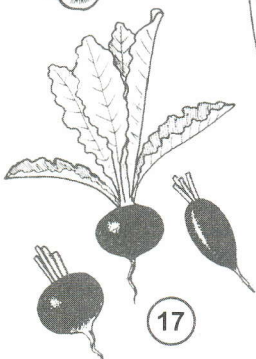
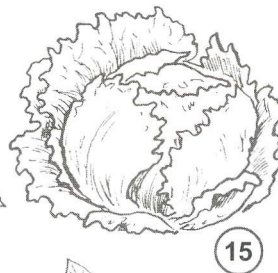
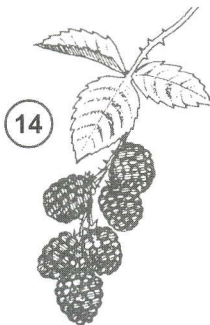
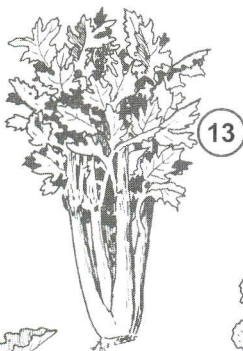
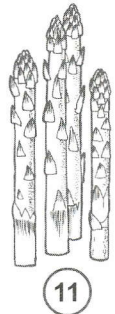
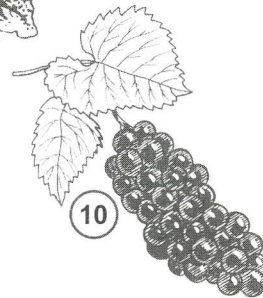
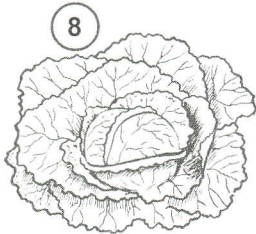
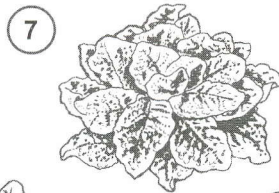
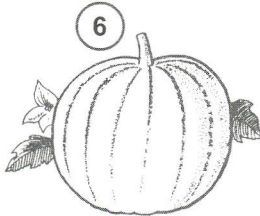
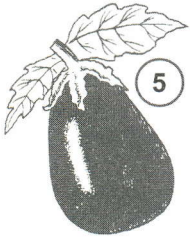
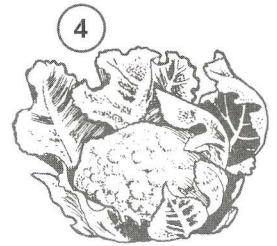
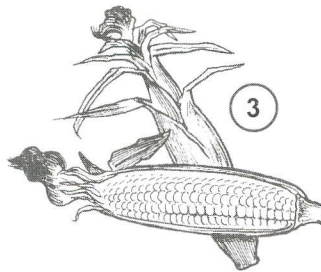
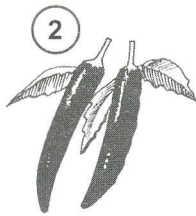
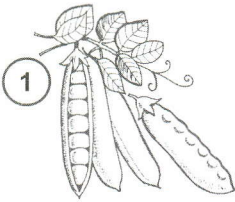
asparagus  
blackberries  
blueberries  
broccoli  
cabbage

cauliflower  
celery  
sweetcorn  
eggplant / aubergine

grapes  
chilli / chile peppers  
lettuce  
peas

peppers  
pumpkin  
radishes  
spinach

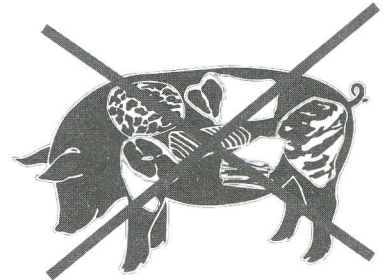
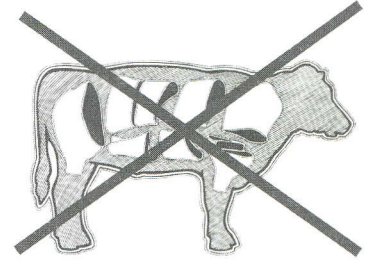
squash  
green beans  
turnip  
watermelon



**1** Do you know anyone who is a vegetarian?  
Would you ever consider being a vegetarian? What things would you miss the most?  
Should children be vegetarians? Do you think that it is healthy?

**2**  Listen to the recording and answer the questions.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1 The speaker says that she quit eating meat because</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a her parents gave it to her with every meal.</li> <li>b she had a pet sheep who was killed for meat.</li> <li>c she doesn't think it is healthy.</li> <li>d she prefers fish.</li> </ul> <p>2 She thinks that meat isn't healthy because</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a it is fattening.</li> <li>b the animals it comes from aren't raised naturally.</li> <li>c it causes heart disease and high cholesterol.</li> <li>d it spoils before it gets to the market.</li> </ul> | <p>3 The speaker doesn't eat fish because</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a it is full of preservatives.</li> <li>b she doesn't like the taste.</li> <li>c it's too expensive.</li> <li>d it gets contaminated by water pollution.</li> </ul> <p>4 She says that she</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a can't imagine not being a vegetarian.</li> <li>b would eat healthy meat if she could find it.</li> <li>c doesn't like beans but has to eat them for their protein.</li> <li>d has had to learn how to cook new things like pastas and stir-fries.</li> </ul> |
|---|---|



## Healthy Eating

### Meat

minced meat / mince (GB) / ground beef (US)

offal

beef

veal

pork

lamb

mutton

bacon

ham

smoked meat

sausage

salami

tinned meat

lunchmeat / cold cuts (US)

liver

kidneys

tripe

### Fish

carp

trout

pike

eel

cod

salmon

sardines

mackerel

tuna

sea bass

perch

catfish / wels

zander

### Game

venison

hare

pheasant

partridge

rabbit

wild boar

bear

blackcock

capercaillie

### Poultry

duck

goose

broiler

capon

turkey

chicken

free-range eggs

### Soups

clear soup / broth

cream soup

tripe soup

pea soup

vegetable soup

tomato soup

mushroom soup

noodles

liver balls

bouillon / stock cube

chicken noodle soup

### Milk / Dairy produce

(semi-)skimmed milk × full-fat milk

yoghurt

cheddar

blue cheese

cottage cheese

butter

cream

### Fruit and nuts

banana

lemon

orange

grapefruit

pineapple

satsuma

nectarine

tangerine

bilberries / blueberries

cranberries

raspberries

gooseberries

strawberries

mulberries

currants

cherry

plum

apricot

peach

pear

apple

walnuts

hazelnuts

coconut

almonds

figs

dates

raisins

### Vegetables

onion

garlic

leek

cucumber

aubergine / eggplant

potatoes

carrots

parsnip

celeriac × celery

kohlrabi

Brussels sprouts

tomatoes

beans

green beans (GB) /

French beans /

string beans (US)

lentils

mixed pickles

gherkins

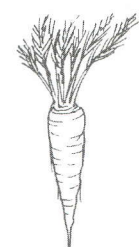
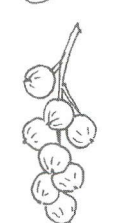
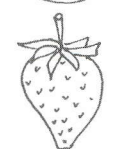
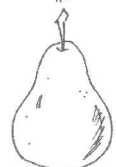
mushrooms

rhubarb

horseradish

courgette (GB) /

zucchini (US)





# HEALTHY EATING

**3** Discuss whether the following foods are healthy or unhealthy and say why.  
How healthy is the cuisine of your country?

french fries  
green salad  
BBQ pork ribs  
cereal  
dark bread  
ice cream  
whisky  
salty foods  
fresh fruit  
TV dinners  
coffee  
fried chicken  
fish  
chocolate  
fried cheese

**5** Is it healthy to eat/drink the items below? Why or why not?



**4** Make notes describing your personal preferences in eating and cooking and what you think may have influenced them. Then exchange your views with other students. In groups of four, prepare a short report for the class.

## Healthy Eating

nourishment  
to be weight conscious  
low-calorie food  
to be overweight  
to get fat  
to put on weight  
to be slimming  
to lose weight  
to eat modestly  
to be on a diet  
anorexia nervosa  
bulimia  
Weight Watchers (famous slimming club)  
vegetarian  
vegan  
meat-eater  
factory-farmed meat  
preservatives  
grains

pulses  
soya meat / crumbles / chunks  
high-fibre diet  
saturated / unsaturated fats  
health food / whole food  
**Sweets and confectionery**  
custard  
pancakes  
ice-cream cone  
chocolate  
toffees  
candy bar (US)  
candy floss (GB) / cotton candy (US)  
semolina pudding  
banana split  
rice pudding  
trifle (GB)  
Christmas pudding (GB)

sundae  
frozen yoghurt  
jelly (GB) / jello (US) / gelatine  
jam (GB) / jelly (US)  
marmalade  
**Cakes, pies and pastries**  
sponge cake  
fruit cake  
apple pie  
apple strudel  
apple / rhubarb crumble  
bun  
doughnut  
tart  
biscuits (GB) / cookies (US)  
scone  
muffin  
crumpet

brownies (US)  
**Meals and snacks**  
to grab / snatch a bite to eat  
to lunch at one's desk  
packed lunch (GB) / sack lunch (US)  
elevenses (GB)  
to pop out  
to go out for lunch / dinner  
works canteen / cafeteria  
luncheon vouchers (GB) / lunch tickets (US)  
to have lunch with sb  
to send out for sandwiches  
to live on coffee and cigarettes  
pub lunch  
liquid lunch  
brunch

**1** Separate the following verbs into the three categories below, then describe the difference between them saying what kinds of foods are typically prepared in this way.

thicken poach crush stir stew scramble  
roast peel simmer chop blend dice  
microwave boil mince purée fry grill  
quarter bake whip beat steam sauté

CUTTING	COOKING	MIXING
<i>slice</i>		

**2** In pairs, make notes in your own language as your partner dictates a recipe to you. Then write a recipe for your favourite meal.

## Chicken Parmesan (serves 2)

2 full chicken breasts, boned	3 tsp. oregano some flour
1 16 oz tin tomato paste	2 tsp. dried basil
3 eggs	1/4 lb. parmesan cheese
3 cloves garlic	1 tsp. salt
juice of 1 lemon	1/2 lb. mozzarella cheese
1 onion	1 tsp. pepper
1 package breadcrumbs	

In a large bowl, beat the eggs. Mix in the lemon juice and a pinch of parmesan cheese. Add chicken breasts, making sure that they are completely covered by the egg mixture, and allow to marinate for 6 hours.

Preheat oven to 200° C.

Peel and crush the garlic. Dice the onions. Cover the bottom of a small saucepan with a thin layer of olive oil, add the garlic, onions, oregano, and basil. Sauté over low heat until soft. Add tomato paste and simmer for 30 minutes.

Heat a thin layer of olive oil in a small pan. Take chicken breasts from the egg mixture and cover in a light layer of flour. Dip chicken back into the eggs and then cover with a generous layer of breadcrumbs. Place gently in the pan and brown lightly on both sides.

Pour enough tomato sauce to cover the base of a small casserole dish. Add the chicken breasts, cover with the remainder of the sauce and sprinkle the grated cheese on top. Bake for 15-20 minutes or until the cheese is golden brown.

Serve with spaghetti or oven-baked potatoes, mixed green salad, and a good red wine.

*Bon Appetit!*

## Cooking

### Seasonings

(black) pepper  
white pepper  
red pepper / paprika  
thyme  
parsley  
sage  
basil  
chives  
dill  
rosemary  
marjoram  
curry (powder)  
oregano  
nutmeg  
clove(s)  
ginger  
mint  
aniseed  
cinnamon

cumin (powder)  
caraway  
allspice  
chillies  
soya sauce / soy sauce  
vinegar  
mustard  
salad dressing

### Cooking

ingredients  
a pinch of  
to add  
to bring to the boil /  
a boil  
to dip  
to marinate  
to bottle  
to pickle  
baking tin  
casserole (dish)

saucepan  
frying pan  
dough  
pastry  
cornflour  
breadcrumbs  
self-raising flour  
baking powder  
gravy x sauce  
mashed potatoes  
purée(d) potatoes  
sauté(d) (potatoes)  
dumplings  
rice  
stewed fruit  
canned fruit

### Cooking for pleasure

"The way to a man's heart is through  
his stomach."  
creating new dishes

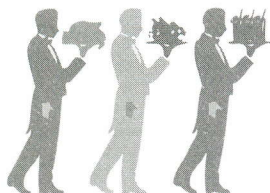
collecting cook(ery) books  
exchanging recipes  
a foody (sb obsessed with food)  
gourmand / gourmet  
connoisseur  
luxury foods / fancy foods  
seafood  
salmon  
caviar  
lobster  
champagne / sparkling wine  
vintage wine  
quail's eggs  
snacks  
canapés  
open sandwiches  
sandwiches  
appetisers  
crisps (GB) / potato chips (US)  
peanuts



# EATING OUT

**1** Put the following steps to eating out in the correct order.

- reserve a table
- leave a tip
- leave your coats in the cloakroom
- eat the appetiser
- order your meal
- look at the menu
- go to the restaurant
- ask for the menu
- pay the bill
- eat the dessert
- wait for the waiter to seat you
- ask for the bill
- eat the main course
- leave the restaurant



**2** Now fill in the missing information in the following dialogues.

## Dialogue A

Hello, Bistro LeReepov, how may I help you?

Hello, I'd like to reserve a table for the evening of the twenty-fourth, please.

Two, please.

Non-smoking, please. And, could I please have one of the tables that overlooks the bay?

Oh, too bad. Oh, well, anywhere will do, then.

Eight o'clock.

Thank you. Good bye.

## Dialogue B

Good evening, my name is Marcelle, and I will be your waiter for the evening. Are you ready to order?

Yes, I think so.

I think we'll start off with the mixed seafood.

No, I think we'll just share one portion.

Yes, I'll have the Spaghetti Alfredo, and the lady will have... what did you want, dear? Oh, yes, the Macaroni Surprise.

A bottle of your finest red wine, and some water as well.

Thank you.

## Eating Out

price  
quality  
taste  
nutritive value  
appearance  
menu planning  
surroundings  
nice atmosphere  
good range of wines  
wide choice of beer  
spirits and liqueurs  
candlelight  
soft music  
canned / piped music / muzak  
undercooked × overcooked  
tough × tender

lean × fat  
slow × good service  
inedible / unpalatable food  
cafeteria  
steak house  
grill room  
snack bar  
coffee-shop  
tearoom  
takeaway restaurant (GB) / carryout (US)  
pub  
refectory  
landlord (GB)  
inn × bar × night club  
wine bar  
waiter / waitress

head waiter  
barman (GB) / bartender (US)  
barmaid  
chef  
tablecloth  
table mats  
napkins  
to lay / set the table  
to clear the table  
cutlery  
sugar tongs  
cups  
saucers  
plates  
teaspoon  
sugar bowl

milk jug  
beer mug  
wine glass  
cruet (GB)(old-fashioned) / salt and pepper shakers (US)

### In a restaurant

to ask the waiter for the menu  
to order an appetiser / an hors d'oeuvre (starter)  
the main dish / course  
vegetables / extras (GB)  
side orders (US)  
dessert / pudding (GB)  
something to drink  
to ask for the bill (GB) / the check (US)

# JJ'S DINER

## M E N U

### STARTERS

### MAIN COURSES

### SIDE ORDERS

### DESSERTS

**1** Here are some of the dishes currently found on menus on both sides of the Atlantic. Ask your teacher for help and decide whether the following dishes are on the American menu (on the left) or on the British one.

BBQ Chicken Wings  
Spaghetti Bolognese  
Prawn Cocktail  
Baked Potatoes  
Apple Tart and Custard  
Nachos  
Chili Cheeseburger  
Banana Split

# Menu

## The Tudor Nook Starters

### Main courses

### Vegetables / Extras

### Puddings

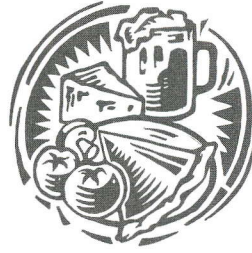
Fillet Steak with  
Mushrooms and Onion  
Rings  
Chips  
French Fries  
Paté and Toast  
Chef's Salad  
Caesar Salad  
Chocolate Mousse

Roast Duckling in  
Orange Sauce  
Philly Steak and  
Cheese Sandwich  
Jacket Potatoes  
New York Sirloin  
Steak  
Apple Pie and Ice  
Cream



# SPECIALITIES OF BRITISH AND AMERICAN COOKING

**2** In small groups, act out a scene at a restaurant. One person should be the waiter, while the others are the customers.



**3** What is on a typical menu in a restaurant in your country? Work in small groups and write such a menu.



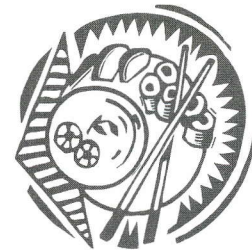
**4** Choose one of the dishes and describe the things you can recognize. Your partner must guess which picture you are describing. Then try to agree on what the remaining things are.

Example:

*I think it could be a bowl of soup.*

*There is something like pasta next to...*

*The thing at the back reminds me of...*



## Specialities of British and American Cooking

cuisine / cooking  
junk / fast food  
hamburger with french  
fries (US) / chips (GB)  
hot dog  
steak  
T-bone  
sirloin  
fillet  
rump  
barbecue  
pizza  
haggis  
fish and chips  
roast chicken / turkey  
Yorkshire pudding  
Cornish pasty  
Irish stew  
roast beef  
leg of lamb  
Sunday joint / roast  
lamb / pork chops  
ready-to-cook

ready-to-serve  
convenience food  
TV dinner  
cook-chill food  
spare ribs  
**Coffee**  
black coffee  
coffee with cream  
espresso  
cappuccino  
caffeine  
decaffeinated coffee  
"real" or instant  
filtered  
percolated  
Turkish  
coffee mill / grinder  
coffee machine (GB) /  
coffee maker (US)  
coffee grounds  
ground coffee

**Tea**  
"put the kettle on"  
kettle for boiling water  
teapot rinsed with hot water  
a teaspoonful for each cup and  
"one for the pot"  
an excellent brand of tea  
Darjeeling  
Earl Grey  
China

**Soft drinks**  
plain water / tap water  
mineral water  
lemonade  
apple cider (US)  
pop  
orange squash  
ginger ale  
soda × soda water  
milkshake  
malted milk  
malt

fruit juice  
mixers  
teetotaler

**Alcoholic drinks**  
hard drinks / spirits / liquor (US)  
liqueur  
scotch on the rocks  
whisky (GB) / whiskey (US & Irish)  
beer and ale  
bitter  
lager  
brown ale  
stout / Guinness  
"pint"  
"real ale"  
cider  
wine  
sherry  
ice cube  
cocktail drinks  
short (GB) / shot (US)  
to toast / drink sb's health

# Food for Thought

English food has become, over the years, a byword for mediocrity, for vegetables cooked to a mush, for tasteless pies containing unmentionable bits of animals, for soggy, greasy chips, sad salads, and for starch, sugar, and bread with everything. The proverb “the way to a man’s heart is through his stomach” probably owed as much to slow death by cholesterol poisoning as it did to cuisine as a courtship accessory. But like so much of the world’s view of Britain, it reflects a reality long dead, a mirror on an empire so long gone that few young Britons today even know it existed.

One of the problems of taking over half the world is that you have to fight for it. This puts men in the army, women in the factories, and an awful lot of pollution in the rivers. Plus people tend to fight back, and a classic way to attack an island (like Britain) is to blockade it – stop its food supplies getting through. So, for a couple of hundred years, British men had to be content with the foul compromises that make up boarding school and armed services food, and the ten per cent of the 20<sup>th</sup> century devoted to world wars was marked by an inclination to eat nearly anything, as long as the taste had been boiled out of it. Thus, the world view of English food is based on a certain amount of fact. At its worst, it is as boring, unhealthy, and tasteless as an afternoon in a cigarette factory.

However, one of the advantages of having occupied half the world is that half the world now occupies you. Restaurants and takeaways offering variations on the delicious cuisines of India and China have nearly ousted fish-and-chip shops from the side-streets of Britain’s towns, although in the high streets the Great American Hamburger and its cousins continue to franchise their own versions of cardboard cuisine for the uneducated palate. And as people grow up in multiracial environments and go abroad for their holidays, so the English are learning to appreciate decent food.



And the curious thing is that we had it all the time; we just weren’t cooking it right, or we had forgotten it could be eaten at all. Thirty or more species of edible and delicious fish are common round the British coast, with another 20 or so nearly completely ignored in the fresh water, including the incomparable eel and the succulent fat carp. What tastier dish than a fast-poached salmon can grace the table at a wedding reception? Our pastures thrive in the famous English rain. Roast lamb with a hint of herbs, perhaps rosemary or thyme, served with baked potatoes and lightly steamed greens, is nearly enough to make me fly home from Brno for Sunday dinner. And, given that noone introduces lentil or nut sanctions, the British vegetarian can feast on some of the most tasty plant products in the northern world.

In fact, the whole situation leads to some awfully politically incorrect conclusions. It seems to me that the more warlike a nation, the less it appreciates its food. Think about it. Now the sun has long set on Britain as a world warrior, perhaps we can settle down to more simple pleasures, like eating well.

*TL 1998*

## True or false – give reasons for your answers.

- 1 English women tried to poison their men with cholesterol.
- 2 Everyone is still proud of the British empire.
- 3 Boarding school food is delicious.
- 4 All people who say English food is bad are right.
- 5 All Indians eat fish and chips.
- 6 The author likes hamburgers.
- 7 English people eat carp.
- 8 Britain grows lots of lentils and nuts.



# FOOD – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

## I Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

- 1 When asked for his \_\_\_\_\_ for happiness, he gave a very short but sensible answer: work and love.  
a receipt  
b prescription  
c metaphor  
d recipe
- 2 A good image is one of the most vital \_\_\_\_\_ for business success.  
a ingredients  
b examples  
c preservatives  
d recipes
- 3 My blood \_\_\_\_\_ at the sight but I dared not speak.  
a thickened  
b fried  
c boiled  
d simmered
- 4 He told us how a \_\_\_\_\_ from his father helped rescue his marriage.  
a beating  
b stew  
c mixing  
d roasting
- 5 This is another \_\_\_\_\_ scheme that is not going to work.  
a half-baked  
b self-raising  
c high-fibre  
d ready-to-serve
- 6 She kept \_\_\_\_\_ me about what I knew.  
a stirring  
b frying  
c grilling  
d stewing

## II Put the following words in the right gaps.

INGREDIENT ROOTS HOP CINNAMON  
ALCOHOLIC ORANGE NUTMEG PEACH  
CLOVES

Bitters are prepared according to secret recipes using bitter herbs, leaves, fruits, seeds, or 7 \_\_\_\_\_ and sometimes alcohol or sugar. The taste is imparted by substances such as 8 \_\_\_\_\_ peel, gentian root, rhubarb root, 9 \_\_\_\_\_ flowers, and quinine. Aroma is provided by juniper, 10 \_\_\_\_\_, caraway, anise, 11 \_\_\_\_\_, camomile, 12 \_\_\_\_\_, and other flavouring agents. Bitters are usually named according to the 13 \_\_\_\_\_ giving the predominant flavour, such as orange bitters and 14 \_\_\_\_\_ bitters. The 15 \_\_\_\_\_ strength varies but is generally about 40 percent by volume.

## III One of the following words can always be used in the set of three sentences.

SPICE (a) FLAVOUR (b) BITTER-SWEET (c)

16

We're simply not the \_\_\_\_\_ of the month, but our turn will come again.

You should try for yourself. Then you'd get the \_\_\_\_\_ of it.

They have a delicate \_\_\_\_\_ like that of hazelnuts, and can be eaten raw or fried.

17

\_\_\_\_\_s are important in Indian food for their qualities as a digestive as well as their taste.

Variety is the \_\_\_\_\_ of life.

At the time, there was a lot of interest in both of us from Italian clubs, and that added \_\_\_\_\_ to the game.

18

At 30, George will have the best part of his career still ahead of him, decades that are sure to be filled with more \_\_\_\_\_ ballads and funky dance numbers, for the man is a virtuoso of pop music.

When I saw my childhood home, it brought back \_\_\_\_\_ memories.

This is a witty and \_\_\_\_\_ tale of love and marriage spun from the threads of the three characters, in their respective voices.

## IV Complete the following expressions with either BITTER (a) or SOUR (b).

19 to the \_\_\_\_\_ end

20 the wine was \_\_\_\_\_

21 a \_\_\_\_\_ pill to swallow

22 their marriage turned \_\_\_\_\_

23 a \_\_\_\_\_ disappointment or experience

24 a \_\_\_\_\_ easterly wind

25 to be \_\_\_\_\_ about the way sb has been treated

26 the relationship was going \_\_\_\_\_

27 it is going to leave a \_\_\_\_\_ taste

28 general suspicion continues to \_\_\_\_\_ the atmosphere

29 perhaps that was \_\_\_\_\_ grapes

30 the argument became more \_\_\_\_\_

# FOOD – AND MORE PRACTICE...

## Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

- 1 It's a stressful job, and unless you are very careful, it's a sure \_\_\_\_\_ for disaster.  
a bet  
b taste  
c prescription  
d recipe
- 2 This new proposal was just a \_\_\_\_\_ version of his earlier suggestion.  
a watered-down  
b stewed  
c dissolved  
d blended
- 3 He escaped the \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere of their crammed flat.  
a kitchen  
b unsaturated  
c pressure-cooker  
d cooking
- 4 I helped him once again - I should have let him \_\_\_\_\_ in his own juice.  
a baste  
b marinate  
c stew  
d bake
- 5 It has brought the present crisis to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a boiling point  
b freezing point  
c point of view  
d dew point
- 6 The police \_\_\_\_\_ him for hours.  
a simmered  
b grilled  
c scrambled  
d boiled

## Put the following words in the right gaps.

THYME FOOD ROSEMARY GINGER ARTIFICIAL  
VANILLA ALCOHOL CELERY LEMON

Flavourings are any of the liquid extracts, essences, and flavours that are added to foods to enhance their taste and aroma. Flavourings are prepared from essential oils, such as almond and lemon; from **7** \_\_\_\_\_; from **8** \_\_\_\_\_ by extraction; from mixtures of essential oils and synthetic organic chemicals; or entirely from synthetic chemicals. Water is added and sometimes certified **9** \_\_\_\_\_ colour as well. Extracts, essences, and flavours employing only natural flavouring agents are called pure; those employing synthetics are called imitation or **10** \_\_\_\_\_ flavourings.

Essential-oil extracts are prepared by dissolving an essential oil in **11** \_\_\_\_\_ of the proper strength, adding water and, where desirable and permitted by law, a small amount of certified food colour. They include almond, anise, **12** \_\_\_\_\_, cassia or cinnamon, clove, **13** \_\_\_\_\_, nutmeg, orange, **14** \_\_\_\_\_, savoury basil, sweet marjoram, **15** \_\_\_\_\_, and wintergreen.

## One of the following words can always be used in the set of three sentences.

JUICY (a) PEPPERY (b) SALTY (c)

16

And there it was, my *soufflé de moules au thym citronne*, the most perfect creation, fractionally \_\_\_\_\_ but cloud-like with mussels small and plump and juicy tucked inside.

Out on the coast, where you'll be buffeted by \_\_\_\_\_ sea breezes, there are panoramic views to savour at every turn.

His vocabulary includes some quite \_\_\_\_\_ language.

17

Its comforting and \_\_\_\_\_ aroma has a warming action on the mind and body - helping to relax and ease nervous tension and stress.

\_\_\_\_\_ cresses and chives are thrown at the last minute into a risotto with white wine and baby leeks. According to Michael Jackson, an expert who knows more about malt whisky than is good for him, Glendibble has a \_\_\_\_\_ character which explodes on the palate and makes your temples steam.

18

Of the remake of the 1982 French cult classic, *The Return of Martin Guerre*, Gere says: 'We wanted to make something more emotional and \_\_\_\_\_.' Think of hot sunshine, \_\_\_\_\_ oranges, tart limes, and Aegean blue, and you have a perfect holiday. But if you like \_\_\_\_\_ Tuscan soups served just warm; deep-fried artichokes and courgette flowers; flat, crisp pizzas with melting cheese and herbs; and fish and meats from the grill, this is definitely the place for you.

## Complete the following expressions with either SWEET (a) or SOUR (b).

- 19 Illusions of youth have turned \_\_\_\_\_ on his tongue.
- 20 to have a \_\_\_\_\_ tooth
- 21 Do tip the barman to keep him \_\_\_\_\_.
- 22 as bitter as the \_\_\_\_\_ after-taste of bad wine
- 23 She tutted. She had a pleasant face but she looked quite \_\_\_\_\_ now.
- 24 My grandparents were very \_\_\_\_\_ to me.
- 25 She'll go her own \_\_\_\_\_ way.
- 26 The milk has gone \_\_\_\_\_.
- 27 Try not let them \_\_\_\_\_ your day.
- 28 Look at that kitten. How \_\_\_\_\_!
- 29 a sack of \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes
- 30 He's a little sad but not \_\_\_\_\_.



# SHOPPING

## STOP POURING YOUR MONEY DOWN THE DRAIN!

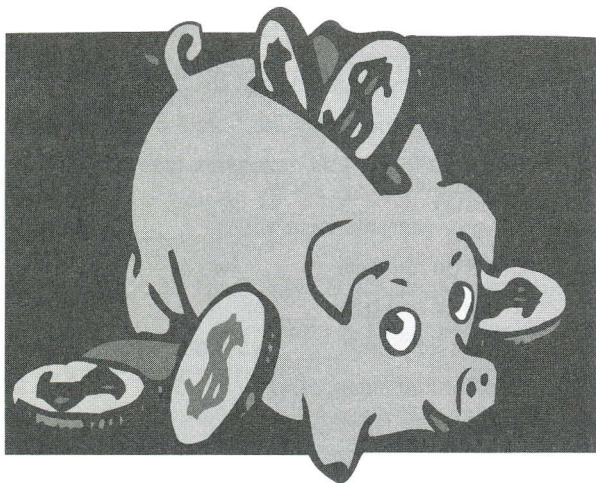
A little extra money. That's what everybody wants, right? Just a little extra cash to spend on a vacation or a special something for the house. For most people, however, just paying for the regular bills and household shopping takes up every penny of their wages or salary. Well, take another look at those bills and receipts, and you'll see a hundred different ways to save money, BIG MONEY, just by being a little bit more careful in your household shopping.

For most people, the biggest drain on the household budget is food. Just buying a little box of cereal or some rice for the house can pump up your shopping bill by an incredible amount. One of the ways to counter this is by forming a buying club and buying in bulk. Buying clubs are groups of people who get together and buy directly from the large wholesalers who sell food to such places as restaurants and bakeries. These distributors only sell in very large quantities, and most people don't need a hundred pounds of rice. That's why people form clubs, two or three households which split up the goods between themselves. You can't get everything from a wholesaler - only non-perishable goods like grains,

tinned goods, and pastas. But you can stock your pantry for as little as half the price you would pay in a large supermarket.

The number one rule for anyone wishing to save money is - *never* buy anything new, unless you absolutely have to. Every day our society throws away everything from clothes to household appliances which are perfectly usable, simply because somebody wants the newest model or the latest fashion. Of course, you don't have to go searching through the dump. But you can find perfectly good clothes at second-hand shops, tools and equipment at flea markets, and appliances and furniture at charity organisations like the Salvation Army. At these places, you can not only get a good deal, but support a good cause as well. You must always be careful to buy quality goods, and not just something that will break down on you in a few weeks.

If you decide that you want to treat yourself and buy something new, there are still ways of saving money. Never buy anything until you have shopped around and compared the prices a little. The end of the year, when most shops hold clearance sales to make room for the new year's models, is the best time to get a great deal on new goods. Reject shops sell slightly damaged goods which, except for minor imperfections, are just like new except at almost half the price. For an even better deal, ask the clerk if you can buy the demonstration model. If it's been used, even only once, it can't be sold as new at a new goods price. So throw out all of those old bills, get out your newspapers, and while you're looking for sales, take a look at the travel section too. You'll soon have enough money for that vacation you've been dreaming of.



**1** What is the difference between these places to shop? What are each of them best for? What are some of their drawbacks?

supermarket  
corner shop  
street market  
second-hand shop

**2** What do you spend the most money on? Is there any way you could spend less money on those things?

Discuss ways to save money on the following things:

food  
entertainment  
clothes  
household appliances  
furniture

**3** Read the text and decide on titles for each paragraph and write them in the spaces provided.

**4** Find a word in the text for each of the following:

- a constant outflow, withdrawal, or expenditure
- the amount of money that you have to spend
- an agent who supplies goods in bulk
- the occupants of a house regarded as a unit
- subject to speedy decay
- a device or piece of equipment used for a specific task
- a place for depositing rubbish
- an institution or organization for helping those in need
- shops with sub-standard goods
- a slight fault or blemish

**5** Here are the answers to some questions about the text. Try to guess what the questions were.

Because they spend all of their money on bills and household expenses.  
To bakeries and restaurants.  
No, it would be too much food.  
Never buy anything new.  
Because they get tired of them and want something new.  
You get a good deal and help a good cause.  
To make room for the new models.  
Because it has been used in demonstrations.

## Going Shopping

shop assistant (GB)  
sales clerk / salesman,  
saleswoman (US)  
attendant  
shopkeeper  
cashier  
customer  
shopper  
consumer  
hard / difficult to please  
shopping area / precinct  
supermarket  
hypermarket  
superstore  
shopping list  
to shop for st  
a good shop for (e.g. glass)  
shopping centre  
shopping mall  
arcade  
marketplace  
cash and carry  
market  
market stall  
covered market

flea market  
auction  
jumble sale (GB)  
car-boot sale (GB)  
garage sale (US)  
junk shop  
second-hand shop  
reject shop  
factory shop  
catalogue shop  
mail order / catalogue shopping  
cardboard box  
string bag  
to do some shopping  
to go window-shopping  
to be looking for st  
to be trying to find st  
to have run out of st  
to be out of st / out of stock  
to shop around  
to chase around the shops  
to call at  
it's hard to get  
it isn't available

in great demand  
in short supply  
sold out  
supply × demand  
to come across st  
(shop) window  
to dress a window  
window dresser  
counter  
row of shelves  
deep-freeze counter  
trolley (GB) / cart (US)  
(wire) basket  
cash-desk / till  
queue (GB) / line (US)  
to queue up for (GB) /  
stand in line (US) /  
line up (US)  
shoplifter  
pickpocket  
shop detective  
to purchase  
opening hours  
business hours  
to stay open

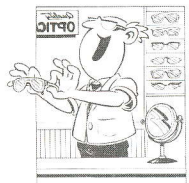
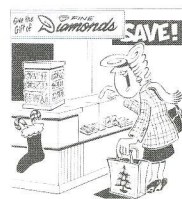
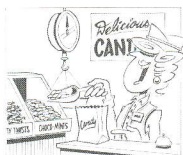
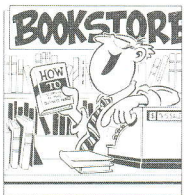
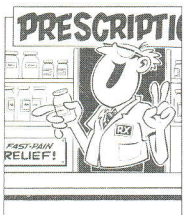
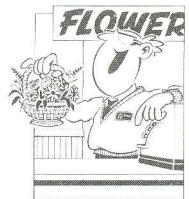
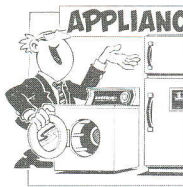
to close  
early closing day  
to take st back  
shop (GB) / store (US)  
department store (Harrods,  
Selfridges, Tesco, C&A)  
discount store  
corner shop  
village shop  
chain store

### Notices

STOCKTAKING (GB) /  
INVENTORY (US)  
BACK IN A MOMENT  
LUNCH HOUR  
CLOSING-DOWN SALE  
SHUT FOR REPAIRS  
THIEVES WILL BE  
PROSECUTED  
BEWARE OF PICKPOCKETS



# SHOPS



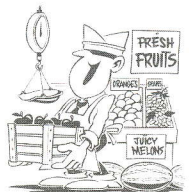
**1** What is your favourite shop?  
What kind of things do they sell there?  
If you could open a shop, what kind of shop would it be?

**2** Match the items on the left to the place where they can be found on the right.  
Each place can only be used once.

basketball  
bottle of  
whisky  
CD player  
fresh cod  
frozen pizza  
greeting cards  
guide book  
hammer  
holiday  
house  
magazine  
nails and  
screws  
new boots  
perfume  
pipe  
rolls  
sandwich  
sofa  
steak  
sweets  
tofu

?

travel agent's  
estate agent's  
delicatessen (deli)  
health food store  
butcher's  
baker's  
confectioner's  
seafood shop  
shoeshop  
chemist's  
stationer's  
newsagent's  
ironmonger's  
D.I.Y. store  
off-licence  
supermarket  
bookstore  
furniture store  
sporting goods store  
hi-fi shop  
tobacconist's



## Shops

### Food


grocer's  
whole food store / health food shop  
greengrocer's  
dairy / milk-shop / milkman / milkround  
confectioner's / sweetshop / candy store (US)  
confectionery / sweets  
fishmonger's: wet fish (GB) / seafood shop (US)  
corner shops

### Other shops

haberdasher's  
jeweller's  
optician's  
dispensing chemist (GB) / pharmacy (US) /  
drugstore (US)  
florist's / flower-stand

bookshop (GB) / bookstore (US)  
second-hand bookshop (GB) / used books (US)  
record shop  
newsagent's / news stand  
ironmonger's (hardware)  
electrical appliances, hi-fis, CD players, VCRs  
glassware  
china shop  
antiques  
gift shop  
D.I.Y. (do-it-yourself) shop: tools, appliances, materials  
toy shop  
camera shop  
sporting goods / sports goods

# SHOPPING AROUND

**1**  Listen to the following four dialogues and decide where they are taking place and what kind of relationship the speakers have.

**2** For each of the four dialogues, first describe the problem the characters have, then say whether the statements that follow are true or false.



## Dialogue 1

- ◇ Shoppers can get a better price at the hypermarkets because they can buy goods in bulk.
- ◇ Joe is a regular shopper who just buys odds and ends at the store.

## Dialogue 2

- ◇ The speaker can't afford the product until the sale begins.
- ◇ The saleswoman offers to sell her the product even though she doesn't have all of the money to pay for it immediately.

## Dialogue 3

- ◇ Lee thinks she got a good deal on her computer.
- ◇ She paid more money for a better warranty.

## Dialogue 4

- ◇ The shop doesn't usually have the model the customer is looking for.
- ◇ The shop assistant suggests mail order because she doesn't want the customer to go to another shop in town.

## Shopping Around

fixed prices  
fluctuating prices  
bargain  
wholesale price  
retail price  
to buy in bulk  
pricelist  
inexpensive / cheap  
/ reasonable  
moderate  
expensive  
dear but worth the  
price / money  
prices have  
gone up / risen  
gone down / fallen  
family budget  
to be able to afford st  
affordable

### Payments

It's beyond my  
means. (old-  
fashioned)  
I can't afford it.  
purse (GB)  
wallet (GB) /  
billfold (US)  
(small) change  
(bank) note (GB) /  
bill (US)  
to short-change  
to take in / cheat  
to rip sb off  
ripoff

to save money on  
to pay  
in cash  
by cheque  
by credit card  
put it on the plastic (coll.)  
to leave a deposit  
to lease /  
rent-to-own (US)  
monthly instalments  
to be broke

### Reductions

to get a discount  
to sell at a reduced  
price  
cut-price goods  
imperfect goods /  
seconds / factory  
rejects  
summer / winter sale  
the January sales  
closing-down sale  
clearance sale  
special bargain  
big spender  
extravagant  
thrifty  
mean with money  
(GB) /  
tightwad (US)  
to go on a shopping /  
spending spree  
shop till you drop

### Quality

quality goods  
first-class goods  
brand-new  
used  
shop-soiled  
slightly damaged  
demonstration model  
display item  
guaranteed  
inferior goods  
faulty goods  
to take st back  
receipt  
to ask for a refund  
consumer rights  
to get your money back  
to be offered credit

### Packaging

wrapper  
economy size  
tin (GB) / can (US)  
jar  
bottled × draught beer  
canned beer  
foam packing  
packet of biscuits  
box of chocolates  
crate of drinks  
case of wine  
shrink-wrapped /  
vacuum packed  
carton of milk

### Hairdresser

to have an appointment  
to have one's hair done  
to have a trim  
to shampoo  
hairdo  
permanent wave(s) /  
perm  
curlers  
styling rods  
hairclip  
hairpin  
lacquer / hair spray  
hairdryer  
blow dry  
to dye  
to bleach or tint one's hair  
highlights  
colour rinse  
crew cut  
nail polish  
manicure  
to have one's nails  
done

### Miscellaneous

beauty parlour  
cobbler / shoemaker  
heel bar (GB)  
laundry / launderette  
dry-cleaner  
(radio, TV, cycle, etc.)  
repair shop  
"While-U-Wait"

### Trade, advertising

foreign trade  
home trade (GB) /  
domestic trade (US)  
exports × imports  
to export or import  
manufactured goods  
or raw materials  
to do business with sb  
competition  
trade fair  
exhibition ground  
to exhibit  
an exhibit  
on display  
on show  
on the stand  
advertisement / advert / ad  
commercial  
to advertise  
sales gimmicks  
hoarding (GB) /  
billboard (US)  
posters  
irresistible  
folder  
leaflet / flyer  
handout  
fly-posters × sky  
advertising  
to do st on the fly  
to do st on the sly  
promotional gifts  
sponsorship



# SHOPPING – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

The following expressions have been jumbled. Put them back into the right places in the sentences below.

MONOLITHIC JUMBLE HYPERMARKET SALE CHAINS SUPERMARKET  
HYPERMARKET TROLLEY STREET WHOLESALE MARKET PRICES

- 1 Mass distribution has changed all that. Today, the approach to a French country town is all too often dominated by a \_\_\_\_\_, with an immense car park, while many of the smaller stores have closed down.
- 2 The existing law limiting the expansion of \_\_\_\_\_ has not been effective.
- 3 Dear Father Simon, forgive me, I have sinned. It was twenty years ago when I was chorister and our parish church had a coffee morning and \_\_\_\_\_ to raise funds for the church spire.
- 4 One woman, pushing a huge \_\_\_\_\_ full of clothes, yelled: 'Nobody's stopping me. It's free.'
- 5 A decree issued by the Soviet President, Mikhail Gorbachev, allowed companies to set their own \_\_\_\_\_ for the next year.
- 6 Don't miss the chance to pick up a bargain in our bustling covered \_\_\_\_\_! Open daily from 11.

## Fill in the missing words.

Harrods, Ltd., in London, the famous 7 d\_\_\_\_\_ store was founded by a miller, Henry Charles Harrod, as a 8 g\_\_\_\_\_ store in 1849. The 9 e\_\_\_\_\_ expanded in the late 1800s, and many new departments were added. It is considered the United Kingdom's best department 10 s\_\_\_\_\_.

Although the store still provides 11 g\_\_\_\_\_ food items, its current emphasis is on high-fashion clothing. Over the years, Harrods made innovations in many areas of store operation. In 1884, 12 c\_\_\_\_\_ desks were placed at convenient points to take 13 c\_\_\_\_\_ payments; most large 14 r\_\_\_\_\_ were using mechanical devices or runners to move customers' money and change between 15 c\_\_\_\_\_ and a central 16 c\_\_\_\_\_ station. The following year the store allowed limited 17 c\_\_\_\_\_ to approved customers.

## Match the words on the left with the goods on the right. Use each word once only.

- |    |                |   |                                  |
|----|----------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 18 | a can / tin of | a | chocolates                       |
| 19 | a bar of       | b | film / toilet paper              |
| 20 | a roll of      | c | cards / cigarettes (US)          |
| 21 | a pack of      | d | soup / cigarettes / razor blades |
| 22 | a box of       | e | pearls                           |
| 23 | a packet of    | f | beer / fish                      |
| 24 | a string of    | g | soap / chocolate                 |

## Change the incorrect word in the following phrases.

- 25 I'll take it. Could you sort it up, please?
- 26 Try it without destination, just on trial.
- 27 Is anyone tending you?
- 28 Just staring, thanks.
- 29 We have gone out of that item.
- 30 I'll let it up to you.

# SHOPPING – AND MORE PRACTICE...

The following expressions have been jumbled. Put them back into the right places in the sentences below.

DISCOUNT MALLS PRICES SHOPPING SMALL MAIL SHOPS SALE  
ORDER PRICE RETAIL CLEARANCE

- 1 Hypermarket distributors face tough competition from specialised chain stores which can match their \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2–3 Inspired by the huge \_\_\_\_\_ of the United States, the French hypermarket not only offers cut-rate prices that \_\_\_\_\_ cannot match, but also cheap restaurants, clowns, pony rides and cinemas – everything one might need to enjoy a weekend.
- 4 Passengers will be able to make phone calls, receive faxes and phone messages, shop by \_\_\_\_\_ and even play computer games.
- 5 The monthly \_\_\_\_\_ index is a lagging indicator of inflation, as well as an imperfect one.
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ is a sale in which the goods in a shop are sold at reduced prices, because the shopkeeper wants to get rid of them quickly or because the shop is closing down.

## Fill in the missing words.

Computer technology has had a significant impact on retail stores. All but the smallest shops have replaced the old-fashioned cash **7** r\_\_\_\_\_ with a terminal linked to a computer system. The terminal may require that the **8** c\_\_\_\_\_ type in the code for the **9** i\_\_\_\_\_; but more and more frequently the **10** c\_\_\_\_\_ counter includes a bar-code scanner, a device that directly reads into the computer the universal product **11** c\_\_\_\_\_ (UPC) printed on each package. The cash-register **12** r\_\_\_\_\_ can then include brief descriptions of the items purchased (by fetching them from the computer database), and the **13** p\_\_\_\_\_ information is also relayed back to the computer to adjust the inventory immediately. The **14** i\_\_\_\_\_ system can easily alert the **15** m\_\_\_\_\_ when the supply of some item drops below a specified threshold. In the case of **16** r\_\_\_\_\_ chains linked by networks, the order for a new supply of an item may be automatically generated and sent electronically to the supply **17** w\_\_\_\_\_.

## Match the words on the left with the goods on the right. Use each word once only.

- |           |             |          |                             |
|-----------|-------------|----------|-----------------------------|
| <b>18</b> | a tube of   | <b>a</b> | jam                         |
| <b>19</b> | a bunch of  | <b>b</b> | wine / milk / beer / whisky |
| <b>20</b> | a jar of    | <b>c</b> | bread                       |
| <b>21</b> | a pad of    | <b>d</b> | writing paper               |
| <b>22</b> | a loaf of   | <b>e</b> | flowers / bananas / grapes  |
| <b>23</b> | a carton of | <b>f</b> | milk / fruit juice          |
| <b>24</b> | a bottle of | <b>g</b> | toothpaste                  |

## Change the incorrect word in the following phrases.

- 25** Have you got a tie to snatch?
- 26** Does the display price conclude VAT?
- 27** Would you like to pretend the guarantee?
- 28** Are you being listened to?
- 29** What taste do you take?
- 30** Could I have a cook at that one?



# CLOTHES

**1** Look at the vocabulary in the box below and try to sort it out according to the season and occasion on which these pieces of clothing are worn. Make lists under the suggested headings:

casual clothing	formal clothing	special occasions

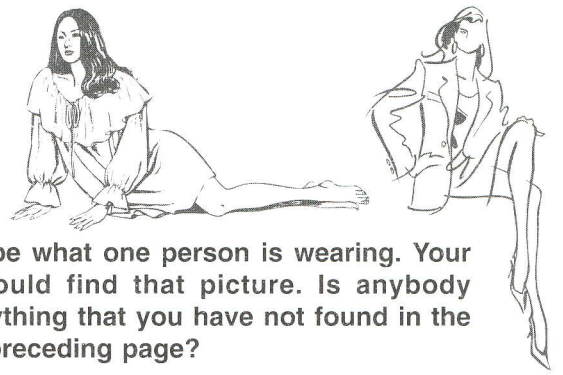
spring	summer	autumn	winter

## Clothes

knitwear  
underwear  
pyjamas (GB) / pajamas (US)  
knee socks  
jersey / jumper / sweater (US) / pullover (GB)  
cardigan  
shirt  
T-shirt  
sweatshirt  
slacks / trousers (GB) / pants (US)  
dressing gown (GB) / housecoat (US) / bathrobe (US)  
coat  
trench coat  
winter coat  
overcoat  
raincoat / mac / mackintosh  
anorak  
parka

**Ladies' Wear**  
lingerie  
night-dress(GB) / nightgown (US)  
bra / brassiere  
knickers (GB) / panties (US)  
slip  
petticoat / half-slip (US)  
stockings  
suspender belt / garter belt  
tights (GB) / pantyhose (US)  
blouse  
twinset  
separates × suit  
culottes  
leggings  
fur coat  
evening dress  
strapless dress  
ball gown

**Men's Wear**  
vest (GB) / singlet (GB) / undershirt (US)  
tank top  
underpants / pants (GB)  
boxer shorts  
long johns  
knickerbockers  
blazer  
jacket  
sports  
Norfolk  
leather  
dinner (GB) / tuxedo (US)  
smoking  
waistcoat (GB) / vest (US)  
loungé suit (GB) / business suit (US)  
evening trousers  
morning suit  
bow tie and tails / white tie and tails



*When using adjectives pay special attention to their order – see the following page.*



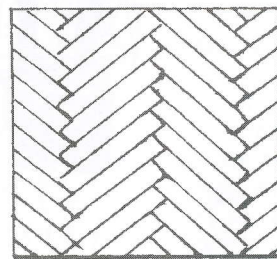
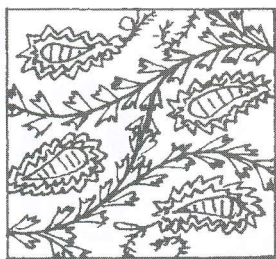
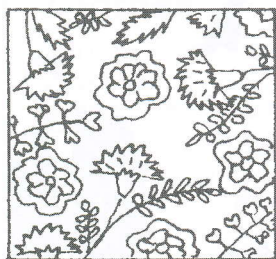
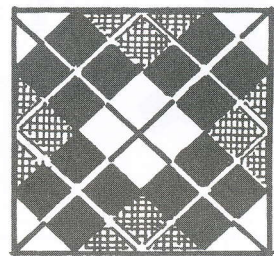
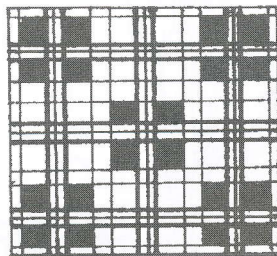
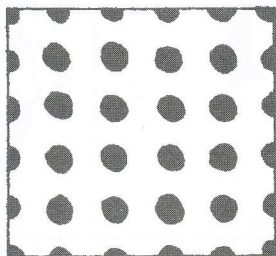
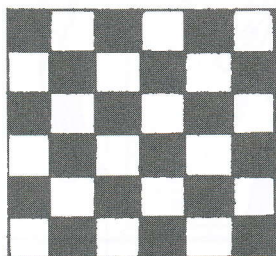


# MATERIALS, COLOURS, AND PATTERNS

**1** When using adjectives to describe things, be careful to pay special attention to the sequence the adjectives have to go in. Take a look at the table below. As a rule, your opinion comes first.

Your Opinion	Size / Fit	Age	Colour	Pattern	Origin	Material	Style
casual	tight	new	crimson	plain	Italian	silk	V-neck
semi-casual	baggy	old	maroon	striped	French	corduroy /	crewneck
formal	loose		tan	floral	Spanish	cord	poloneck
elegant	light		lime-green	polka-dot	Taiwanese	velvet	turtleneck
beautiful	lightweight		amber	speckled	English	flannel	cowlneck /
comfortable	strong		fawn	chequered	American	denim	hooded
tacky	thick		turquoise	tartan	Indian	satin	full
trendy	thin		purple	batik	Chinese	brocade	pleated
stylish	heavy-duty		mauve	tie-dyed	Japanese	lace	knee-/calf-/full-
old-fashioned	heavy		aqua(marine)	paisley	Mexican	wool	length
gaudy			faded	argyle		polyester	single-breasted
second-hand				herringbone		suede	double-breasted
worn-out				zig-zag		leather	long-sleeved
shabby						fur	short-sleeved

**2** What are the patterns below called?

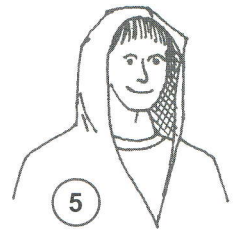
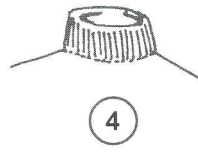
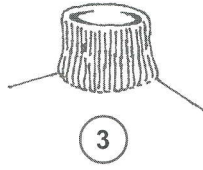
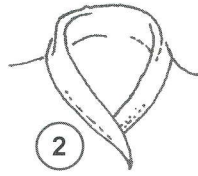
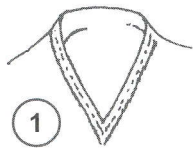


**3** Match the names of the following materials with the corresponding ends of sentences.

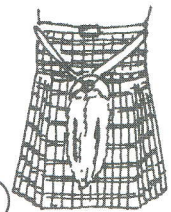
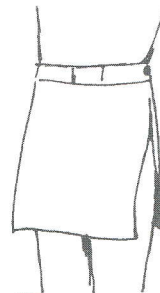
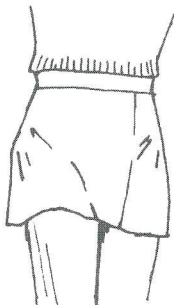
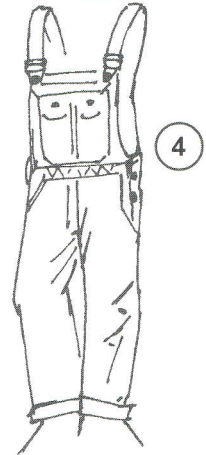
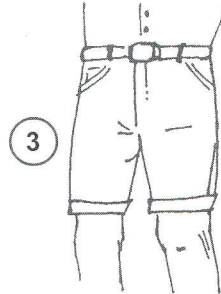
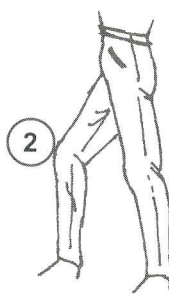
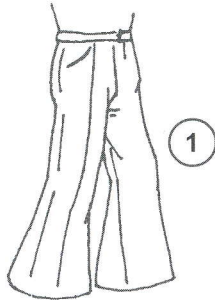
- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 Polyester     | (a) is the material jeans are made from.   |
| 2 Leather       | (b) underwear is very sexy.  |
| 3 Denim         | (c) pyjamas are my favourite because they are so warm and comfortable.             |
| 4 Flannel       | (d) is a synthetic fibre and doesn't let your skin breathe.                        |
| 5 Silk and lace | (e) is a very controversial issue these days.                                      |
| 6 Wool          | (f) needs to be oiled periodically.  |
| 7 Fur           | (g) is warm and fuzzy but cannot be washed in the usual household washing machine. |

# DESCRIBING CLOTHES

**1** Name these types of collars and necks using the words from the box below.



**2** Name these types of trousers and skirts using the words from the box below.



## Describing Clothes

### Neck

V-neck  
round neck  
square neck  
crew neck  
polo neck (GB) / turtle neck (US)  
cowl neck  
hooded neck  
shawl neck

### Collar

separate  
collar stud  
button-down  
Eton  
turn-up

### Skirt

full  
pleated  
miniskirt  
knee- / calf- / full-length  
kilt  
slit / with a slit

### Suit

single-breasted  
double-breasted  
turnups  
3-piece

### Sleeves

rolled up  
raglan

wide armholes  
cuffs

### Trousers

slacks / pants (US)  
jeans  
stone-washed  
faded  
patched  
torn / ragged  
stretch  
cut-offs  
shorts  
flares / bell-bottoms  
drainpipes

"bib and braces" /  
overalls (US) / dungarees (GB)

### Miscellaneous

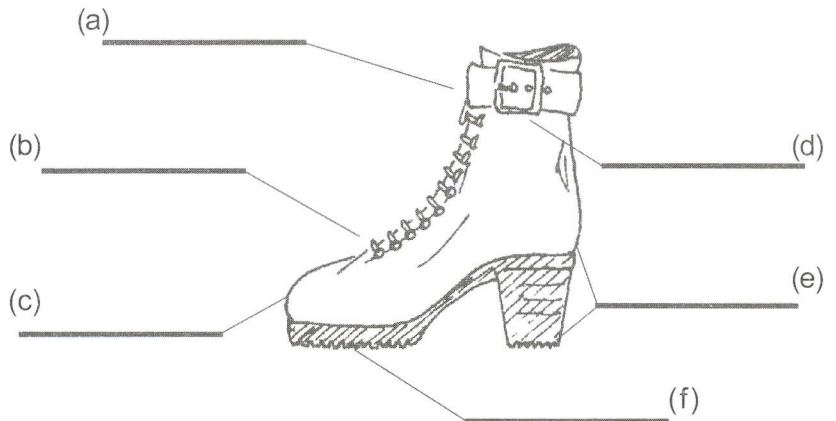
handkerchief / hankie  
tissues  
scarf  
bodysuit  
tunic / overshirt  
fully lined  
loose fit(ing)  
elasticated  
toiletries / personal care products



# FOOTWEAR

**1** Which part of the shoe do the words go with?

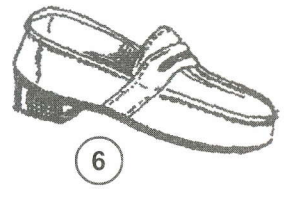
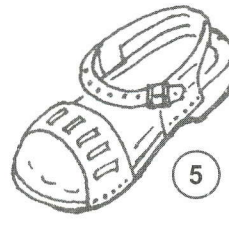
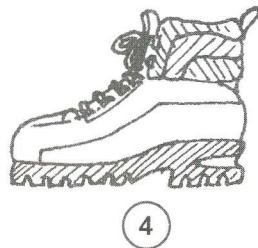
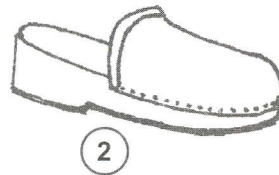
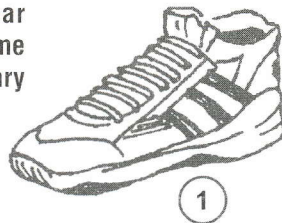
heel  
toe  
sole  
strap  
buckle  
lace



**2** Look at the different kinds of footwear. Match the names and the pictures.

On what occasions do you wear them? Talk about them using some of the adjectives in the vocabulary box below.

trainers  
hiking boots  
stilettos  
loafers  
sandals  
clogs



## Footwear

shoelaces  
court shoes  
sandals  
slippers  
moccasins  
pumps  
brogues  
lace-up shoes  
slip-ons  
boots  
Wellington boots / gumboots  
galoshes  
sneakers (US) / plimsolls (GB)  
/ trainers (GB) / tennis  
shoes / running shoes  
gymshoes  
ski-boots

hiking boots  
patent leather shoes  
to fasten / do up your shoes (GB) /  
tie (US)  
to undo / untie  
to try on  
to be a size too big × too small  
to put shoe polish on  
to clean  
to polish / shine  
to brush  
to slip on / put on  
to slip off / take off  
to change  
to wear down / out  
to wear through  
to fix / mend / repair

to sole  
to heel  
loafers  
clogs  
walking shoes  
sports shoes  
stilettos / high heels / high-heeled  
flat / low-heeled  
pointed  
fashionable  
platform  
ill-fitting × comfortable  
tight  
suede  
strong / thick / heavy-duty

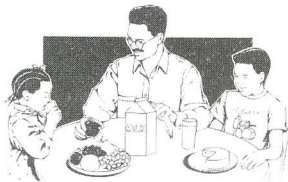
# DRESSING AND UNDRESSING

**1** Fill in the gaps in the following sentences using the verbs on the right in the correct form.

- 1 She went into the bathroom, turned on the water in the shower and then \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Mark always brushes his teeth and eats breakfast before \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning.
- 3 She quickly \_\_\_\_\_ the child.
- 4 I thought the shoes were actually the right size, but when I \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ I realised they were too tight.
- 5 Last Halloween I \_\_\_\_\_ as the Queen.
- 6 This dress used to \_\_\_\_\_ me, but now I've put on so much weight that it really needs \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Whenever I get to the office, I \_\_\_\_\_ my coat, \_\_\_\_\_ my tie and \_\_\_\_\_ my sleeves.
- 8 I bought this great dress at the second-hand shop, but it's too loose and too long - it needs \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 She took off her muddy boots and \_\_\_\_\_ some warm slippers.
- 10 When he comes home from school, John \_\_\_\_\_ his school uniform and \_\_\_\_\_ normal clothes.
- 11 That orange sweater really \_\_\_\_\_ with this red skirt.
- 12 I don't think that make-up really \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- 13 How tacky! That girl's outfit \_\_\_\_\_ her boyfriend's.
- 14 These jeans don't fit me any more. I've \_\_\_\_\_ them.

to match  
to take off  
to put on  
to change out of  
to change into  
to try on  
to fit  
to grow out of  
to roll up  
to let out  
to take in  
to get dressed  
to suit  
to dress  
to take up  
to dress up  
to clash  
to get undressed / undress  
to loosen

**2** Say what usually happens in the following situations. Use as many of the verbs from the above exercise as possible.



in the morning  
getting ready for school or work

in a clothes shop  
choosing and buying new clothes




at the tailor's / dressmaker's  
after putting on weight



at the tailor's / dressmaker's  
after losing weight



# SPORTSWEAR AND WORKING CLOTHES

**1**  You are going to hear a fashion model's answers in an interview. Before you listen, read the statements on the right and mark them true or false, according to your expectations.

Can you work out what questions the interviewer asked her?

Then listen and check your answers.

**2** Match the clothes in the columns below to the people in the pictures on the right. (Where necessary, use other expressions for ladies' wear):

baseball cap	silk shirt
trench coat	jeans
winter coat	argyle socks
thick wool socks	undershirt
hiking boots	T-shirt
long johns	boxer shorts
paisley tie	cap and gloves
corduroy trousers	sports jacket
jumper	underwear
sweatshirt	leather loafers
sweatpants	

- 1 When she was younger, the speaker never thought of herself as very beautiful.
- 2 She got her first job modelling because her uncle was the cameraman on the photo shoot.
- 3 She says that the pressure to keep thin is so high that it pushes some models to do dangerous things to keep their weight down.
- 4 She says that keeping thin is hard work but she does it because it's all part of the job.
- 5 She likes doing photo shoots in exotic locations because she gets to see some interesting places.
- 6 She prefers fashion shows to photo shoots.
- 7 She loves the feeling of finishing a show without anything going wrong.
- 8 She finds fashion shows very stressful but she likes doing them anyway.



## Sportswear and Working Clothes

(running, tennis, etc.) shorts

tracksuit

jumpsuit

sweatsuit / shell suit

leotard

ski suit

ski jacket

ski pants

ski gloves

swimming trunks

one-piece / two-piece bathing suit / costume

swimsuit

bikini

bathing cap

wetsuit

headband

anorak / parka

down jacket

hooded jacket

camouflage jacket / camo

rain jacket

cagoule (GB)

apron

oilskins

waterproofs

gaiters

safety boots

safety helmet

goggles

face mask

hair net

wristbands

padded jacket

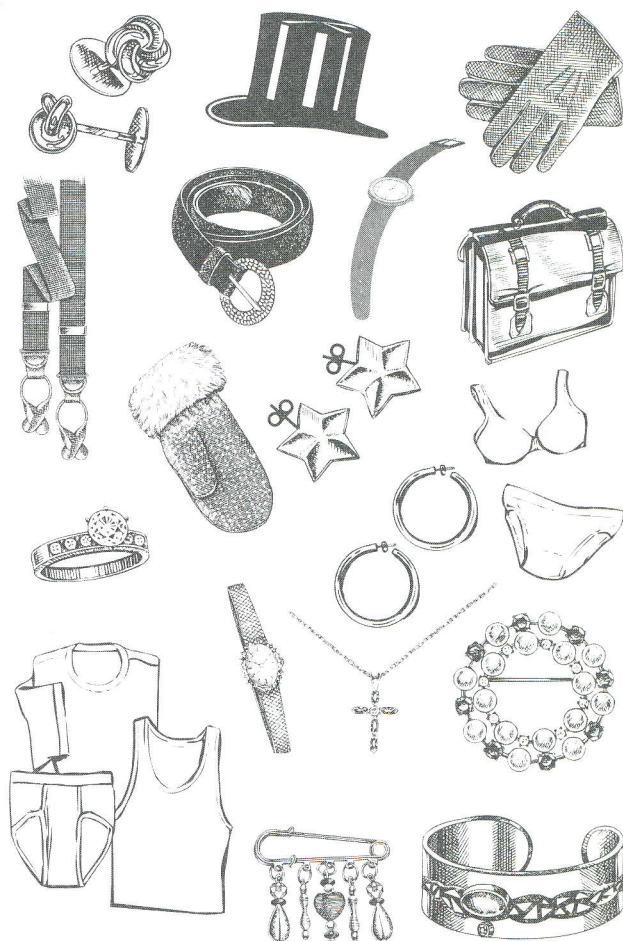
pads

jockstrap

# ACCESSORIES AND JEWELLERY

## 1 Explain the differences between the following:

lingerie and underwear  
 tights and leggings  
 a dressing gown and a night-dress  
 a sports jacket and a ski jacket  
 an overcoat and a raincoat  
 a single-breasted suit and a double-breasted suit  
 boxers and underpants  
 a jumper and a sweatshirt  
 braces and a garter belt  
 a chain, a pendant, and a necklace  
 studs and drop earrings  
 a bowler hat and a top hat  
 a suitcase and a briefcase  
 a T-shirt and a tank-top  
 a brooch and a bracelet  
 gloves and mittens  
 shorts and culottes  
 a tie and a bow tie  
 a shoulder bag and a handbag  
 a dinner jacket and a smoking jacket  
 a wristwatch and a dress watch



## 2 Now, cover this side of the page and try to recall all the items pictured.

## 3 Describe what these people could be wearing, using as many expressions from this chapter as you can remember.

A couple going skiing

An electrician

A diving instructor

A sixteen-year-old girl going to the disco

A college student going to the beach on a hot day

A woman going to the opera

An old woman working in the garden on a chilly autumn afternoon

### Accessories and Jewellery

cap  
 hat  
 straw hat  
 woolly hat  
 scarf  
 kerchief  
 veil

evening bag  
 precious metals  
 precious stones / gems  
 string(s) of pearls  
 clip earrings

clasp  
 ring  
 tiepin  
 costume jewellery  
 handbag (GB) / purse (US)  
 umbrella  
 foldaway umbrella  
 wristwatch (men) / ladies watch  
 pocket watch  
 belt  
 buckle  
 velcro

cufflinks  
 braces (GB) / suspenders (US)  
 kneesocks  
 sunglasses / shades  
 cigarette lighter / case  
 walking stick / cane



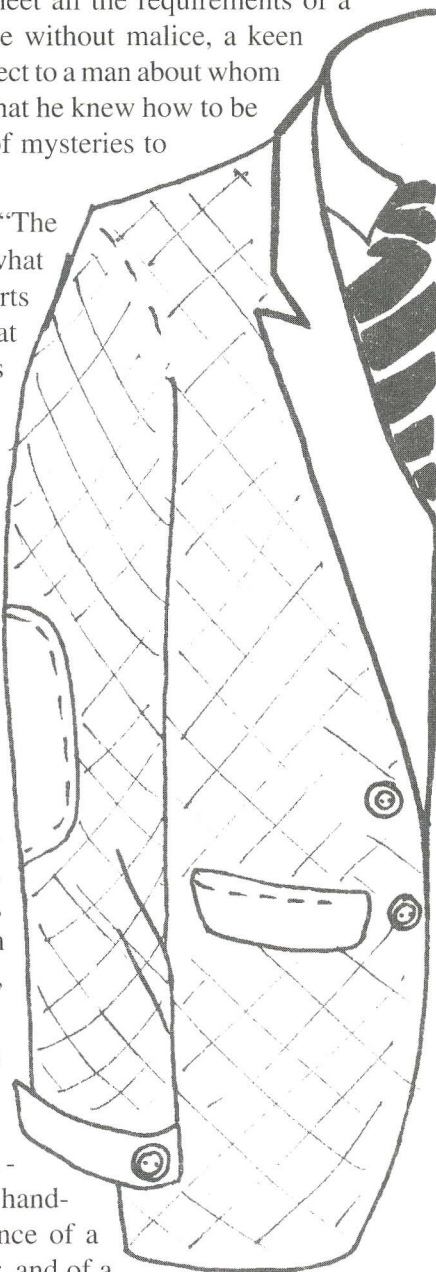
# CLOTHES MAKE THE MAN

## The Jacket

Which clever student first nicknamed our English teacher is lost in the myths and legends of a school full of stories, but he made it meet all the requirements of a good nickname: it was a joke without malice, a keen observation, and a nod of respect to a man about whom we understood little, except that he knew how to be alone, which is the deepest of mysteries to most teenagers.

We used to call him "The Jacket", because no matter what else he wore, his tweed sports jacket spoke for him. It was at least as old as he was, 40 years or more, and both garment and wearer seemed made of the same stuff: roughly spun, prickly, coarse wool, tightly woven and hung into a form that recognised neither time nor fashion. It had lost all shape long ago, which was just as well, because so had he. Nearly-naked suede at the elbows and cuffs shone a story of long hours at desks, while the curious and observant might notice a dark, oily stain on the right forearm, the mark of an ancient shotgun slung there for long, thoughtful walks.

For those brave enough to get close to him - or lucky enough, since he was a true and affectionate friend - the jacket smelt of dog and hand-rolled cigarettes, of an absence of a raincoat, of spent gunpowder, and of a sweat that had nothing to do with dirt. The jacket was, or had been, a mixture of dark, muddy brown and stormy sunset red, which matched his windburnt face perfectly. And it used to smile with him, for when his face relaxed and his eyes lit up, his shoulders too would lose their usual tension and drop for a moment, so man and jacket would greet you, as honest as a scrap of wool stirred by the breeze on a thorn-bush.  
TL 1995



**1** This is a story in which one piece of clothing tells us a lot about one man. Read it first and then look at the tasks below.

**2** From the following list, choose three words or phrases that can be used to describe both a kind of cloth and a person.

old   coarse   woven  
roughly spun  
affectionate   prickly   naked

**3** Find a word that means:

- 1 nastiness, nasty intentions, meaning to hurt
- 2 sharp, intelligent
- 3 piece of clothing
- 4 completely without hair, or without clothes
- 5 very old
- 6 completely finished, used up to the point that it has no more power
- 7 stress, tightness
- 8 moved gently

**4** Answer the following questions.

- 1 Does the writer like his English teacher?
- 2 Is it easy to get to know the English teacher personally?
- 3 Is the English teacher well-built?
- 4 Do you think he is, or has been, married?
- 5 Does he smile a lot?

**5** Write a similar paragraph that starts:

*If one piece of clothing told me everything about him/her, it was his/her.....*

**6** Read the following questions and say a few words to your partner about each of them. Use the words from the vocabulary section at the bottom of the page.

How fashion-conscious are you? Talk about your own clothes.

How do you choose your own clothes?

Do you read fashion magazines?

Do you buy clothes for yourself only or for other people too?

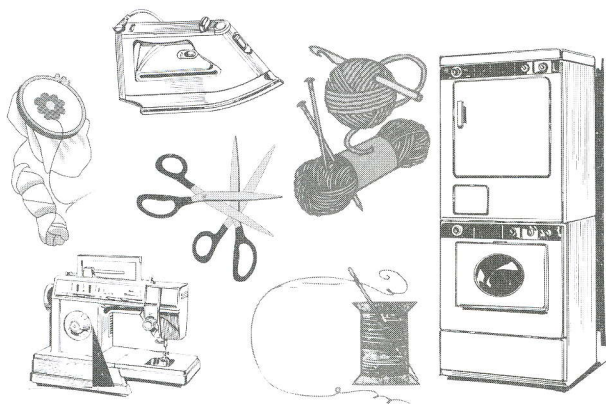
Where do you buy your clothes?

Have you ever tried making your own clothes?

How do you take care of them?

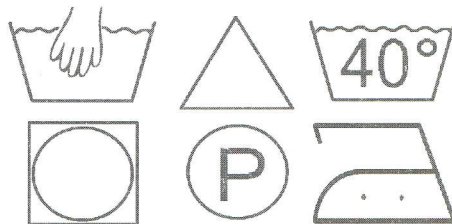
How about clothes repairs and alterations?

**7** How are the following things and machines connected with clothes? Can you think of any others?



**8** Washing instructions.

Using some of the words below, describe what the following symbols mean. Explain all the other expressions.



lukewarm

to tumble-dry

to rinse

to starch

to dry-clean

to bleach

colourfast

to wash separately

to crease × be  
crease-resistant

to hand wash × machine  
wash

to hang out the laundry /  
washing

to drip-dry

to line-dry

to shrink

preshrunk

to stretch

to iron

**9** Now go through the above expressions once more saying which material or part of clothing they are typically connected with.

## Clothes Make the Man

### Fashions

in vogue / fashionable  
to come into / go out of vogue / fashion  
to be "in" × be "out"  
to follow fashion  
to be fashion-conscious  
fashion designer  
fashion show  
model  
to do modelling  
haute couture  
couturier / dressmaker  
tailor-made × off-the-peg (GB) / rack (US)  
designer clothing  
trendy  
to buy second-hand  
charity shops / thrift shops

### Making and mending

vital statistics  
tape measure  
recycling centre  
hand-me-downs  
to hem  
to sew  
sewing machine  
needle and thread  
thimble  
to work to a pattern  
to cut out (a garment)  
badly × well tailored  
to stitch × unstitch  
to drop a stitch  
take up or let down (a hemline)  
to take in or let out (waists)  
to alter  
to wear thin / down / out

to darn socks  
to patch the elbows  
to iron  
to do the washing  
washing machine  
to dry  
to tumble-dry  
tumble-dryer

### Needlework

embroidery  
to embroider  
to crochet  
hook  
to knit  
knitting needles  
knitting machine  
knitting pattern  
to make lace



# CLOTHES – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**I Complete the following sentences containing idioms with the names of colours.**

- 1 He claimed he had seen the agreement in \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 They have been given the \_\_\_\_\_ light to start the new project.
- 3 I always feel \_\_\_\_\_ when it's cloudy and rainy.
- 4 It's much better for you to be in the \_\_\_\_\_ than to be in the \_\_\_\_\_, having lots of debts to pay back.
- 5 The police caught him \_\_\_\_\_-handed.
- 6 Bankers, lawyers, doctors, teachers and people who work in offices are called \_\_\_\_\_-collar workers.
- 7 The Parkers finally sold their old car. It was so huge and cost so much to run and maintain that it became a \_\_\_\_\_ elephant for them.
- 8 I don't often get a chance to see my friend. He lives so far away – I only see him once in a \_\_\_\_\_ moon.
- 9 Whenever you say that phrase I see \_\_\_\_\_. I get so angry!
- 10 They were all jealous of him. He got so much money, much more than anyone else, they were \_\_\_\_\_ with envy.

**II Read the following text and put the expressions into the gaps.**

**METAL NEEDLES   WEAVING   STITCHING   CLOTHES MAKING   SEWING MACHINE   CLOTHING**

The contemporary system of industrialized clothing production did not exist before the mid-19th century. Although important advances in the mechanization of spinning and **11**\_\_\_\_\_ had taken place during the previous centuries, **12**\_\_\_\_\_ continued to be a hand skill. Except for the introduction of **13**\_\_\_\_\_ in the Middle Ages, no new technology was successfully utilized until Isaac M. Singer designed a treadle-powered **14**\_\_\_\_\_ in 1851. At first his machines were used only for straight-seam **15**\_\_\_\_\_, and all other work continued to be performed by hand. Gradually other machines were introduced. By the end of the 19th century the basic conditions and technologies for the creation of a giant **16**\_\_\_\_\_ industry were present.

**III Match the adjectives with the two nouns – CLOTHES (a) and SHOES (b).**

- 17** crumpled   **18** torn   **19** ballet   **20** second-hand   **21** platform   **22** court

**IV Match the following clichés and proverbs with their definitions.**

- |           |   |          |  |
|-----------|---|----------|--|
| <b>23</b> | to pull the wool over someone's eyes      | <b>a</b> | crazy  |
| <b>24</b> | to keep st under one's hat                | <b>b</b> | to deceive someone   |
| <b>25</b> | to cast pearls before swine               | <b>c</b> | immediate action prevents a bigger problem later                           |
| <b>26</b> | It's better to wear out than to rust out. | <b>d</b> | with a comfortable, giving texture   |
| <b>27</b> | A stitch in time saves nine.              | <b>e</b> | it's better to work until you die than to be idle just because you are old |
| <b>28</b> | as soft as velvet                         | <b>f</b> | strong, able to endure a lot of hardship                                   |
| <b>29</b> | as tough as (shoe) leather                | <b>g</b> | to waste something good on someone who does not care about it              |
| <b>30</b> | as mad as a hatter                        | <b>h</b> | to keep st secret  |

# CLOTHES – AND MORE PRACTICE...

**Complete the following sentences containing idioms with the names of colours.**

- 1 Suddenly, out of the \_\_\_\_\_ I got this splendid idea to write a letter to her.
- 2 Why do you think \_\_\_\_\_ humour is so popular?
- 3 The truth sometimes hurts, but a \_\_\_\_\_ lie never hurt anybody.
- 4 Her vegetable garden and her flowers always look great – she has \_\_\_\_\_ fingers.
- 5 Tom's really got brains, he is a guy with a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ matter.
- 6 All the \_\_\_\_\_ -collar workers in the factory went on strike.
- 7 When he got the letter asking for a large sum of money and threatening him to make his love affair public, he knew he was being \_\_\_\_\_ mailed.
- 8 If you want a better price, you have to buy your cigarettes on the \_\_\_\_\_ market.
- 9 You would have hoped not to have to deal with so much \_\_\_\_\_ tape when applying for that job.
- 10 She is an incurable optimist and sees the whole world through \_\_\_\_\_-coloured glasses.

**Read the following text and put the expressions into the gaps.**

**DESIGNERS   HAUTE COUTURE   CLOTHING   DRESSMAKERS   READY-TO-WEAR   FASHIONS**

Germany produces about one-quarter of the total clothing output in Western Europe. Italy still maintains large numbers of tailors and **11**\_\_\_\_\_, and its ready-to-wear industry is large – second only to Germany's – and much of its production is sold outside the country. In France, the couturier houses continue to set trends, but most of the **12**\_\_\_\_\_ sold is ready-to-wear. In 1970, the French government built a large glass exhibition hall on the edge of Paris, the *Salon du Pret-a-Porter* (meaning ready-to-carry or **13**\_\_\_\_\_) to accommodate the growing industry of ready-to-wear clothing. The elegant **14**\_\_\_\_\_ house is giving way to the work of **15**\_\_\_\_\_ whose output is sold to boutiques and department stores and purchased by women who care about clothes of designer quality, even if they have neither the time nor the money to buy couturier **16**\_\_\_\_\_.

**Match the adjectives with the two nouns – TROUSERS (a) and SKIRT (b).**

- 17** baggy      **18** pleated      **19** flared      **20** full      **21** tight      **22** slit

**Match the following clichés and proverbs with their definitions.**

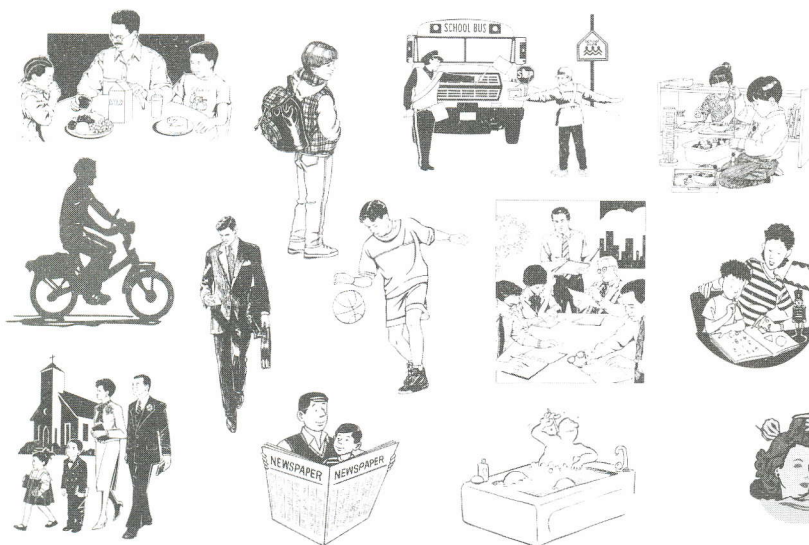
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>23</b> A wolf in sheep's clothing.                 | <b>a</b> conceited  |
| <b>24</b> All that glitters is not gold.              | <b>b</b> a dangerous person pretending to be harmless                                   |
| <b>25</b> You can't make a silk purse of a sow's ear. | <b>c</b> to be dressed in a jacket or sports jacket and tie (for men)                   |
| <b>26</b> Tied to one's mother's apron strings.       | <b>d</b> from poverty to wealth   |
| <b>27</b> put a sock in it                            | <b>e</b> an informal (rude) way of telling someone to shut up                           |
| <b>28</b> too big for his boots                       | <b>f</b> overly dependent on one's mother   |
| <b>29</b> from rags to riches                         | <b>g</b> a warning: although something is attractive, it needn't be genuine or valuable |
| <b>30</b> to wear coat and tie                        | <b>h</b> You cannot make someone more refined than he or she is by nature.              |



# WORK & LEISURE

## DAILY ROUTINE AND HOBBIES

**1** The daily routine for weekdays and weekends is often very different. Or is it? Using the pictures below, describe the similarities and differences.



**2** Who does the housework in your family? Do you share it having a rota for the chores?



### Daily Routine and Hobbies

#### Sleeping and waking

in the evening  
at night  
to get to bed early  
to stay up late  
to work all night  
to get tired / drowsy / sleepy  
to get undressed  
to get into bed  
to set the alarm for 6 o'clock  
to read yourself to sleep  
to drop straight off  
to doze off / nod off  
light sleep × deep sleep  
to be sound asleep / fast asleep  
to sleep like a log  
to lie awake  
insomnia / insomniac  
sleeping pill  
to count sheep  
bad dream × nightmare  
to snore  
to sleepwalk  
to talk in one's sleep  
to wake with a start

to be an early × late riser

to sleep late / sleep in  
to oversleep

#### In the morning

the alarm goes off  
to hear the alarm  
to jump × crawl out of bed  
to do one's exercises  
to take a shower × a bath  
to clean / brush one's teeth  
to gargle / use mouthwash  
barefoot(ed) × wearing slippers  
to shave  
safety razor  
disposable razor  
electric razor  
shaving cream  
aftershave  
hair gel  
to put on one's make-up  
to clean one's shoes  
wide awake × bleary-eyed  
to have a hangover  
to take painkillers

#### All in a day's work

to commute  
to walk to work  
to walk the dog  
to catch × miss (e.g. a train)  
to get to work on time × be late for work  
timetable / schedule  
tea / coffee break  
to have st on  
a busy × slack day × a day off  
to be rushed off one's feet

#### Parts of the day

in the morning  
at noon / midday  
in the (early × late) afternoon  
in the evening  
at night  
at bedtime  
night shift  
he's working nights  
at bedtime

#### Hobbies

to take one's mind off work  
to keep oneself occupied  
home × car maintenance

to renovate fix up / do up old machines  
he's good with his hands  
handyman  
do it yourself (D.I.Y.)  
collector  
to collect  
stamps  
coins  
autographs  
postcards  
antiques  
glass  
china  
dolls  
toys  
sports cards  
beer cans  
specimen  
example  
precious × valuable  
× priceless  
sentimental value  
rare × unique  
genuine × counterfeit / fake / phoney (US)  
forgery  
to exchange / swap

# THE SOCIAL WHIRL

**1** Do you prefer to spend your evenings and free time at home, or do you prefer to socialise? How often do you entertain friends at home, or do you prefer to go out with them?

What was the last party you went to like?

**2** You are throwing a party. In small groups discuss the details (food/drinks, place, time, clothing, invitations, etc.).

Now phone your friend to invite him/her. Be ready to answer a lot of questions.

## The Social Whirl

to relax and do nothing  
to gossip with friends on the phone  
to attend evening classes  
to take dancing / music lessons  
to go out for the evening  
to have visitors  
housewarming party  
dinner party  
cocktail party

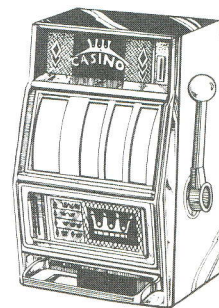
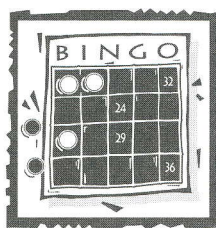
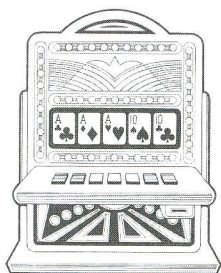
hen party (GB)  
bridal shower (US)  
baby shower (US)  
bachelor party  
big, noisy party  
to drop in on sb  
to pop in for a drink  
to go out for a drink  
to go down the pub / boozier (GB)

to take in a night club  
ballroom dancing  
dinner dance  
country dancing  
square dancing  
to have a special treat  
to go jogging  
to walk in the forest  
to get out of town

## GAMES OF CHANCE

**1** Gambling is a favourite pastime all over the world, and possibly the only hope of big money for many poor people. It is also a dangerous addiction. Where does one draw the line? Discuss.

**2** Have you ever tried playing any of these? Which of them do people spend most money on? Why is it so easy for some people to get hooked on them?



## Games of Chance

### Games

gambling  
betting on the horses, dogs, etc.  
poker  
pontoon  
blackjack  
(Russian) roulette  
chemin-de-fer  
die / dice  
craps  
lottery  
football pools

### People / places

dealer  
casino  
amusement arcade  
betting shop

### Equipment

fruit machine  
slot machine

### Miscellaneous

to play for money  
bank  
to break the bank

### jackpot

to do the pools  
to come up on the pools  
to know the odds  
to get into debt  
to play to a limit  
to cover bets  
to lose one's shirt  
to hustle  
to cheat



# JOBS

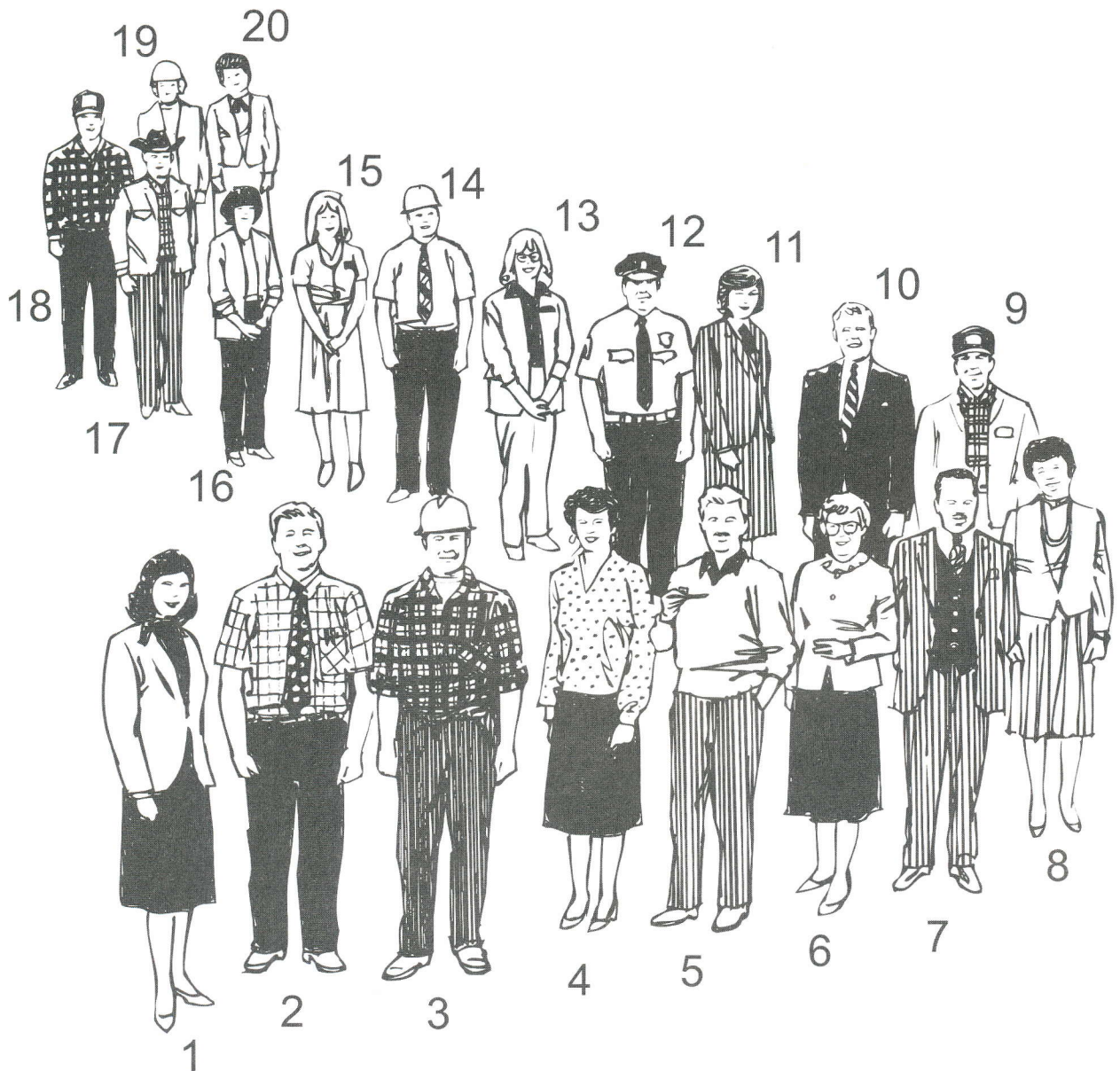
**1** Look at the drawings of people. What do you think they do for a living?

**2** What is the place where they work called? Think of the advantages and disadvantages of various jobs.

**3** Which of them are blue-collar workers and which are white-collar workers?

**4** Which of their jobs is, in your view, the best and which is worst? Give reasons.

*N.B. Specific job / occupation lists can be found under the relevant subject headings, i.e. look for 'glazier' under 'Home', 'surgeon' under 'Health', etc.*



# LOOKING FOR A JOB

**1** Fill out the job application below.

## JOB APPLICATION

### Personal Information

Surname: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

First name(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Date of birth: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

SSN: \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone number: \_\_\_\_\_

Sex: Male / Female

### Education

Name and address of school

Period of study

Qualification  
Degree received

1. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

### Work History

Name and address of employer

Period of employment  
and reasons for leaving

Description of your duties

1. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Citizenship status: \_\_\_\_\_

Languages: \_\_\_\_\_

References: \_\_\_\_\_

Do you hold any positions in any organisations or clubs? \_\_\_\_\_

Have you committed any crimes within the last five years? \_\_\_\_\_

How did you hear about this job? \_\_\_\_\_

Write a short description of yourself, including any special skills and qualities you have which might prove useful in this position, and explain why you want to work for us.



**2** Look at the following **JOBS WANTED** ads.

What kind of person would be most interested in each of the following jobs?

What kind of background and personality would they have?

Which one would you rather do and why?

**3** With a partner, write a dozen or so questions that you might ask as an employer or interviewee for one of the advertised positions.

Then go to other pairs and interview or be interviewed for the job you have chosen.

**4** Imagine that you have had an interview for a new job and want to tell your friend or family about it. Sum up briefly what has happened and who said what. State your own opinion.

### ITEMS FOR SALE

Micro-16 to the States. Street...  
 1980...  
 1981...  
 1982...  
 1983...  
 1984...  
 1985...  
 1986...  
 1987...  
 1988...  
 1989...  
 1990...  
 1991...  
 1992...  
 1993...  
 1994...  
 1995...  
 1996...  
 1997...  
 1998...  
 1999...  
 2000...  
 2001...  
 2002...  
 2003...  
 2004...  
 2005...  
 2006...  
 2007...  
 2008...  
 2009...  
 2010...  
 2011...  
 2012...  
 2013...  
 2014...  
 2015...  
 2016...  
 2017...  
 2018...  
 2019...  
 2020...

### AMERICAN PUBLISHING COMPANY

seeks bilingual assistant to set up a circulation office in Brno. The successful applicant will be working mostly on their own from home, so initiative and responsibility are a must. Applicants must have excellent computer skills, especially in spreadsheet and editing programs and on the internet. Occasional business trips to our central office in Boston may also be required.

### MANAGING DIRECTOR

**World-Link**, an international telephone company, is seeking a highly motivated managing director with telecommunications experience to manage our operations in Paris. The successful candidate will be responsible for operating a satellite office in Paris. Duties include addressing business opportunities, developing pricing strategies, completing sales forecasts, and all other aspects of operations. Requires strong knowledge of international business practices and accounting and 5 years directly related job experience.

### TOUR GUIDE NEEDED

Happy Holidays Travel Agency is looking for tour guides to lead tours throughout the Czech Republic, Slovakia, and Hungary. All applicants must have an extensive knowledge of the region's history, good organisational skills, a friendly personality, and speak fluent English and/or German. Tours last anywhere between two days and two weeks, so all applicants must be prepared to travel extensively.

### PERSONAL ASSISTANT TO SALES MANAGER

**Euroheating**, an established firm dealing in radiators throughout Europe, is now looking for someone to assist the manager of our foreign sales department. If you have some previous secretarial and/or clerical experience and have basic computer skills and a good telephone personality, please send us a short letter and your CV. A basic knowledge of German and Italian or French is also required.

US...  
 1980...  
 1981...  
 1982...  
 1983...  
 1984...  
 1985...  
 1986...  
 1987...  
 1988...  
 1989...  
 1990...  
 1991...  
 1992...  
 1993...  
 1994...  
 1995...  
 1996...  
 1997...  
 1998...  
 1999...  
 2000...  
 2001...  
 2002...  
 2003...  
 2004...  
 2005...  
 2006...  
 2007...  
 2008...  
 2009...  
 2010...  
 2011...  
 2012...  
 2013...  
 2014...  
 2015...  
 2016...  
 2017...  
 2018...  
 2019...  
 2020...

**SANTO Ltd.**  
 offers the following international, professional and personal legal services:  
 • Foreign and domestic law  
 • International office registration  
 • Tax and financial planning  
 • Security and insurance services  
 • Consulting and advising in real estate  
 • Property management  
 • Malaga 2, Puerto 4, CR  
 • Tel: 91 123 4567  
 • Mon. to Fri. 9am to 5pm

## Looking for a Job

situations vacant ads (GB) / want ads / job listings (US)  
 word of mouth  
 job centre (GB) / employment office (US)  
 application form  
 curriculum vitae (CV) / resumé  
 shortlist  
 to be shortlisted for  
 school-leaving certificate  
 state exam  
 advanced (A) levels

GCSE (GB) / high school diploma (US)  
 degree  
 doctorate  
 apprenticeship  
 special skills training  
 qualifications  
 experience  
 computer-literate  
 employment history / record  
 interview  
 entrance examination  
 references

Languages  
 elementary  
 intermediate  
 advanced  
 fluent  
 bilingual  
 "I can get by in ..."  
 "My spoken ... is quite good, but I can't write it."

# TYPES OF JOBS

**1** Using some of the expressions in the box below, try to complete the following sentences:

- 1 Mary is working at the post office at the moment. It is only a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ job until the end of the holidays.
- 2 What company does Jean work for? She doesn't. She is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My dad is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_. He works in a cement factory.
- 4 Young men in some countries have to do \_\_\_\_\_ at the age of 18.
- 5 Peter works for the government. He's a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 He was very ambitious and eventually ended up in control of the \_\_\_\_\_.

**2** Read the following text and name the various jobs that are described in it. Can you add any more useful advice? Have you ever tried a similar project – perhaps as a summer job?

## Creating Your Own Job

Some people may not want to spend time writing off speculative letters or phoning around potential employers asking for a job that may not exist. The alternative is to make a job for yourself, by creating a service which people in your local area might be willing to pay for. Window-cleaning, car-washing, housework and baby-sitting are a few of the most obvious odd-jobs, and there are many more. Below are some questions to ask yourself before turning self-employed:

1. What do people want? You can find this out by (a) asking neighbours, (b) reading local papers, (c) looking at advertisements in local shops.
2. What can I offer? It is surprising how many different things most of us can turn our

hands or minds to. It may well be that a hobby or spare-time activity can be turned into a moneyspinner. Some suggestions:

*carpentry:* simple woodwork, mending gates, making/putting up shelves.

*cooking:* lunch and dinner party catering or sandwich-making.

*cycling:* bicycle repairs (highly recommended), courier (suitable for anyone with a mountain bike and living in a big city).

*gardening:* grass-cutting, weeding, pruning.

*knitting:* making jumpers, cardigans, etc. on commission.

*music:* busking, playing in pubs, being a DJ.

*sewing:* dressmaking, repairs and alterations, cushion-making.

*walking:* dog exercising, tourist guiding, shopping for the elderly.

3. Who wants me? After you have identified the job you can do and for which you think there will be a demand, you need to publicise your services. The best way to start is with advertisements in local shops (which are very cheap) and, if you can afford it, in your local newspaper. It will also be useful to run off a handbill and distribute it locally.

The principal feature of successfully creating a job yourself is your reputation. If you impress someone with your hard work, promptness, and efficiency, they will tell others.

## Types of Jobs

family business  
on the land (agricultural)  
manual  
casual  
skilled × unskilled labourer  
shift-worker  
white-collar × blue-collar ×  
pink-collar × hard-hat  
workers  
office-worker  
sedentary job  
professionals (doctors,  
lawyers)

civil service  
civil servant  
domestic servant  
armed services  
to do one's national / military service  
conscription (GB) / draft (US)  
conscript (GB) / draftee (US)  
alternative service  
re-enlistment  
volunteers / enlisters  
managerial  
sales representative / traveller in st  
vocation × job

artist  
self-employed  
freelance  
full-time × part-time  
regular × seasonal work  
permanent × temporary job  
temp  
sideline / second job  
moonlighting  
voluntary  
charity



# KEEPING A JOB

**1** What do you consider to be a good job? What things are most important to you in a job? Would you rather have job satisfaction and lower pay or vice-versa?

**2** Study the words below and then read the dialogue on the right and fill in the missing words.

qualifications  
expense account  
workaholic  
retraining  
pension  
slave-driver  
responsibility  
perks  
initiative  
working environment  
career change  
sick pay  
overtime  
promotion  
self-motivated  
stressful  
company car  
passing the buck  
health scheme  
travelling expenses

**3**  Now listen and check your answers.

**4** In the dialogue, Fiona's friend tells her that she can still fulfil her dreams. In pairs, list all of the reasons why she shouldn't leave her job.

- J: Hi Fiona. What's wrong? You look a little down.  
F: Yeah, it's my job. I really don't know what to do.  
J: Why? I thought you were really happy with it.  
F: Well, in many ways it's a great job. It definitely has a lot of 1 \_\_\_\_\_. I have a 2 \_\_\_\_\_ I can use at any time, and I have an 3 \_\_\_\_\_ I can use to pay for my 4 \_\_\_\_\_. The job offers a great 5 \_\_\_\_\_ with full 6 \_\_\_\_\_ when I get ill. And there's a good chance of 7 \_\_\_\_\_ if I stay with the company for a few years.  
J: It sounds great! So what's the problem, then?  
F: Well, I'm just not satisfied with the job. I have to travel a lot, so I'm always away from Dan and the kids, and when I am here I always have to work 8 \_\_\_\_\_ so I don't get a chance to see them much either. It's also a very 9 \_\_\_\_\_ job, and everybody in the office is feeling it, so it's a pretty tense 10 \_\_\_\_\_. The boss is a 11 \_\_\_\_\_, which doesn't help. He just walks around yelling about how we all have to show more 12 \_\_\_\_\_, take more 13 \_\_\_\_\_ for things instead of 14 \_\_\_\_\_, be more 15 \_\_\_\_\_, and all of those things. He can be a real 16 \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes. But most of all, I'm just sick of selling computers. I want to do something else with my life.  
J: Like what?  
F: I really want to be a teacher, but I'm not a young girl any more, and I'm afraid that it's a bit late to be thinking about a 17 \_\_\_\_\_ at my age.  
J: Yeah, but what are you going to do – stick with a job you don't like until you get your 18 \_\_\_\_\_? If I were you I'd leave and find something you like doing better.  
F: I know, but how can I do it? I can't go back to school at my age.  
J: Well, you might not have to do a full degree. You've got "A" level history, haven't you? You should see if that's enough to get a job teaching history somewhere. And even if you do have to do some 19 \_\_\_\_\_, you could go to evening classes before you quit your present job and get all of the 20 \_\_\_\_\_ you need.  
F: You know, maybe you're right. I'll have to give it some thought.

## Keeping a Job

prospects (of promotion)  
in-service training  
day release  
health scheme (GB) / health plan (US)  
company facilities  
the perks of the job / fringe benefits  
staff discount on products / services  
maternity leave  
maternity grant  
holidays × unpaid leave

sabbaticals  
regular × irregular hours  
flexitime  
fixed × flexible hours  
to work shifts  
to clock in × out  
to share a job  
diligence  
enterprise  
obedience

punctuality  
procrastination  
laziness  
to pass the buck × accept / take responsibility  
self-motivation (a 'self-starter')  
individuality × sociability  
ethical × unethical business practices  
environment(ally)-friendly products

# LEAVING AND LOSING A JOB

**1** Match the newspaper headlines below to the articles they are for. Then finish the articles. There is one extra headline you do not need to use.

**1 SOCIAL PROGRAMS ARE READY FOR AN OVERHAUL**

**2 THE GLASS CEILING IS STILL INTACT**

**3 MEXICAN SHIFT BRINGS UNEMPLOYMENT FOR AUTO WORKERS**

**4 LABOUR-MANAGEMENT BATTLE REACHES A HIGH LEVEL**

**5 SMALL TOWNS ARE HIT HARDEST BY THE EFFECTS OF THE RECESSION**

**a** A recent survey showed that, despite twenty years of anti-discrimination legislation, women are still having trouble reaching the highest levels of the business world. The survey stated that the main causes of this problem are...

**b** Union leaders for the United Farm Workers said yesterday that the union would go on strike if three major fruit companies did not give in to their demands. Among other things, the workers are asking for...

**c** The MBW plant in Patrola provides work for many of the 25,000 people who live here. But this Friday evening, the whistle will blow for the last time. Like many big companies, MBW has decided to move its operations to Mexico in order to...

**d** Government advisors worked around the clock to prepare a budget that would balance the social programs needed to deal with the recession with the reduced income from taxes that the recession has brought about. Some of the main concerns had to do with...

## Leaving or Losing a Job

### Leaving a job

to give notice  
to take voluntary redundancy  
to take early retirement

### Unions and strikes

to take industrial action  
trade unions  
union membership  
union dues  
union representative  
to go on strike / strike  
to be on strike  
to strike against × for  
to come out in sympathy  
closed shop  
picket (line)  
talks / negotiations can be  
successful  
stalled  
deadlocked

conditions of employment  
wages keeping pace with inflation  
index-linked earnings / pensions  
management lockout

### Losing a job

probation period  
short-term contract  
to be laid off  
to be given notice / get the sack /  
to be fired  
to be made redundant (GB)  
redundancy payment (GB) / severance  
pay (US)  
lump sum  
the golden handshake  
retraining scheme  
on social security / income support /  
on welfare (US)  
(difficult) to make ends meet  
sickness benefits  
to be on disability (US)

to sign on (for social security)  
unemployment benefits / dole (GB)  
on the dole (GB)

### Personal factors

incompetence  
bad quality control  
low commission  
lack of support from colleagues

### External factors

lack of opportunity  
passed over for promotion  
corruption in high places  
stress  
bad working environment  
unsociable hours  
recession  
sexual harassment  
sexual discrimination  
the glass ceiling  
declining economic situation



# BANKING AND FINANCE

**1** Look at the following story and put the paragraphs in the correct order.

## CAUGHT IN THE CREDIT TRAP

**a** It all sounded too good to be true, so I immediately signed up. I closed my account at my old bank and opened up a new one at "High Street International", one of the banks affiliated with the Unicard. I had a current account for my everyday purchases and a high-interest savings account for any money I could manage to put aside.

**b** Then Christmas came round, and I went on a mad shopping spree, buying expensive presents for everybody on my credit card. Everybody in my family was extremely impressed by how nice Santa Claus was to them that year, and my girlfriend especially loved the expensive gold necklace I bought for her. Nobody bothered to ask how I could afford such nice gifts, so I didn't worry about it either.

**c** The Unicard was far more than just a credit card, he claimed. It was also a cash card which could be used at cash dispensers all over the country to make withdrawals and deposits without having to deal with a real bank clerk. What's more, it was also a direct debit card which could be used in most shops to pay directly from my bank account instead of paying in cash. And, of course, it was also a conventional credit card with, wonder of all wonders, a 1,600-pound credit limit.

**d** I got my first (and last) credit card when I was at university. I walked out of the college bookstore one day to find a whole crowd of young salesmen trying to sign up students on the new Unicard program. This new card, as a smart young man told me, was soon

going to replace all other forms of currency as the world's main method of buying and selling goods and services.

**e** The fun all ended one afternoon when a man from the Unicard Collection Agency arrived at my house and, informing me that my credit limit was used up and my cheque account was severely overdrawn, demanded that I pay him immediately. When I told him that I couldn't, he ripped up my beloved Unicard and immediately proceeded to repossess all of the presents I had bought for people. My girlfriend was so upset at losing the gold necklace that she dumped me, and my parents had to foot most of the bill for my shopping spree. What's worse, my credit is now ruined, so I will never be able to take out a student loan to continue my studies, a car loan to buy a new car, or a mortgage to buy a new house. But I still have my Unicard, taped back together and encased in glass on my desk, as a reminder to never, ever get another credit card as long as I live.

**f** Then the trouble started. I had never been any good at balancing my chequebook, and before I got my Unicard, I had always just taken money out of my account until the cash machine told me I had none left. But with my new account, any overdrafts were automatically paid for out of my credit account. My bank statement was so confusing that I had no idea this was going on, and I spent money right and left, quickly getting myself into debt.

**2** Choose the word for the following definitions and explain the meaning of the other expressions.

- 1 Take back goods which were bought on credit but not paid for in the agreed time.  
a) sign up b) overdraw c) repossess d) afford
- 2 Stop doing business with a bank.  
a) open an account b) get oneself into debt c) make a withdrawal d) close an account
- 3 Take more money out of your bank than you actually have in your account.  
a) overdraw b) charge c) take out a loan d) affiliate
- 4 Keep track of all of the money you take out of your account.  
a) automatically pay b) make a deposit c) receive your bank statement d) balance your chequebook
- 5 The account you use for most transactions.  
a) current account b) high-interest account c) credit limit d) savings account
- 6 To pay for something.  
a) open an account b) make a deposit c) foot the bill d) withdraw cash

**3** In pairs, choose one of the paragraphs and act out one of the conversations that might have taken place in it.

**4** Summarise each of the paragraphs or write a topic sentence for each of them.

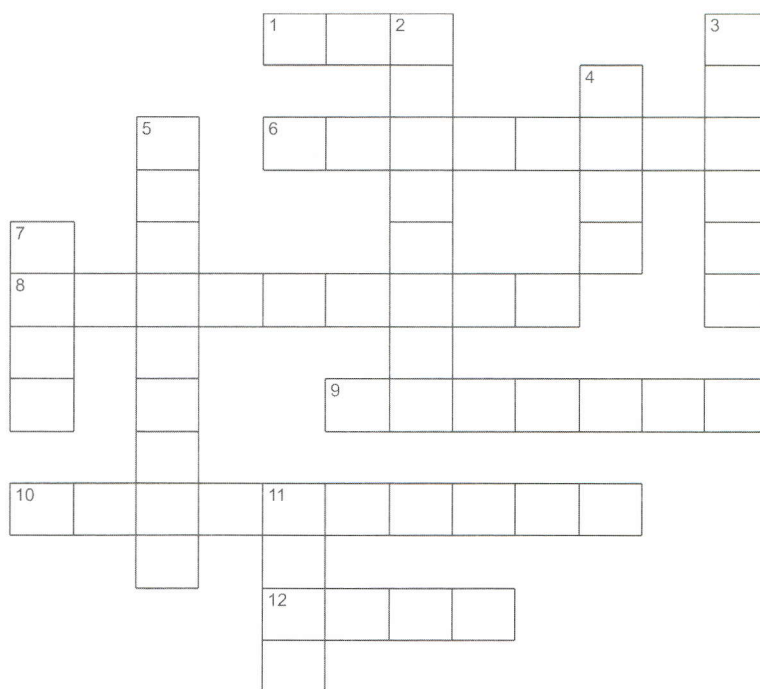
## 5 Here are a few idioms in context. Try to match the columns.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>A</b> My aunt is a wealthy miser. I keep telling her:...</p> <p><b>B</b> Fred put his money in a new bank that pays more interest than his old bank, saying:...</p> <p><b>C</b> Jane shops very carefully to save a few pence on food, then charges the food to a charge card that costs a lot in annual interest. That's being...</p> <p><b>D</b> Why do you work so hard to make money? It will just cause you trouble....</p> <p><b>E</b> Child: Can I have ten dollars to go to the movies? Father: Ten dollars?!...</p> <p><b>F</b> If the bank goes broke, don't worry. The government will...</p> | <p><b>1</b> penny wise, pound foolish.</p> <p><b>2</b> Money doesn't grow on trees, you know!</p> <p><b>3</b> (The love of) money is the root of all evil.</p> <p><b>4</b> A penny saved is a penny earned.</p> <p><b>5</b> You can't take it with you.</p> <p><b>6</b> foot the bill.</p> |
|--|--|

## 6 Try this crossword.

Across	Down
--------	------

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. automatic teller machine</p> <p>6. (formal) to buy sth</p> <p>8. a sum of money lent to sb by a bank, allowing them to spend more money than is in their account</p> <p>9. to put money into a bank, esp so that it can gain interest</p> <p>10. the action of removing money from a bank account</p> <p>12. an organization or a place that provides a financial service</p> | <p>2. a sum of money lent by a building society, bank, etc for buying a house or other property, the property being the security</p> <p>3. a special printed form on which one writes an order to a bank to pay a sum of money from one's money in coins or notes</p> <p>4. money charged for borrowing money, or paid to sb who invests money</p> <p>7. a thing that is lent, esp a sum of money</p> <p>11. a sum of money owed to sb</p> |
|---|--|



## Banking and Finance

credit bank  
 high street bank (GB) / local bank (US)  
 private bank  
 building society (GB) / savings and loan (US)  
 to go bankrupt / fail / declare bankruptcy  
 cheque (GB) / check (US)  
 current account (GB) / checking account (US)  
 deposit account  
 savings account  
 to open × close a bank account  
 high interest account  
 ethical investments  
 cash machines  
 ATM / cash dispenser  
 to put money into the bank / make a deposit  
 to draw / take money out / make a withdrawal  
 to credit × debit an account

interest (rates)  
 mortgage  
 bank loan  
 bank manager  
 bank clerk (GB) / teller (US)  
 overdraft  
 overdrawn / in the red  
 bank charges  
 money-changing counter / bureau de change  
 bank holiday  
 to make out a cheque to  
 cheque card  
 credit card  
 standing order  
 statement of account / bank statement  
 home banking



# WORK & LEISURE PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**I** Complement the following verbs with either **MONEY** (a) or **PRICE** (b) and use them in sentences.

- |                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 to use                  | 8 to replace the _____ |
| 2 to accept a _____       | 9 to return            |
| 3 to cost                 | 10 to reduce a _____   |
| 4 to ask for the          | 11 to borrow           |
| 5 to refund               | 12 to lend             |
| 6 to get one's _____ back | 13 to agree a _____    |
| 7 to vary in              | 14 to transfer         |

**II** Sort these expressions into two groups – under number 15 those which collocate with **PRICE** and number 16 those with **MONEY**.

wholesale	prize
discount off the	competitive
retail	amount(s) of
drop in	pocket
extra	..... adjustment
official	

15 .....

16 .....

**III** Talking about money. Fill in the missing words.

- 17 'Million' is sometimes abbreviated to 'm', and 'billion' to 'bn'. Similarly 'K' and 'k' are sometimes used as abbreviations for 'thousand' when people's s\_\_\_\_\_ are being mentioned. eg.: Sales Manager, £30K + bonus + car.
- 18 When saying aloud an a\_\_\_\_\_ of money that consists only of pence, you say the word 'pence' or the letter 'p' after the number.
- 19 'How m\_\_\_\_\_ did you have to pay?'—'Eight quid'.
- 20 You don't have change for a ten-pound n\_\_\_\_\_, do you?
- 21 He rattled the loose c\_\_\_\_\_ in his pocket.
- 22 Farmers s\_\_\_\_\_ more than half a billion pounds per year on pesticides.
- 23 He o\_\_\_\_\_ some 10 million pounds' worth of property in Hampstead.
- 24 Americans use the word 'b\_\_\_\_\_' to refer to paper money. "The man put a five-dollar b\_\_\_\_\_ on the counter."
- 25 In informal speech, 'buck' is often used instead of 'd\_\_\_\_\_'. I got 100 bucks for it.
- 26 The rate of e\_\_\_\_\_ while I was there was almost 50 crowns to the pound.
- 27 You have to travel abroad to make b\_\_\_\_\_ money.
- 28 He d\_\_\_\_\_ to get danger money for that job.
- 29 It no longer provides v\_\_\_\_\_ for money.
- 30 How much m\_\_\_\_\_ have we got to play with?

# WORK & LEISURE AND MORE PRACTICE...

**Complement the following verbs with either MONEY (a) or PRICE (b) and use them in sentences.**

- |                           |                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 to (help) raise         | 8 to earn                   |
| 2 to give access to       | 9 to spend one's            |
| 3 to run out of           | 10 to waste                 |
| 4 to put up a _____       | 11 to sell (out) at a _____ |
| 5 to pay a _____          | 12 to lose                  |
| 6 to make                 | 13 to save                  |
| 7 to obtain st at a _____ | 14 to withdraw              |

**Sort these expressions into two groups – under number 15 those which collocate with PRICE and number 16 those with MONEY.**

- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| ..... range     | ..... reductions     |
| hush-           | easy                 |
| exorbitant      | ..... tag            |
| ..... order     | ..... group          |
| ..... of shares | a ..... worth paying |
| ..... stability |                      |

15 .....

16 .....

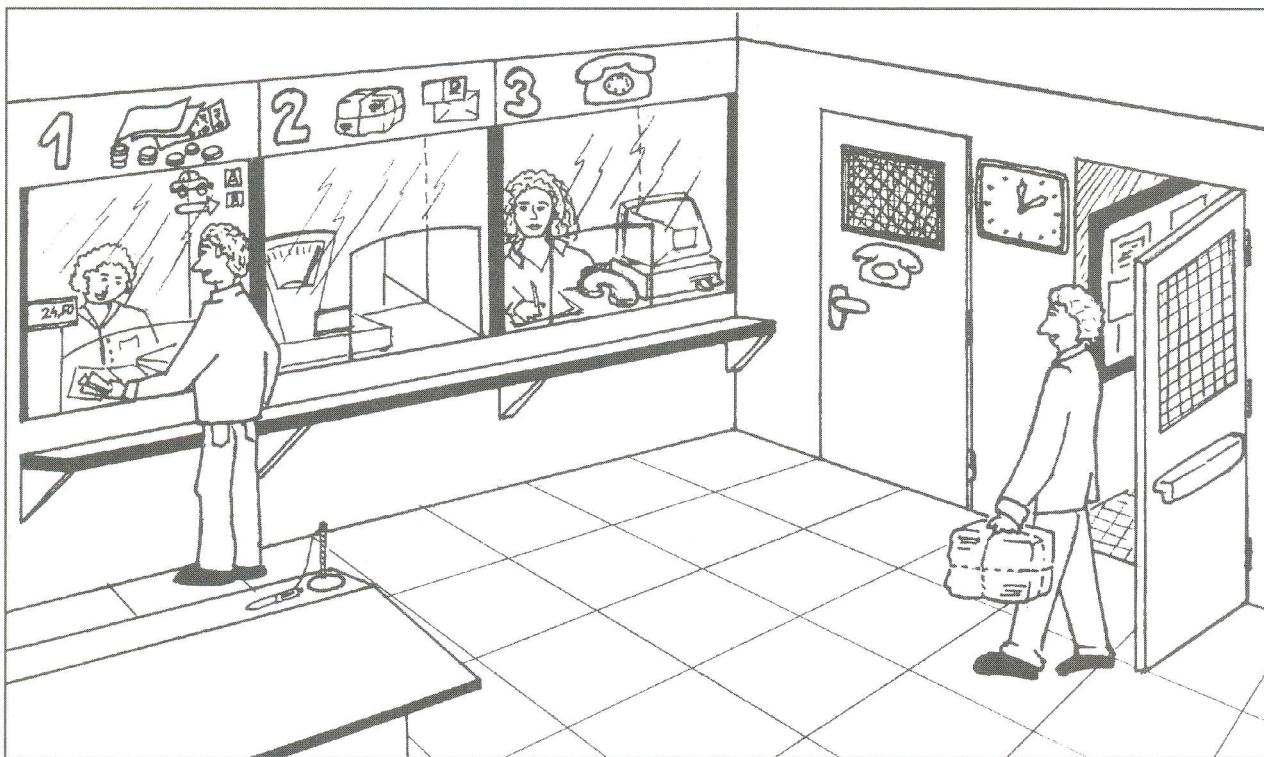
**Talking about money. Fill in the missing words.**

- 17 Several people paid on the spot in new n\_\_\_\_\_.
- 18 You should make sure that you have a ready supply of c \_\_\_\_\_ for telephoning.
- 19 The machine wouldn't take 10p p\_\_\_\_\_.
- 20 'Per annum' is sometimes used instead of 'per y\_\_\_\_\_'.  
21 I had just that – a dollar bill, a quarter, two d\_\_\_\_\_, a nickel, and three pennies.
- 22 When saying aloud amounts of money, you always say the word 'c\_\_\_\_\_'. You never say 'c'.  
23 You can't find another room at this hour in this town for l\_\_\_\_\_ or money.
- 24 Those four books cost a pound e\_\_\_\_\_.
- 25 Hush m\_\_\_\_\_ is money that is given to someone to persuade them to keep something that they know secret.
- 26 A country's money m\_\_\_\_\_ consists of all the institutions such as the government and commercial banks that deal with short-term loans, capital, and foreign exchange.
- 27 Now that their children are working as well, they must be r\_\_\_\_\_ in money.
- 28 They indulged all three children with plentiful s\_\_\_\_\_ money.
- 29 The i\_\_\_\_\_ rate is 8 per cent at the moment.
- 30 Many people think that money can b \_\_\_\_\_ you anything.



# COMMUNICATION

Look at the picture and describe what you can see, using the vocabulary from the box below. Then prepare at least three questions to ask your classmates about the particular services.



## Post Offices and the Services They Provide

post office  
sorting office  
sub-post office  
post counter / village shop (GB)  
postal clerk  
postmaster / postmistress  
postman (GB) / mail carrier (US)  
Post Office Box / POB  
poste restante (GB) / general delivery (US)  
parcel post  
counter  
window

to keep × lose one's place (in a queue)  
post van (GB) / mail truck (US)  
public telephone  
fax  
coin-operated phone × card phone  
postal order (GB)  
pension payments  
unemployment benefit  
road tax renewal  
bill payments  
savings account

# POSTING LETTERS AND PARCELS

**1** Read the following information pamphlet and fill in the blanks with the kinds of post below.

- a Parcels
- b Recorded delivery
- c First class letters
- d Registered post
- e Express letter
- f Second class letters

**2** You have bought some fine cut glass which you want to send to your friend in Venezuela. Here are the steps you need to take in order to pack it safely. First match the two parts of each step and then put the steps in the correct order.

**3** What other precautions could you take to make sure the package gets to its destination safely?

## ROYAL MAIL SERVICE



### Inland

1. \_\_\_\_\_ are usually delivered on the next working day after collection, except those collected on Saturdays, as there is only one delivery as opposed to two on other days.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ are usually delivered on the third working day after collection, except those collected on Saturdays.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ provides evidence of posting, a signature on delivery and special handling arrangements for first class letters, including compensation for loss or damage to letters.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ provides evidence of posting and a signature on delivery for both first and second class letters, but without any compensation for loss or damage.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is a service which guarantees that first class letters be delivered on the first working day after posting or your money back.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ should be properly packaged and clearly marked if they contain any fragile contents.

### International

Compensation for lost or damaged goods will be provided only if the Royal Mail Service is to blame. Be sure to observe all tax, sanitary, and legal protocols for parcels sent abroad.

Close the box using  
Line the box  
Gently put the cut glass  
Write your return address  
Find  
Wrap the box  
Write FRAGILE  
Write the mailing address  
Make sure the crystal  
Tie a piece

with crumpled newspaper.  
on the side of the box.  
in brown paper.  
in the upper left-hand corner of the box.  
of string around the box.  
strong packing tape.  
is totally surrounded with crumpled newspaper.  
in the centre of the box.  
into the box.  
a large cardboard box.

## Posting Letters and Parcels

pillar box (GB)  
letter box (GB) / postbox (GB) / mailbox (US)  
first class post / mail (US)  
second class post / mail (US)  
registered post (for valuables)  
recorded delivery (for important letters)  
express letter  
telemessage (replaces telegram)  
jiffy bag / padded envelope  
packet

package  
parcel  
string  
sealing wax  
air mail  
aerogram  
stamp  
postmark  
franked envelope  
window envelope  
cancelled stamp  
commemorative issue

stamp collector / philatelist  
postal rates / charges  
printed matter rate  
to weigh a letter / parcel  
scales  
to insure the contents  
sellotape  
to tie with string  
fragile  
handle with care  
this side up  
urgent  
please forward to



# LETTERS

**1** Below are the texts of two letters, one formal, the other informal. Sort them out and put them in the correct order. Write at least one of the letters into your exercise book. (NB: A colon is used in the U.S. – Dear Sirs: )

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Dear Sirs   | <input type="checkbox"/> I don't know anything about the city, so could you do me a favour and pop some information in the mail for me? |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Hi Christina  | <input type="checkbox"/> I will be visiting your city in late April.  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I look forward to your reply.   | <input type="checkbox"/> Oh, yeah! If you know the names of any good (and cheap!) hotels in the area, please send those as well.        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Please send me some information about the most important sites and museums, as well as a tourist map of the city that includes public transport routes. | <input type="checkbox"/> Patrick McCully  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Guess what? I'm going to be in town sometime in late April.   | <input type="checkbox"/> I can't wait to see you!   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I am writing to enquire about tourist information on your city.   | <input type="checkbox"/> Any information about accommodation would also be appreciated.   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> It doesn't have to be anything too big – maybe just a list of the things that are worth looking at, and maybe a tourist map if you have one.            | <input type="checkbox"/> Yours faithfully,  |
|  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pat  |
|  | <input type="checkbox"/> Love,  |

Dear Sirs

*Hi Christina*

**2** What information do you usually find in the grey tinted panels? Talk about various layouts of letters that you have come across. If you are not sure what is right and wrong, ask your teacher for advice.

## Letters

personal letter  
business letter  
love letter  
poison-pen letter  
to drop a line to  
to keep in touch  
to put st in writing  
to seal a letter  
quick note

postcard  
to correspond with  
pen-friend / pen-pal  
stationery  
to make a draft (rough copy)  
to make a fair copy  
greeting  
letterhead  
enclosures

Receiving / replying to post  
stamped addressed envelope  
(s.a.e.)  
to sign for st  
proof of identity  
return to sender  
return address  
not known at this address

C.O.D. (cash on delivery)  
excess postage  
R.S.V.P. = please reply to an  
invitation  
first post  
second post

# THE TELEPHONE

## 1 Fill in the gaps with a suitable word.

### BT Chargecard is easy to use

BT Chargecard calls are easy to 1 \_\_\_\_\_. Simply 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the free access code for the country you are in and you will then be asked to enter your account 3 \_\_\_\_\_ and PIN. Then just enter the telephone number you wish to 4 \_\_\_\_\_. It's that easy.

### You'll always hear a familiar voice

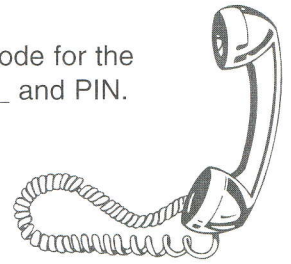
Wherever you are, when you use the BT Chargecard you will always be able to communicate in English, which means no problems with operators who don't speak your 5 \_\_\_\_\_.

### Charge your calls to your credit card

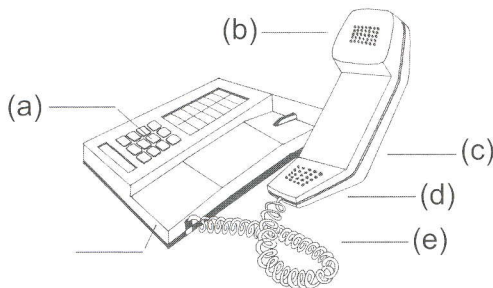
All the 6 \_\_\_\_\_ that you make with your BT Chargecard will be itemised on a separate statement for you to easily review. The total of your call charges will then appear on your monthly credit card 7 \_\_\_\_\_. You are only billed for the calls you actually make – there are no membership or monthly 8 \_\_\_\_\_.

### Lower costs when you're out and about

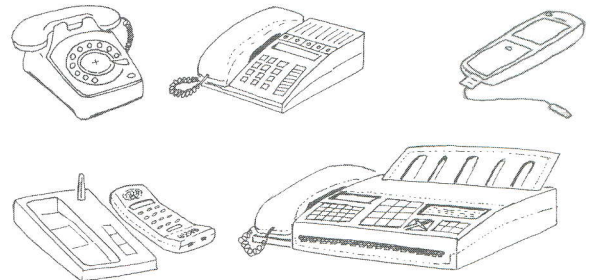
You'll find the BT Chargecard not only easy to use, but money-saving too. Avoid the costly telephone 9 \_\_\_\_\_ often charged by hotels by billing your calls to the BT Chargecard instead. That way you'll get the benefit of BT's competitive international 10 \_\_\_\_\_.



## 2 Now describe the different parts of the phone.



## 3 Look at the pictures and describe them. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each type of phone? Which situation is each one most suitable for?



## The Telephone

telephone set  
receiver  
earpiece  
mouthpiece  
remote microphone  
mike / mic  
answerphone / answering machine  
telephone  
rotary × push-button  
car  
mobile / cellular  
portable / cordless  
ex-directory number (GB) / unlisted number (US)  
telephone directory / book

yellow pages  
operator  
directory enquiries  
automatic dialling  
last number redial  
dialling tone  
to dial a number  
ringing tone  
engaged tone (GB) / busy signal (US)  
number unobtainable  
to be cut off / be disconnected  
to have a bad line / a bad connection  
local call × trunk / long distance call  
extension (number)

to reverse the charges (GB) /  
call collect (US)  
international code × area code × local code  
to answer the phone  
'Wrong number.'

### Modern developments

facsimile (fax)  
to fax someone  
modem  
e-mail  
datalink  
videophone  
digital information transfer



# USING THE TELEPHONE

**1** The texts to three different telephone conversations have been scrambled together. Sort them out into the three conversations. Then put them in the right order.

- ☎ Hello, Taylor Residence.
- ☎ Does he have your number?
- ☎ Hello. Can I speak to Mary, please?
- ☎ Sure. Could you just tell him that Jane called and ask him to call me back when he gets out of the shower?
- ☎ Oh well, maybe we can see it some other time.
- ☎ That'd be great. Maybe some time next week, O.K.?
- ☎ That'd be fine. So I'll call you on Thursday, all right?
- ☎ Bye bye.
- ☎ Hello. 276964.
- ☎ O.K., I'll let him know you called.
- ☎ Oh, yeah! I'd completely forgotten. I'm sorry, I can't make it tomorrow. I've got a lot of work right now.
- ☎ Hello. Could I speak with John, please?
- ☎ Yes, I'd like to speak to Mr. Smith, please.
- ☎ Thank you. Bye.
- ☎ Bye.
- ☎ Yes, I think he does.
- ☎ No, that's all right. I'll try again later. Thank you.
- ☎ Great. Talk to you on Thursday, then. Bye.
- ☎ Hello. Bernstein Bank. May I help you?
- ☎ This is Mary speaking.
- ☎ Hi, Mary. It's David. I was just ringing to make sure that we're still on for the cinema tomorrow.
- ☎ Goodbye.
- ☎ Hold on one second. I'll see if he's in. *Pause.* I'm sorry, John's in the shower right now. Can I take a message?
- ☎ Hold on, I'll put you right through. *Pause.* I'm sorry. Mr Smith is in a meeting right now and can't come to the phone. May I take a message?
- ☎ Bye.

**2**  Listen to the recording and check your answers. Can you tell which of the speakers are British and which are American?

**3** In pairs, act out the following telephone conversations.

Jo calls Pat and invites him to a concert. Pat accepts.  
Sophie calls the telephone company to complain about her bill. She reaches a secretary who tells her that the manager of the complaints office is having his lunch break and won't be back for an hour.

## Conversation 1

Hello, Taylor Residence.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Conversation 2

Hello.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Conversation 3

Hello. Bernstein Bank. May I help you?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

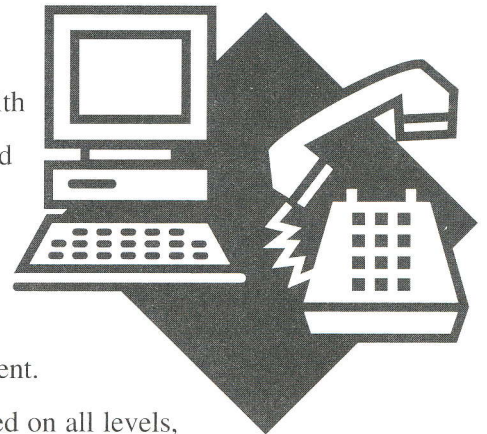
.....

Ben calls his piano teacher to say that he can't come to his lesson this week because he is ill. She too is ill and her husband takes the call. He is more than curious that both his wife and Ben are ill with the same thing.

# COMPUTERS AND THE INTERNET

**1** Discuss the meaning of the words on the left. Then read the text and fill in the gaps.

transfer of funds	By 1990, personal computers had become small enough to be completely portable; they included <b>1</b> _____ computers, notebook computers, and pocket or palm-sized computers. Multimedia personal computers equipped
retrieval of information	with <b>2</b> _____ players and digital sound systems allowed users to handle animated images and <b>3</b> _____ (in addition to text and still
sound	images) that were stored on high-capacity CD-ROMs.
CD-ROM	<b>4</b> _____ were increasingly interconnected with each other and with larger computers in <b>5</b> _____ for the purpose of gathering, sending,
networks	and sharing information electronically. Computer networks are collections of computers and intelligent peripheral
laptop	equipment (e.g., <b>6</b> _____ and point-of-sale terminals equipped with
personal computers	microprocessors) that are interconnected
automatic teller machines	by <b>7</b> _____, microwave relays, and other high-speed
telephone lines	communication links for the purpose of exchanging data and sharing equipment.
networking	<b>8</b> _____ has been developed on all levels, from local to international, in diverse sectors of society. Examples are networks used by government organizations for rapid
	<b>9</b> _____ from databases at central locations and those used by banks and retail merchants for the <b>10</b> _____ or credit verification.



**2** What do you understand by these words? What are they describing?

the Internet  
the information superhighway  
cyberspace  
the world-wide web  
(at)  
computer nerd



**3** Read the following article and match the appropriate title to each paragraph. One of the titles does not fit any of the paragraphs.

- a Who's logging on and why
- b New technology brings new problems
- c From factories to the PC
- d Information overload
- e Getting wired into the information superhighway
- f Living your life on the web

**4** Match the following things to their uses on the right.

mouse  
monitor  
modem  
cursor



the screen where information appears  
allows computers to connect to the Internet through a phone line  
used to highlight or select information on the screen  
used to move the cursor around on the screen

**5** Use the information from the article and talk about the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet.

In pairs, talk about what the missing paragraph could say.

1 ☐

The late twentieth century has been dubbed the end of the Industrial Age and the beginning of the Information Age, where computers and scientific know-how are the most important keys to survival. More than any invention since the steam engine, the computer has revolutionised the way we work, play, and live. Nothing exemplifies this more than the so-called "information superhighway", otherwise known as the Internet.

2 ☐

The Internet is a world of its own, a huge universe of shopping malls, libraries, entertainment centres, and even clubs and discos that exists only inside a group of interconnected computers. Using any simple personal computer and a modem, we can log into the net and do almost anything. Go to the travel section and you can browse travel brochures and book a complete holiday from the comfort of your living room. Your morning paper no longer comes to your doorstep; rather, it comes to your monitor, as papers from all over the world transmit their daily editions to your e-mail account. And if there's anything in the paper that you feel like talking about, anything at all, just plug into one of the on-line chat rooms, where people have discussions about anything, from movies to politics and religion.

3 ☐

Sounds great, right? So why does anybody ever leave the house any more, if everything can be done on the computer? As anybody who has gone through the experience of trying to find something on the Internet can tell you, surfing the information superhighway is not always that easy. The biggest problem is one of speed. Right now, most people use a modem to connect their computers to the Internet via the telephones. The only problem is that telephone wires can only transmit

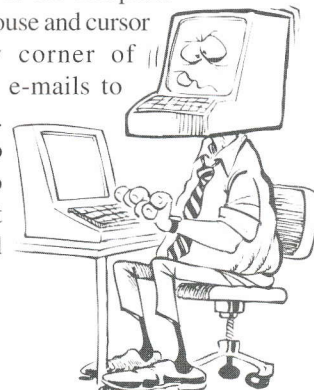
a certain amount of information at any one time, and that amount is really too small for the huge files and graphics that are often sent back and forth between computers. Researchers are now looking at different ways to link computers, such as television cable wires and even the electrical wires that bring electricity to people's houses.

4 ☐

But even when the problem of speed has been solved, the Internet will still be an incredibly confusing place. This is because there is simply so much information out there. Anyone who is looking for information on, say, a cultural festival in Malaysia may have to wade through hundreds of files on anything from the Malaysian economy to travelling in Malaysia to Malaysian universities before they find the information they are looking for.

5 ☐

Despite these problems, millions of people log onto the Internet every day. Some are experts who know exactly what they want and log on and off in a matter of minutes. Then there are the "Internet junkies", people who spend countless hours glued to the computer terminal, using their mouse and cursor to peek into every corner of cyberspace and send e-mails to their fellow junkies. But most people who use the net do so not to buy things, but just out of curiosity, just to find out what's out there.



# COMMUNICATION – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**Match the questions with probable answers on the right.**

- 1 He's not available. Can I take a message?
- 2 Who's calling?
- 3 Do you wish me to page Mr. Smith?
- 4 Can you hold?
- 5 Hang on a moment.
- 6 Is there anyone else who could help me?

- a Yes, please, can he tell Mrs. Edington to get in touch with me.
- b This is Mary Hopkins speaking.
- c I would be happy to try to answer your question.
- d No, I have to get back to my work. I will call again later.
- e Yes, please. Tell him it's urgent.
- f That's not possible.

**Which of the following expressions in each line does NOT collocate with the word on the left?**

- 7 COMPUTER — ... is down, personal, home, to peek, to use, ... has crashed, to hack into
- 8 INFORMATION — ... superhighway, to solicit, to withhold, to volunteer, access to, flow of, ... technique

**Choose the verbs that go with the following nouns: CALL (a), LETTER (b), PARCEL (c) and use them in short sentences.**

- |                   |                              |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 9 to make         | 15 to drop _____ in the post |
| 10 to address     | 16 to stamp                  |
| 11 to deliver     | 17 to seal                   |
| 12 to put through | 18 to (un)wrap               |
| 13 to wait for    | 19 to receive                |
| 14 to return sb's | 20 to take                   |

**Put each of the following words or phrases into its correct place in the passage below.**

**LABELS    POSTAL REFORMS    CIVIL SERVANT    RELEASED    COLLECT A TAX    REIGNING  
MONARCH    ADHESIVE POSTAGE STAMP    KNIGHTED    NAME OF THE COUNTRY    STAMP**

The idea for the adhesive postage **21**\_\_\_\_\_ was first suggested by the English schoolmaster and **22**\_\_\_\_\_ Rowland Hill as one of the many **23**\_\_\_\_\_ in Great Britain in 1837. Hill's conception, for which he was later **24**\_\_\_\_\_, was derived from similar **25**\_\_\_\_\_ that had been issued almost a century earlier in many parts of Europe to **26**\_\_\_\_\_ on newspapers. Through Hill's efforts, on May 1, 1840, Great Britain **27**\_\_\_\_\_ the world's first officially issued **28**\_\_\_\_\_, a one-penny denomination universally referred to as the Penny Black. The stamp featured a portrait of Queen Victoria, which established a postal precedent in Great Britain; since that time, all regular-issue stamps have portrayed the **29**\_\_\_\_\_. Moreover, like the Penny Black, no subsequent British stamp has been inscribed with the **30**\_\_\_\_\_.



# COMMUNICATION – AND MORE PRACTICE...

**I Match the questions with probable answers below.**

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1 I need some stamps, please.               | a That should arrive on Tuesday.      |
| 2 I'd like to buy a book of stamps, please. | b Five, ten, or twenty pounds?        |
| 3 Do you have any envelopes I could buy?    | c Please, print legibly.              |
| 4 How long will it take to get there?       | d First or second class?              |
| 5 Can I have a change-of-address form?      | e Any particular style?               |
| 6 I'd like to pick up a package.            | f Can I see some ID (identification)? |

**II Which of the following expressions in each line does NOT collocate with the word on the left.**

- 7 COMPUTER — laptop, to operate, ...-educated, ... age, ... programmer, ... studies, to run something through, ... error
- 8 INFORMATION — to sum up, relevant, crumbs of, snippets of, lack of, millions of, make ... available, to sieve

**III Choose the words that go with the following nouns: CALL (a), LETTER (b), CORRESPONDENCE (c) and use them in short sentences.**

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 9 business    | 15 chain         |
| 10 poison-pen | 16 collect       |
| 11 emergency  | 17 long-distance |
| 12 love       | 18 voluminous    |
| 13 extensive  | 19 regular       |
| 14 brief      | 20 open          |

**IV Put each of the following words or phrases into its correct place in the passage below.**

INTERNATIONAL MAIL   ESTABLISHED   TECHNICAL ADVICE   TRANSPORTATION   POSTAL SERVICES  
PARCEL   CHARGES   INTERNATIONAL MONEY ORDERS   POSTAL   LETTER MAIL

The Universal Postal Union (UPU) was **21**\_\_\_\_\_ in 1875 under the Universal Postal Convention of 1874. It became a specialized agency of the United Nations in 1948. The UPU's permanent headquarters are in Bern, Switzerland. It provides information and **22**\_\_\_\_\_ to assist cooperating nations in improving their **23**\_\_\_\_\_. In 1994, it had 186 members.

Each country, under the **24**\_\_\_\_\_ convention, pays **25**\_\_\_\_\_ charges to members who carry **26**\_\_\_\_\_ across their borders. The **27**\_\_\_\_\_ are determined by the UPU.

The original treaty applied only to **28**\_\_\_\_\_; other postal services, such as **29**\_\_\_\_\_ post and **30**\_\_\_\_\_, have been regulated by supplementary agreements.

# ESSAY PREPARATION

Depending on the topic of the essay, go to the appropriate page and write down four or five nouns you think you will use to write about the topic. Then, using the box on the respective page, a dictionary of collocations or a corpus, look up the verbs, adjectives and adverbial or any other useful phrases that you will need to express your ideas.

*Example:*                      *My favourite dish (a recipe)*  
                                      *Go to p. 35 – Cooking*

## The nouns:

### **bowl**

*adjectives:* large, small, medium-sized, soup, mixing, sugar, soup

*verbs:* put / place in ... / into ..., pour into ..., mix, beat, stir, mash

*adverbials:* stir until smooth / together

*useful phrases:* to transfer to a mixing bowl, to place the bowl in hot water, to combine all the ingredients in a bowl

### **eggs**

*adjectives:* beaten, raw, fresh, free-range, whole, finely-chopped

*verbs:* add, beat, whisk, separate

*adverbials:* cook until firm, whisk / beat until stiff

*useful phrases:* egg whites, egg yolk, egg mixture, hard-boiled egg

### **pan**

*adjectives:* frying, large, shallow, wide, covered, non-stick, heavy(-based)

*verbs:* put st in ..., remove from the heat, place over the heat, heat the pan

*adverbials:* lightly grease a roasting pan, until the mixture begins to thicken

*useful phrases:* seeds roasted to gold in a pan without oil, fry the cutlets until golden brown

### **oven**

*adjectives:* gas, electric, pre-heated, microwave, moderate, hot

*verbs:* heat, cook in ..., reduce to ..., bake in ... for

*adverbials:* to bake uncovered, to cover tightly, under the grill, straight from the oven

*useful phrases:* set the oven at gas mark x, pre-heat the oven to x degrees, to warm in a moderate oven before serving

## Prepare the following topics in the same way:

The most unpleasant person I have ever met (p. 7)

Love story (p. 11)

Young people in the Czech Republic (p. 13)

When should people get married? (p. 14)

My ideal home (pp. 18–21)

Should fast food be banned? (pp. 33–34)

Chain stores or small shops? (pp. 43–45)

What clothes should a student coming to the Czech Republic between February and May pack? (pp. 48–55)

My typical working day, and one of my weekends (p. 60)

Some of the pros and cons of modern communication (pp. 75–78)



# TOWN & COUNTRY

## THE MODERN VILLAGE

**1** In your country, what image do people in the cities have of people who live in the countryside? Do the two groups like each other?

**2** Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of living in the city versus living in the country.



I've lived in this little village all my life. I was born in the house I now live in, I went to school at the little school over there when it was just a one-room school, and after the war, I came back to raise my crops and my family like

my father did and his father before him. You see, I like this life. I've seen what life in the city is like, so I'm not just some ignorant country boy. *I don't want to change.* I'm a farmer, and that's all I ever wanted to be.

Unfortunately, it seems that these days if you don't go to change then change will come to you, and that's exactly what's happened here, in this village. You see, it seems rents are getting a little too high over there in the city, so those rich folks have all decided to come out and live in the village. I suppose they think it's quaint. They like the small town charm of the place and the peace and quiet.

What they don't seem to understand, however, is that by moving out here they're ruining everything they find quaint about these villages. This little town has doubled in size over the last ten years, as all of them folks come out here to build their big, fancy



houses. And they use up so much land! I've seen so much good, arable land get developed over, just so some rich doctor or computer programmer can have a second home for weekends and summer.

The facilities here just weren't designed for this many people. There's only one road that comes into the town, and it's just a little two-lane road that winds its way past the chapel, then through the town square. Well, it just can't handle all of the traffic that goes through here on weekends now, and on some Sundays you have to go through hell and back just to get to church. The same thing goes for our town store and the school.



But the worst part is that with all of these rich people coming in here, the price of everything has gone way up, especially housing. Landowners are seeing that they can get more money by renting or selling to people from the city, and now youngsters from

good farming families don't have a place to move out to when they get married, just so some city-slicker can have a second home. It makes me sick, I tell you. I say, let the city folks stay in the cities, and leave the country to us!


### 3 Read the text and answer the questions below.

Find a word that means the following:

- attractive in an old-fashioned way
- appeal, attraction
- grew larger
- good for farming
- built over
- establishments that provide basic services for a place or activity
- follows a twisting course

In your own words, discuss in pairs.

- a How does the author feel about his home and his lifestyle?
- b How does he feel about cities?
- c Why are more people moving from the cities to the country?
- d How has this affected farming in the area?
- e How has the village changed since people from the cities started moving into it?

**4**  You will now hear an affluent professional who moved to the village from the city talking about what life in the village is like. How do you think his description will differ from that of the farmer?

### 5 Answer the following questions according to the listening.

What does Billy think about the following things?

- Mark's house
- people in the village
- life in the village

Does Mark agree with him?

### 6 In pairs, act out a conversation between Mark and the author of the text on the previous page.

### 7 Listen again and concentrate on the meaning of the following expressions.

- a large wicker chair
- a small shack
- on the outskirts
- in the sticks
- in the middle of nowhere
- a bit of peace and quiet
- a game of darts
- a nice old bloke
- the weirdest thing

Write a short summary of the dialogue using some of the above collocations.

## The Modern Village

village shop  
general store  
smithy  
forge  
craft workshop  
pottery  
local industry  
traditional craft  
church  
chapel  
kirk (Scots)  
vicar  
rector  
priest

minister  
light industry  
peace and quiet  
slow pace of life  
minimal / basic facilities  
agricultural wages  
labour / labourers  
manual  
casual  
migrant  
seasonal  
backward areas  
retired couples  
outsiders

house and grounds  
gentry  
nouveau riche  
country squire  
lord of the manor  
forester  
woodcutter / lumberjack (US)  
gamekeeper  
poacher  
main road  
bypass  
subsidised development  
nimby (Not In My Back Yard)



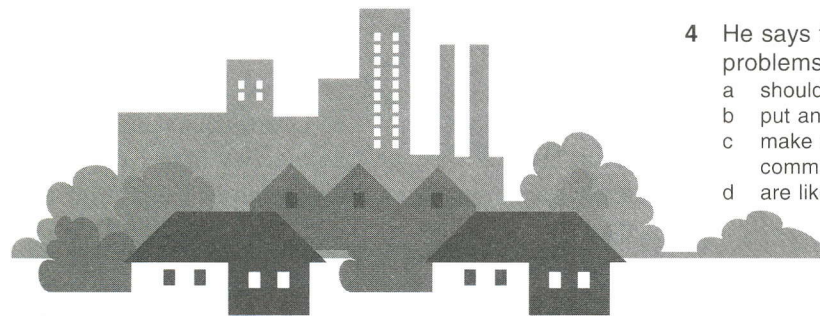
# THE MODERN CITY


**1** Describe the nicest neighbourhood in your (nearest) city or town. What kind of people live there? What kinds of houses and services does the neighbourhood have?  
Now compare this description to the worst neighbourhood in your town or city.

**2** Are there homeless people in your town or city? Where can you find them?

Are there any organizations working to help them?

The speaker in the following exercise has some definite views on the homeless. Many people might disagree; imagine you are one of them and make notes to give an opposing speech.



**3**  Read the questions below and try to predict the answers. Then listen to the recording and check if you were right.

- 1 The speaker says that homelessness can be blamed on
  - a society.
  - b the breakdown of families.
  - c the economic situation.
  - d homeless people.
- 2 He says that homeless people don't have jobs because
  - a they're drunk all of the time.
  - b they don't want to.
  - c they're too dirty.
  - d they have mental problems.
- 3 He says that the main thing that annoys him is
  - a seeing them sleeping around the train station.
  - b being asked to buy alcohol for them.
  - c the use of taxes to pay for homeless programmes.
  - d that society neglects people with mental problems.
- 4 He says that homeless people with mental problems
  - a should be in institutions.
  - b put an unnecessary burden on their families.
  - c make up only a small percentage of the homeless community.
  - d are like brothers to him.

## The Modern City

### Urban 'geography'

population density  
census  
seaboard town / coastal town  
port × harbour  
holiday resort  
provincial × industrial town  
market town  
suburbs / suburban sprawl  
ribbon development  
built-up area  
town centre (GB) / downtown (US)  
commercial centre  
on the outskirts × inner city  
cathedral (makes a town a city)  
community church  
church hall  
community centre  
mosque (for Moslems)  
temple (for Hindus and mainly Buddhists)  
gurdwara (for Sikhs)  
synagogue (for Jews)  
art-gallery  
botanical gardens

amusement park / funfair  
busker (GB) / street musician  
playground  
adventure playground  
climbing frame  
slide  
sandpit  
sports complex / centre  
gasworks  
brewery  
cemetery / graveyard  
barracks  
warehouse  
office block / skyscraper  
police station / headquarters  
multi-storey car-park  
out-of-town shopping centre  
hypermarket  
slum / economically and socially deprived area  
shanty town  
neglected area / shabby housing  
housing estate (GB) / neighbourhood (US)

council estate (GB) / flats / high-rise estate / housing project (US)  
graffiti  
ghetto  
vandalism  
green spaces / parks / greenbelt  
wide, straight streets × narrow, winding alleys  
high street (GB) / main street (US)  
blind alley / cul-de-sac  
pedestrian precinct

### Types / names of streets

avenue  
road  
alley  
lane  
row  
terrace  
embankment (GB) / riverside drive (US)  
crescent  
boulevard  
arcade  
square  
circus

**4** Read the text on the right and find a word that means:

- 1 a major movement of people or animals
- 2 grow
- 3 already partially built
- 4 run away from
- 5 crowded
- 6 change in direction
- 7 things that make you very unhappy
- 8 clean but lifeless
- 9 money and materials
- 10 lack of care

**5** Here are the answers to some questions. Try to work out the questions.

- a To find affordable housing.
- b Over the last thirty years.
- c They don't look very nice.
- d Noise, pollution, and violence.
- e Because so many people live in the suburbs and have to use them to get to work.
- f Because they are cheaper and more interesting than the suburbs.
- g Because they have the money needed to deal with the inner city's problems.



# RETURN TO THE INNER CITY

Over the last thirty years, a migration took place in most major American cities – a migration away from the inner cities. As cities expanded in both population and size, many people have decided to move away from city centers and out to the suburbs. There were many reasons for this change. Probably the most important was the opportunity of owning a house in the suburbs. Every day construction companies built more tract homes: cheap and often prefabricated houses which, although not very beautiful, were economical and within reach of middle-class families looking to own their own house.

Economic considerations, however, were not the only reasons for the migration to the suburbs. Many people were also trying to escape the negative aspects of the inner cities. They grew tired of living in cramped and expensive apartments, surrounded by noise and pollution. Another major concern was safety. With crime, especially violent crime, on the rise in many American cities, many people decided that the inner cities were not a safe place to live, especially if there were children involved. Thus much of the upper and middle classes fled the inner cities, leaving the poor to inhabit the city centres.

In recent years, however, some American cities have seen a reversal of this trend. As more and more people move out to the suburbs, the freeways and public transportation systems that take these people to their jobs in the cities have become overcrowded, leading to all the miseries of heavy commuter traffic. Many of the suburbs have also become more expensive to live in, while the apartments in the inner cities have dropped somewhat in price. Also, the suburbs can often be sterile, boring places, faceless blocks of tract houses and shopping malls with no cultural life or entertainment. The result of these factors is that some middle-class professionals have started moving back into the city, bringing with them the resources and the initiative needed to revive the run-down city centres and help deal with some of the problems that decades of poverty and neglect have brought about.



# WASTE DISPOSAL AND OTHER SERVICES

**1** Going through the rubbish, take a look at the contents of one household's dustbin. Which of these items could be recycled, reused, or put to use in a better way than being thrown out?



empty tins of soup  
beer bottles  
potato peelings  
an old ripped shirt  
lawn clippings  
newspapers  
food that has gone off  
empty mayonnaise jars  
plastic shopping bags  
a broken plate  
junk mail  
plastic bottles

**2** How would you expect household rubbish to be different in 1950 and today?

**3** What do you think is better for the inhabitants of towns – should services like waste disposal, water supply or fire brigade be private enterprises or is it more advantageous if they are run by local councils or even by the state?

**4** The town council of Crustystown is going to debate the following proposal. Does your city offer any of these?

## THE TOWN COUNCIL OF CRUSTYSTOWN

will today hear a motion to rework the Crustystown Waste Disposal Centre to make it more environmentally friendly. Some of the proposed changes are:

1. Placing recycling bins outside the disposal centre.
2. Setting up a recycling centre which would take old furniture & appliances and fix them up for sale later.
3. Making a separate section for wood & garden cuttings, which could be turned into farming products such as mulch or compost.

**5** Now take a role card from your teacher and act out the meeting.

## Waste Disposal

dustbin (GB) / garbage can (US)  
dustbin day (GB) / garbage pick-up (US)  
dustman / waste disposal operative (GB) / garbage collector / man (US)  
dustcart (GB) / garbage truck (US)  
rubbish dump (GB) / tip (US)  
to recycle  
biodegradable  
incinerator  
scrap-heap (GB) / junk yard (US)  
bottle bank  
skip  
street cleaners / street sweepers  
fly-tipping / illegal dumping  
(to) litter  
litter-bin (GB) / trash can (US)  
toxic waste  
waste refrigerants / fluorocarbons  
to damage the ozone layer  
packaging  
plastic bags  
styrofoam / polystyrene

## Water

town reservoir (the dam is the wall that holds it back)  
annual rainfall  
drought / dry spell × floods  
available reserves  
algae bloom  
garden hose  
hosepipe ban  
metered water  
waterworks  
home filters  
sanitation, department of sanitation  
drain  
gutter  
sewer  
sewage disposal plant  
maintenance personnel in uniform × in plain clothes  
rat  
vermin  
unhygienic conditions  
chemical runoff  
public lavatories / toilets / conveniences

## Emergency Services

to dial 999 (GB) / 911 (US)  
fire escape  
fire extinguisher  
fire brigade (GB) / fire department (US)  
fire station  
fire engine (GB) / fire truck (US)  
siren  
ladder  
extension ladder  
(fire)hose  
hydrant  
overcome by smoke  
(in)flammable × non-inflammable  
fire-resistant fabric  
fireproof material  
local council budget  
lax enforcement of regulations  
not enough inspectors

# ASKING AND TELLING THE WAY

**1** You are in Prague, crossing Charles Bridge. A tourist asks you the way to the Castle. Give him the appropriate directions.

it's half-way along this street  
close to / next to  
it's still a long way away  
the number three bus goes past it  
straight on  
second left after the lights  
opposite  
pass .... on your right and you can't miss it  
then ask again  
get on the 16 bus at the square  
get off at the fourth stop  
switch over to / change / transfer (US) to the 73 bus  
cross the bridge / street

**2** Choose another city you and your partner know well. Ask him/her to tell you the way to some places there, e.g.

a railway station  
a museum  
a street market  
a department store, etc.

**3** Take turns asking the way and giving directions, using the map and the expressions below.

Example:

*Is it a long way to...?*

*Can you tell me the way to ... , please?*

*Excuse me. How do I get to ... ?*

*Can you help me, please? I'm lost.*

*I seem to be lost.*

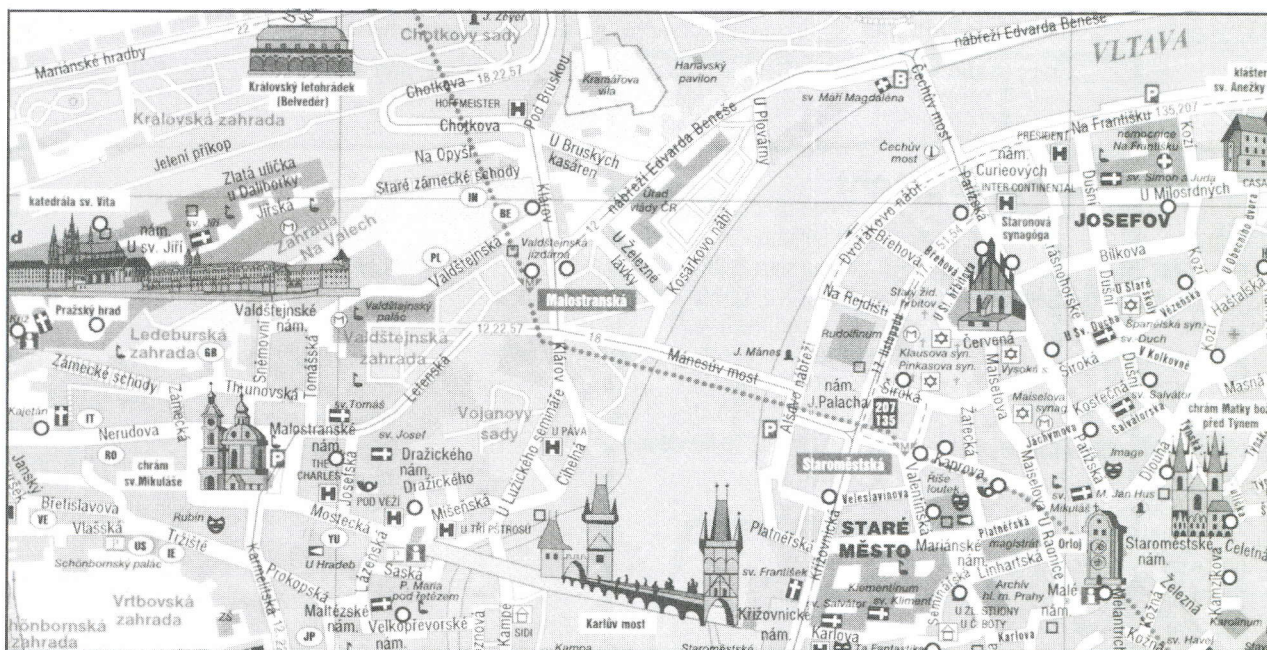
*Is this the right way to ... ?*

*Could you show me on the map where ... is?*

*Do you know where ... is?*

*Is there ... near here?*

**4** Describe the way from your school to somewhere in particular and let your classmates guess where you are going. This is best done in groups of three to five students. The most complicated description is then presented to the class.





# CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

## 1 Read the following story and fill in the correct verb forms.

The story begins one day when Ms Barlow 1\_\_\_\_\_ (call) the police and 2\_\_\_\_\_ (tell) them that her two sons, aged 8 and 12, 3\_\_\_\_\_ (kidnap). She 4\_\_\_\_\_ (give) the police a description of the kidnapper and 5\_\_\_\_\_ (tell) them that he 6\_\_\_\_\_ (use) her car to escape. An extensive manhunt 7\_\_\_\_\_ (begin), and the police finally 8\_\_\_\_\_ (apprehend) a young man, Mr Houlbrooke, and 9\_\_\_\_\_ (charge) him with the kidnappings. The police's case against Mr Houlbrooke was, however, very weak. They 10\_\_\_\_\_ (can) only prove that he 11\_\_\_\_\_ (see) 12\_\_\_\_\_ (lurk) around Ms Barlow's neighbourhood, and there was no sign of the car or the two boys. Mr Houlbrooke 13\_\_\_\_\_ (insist) that he 14\_\_\_\_\_ (be) innocent and even 15\_\_\_\_\_ (produce) an alibi for the time of the kidnapping. What further 16\_\_\_\_\_ (confuse) the police was that Ms Barlow 17\_\_\_\_\_ (not contact) by the kidnappers and no ransom demands 18\_\_\_\_\_ (ever make).

Throughout the ordeal, Ms Barlow 19\_\_\_\_\_ (act) strangely, but the police just 20\_\_\_\_\_ (think) it was due to the stress she was under. Then, the police got a break in the case. Two fishermen 21\_\_\_\_\_ (find) Ms Barlow's car in a river. Inside the car 22\_\_\_\_\_ (be) the bodies of the two young boys. At this point, Ms Barlow completely 23\_\_\_\_\_ (break) down, and finally 24\_\_\_\_\_ (confess) that she 25\_\_\_\_\_ (kill) her sons and then 26\_\_\_\_\_ (make) up the whole story 27\_\_\_\_\_ (cover) it up. She 28\_\_\_\_\_ (immediately arrest) and 29\_\_\_\_\_ (charge) with two counts of murder, and the charges against Mr Houlbrooke 30\_\_\_\_\_ (drop) and he 31\_\_\_\_\_ (release) from custody.

At Ms Barlow's trial, the prosecutor 32\_\_\_\_\_ (portray) Ms Barlow as a monster and 33\_\_\_\_\_ (ask) for the death penalty. Ms Barlow, however, 34\_\_\_\_\_ (plead) insanity. Several witnesses 35\_\_\_\_\_ (testify) that she 36\_\_\_\_\_ (have) a long history of mental instability, and the state psychiatrist 37\_\_\_\_\_ (pronounce) her medically incapable of 38\_\_\_\_\_ (distinguish) between right and wrong. She 39\_\_\_\_\_ (acquit) of the murders of her two sons and 40\_\_\_\_\_ (send) to a psychiatric hospital, where she 41\_\_\_\_\_ (stay) for two years. Now, only three years after the whole case 42\_\_\_\_\_ (begin) and after 43\_\_\_\_\_ (serve) no time in prison whatsoever, she 44\_\_\_\_\_ (live) in the same house where she 45\_\_\_\_\_ (raise), and 46\_\_\_\_\_ (kill) her two sons.

### Crime and Punishment

mugging  
no-go area  
"I'm afraid to go out alone at night."  
police corruption  
bent coppers  
perjury  
policeman / bobby / copper  
cop  
on the beat (GB) /  
on patrol (US)  
police car / patrol car (US)  
panda car  
detective

in uniform × in plain clothes  
flying squad (GB)  
SWAT (i.e. special weapons and tactical squad) (US)  
arrest / nick (coll.) / collar (coll.) / book (US coll.)  
to appear in court  
the accused in the dock  
magistrate  
judge  
witness  
lawyer  
solicitor  
barrister

counsel for the defence  
state prosecutor  
jury  
guilty × not guilty  
criminal  
cell in a jail / gaol / prison  
crime wave  
organised crime  
undermanned  
recruitment  
the underworld / professional criminals / crooks  
juvenile delinquents  
hooligans / vandals  
lager louts

**2** Match the following names of crimes to their descriptions on the right.

- 1 murder
- 2 blackmail
- 3 robbery
- 4 manslaughter
- 5 drunken driving
- 6 rape
- 7 burglary
- 8 mugging
- 9 assault
- 10 kidnapping

**3** Now give the verb used to talk about each crime and the name of the person who commits the crime.

**4** In small groups, decide what punishment should be given to each of the criminals.

The following verbs can help you.

to be sentenced to  
to get a jail sentence of  
to put sb behind bars  
to get away with  
to release sb on bail

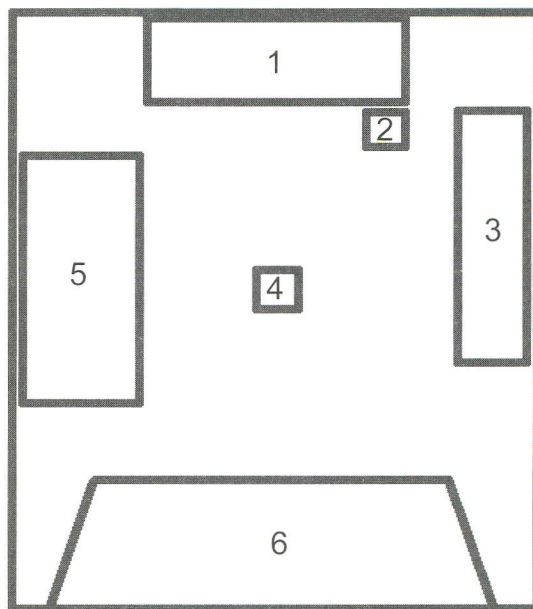
**5** Below is a diagram of a courtroom. Say who each of the people are, what they do and where they stand / sit.

jury  
judge  
public  
barrister  
accused / defendant  
dock  
witness box

You can also use some of the following verbs:

to be accused of  
to plead guilty  
to defend  
to testify  
to be under oath  
to rule

- a During a fight in a bar, one man unintentionally kills another man. The man who got killed was the one who started the fight.
- b A man goes out on a date with a woman and later forces her to have sex with him.
- c Two men abduct a rich businessman's son and demand one million dollars in ransom for his return. The men are caught and the boy is very scared but not physically hurt.
- d A man comes home to find his wife in bed with another man. He sneaks away, gets a gun, then shoots and kills both his wife and the man.
- e Two men go into a jewellery store and force the manager to give them all of the jewellery in the store. They are caught trying to get away. No one is hurt. Both men have a long criminal record.
- f A man gets involved in a car accident after running a red light. A breathalyser test shows that he has been drinking heavily. Both of the people in the other car are hospitalised.
- g A skinhead beats up a young boy outside a dance club. The skinhead has a history of violent crimes.
- h A young man breaks into an apartment and steals some valuables and a television. No one is hurt. The man is a drug addict and was stealing to buy more drugs.
- i Two men take pictures of a local politician picking up a prostitute. They threaten to release the pictures to the press if the politician does not pay a certain amount of money every month.
- j A homeless man beats up an old man and takes his wallet. The old man is not seriously hurt. It is later shown that the homeless man has serious mental problems.





# TOWN & COUNTRY – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**I** The expressions on the left are used to talk about crime. Match them with their meanings on the right.

- |    |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|
| 1  | black money   | a | a police informer, especially a narcotics agent                         |
| 2  | black market  | b | smuggled, stolen or illegally offered for sale                          |
| 3  | revolving-door (justice)                                | c | to steal  |
| 4  | a questionable payment                                  | d | to trick  |
| 5  | to help yourself  | e | cash made illegally or not declared for tax                             |
| 6  | grifter   | f | con man, trickster  |
| 7  | to help / assist the police (with their inquiries) (GB) | g | to be in custody for an offence for which you have not yet been charged |
| 8  | bootleg   | h | untaxed, unregulated, and often illegal business                        |
| 9  | narc  | i | bribe   |
| 10 | to con  | j | unduly lenient and ineffective (justice)                                |

**II** Insert the following words into the text below.

MISSING PROPERTY      WANTED      RETRIEVAL      STOLEN      URBAN      DIRECT ACCESS

Police radio-communications systems, which profited considerably from the advances in electronics during and after World War II and from developments in the U.S. space program, also benefited from the development of computers, which made possible the quick **11**\_\_\_\_\_ of information on **12**\_\_\_\_\_ property, **13**\_\_\_\_\_ persons, and other police intelligence. Many **14**\_\_\_\_\_ centres now use police cars that have **15**\_\_\_\_\_ to departmental computers and contain equipment capable of receiving printouts of orders and lists of wanted persons or **16**\_\_\_\_\_. However, the augmented flow of information has placed an added burden on existing communications systems.

**III** Sort the following verbs into groups according to their meaning. They go together with either the noun **COURT** (a), or with the noun **CRIME** (b).

- |    |                      |
|----|----------------------|
| 17 | to address           |
| 18 | to encourage         |
| 19 | to keep down         |
| 20 | to take sb to        |
| 21 | to hear evidence     |
| 22 | to wipe out          |
| 23 | to increase / reduce |
|    | a sentence           |

**IV** Which of the following verbs can be used with the word **FIRE** (a) and which with the word **WATER** (b)?

- |    |                       |
|----|-----------------------|
| 24 | bring under control   |
| 25 | catch                 |
| 26 | contaminate / pollute |
| 27 | draw                  |
| 28 | extinguish / put out  |
| 29 | pour                  |
| 30 | spread                |

# TOWN & COUNTRY – AND MORE PRACTICE...

The expressions on the left are used to talk about crime. Match them with their meanings on the right.

- |    |                               |   |  |
|----|-------------------------------|---|--|
| 1  | funny money                   | a | police officer   |
| 2  | private enterprise            | b | criminal   |
| 3  | rip off                       | c | cash that cannot be spent openly                           |
| 4  | copper                        | d | get undeserved punishment while the culprit goes free      |
| 5  | laundered money               | e | cheat  |
| 6  | black market                  | f | involving bribery, secret                                  |
| 7  | under the table               | g | having a criminal record or be suspected of crime          |
| 8  | carry the can / take the fall | h | illegal trading by an employee                             |
| 9  | known to the police           | i | funds improperly acquired made available for open spending |
| 10 | anti-social                   | j | illegal dealing in restricted goods                        |

Insert the following words into the text below.

**CRIME      FIRE STATIONS      PATROL CARS      AIRCRAFT      TRANSMISSION      MOBILE**

In a large city, the sources of information that must be fed into the central system are remarkably varied. Police may be on foot or motorcycles, in **11** \_\_\_\_\_, in patrol boats, or in **12** \_\_\_\_\_. In addition, the system must encompass links to **13** \_\_\_\_\_, ambulance services, traffic-control systems, rescue teams, alarm systems, emergency utility services, crime-information systems, and **14** \_\_\_\_\_ laboratories. A variety of fixed and **15** \_\_\_\_\_ systems are used, including radios, television (including closed-circuit), telephone, teletypewriters, and facsimile **16** \_\_\_\_\_.

Sort the following verbs into groups according to their meaning. They go together with either the noun **POLICE** (a), or with the noun **CRIMINAL** (b).

Which of the following adjectives can be used with the word **ROAD** (a) and which with the word **STREET** (b)? If there is an opposite, give the opposite as well.

- |    |                     |    |          |
|----|---------------------|----|----------|
| 17 | to combat crime     | 24 | back     |
| 18 | to commit crime     | 25 | country  |
| 19 | to take to crime    | 26 | dead-end |
| 20 | to reduce crime     | 27 | major    |
| 21 | to fight crime      | 28 | private  |
| 22 | to perpetrate crime | 29 | quiet    |
| 23 | to prevent crime    | 30 | ring     |



# SIGHTSEEING

**1** Which of the following cities is your favourite, or the one which you would most like to visit? List all of the reasons why you'd like to visit that city.

Tokyo	New York	London
Cairo	Prague	Paris
Rio de Janeiro	Beijing	
San Francisco	Sydney	



**2** How does your home town compare with these cities?  
Does it have any of the things that these other cities have?  
Does it have anything special and unique that these cities don't have?

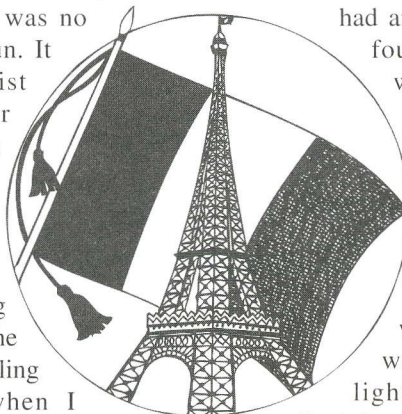
## MY FAVOURITE CITY

I first fell in love with Paris when I was backpacking around Europe. It's hard to explain what exactly made me fall in love with this particular city. It wasn't just the typical charm and romance of the place. By the time I arrived in Paris I'd been travelling for a month, so I'd seen plenty of charming and romantic places. As a matter of fact, I was starting to get a little sick of it. I had spent two months dragging myself from one museum or cathedral to another, going through town after beautiful town, until I realised that I was no longer having fun. It wasn't tourist fatigue or becoming desensitised by all of the paintings and churches I'd seen - it was something different. It was the strange, stuffy feeling I would get when I walked down the old cobblestone streets of Venice or Sienna, the feeling that I was walking in a dead city. Even the big capital cities didn't feel as if they had made their way into the twentieth century. They felt more like big museums dedicated to a golden age that had passed and would never return.

Paris, on the other hand, was like a breath of fresh air. It was full of life, teeming with it. It jumped through the window of my hostel every morning, waking me up with the cries of street vendors and rubbish collectors and passers-by. Of course Paris has all of the cathedrals and museums that you would expect from a European capital city. The difference is that in Paris

these things don't stop with the Renaissance. The Parisians have such a sense of style and taste that they've truly managed to blend modern art trends into the classical ones quite beautifully. I remember going into the courtyard of one beautiful old building, the name of which I never knew because, at the beginning of my stay, I had decided to exchange the hostel's tourist map for a regular road map. This building was obviously hundreds of years old, and yet it was filled with modern sculpture and had an incredible modern fountain that sprayed water beneath your feet. The mix of the classical and the modern was breathtaking. I'll never forget it.

The people were wonderful, too, which was quite a surprise, in light of the fact that Parisians have such a reputation for being unfriendly and snobbish. I think that people mistake confidence for snobbishness. Parisians are fiercely proud, not just of living in Paris, but of being Parisian. They aren't just sitting around trying to sell you Eiffel Tower paperweights and cheap souvenirs. They're always on the go, on their way to their jobs and their cultural events and their homes. The city doesn't live for tourism; it has a life of its own. It earns a lot of money from tourism, but you feel like there's so much life and economic activity that if one day all of the tourists stopped coming, Paris would somehow manage. And I bet it would.



# PLANNING A TOUR

## 3 Read the text and find a word that means the following:

- 1 fascination, attractiveness
- 2 extreme tiredness
- 3 to reduce or destroy the sensitivity of
- 4 lacking fresh air or ventilation
- 5 to be full of or swarming with
- 6 to form a harmonious compound
- 7 a feeling of reliance or certainty
- 8 vehemently, very strongly
- 9 to meet one's needs with limited resources

## 4 Choose the best answer.

- 1 The author feels that Paris is different from the other European cities he visited because
  - a it does not have the old-fashioned charm that the other cities have.
  - b other cities have more cathedrals and museums.
  - c Paris is more of a modern city.
  - d the other cities were not capital cities.
- 2 By the time he arrived in Paris, the author
  - a had become desensitised by seeing too many works of art.
  - b was tired of seeing villages and towns that were only quaint and charming.
  - c was starting to regret taking his trip.
  - d was tired and needed a rest.
- 3 The author feels that Paris' special appeal lies in its
  - a large collection of museums and churches.
  - b economic and cultural life.
  - c modern art exhibits.
  - d vibrant people and atmosphere.
- 4 The writer feels that tourism
  - a is not the main concern of most Parisians.
  - b is not an important part of Paris' economy.
  - c causes more harm than good.
  - d is resented by most Parisians.


**1** When you are sightseeing, do you prefer guided tours or going on your own? What are some of the reasons for and against each option? List them below.

**Guided tours**  
For

**Individual travel**  
For

Against

Against

**2**  You will hear a conversation between Mike, a tour guide, and his friend John. Mike talks about a tour he recently led through Italy. Below are some of the words from the story. Before you listen see if you can predict what Mike is going to say.

disaster Venice gondolas canal  
hospital Florence heat pensioners  
temper menus hamburgers

How would you describe Mike's tour group? How would you have dealt with the situations Mike talks about?

## Sightseeing

driving up prices  
foreign currency  
souvenir / gift shop  
town hall  
memorial  
monument  
fountain  
astronomical clock  
plague column  
ancient  
historical  
mediaeval  
building of historical significance  
modern building of particular architectural interest  
fine residence  
burgher's house  
aristocrat's house

convent  
monastery  
public buildings  
streets  
narrow  
twisty / winding  
cobble  
remains of old town walls  
fortifications  
city gate  
statue  
sculptural group  
tomb  
catacomb  
lookout tower  
ruins  
historical skyline  
cultural heritage  
priceless  
art / national treasure

## Planning a Tour

**Preparation**  
guide book  
field guide (to plants or animals)  
background research  
tourist information  
specialist map  
reference library  
phrase book  
local knowledge  
route planning

**Priorities and objectives**  
to wander around alone  
guide / courier  
on a guided coach tour  
conducted tour  
package tour  
party of tourists

national park  
arboretum  
formal / ornamental gardens  
safari park  
theme park  
Disneyland  
stately home (GB) / mansion (US)  
off the beaten track  
clubland / to go clubbing  
red-light area  
site of (pre)historical interest  
battleground  
historical re-enactment  
scenic viewpoint / panorama  
homes of the famous  
reconstruction of past life  
overload / tourist fatigue  
desensitisation



## TOUR SIGHTS

**1** Have you ever been to London? If so, talk about the place you liked most. If not, talk about whether you would like to go there, and what you would most like to see if you did.

**2** You are a tour guide who has been hired to take a group of pensioners around London for their first time. Usually, your tour would cover the six places below, but because your tour group is a bit older, you will only have time to see four of these places. Decide which places you want to visit, then write your welcome speech to your tour group, in which you tell them about the day's programme. You will find some useful expressions in the box on the following page.

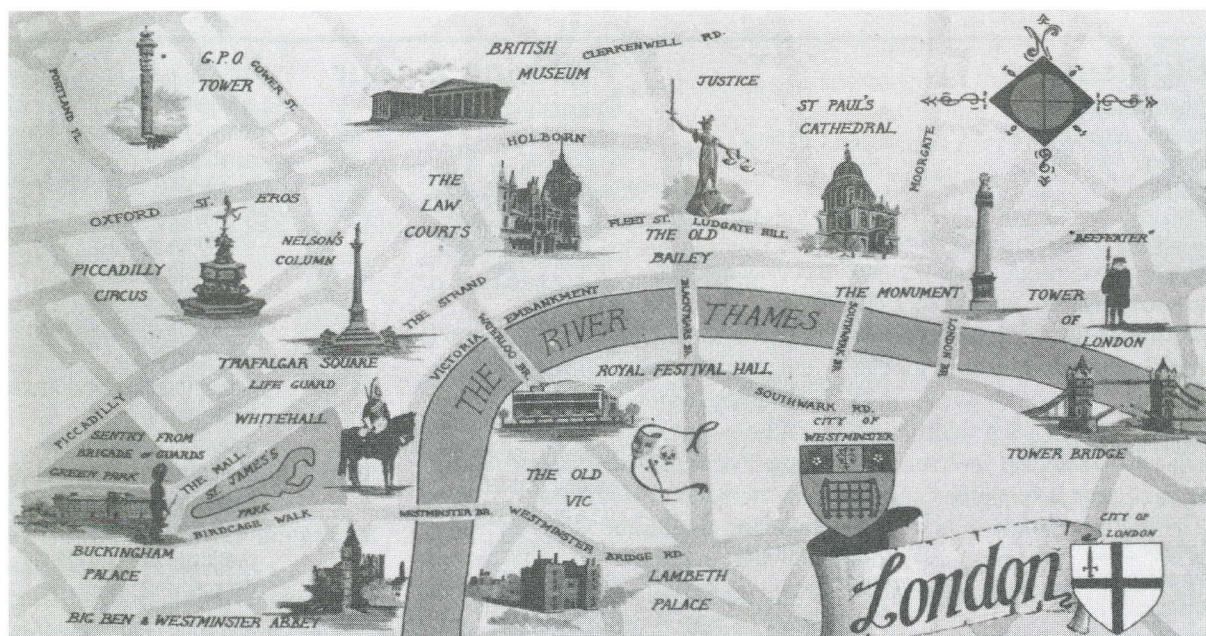
- Big Ben and Westminster Abbey, the most famous church in Britain. Kings and queens crowned here. Most royal weddings take place here.
- Buckingham Palace, London home of the royal family.
- Piccadilly Circus, the hub of London's night life, with good places to shop and eat.
- British Museum, holds some of the world's finest archaeological and ethnographic collections.
- St. Paul's Cathedral, large cathedral with wonderful statues and carvings in stone, wood, and iron.
- Tower Bridge, huge mechanical bridge, built in the late 19th century, which can be raised to allow boats to pass on the river, symbol for all of London.

**3** Write a similar speech for a tour of your city or another famous city you know well, using some of the following expressions.  
Present your speech to the class.

town hall      fountain      astronomical clock  
plague column      palace      convent      monastery  
abbey      fortifications      cobbled streets      city gate  
catacombs      cathedral      basilica      castle  
arboretum      theme park      botanical gardens  
red-light district      amusement park      safari park  
zoo      art gallery  
concert hall      theatres

**4** Your local town council has just announced that it is going to spend more money on tourist facilities such as public toilets, tourist maps, and even a promotional campaign to advertise your city in magazines abroad. Do you think this is a good use of money, or could the money be better spent on other projects?

**5** Answer the following questions:  
How has tourism affected your home city or a major city in your country?  
Are there certain nationalities who are better tourists than others?  
What image do people from your country have when they travel abroad?  
What London sights are missing in the picture below?





## 6 Read through the following guide to Westminster Abbey and find the numbered features on the map.

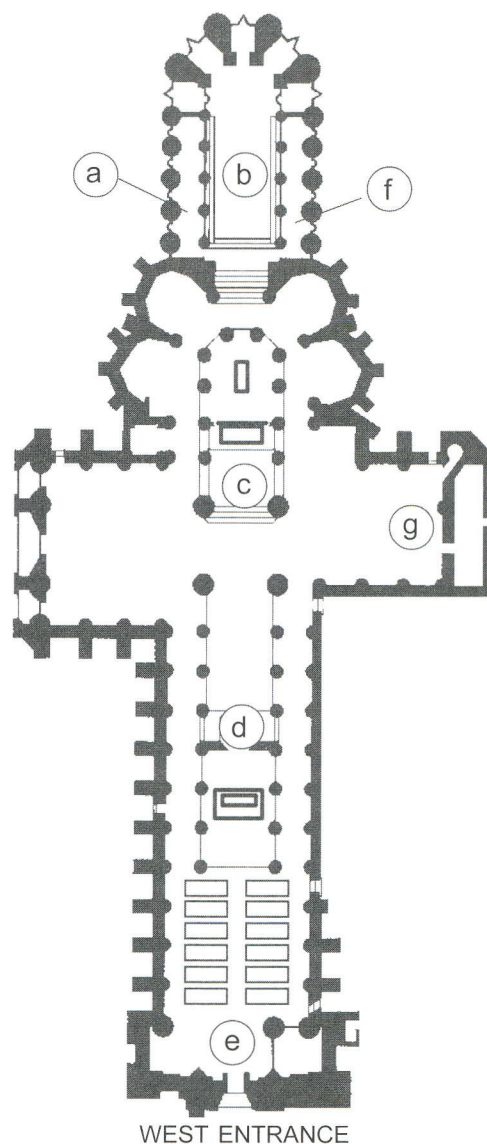
# WESTMINSTER ABBEY

Upon entering the Abbey from the West Door, the visitor is immediately confronted by the Grave of the Unknown Soldier (1). Located in the middle of the centre aisle, between the two rows of ancient oak pews, the Grave is a tribute to those that died in the First World War. From this point it is easy to appreciate the great height and proportions of the nave, which was constructed over three centuries.

In the middle of the nave stands the beautiful choir screen, which hides the choir from view during services. The choir screen's exquisite thirteenth century stonework is surrounded by newer neo-Gothic ornaments, which were added in the nineteenth century. Directly above the choir screen is the present organ (2), which evolved from one originally built in 1730. During services, the sounds of the choir and the organ seem to come out of the walls, bouncing off of the vaulting and arches in perfect waves.

One of the Abbey's most striking features is the rose window (3) in the back wall of the south transept. The window's magnificent stained glass has recently been restored, so that its colours now shine as brightly as they did when it was first constructed in the fifteenth century.

Moving past the transepts, we come to the High Altar (4). Behind the High Altar stand beautiful painted panels dating from the thirteenth century, and on the floor is an Italian mosaic of the same date. To the rear of the Abbey, in the Henry VII Chapel, are the tombs of the most famous British Monarchs. The tomb of Elizabeth I (5), on the left of the chapel, is located directly opposite the tomb of her great enemy, Mary, Queen of Scots (6). Finally, in the rear of the Chapel is the tomb of Henry VII (7), upon which sit two small stone angels holding Henry VII's coat of arms between them.



## Tour Sights

### City tour

to take sb round  
to start at  
through / via  
on our way to  
to drop in at  
to give a place the  
once-over  
to have a quick glance  
round  
pause for refreshment  
to take a quick break at  
to stop / stay over in  
obscure origins  
foundation stone  
date of foundation

city charter  
it dates back to / dates from  
to be rebuilt  
partly restored  
renovated in the Gothic (etc.)  
style  
the original building burnt down  
× was destroyed / demolished

### Church and cathedral

Orthodox / Protestant / Catholic  
church  
abbey  
parish  
bishopric  
dome  
tower × spire × steeple

chancel  
belfry  
crypt  
(flying) buttress  
vault  
fan vaulting  
vestry  
choir  
nave  
aisle  
transept  
pew  
font  
pulpit  
altar  
altarpiece

candlestick  
cross  
crucifix  
stained glass  
column  
fresco  
colonnade  
niche  
stations of the cross  
basilica  
rotunda  
pilgrimage site  
shrine

### Styles

late / early  
Gothic  
neoGothic  
Renaissance  
baroque / Baroque  
rococo / Rococo  
Romanesque  
Art Nouveau  
Tudor  
Georgian  
Regency  
Victorian



# SIGHTS – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Read the following text and put back the following expressions.

**RICH IN   DATING FROM   BANK   HUNDRED SPIRES   TAVERNS   HOUSING ESTATES**

The Vltava River cuts a north-south path through central Prague. On its left (west) bank are located the Royal Gardens, Hradčany (Prague Castle), and the Malá Strana ("Lesser Town"), which is blanketed by gardens and parks. The right (east) 1 \_\_\_\_\_ of the Vltava is dominated by the Staré Město ("Old Town," 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the 12th century) and the Nové Město ("New Town," 14th century). Both are 3 \_\_\_\_\_ historical monuments and churches, which account for the description of Prague as the "city of a 4 \_\_\_\_\_." The narrow streets, small 5 \_\_\_\_\_, and cosy restaurants of the older sections contrast with the broad sweep of Wenceslas Square as well as with modern parks and housing developments. New 6 \_\_\_\_\_, for example (referred to as "towns"), have been built on the periphery to accommodate the majority of Prague's population.

Two texts from tourist leaflets have been mixed together. Sort them out and provide them with titles.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7 The Argyllshire gathering has long been one of the highlights of the Highland Games season in Scotland.   | 13 There are piping and Highland dancing competitions, traditional heavy athletic events, track and field athletics, hill race, tug o' war competition, fun races, and other attractions. |
| 8 The Royal Palace of Falkland is a 16th-century Renaissance palace, with attractive gardens and the Royal Tennis Court, built as a country residence for the Stewart kings and queens.   | 14 A well-thought-out conservation policy has seen a restoration of the palace and the inclusion of craft shops, a weaver's cottage, tearooms, restaurants and hotels.                    |
| 9 Visitors will see the exquisite chapel, the fascinating Royal Tennis Court – the oldest in Britain – and the Royal apartments.  | 15 Meals and snacks are available on the field.   |
| 10 Oban Games take place at Mossfield Park, Oban, and start with the traditional march to the Games Field led by the Stewards of the Argyllshire gathering, accompanied by the pipers competing in the light music competitions on the Games Field. | 16 It is hoped that the Golden Lions Team will make a free-fall parachute drop during the Games, weather permitting.  |
| 11 Mary, Queen of Scots, spent many happy days at the palace playing the country girl in the parkland and woods.  | 17 Falkland is now a conservation area. On a walk through the streets, the visitor will spot many of the features that make the village attractive.                                       |
| 12 Today Falkland still prospers while retaining its character, which makes it such a tourist attraction.   | 18 If you are fond of things truly Highland, you will find them at the Oban Highland Games.   |
|   | 19 Admission price includes the programme of events.  |
|   | 20 In the town hall, across the street from the palace, an innovative exhibition describes the history of the building.   |

Some words have been changed in the following sentences. Find them and replace them with correct ones.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 21 As early as the ninth century, mention was done of a castle in Blois.                                    | 26 In 1450 he retired to his castle in Blois and organized poetry games in which everyone could take place. |
| 22 The Count of Blois, who owed Tours and Chartres, rebuilt this castle in the middle of the tenth century. | 27 François Villon came to the yard of Blois and participated in the competition.                           |
| 23 In 1230 the heritage was handed over to the Chatillon family who continued the conversion of the castle. | 28 The main wing looks over onto the front courtyard.   |
| 24 The earldom of Blois was bought to Duke Louis d'Orléans in 1391.   | 29 All these buildings, in the same style, were conducted over some ten years.                              |
| 25 The young Duke Charles was caught prisoner by the English.   | 30 The castle was latter the venue for festivals, love stories, endless dramas, and intrigues.              |

# SIGHTS – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Read the following text and put back the following expressions.

ANCIENT CORE   BAROQUE   GOTHIC   ROMANESQUE   CLASSICAL   CEMETERY

Prague's architectural treasures range from the 1 \_\_\_\_\_ (the 10th-century Church of St. George) through the 2 \_\_\_\_\_ (St. Vitus' Cathedral and Týn Church) to the 3 \_\_\_\_\_ (the Valdštejn and Clam-Gallas palaces), rococo (the Golz-Kinsky Palace), 4 \_\_\_\_\_ (the Bedřich Smetana Museum and the Belvedere Palace), and neoclassical (the National Museum and the National Theatre). The Old-New Synagogue and the Old Jewish 5 \_\_\_\_\_ – Europe's oldest – testify to the strong Jewish tradition in Prague's past life. New buildings have sprung up in and around Prague, but the 6 \_\_\_\_\_ of the city has been preserved.

Two texts from tourist leaflets have been mixed together. Sort them out and provide them with titles.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7 The Isle of Skye is a powerful attraction to visitors from all over the world.   | 14 Skye has suffered Norse invasion, bloody clan rivalry, the ruthless torching of townships and the banishment of their people in crowded emigrant ships.                   |
| 8 Many are drawn by its legendary beauty, and some of the wildest mountain and coastal scenery imaginable, while others come in search of family roots – for over the centuries many Gaels have made new lives overseas. | 15 In the 19th and 20th centuries, the cathedral was increasingly seen as the national church of Scotland, and its many monuments reflect this period.                       |
| 9 St Giles is a place to pause and think; a place where the Christian faith is explored and enjoyed; and so it has been for many centuries.  | 16 There are usually people available in the Cathedral who can give further information.   |
| 10 This is the High Kirk of Edinburgh which has been for over 1000 years the city church of Edinburgh.   | 17 But through it all, Gaels have nurtured a sense of independence – today their language flourishes, and the fragile system of crofting continues to texture the landscape. |
| 11 Common to all who visit us, however, is an appreciation of life's finer qualities, in particular the warm hospitality that is traditional here.   | 18 For sheer enjoyment, relaxation, quality accommodation, superb cuisine and warm hospitality, few areas can match Skye.  |
| 12 In the Middle Ages it became a collegiate church reflecting the growth of the capital of Scotland.  | 19 No wonder it remains one of the foremost holiday destinations – for people in the know.   |
| 13 In the 16th and 17th centuries, St Giles' was at the centre of the Scottish Reformation, led here by John Knox.   | 20 We hope that you will find here help and hope, encouragement and inspiration.   |

Some words have been changed in the following sentences. Find them and replace them with correct ones.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 21 The incursions of modern patterns of life have done much to weak the traditional arts, entertainments, and customs of regional and rural Germany.   | 26 Some customs have all but disappeared in the villages: older women seldom bear black dresses and scarves nowadays; and the village men no longer appear in top hat and cutaway for a funeral procession. |
| 22 Less so in southern Germany, where the older arts and customs have perceived concurrently with a gradual adaptation to a modern, urban pattern of life.   | 27 Popular festivals still abandon in the west, southwest, and south, the regions that have clung most to the practices of a traditional, preindustrial age.  |
| 23 The young still dance around the village mayrod, but they also dance to the disco beat.   | 28 Near-heathen usages such as the donning of elaborate wooden masks during the pre-Lenten celebrations in the southwest remain unaffected in spite of being televised.                                     |
| 24 The woodcarvers, violin makers, and gunsmiths of Upper Bavaria continue, under great economic press, to follow their trades.  | 29 In Roman Empire areas, hundreds of people march in full procession on Corpus Christi Day.  |
| 25 Pheasant women in the Black Forest still wear elaborate costumes known as Tracht on festival days, not to amaze tourists but because they have always done so - yet these are the areas in which the tourist industry is most highly developed. | 30 What is remarkable is not merely that these traditions survive but also that the homelier and less celebrated of them remain truly genuine and naive in their conservancy.                               |



# TRAVEL

## TRAVEL ABROAD

*"Travel is fatal to prejudice, bigotry, and narrow-mindedness..."*

*Mark Twain*

(American writer, satirist and world traveller, 1835–1910)



**1** Do you think Mark Twain was right? Explain your standpoint and give some examples.

**2** In groups of four, talk about travelling abroad. Speak about your first trips. Find out whose trip was the most interesting.

In pairs, tell your partner about the trip you would like to go for if you had the time and money.

Then tell the other pair what you have learned from your partner.

**3** Which of the following expressions can be used when talking about your trip abroad?

In what situations might you come across them?

### Travel Abroad

travel insurance / holiday insurance

checklist

passport / means of identification

booked in advance / reserved

cold-weather gear

raingear

swimwear

towel

toilet articles

first aid kit

basic medicines

suitcase × briefcase

holdall

rucksack (GB) / backpack (US)

multipurpose pocket knife /

penknife

walking holiday

to tour by car × by coach × by public transport

package tour

travel literature

brochure

to travel light

to take everything but the kitchen sink

to apply for a passport

high commission

consulate / embassy

visa

entry

transit

exit

multiple entry

restricted

valid for *n* weeks

to be refused a visa

to extend a visa  
work permit

alien

customs (inspection)

"Have you anything to declare?"

to smuggle

immigration (control)

dutiable goods

import tax

forbidden exports

inoculation certificate

to change money

bureau de change

rate of exchange

**1** Many people are afraid of flying, but is this fear really well-founded? List all of the dangers of flying and the dangers of travelling by coach. Which one is more dangerous?

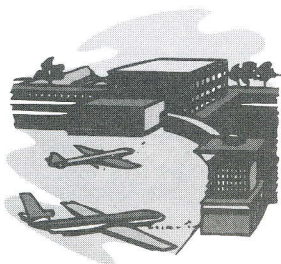
**2** Look at the expressions in the box. Group some of them under the following headings.

**airport**

**plane**

**3** Read the announcements on the right. In what situations would you hear them? Talk about them and put them into order in the three groups mentioned above.

**4** Shut your book and list the steps involved in a flight.



- a "Welcome on board. This is the captain speaking. We are now flying at 15,000 feet. In a short while the flight attendants will be coming round to offer you a drink and some light refreshments."
- b "Would you like a window or aisle seat?"
- c "Yes, you can buy another carton of cigarettes without exceeding your duty-free limit."
- d "We are sorry to announce that flight 157 to Paris will be delayed by thirty minutes."
- e "Please place all metal objects in the tray and step through the metal detector."
- f "Is the purpose of your visit business or pleasure?"
- g "After claiming your baggage at carousel 3, please make your way to customs and passport control."
- h "Sorry about the bumpy ride there, folks. We ran into a little bit of turbulence, but it should be smooth flying from here on out."
- i "Yes, we do have a discount ticket on British Airways, but it leaves on December 15 and not 16."
- j "Please fasten your seat belts and bring your seats to the full upright position."
- k "We are sorry to announce that the flight has been overbooked. If there are any volunteers willing to wait for the next flight, please make your way to the front counter now."
- l "We would like to bring your attention to some of the safety features of this aircraft."
- m "Please have your passports and boarding cards ready as you come to the gate."

## Air Travel

national airline  
major carrier  
charter  
budget flight  
discount tickets  
bucket shop  
stand-by  
domestic flight  
shuttle  
club class  
business class  
economy class  
air terminal (in town)  
long-term car park  
arrival board × departure board  
check-in counter  
to check in  
overbooked flight  
boarding card  
security check  
departure lounge

duty-free goods  
to have one's flight called  
to board the plane  
fasten your seat belts  
non-smoking flight  
to take off  
on takeoff  
to be airborne  
to climb × lose height  
reclining seats  
air hostess / stewardess  
steward  
flight attendants  
captain / pilot  
cabin crew  
smooth × bumpy journey / flight  
turbulence  
airsick  
in-flight entertainment  
diverted to  
delayed  
to be held in the stack  
on the approach

to land / touch down  
transit lounge  
baggage (re)claim  
to hijack  
to be taken hostage  
plane crash  
mid-air collision

### Aircraft

airliner  
jet engine  
jumbo jet  
airbus  
fuselage  
propeller  
turbo-prop  
supersonic transport  
short-haul transport  
light plane  
STOL (short takeoff and landing)  
helicopter / copter  
wings  
cockpit



# SEA TRAVEL

**1** Read the advertisement on the right and fill the gaps using the words below.

cruise sail dock board  
cabin suites liner ports  
guides land ruins

**2** Below are the descriptions of a couple who took the cruise. In pairs, try to think of what they thought of the cruise and some of the things that might have happened to them on the cruise. Then role-play a conversation between them.

**Mary Prescott**

fell in love with the Greek Islands when she travelled through them as a college student and has always wanted to go back

wants to get into really close contact with the culture and meet the people

hates tourist areas, prefers finding places off the beaten track

had never been on a cruise ship before

**Paul Prescott**

has been working extremely hard, just wants to relax on his vacation and enjoy some nice weather

doesn't like hurrying from one hotel to another and trying to deal with people who don't speak English

isn't particularly interested in Greece, but knows that Mary loves it

likes the idea of spending some time on a ship as it reminds him of his days in the navy

## WHY WAIT FOR SUMMER TO COME TO YOU WHEN YOU CAN GO TO SUMMER ON A SMOOTH SAILING LUXURY CRUISE OF THE GREEK ISLANDS

Luxury Cruise Lines' spring season has now begun, and we're kicking the year off with a bang with a special offer on a fabulous

1 \_\_\_\_\_ round the Greek Islands. Come and 2 \_\_\_\_\_

with us through the beautiful green waters of the Mediterranean, where summer comes a little bit sooner and a whole lot hotter! We'll

3 \_\_\_\_\_ at 4 \_\_\_\_\_ on seven beautiful Greek Islands,

where our knowledgeable tour 5 \_\_\_\_\_ will show you timeless

Greek 6 \_\_\_\_\_, romantic wilderness, and exciting cities.

Discover the joy of languishing in a romantic waterfall, or shopping in a small seaside open market.

But not all of the action takes place on 7 \_\_\_\_\_! You'll find

everything you need to feel at home on 8 \_\_\_\_\_ our

Luxury Cruise Liner. We have a wide range of comfortable accommodation, starting with the economical single or

double 9 \_\_\_\_\_ and going all the way up to

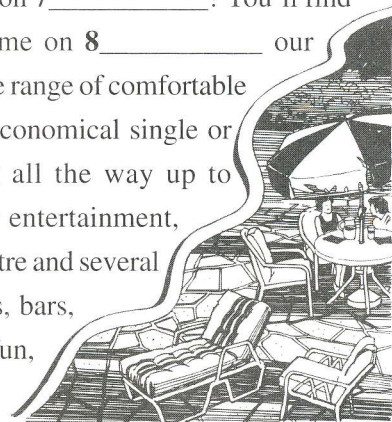
luxurious 10 \_\_\_\_\_. As for entertainment,

each 11 \_\_\_\_\_ has a fitness centre and several

swimming pools, as well as casinos, bars,

and showrooms. So come join the fun,

and sail off into summer!



**3** Now listen to a conversation between Paul and Mary. How close were you to what they actually said?

### Sea Travel

#### Some types of vessel

boat × ship × liner  
ocean liner  
cruise ship  
ferry (boat)  
car ferry  
RORO (roll on, roll off)  
tug  
hovercraft  
hydrofoil  
merchant ship  
cargo ship  
paddle steamer  
launch

yacht  
sailing ship / tall ship  
sailing boat  
lifeboat  
fishing boat  
pilot boat

#### Embarkation

port × harbour (GB) /  
harbor (US)  
quay (side)  
dock  
harbour arm  
gangway / gangplank  
bonded store / bonded area

not wanted on voyage  
(about goods)  
cabin × double cabin  
sleeping berth  
stateroom  
lounge  
to leave on the next tide  
to sound the siren

#### Voyage

rough passage  
freak wave  
smooth crossing  
glass-calm  
roll × pitch  
huge waves

to be seasick / vomit /  
throw up  
to get one's sea legs  
to lose sight of shore  
to drop × weigh anchor  
to ride at anchor  
to moor to a buoy  
to change course for  
to heave to in a storm  
to raise land  
to come in to port  
to dock at  
to lower the gangplank  
to disembark  
to set foot on dry land

# ACCOMMODATION

**1** Look at this page from a travel book and say what kind of person each place is most suitable for? Which one would you rather stay at?

**Prince Hotel** A luxurious hotel situated directly in the centre of town. Spacious rooms, equipped with satellite TV, phones, hydro-massage baths and fully stocked bars. The restaurant is amongst the finest in town, and room service is available 24 hours a day. Friendly receptionists and staff, a wide range of services (including Swedish massage and sauna), and little special touches like a rose on every pillow combine to make this hotel truly the best place in town.

**Shining Coast B&B** A three-hundred-year old redbrick house located just outside of the centre in a quiet residential neighbourhood. Come in and chat over breakfast with Molly, the owner, or enjoy breakfast in bed. The rooms are small but cosy and decorated with a personal touch from Molly's own family treasures. Good connections to public transport both to the city centre and the beach.

**Sheldon International** Conveniently located near the train station with free hourly shuttle service to the airport. This comfortable, if somewhat sterile, hotel features tidy and economical rooms, full fax and internet services, and a conference hall which seats 300. The restaurant is open 24 hours, and the hotel also features a cosy tavern and spacious lounge.

**Johnson Youth Hostel** A lively atmosphere and surprisingly clean rooms make this the best hostel in town. Choose from two-, three-, or four-bed rooms, or take a cheaper bed in the dorms. There's a laundry service available, and a kitchen if you want to save money by not eating out. The cafe serves breakfast until noon and the bar is open all night! A great place!

**2** Fill in the missing lines in the following dialogue.

- A Good morning, Sheldon International. How may I help you?
- B \_\_\_\_\_
- A One moment, please. I'm sorry, I'm afraid we're fully booked on the 15th.
- B \_\_\_\_\_
- A Yes, I'm quite positive. We are hosting a convention that week. But there are vacancies on the 16th.
- B \_\_\_\_\_
- A Fine, the sixteenth then. And will that be a single or double room?
- B \_\_\_\_\_
- A No, I'm afraid all of the rooms with a view of the ocean are doubles. The singles are mostly on the other side, facing the gardens. It's still a lovely view, though.
- B \_\_\_\_\_
- A Fine, a single facing the gardens. And how long will you be staying with us?
- B \_\_\_\_\_
- A OK, I have you confirmed for a single room in the rear courtyard for March 16th. Could I please have your name and phone number?
- B \_\_\_\_\_
- A Fine. Your room is reserved, and we look forward to your staying with us.
- B \_\_\_\_\_
- A We have a shuttle that runs to the airport every two hours. It stops just outside the international terminal.
- B \_\_\_\_\_
- A You're welcome. Goodbye.

**3** Now role-play a similar dialogue for one of the hotels described above.

## Accommodation

luxury hotel  
five-star hotel  
family hotel  
boarding house  
self-catering holiday flat  
bed and breakfast (B & B)  
youth hostel  
backpackers  
chalet (GB) / cabin (US)  
motel

campsite  
washing, cooking, shower etc.  
facilities  
room and board  
full board × half board  
self-catering  
high season × off-season  
no vacancies × rooms free / vacancies  
to be fully booked / be booked out  
single × double room × suite  
penthouse

to check in × check out  
to sign the guest book  
to fill out a registration form  
to call room service  
manager  
reception clerk  
porter  
chambermaid  
liftboy / bellhop (boy) (US)  
doorman / commissionaire  
concierge



# DRIVING

**1** Put the following steps to pulling a car out of a parking space in the correct order by numbering the sentences.

- ☐ get into the car
- ☐ take off the hand-brake
- ☐ start the car
- ☐ put the car into neutral
- ☐ check your rear-view mirror
- ☐ put the car into reverse
- ☐ put the key into the ignition
- ☐ put in the clutch
- ☐ put the car in first (gear)
- ☐ reverse as far as possible
- ☐ indicate
- ☐ put on your seat belt
- ☐ when there are no cars coming, let in the clutch, step on the accelerator, and pull out

**2** Look at the following road signs. Compare them to the road signs in your country and say what they mean.



**3** Here are the names of the road signs. Match them with the symbols above.

cyclists only  
steep hill  
level crossing  
no overtaking  
no left turn  
give way

roundabout  
roadworks ahead  
no U-turn  
no through road  
slippery road  
stop

**4** Draw some more road signs and explain their meanings.

## Driving

to start the engine  
to look in the mirror  
to indicate  
to pull away  
to put in the clutch  
to change gear  
to change up × down  
to accelerate × decelerate  
to put on the brake / brake  
to reverse (GB) /  
back up (US)  
to observe × break the speed limit  
to speed  
to overtake (GB) / pass (US)  
to skid  
to get into a slide  
to have an accident / crash  
minor shunt (GB) /  
fender bender (US coll.)

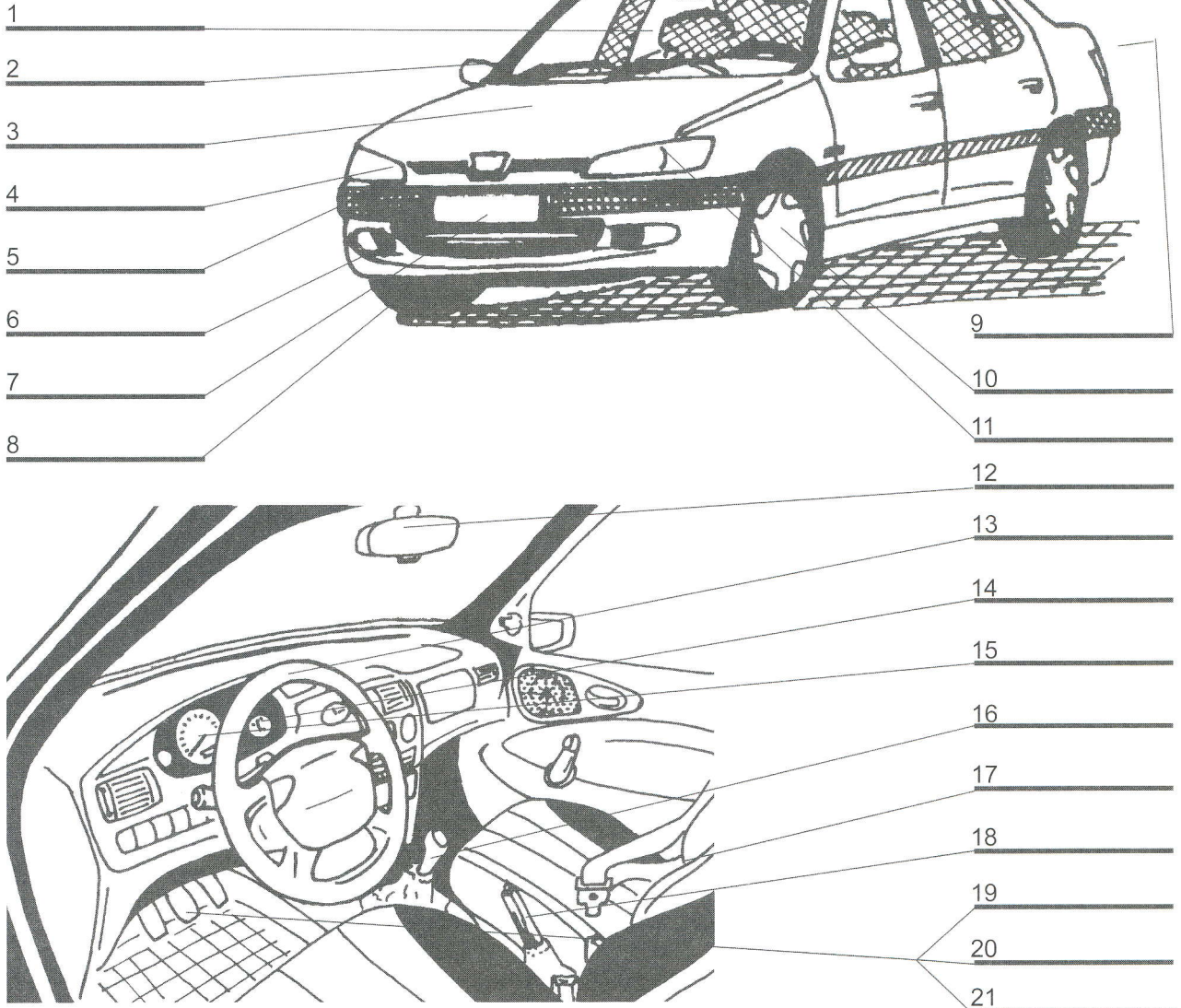
multiple crash  
to have a puncture / have a flat tyre (GB) /  
tire (US)  
to change the wheel  
spare wheel  
to give someone a lift (GB) /  
a ride (US)

### Maintenance and breakdown

to service the car  
to check and renew when necessary  
(sparking) plugs / spark plugs  
(contact breaker) points  
brake pads × linings  
brake fluid  
condenser  
alternator and starter motor brushes  
fanbelt and cambelt  
to change the oil  
to check the tyre pressures

to top up the battery (GB) /  
fill up (US)  
toolkit  
jack  
pressure gauge  
footpump  
breakdown truck  
motoring association (A.A. or R.A.C.)  
to run out of petrol (GB) / gas (US)  
to have a flat battery / the battery  
is dead  
to break down in the middle of nowhere  
to blow a fuse  
brake failure  
engine seizure  
to overheat (in heavy traffic)  
slipping × broken fanbelt  
spare parts / spares

**1** Label the car using either the British or the American words as indicated below.



## The Car (Motor Car/Automobile)

*British and American terms for the parts of a car are different.*

*An oblique (/) indicates the American equivalent, e.g. bonnet / hood*

engine / motor  
bonnet / hood  
bumper / fender  
headlights  
rearlights / taillights  
spotlights / headlights  
foglights  
indicators / turn signals  
windscreen / windshield  
(windscreen) wiper  
horn

to hoot / honk one's horn at sb/st  
boot / trunk  
numberplate / license plate  
steering wheel  
mirror / rear-view mirror  
wing mirror / side mirror  
gearlever / stickshift  
four- × five-speed (gear) box  
automatic transmission  
speedometer  
rev counter / tachometer  
bench × bucket seats  
clutch × brake × accelerator / gas pedal  
estate car / station wagon

pickup  
(luxury) saloon  
sports car  
family car  
hatchback  
motor caravan /  
RV (recreational vehicle) /  
motor home  
lorry / truck × van  
articulated lorry ("artic") / semi  
limousine  
four-wheel drive  
front×rear-wheel drive

two×four-stroke engine /  
two×four-cycle motor  
diesel  
disc × drum brakes  
power(-assisted) steering  
air-conditioning  
petrol / gas consumption  
miles per gallon (m.p.g.)

### Accessories

towing ball or towbar / towing  
hitch  
caravan  
trailer  
roof × canoe × ski rack



- a middle-aged businessman
- a family of four
- a farmer
- a university student

**3** Now match the following features to the type of car they are most likely to be found on.

estate car	sports car	truck
<i>fold-down back seat</i>	<i>two-seater</i>	<i>four-wheel drive</i>

**4** Now match each of the three cars to one of the remaining three people in Exercise 2 and discuss why these are the best cars for them.

**5** What kind of car is most suited to your native country? Discuss the effects of weather, road conditions, the price of petrol, etc.

## The Car

- traffic regulations
- the Highway Code / Road Code
- T-junction
- hairpin bend
- sharp bend (GB) / sharp curve (US)
- solid × broken × double white line
- speed limit
- inside × crawler × middle lane
- fast / overtaking lane
- hard shoulder
- motorway (GB) / freeway / highway / interstate (US)
- tollroad (GB) / turnpike (US)
- main road / trunk road
- sideroad
- twisting country lane

- short cut
- dirt road
- gravel road
- crash barriers
- motorway service area (GB) /  
truck stop (US)
- petrol station or garage (GB) / gas station (US)
- service station
- roadside restaurant
- transport café
- greasy spoon
- diner (US)
- motel
- drive-in (US)
- lay-by (GB) / reststop (US)
- car park (GB) / parking lot (US)

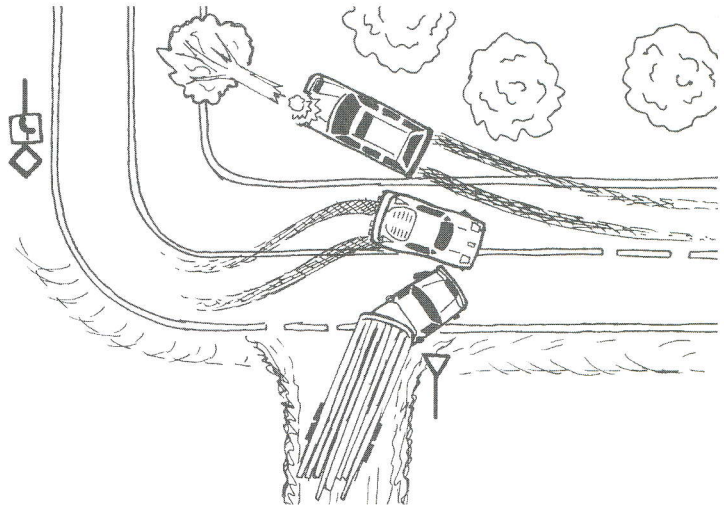
## Notices

GIVE WAY (GB) / YIELD (US)  
HALT MAJOR ROAD AHEAD  
ROAD WORKS AHEAD (GB) / ROAD  
CONSTRUCTION (US)  
DIVERSION (GB) / DETOUR (US)  
NO ENTRY  
ONE WAY STREET  
NO PARKING  
REDUCE SPEED NOW  
LOOK RIGHT  
TEMPORARY ROAD SURFACE  
NO ROAD MARKINGS FOR 3 MILES

# ROAD ACCIDENTS

**1** Look at the picture of the scene of an accident. One of the vehicles is a sports car, one is an estate car and the third one is a lorry. What do you think happened?

**2**  Now listen to an eyewitness' report to the police. Were you right? Whose fault do you think the accident was?



**3** The following parts of sentences have been extracted from the text. Put them back.

driving under the influence  
running a few red lights  
insurance  
double-parked  
speeding  
defective brakes  
drunk tank  
ran over  
driving licence  
parking ticket  
clocked me with a radar gun  
had been drinking  
tailgate  
breathalyser  
reckless driving  
pulled over  
thumb a lift  
pulled over by the police

**I WOKE UP THIS MORNING IN THE 1 \_\_\_\_\_ WITH A TERRIBLE HANGOVER AND NO IDEA WHAT I DID LAST NIGHT.**

Slowly, as I started to wake up, I began to remember what had happened. Last night was my birthday, so I decided to celebrate by going to the bar and getting drunk. I couldn't find anywhere to park at the bar, so I **2** \_\_\_\_\_ and went inside. When I came out three hours later I found a **3** \_\_\_\_\_ on my windshield. Being a little bit drunk, I tore it up and drove away. In front of me was an old car that was driving very slowly, so I began to **4** \_\_\_\_\_ it, hoping it would speed up. It probably wasn't a good idea, as my car has **5** \_\_\_\_\_ and I would not have been able to stop if the car in front of me had stopped suddenly. Finally the car **6** \_\_\_\_\_ and let me pass.

A little bit further down the road, I accidentally **7** \_\_\_\_\_ a hitchhiker who was trying to **8** \_\_\_\_\_. I hope he's all right.

After driving along for another half hour and **9** \_\_\_\_\_, I was **10** \_\_\_\_\_. They asked to see my **11** \_\_\_\_\_ and proof of **12** \_\_\_\_\_. I asked them why they had stopped me, and they told me that I had been driving at 90 mph. When I asked them how they knew, they said that they had **13** \_\_\_\_\_. They then asked me if I **14** \_\_\_\_\_. I told them to mind their own business, which made them a little angry. Finally they took me down to the station and gave me a **15** \_\_\_\_\_ test, which showed that I was well over the legal alcohol limit for driving. I was arrested for **16** \_\_\_\_\_, **17** \_\_\_\_\_ of alcohol, and **18** \_\_\_\_\_, and thrown in this room.

I don't think I'll be drinking and driving any time soon. It's not that I've learned my lesson. It's just that they don't have any cars in jail.

## Road Accidents

warning triangle  
first-aid kit  
fire extinguisher  
spare bulb set  
certificate of roadworthiness  
(M.O.T.)  
insurance  
driving licence / driver's license

road tax (GB)  
bald tyres  
defective brakes, steering, etc.  
double-parking  
speeding  
driving under the influence of alcohol  
driving while intoxicated - DWI (US)  
traffic police

breathalyser  
to be pulled over by the police  
"Q"-car (unmarked police patrol)  
radar speed check  
learner (L) plates  
reckless / dangerous driving  
to jump / run the lights / go through a red light  
to tailgate (US) / follow very closely



# PUBLIC TRANSPORT

**1** Read the following passage about traffic in big cities. Could this letter be talking about the city you live in?

driveway  
parking places  
bumper-to-bumper traffic  
one-way  
road workers  
commute  
exit  
rush-hour  
fender-bender  
"no left turn"  
congested  
exhaust fumes

*Dear Editors,*

*Like many people, I live in the suburbs and have to*  
1 \_\_\_\_\_ *every day to work in the centre. I start work at 8:00*  
*am, but my day actually starts much earlier than that. At around 6:00, I pull*  
*out of my* 2 \_\_\_\_\_ *to face the horror of* 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
*traffic. The next hour is spent crawling through miles of* 4 \_\_\_\_\_,  
*filled with all of the lovely sights of a spring morning in the city- two drivers arguing*  
*at the site of a* 5 \_\_\_\_\_, *a construction site filled with*  
6 \_\_\_\_\_ *who get paid tax money to sit around drinking coffee, the*  
*thick haze of* 7 \_\_\_\_\_ *choking my lungs.*

*Finally I see my* 8 \_\_\_\_\_, *and I leave the wonderful world*  
*of the freeway. But the fun's not over yet! Now I get to spend the next hour*  
*crawling around the* 9 \_\_\_\_\_ *maze of downtown streets, a*  
*nightmare of* 10 \_\_\_\_\_ *streets and* 11 \_\_\_\_\_  
*signs, fighting with hundreds of fellow commuters over the ten or twelve available*  
12 \_\_\_\_\_. *This lovely ritual is repeated twice a day, five days a*  
*week, all year long.*

*Surely there must be a better way. Perhaps if we...*

**2** What can be done about traffic? Take a look at these suggestions, and then write down some advantages and disadvantages for each suggestion. Make sure to mention how you will pay for them.

Build more roads and freeways  
Make more car-pool lanes  
Make the centre a pedestrian zone

Build more parking lots  
Make more one-way streets and  
synchronised traffic lights

Improve public transport  
Give petrol and fare discounts  
to people who use car-pools

## Public Transport

local × intercity buses × coaches  
the tube / underground (GB) /  
subway (US)  
automatic turnstile  
ticket machine  
"Mind the gap"  
bus stop  
articulated / "bendy" bus  
fare stage / zone  
request stop  
fares  
flat rate  
per kilometre / mile  
discount fares  
student card / pass  
season ticket  
traffic lights (red, amber, green)  
to jaywalk  
pedestrian / zebra crossing

pelican crossing  
Belisha beacon  
lollipop lady / man  
pavement (GB) / sidewalk (US)  
kerb (GB) / curb (US)  
gutter  
road (GB) / pavement (US)  
subway (GB) / underpass (US)  
cloverleaf junction  
roundabout  
spaghetti junction  
fork  
T-junction  
urban clearway  
underpass × overpass / flyover  
junction / crossroads (GB) /  
intersection (US)  
pedestrian precinct  
sleeping policeman (GB) /  
speed bump (US)

rush hour  
traffic jam / stuck in traffic  
gridlock / complete standstill  
exhaust fumes / pollution / smog  
accident / pileup (GB) /  
car wreck (US)  
to be knocked down by a car /  
to be hit by a car  
passers-by  
to overtake (GB) / pass (US)  
to have one's car towed away  
towaway area / zone  
traffic warden (GB)  
parking meter  
parking ticket  
wheel clamp (GB) / boot (US)  
stiffer penalties for traffic offences  
signal malfunction  
contraflow  
oncoming traffic

# TRAVELLING BY TRAIN

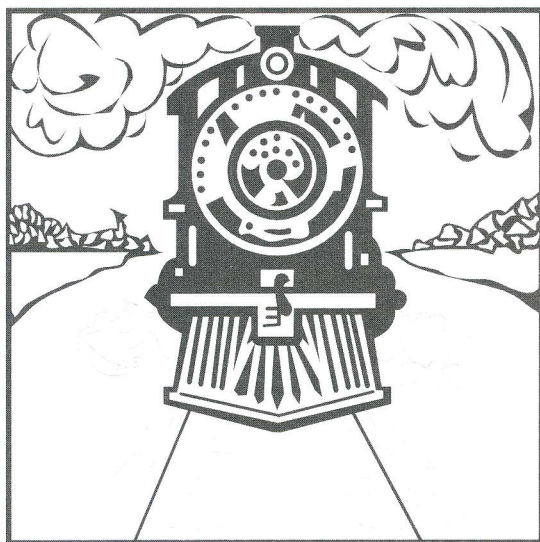
**1** Imagine that you and a friend have been planning to travel around Spain and France this summer in your brother's car. Now your brother says that he needs the car and you can't take it. You don't have a lot of money, but you want to make the trip anyway. Read the information leaflet about the Multi-Rail Pass and discuss how you could do it.

## *Student A*

You're really worried about money, so you think the only way to do it is to hitchhike. You've done it before, although on much shorter trips. Anything else is just going to be too expensive.

## *Student B*

You really don't want to hitchhike. It's inconvenient and also really dangerous. You think you and your partner should buy Multi-Rail Passes instead. Try to convince your friend.



## THE NEW MULTI-RAIL PASS

Thinking of travelling around Europe this summer? Well, if you are, then the only way to go is on the new Multi-Rail Pass. This pass allows you to travel for free on all major train services in Europe, giving you the freedom to explore what you really want to see.

## CHOOSE YOUR OWN PATH

Our unique zone system allows you to pay for just the countries you are going to visit, and not the whole of Europe. After all, why pay for a fare to Moscow if you're not planning on going there anyway. Choose from a one-, two- or three-zone pass, or go for the Europe-wide Pass. Whichever way you choose, it's a bargain.

## SAVE ON MORE THAN JUST TRAVEL

With your Multi-Rail Pass you'll also receive, free of charge, the new Euro-Youth Card. This card offers discounts on everything from food to accommodation to museums and cultural events all over Europe.

## BUY THE NEW MULTI-RAIL PASS

## AND EXPERIENCE EUROPE LIKE NEVER BEFORE

## Travelling by Train

main railway station  
left-luggage department / office  
lost property office / lost and found  
ticket office / booking office  
(automatic) ticket machine  
single (GB) / one-way  
ticket (US)  
return (GB) / round-trip  
ticket (US)  
to miss one's connection  
trans-Europe express (T.E.E.)  
stopping train  
commuter service  
sleeper

passenger train  
goods train (GB) /  
freight train (US)  
ticket barrier  
turnstile  
platform  
announcement  
newspaper kiosk / stand  
coffee bar  
vending machine  
station master  
porter  
engine driver  
guard

guard's van (GB) / caboose (US)  
luggage van  
mail van  
carriage / wagon  
sleeping carriage / wagon-lit  
upper × lower bunk  
buffet car / carriage /  
dining car  
seat facing the engine  
to sit with one's back to the  
engine  
to sit facing backwards / forwards  
corner seat  
compartment  
aisle × corridor

ticket inspector / conductor  
railway police  
communication cord /  
emergency cord (US)  
diesel engine  
steam train / engine  
electric engine  
DO NOT LEAN OUT OF THE  
WINDOW  
EMERGENCY USE ONLY  
PENALTY FOR IMPROPER  
USE 50 POUNDS  
NO ENTRY  
NO EXIT



# ON TWO WHEELS OR ON FOOT

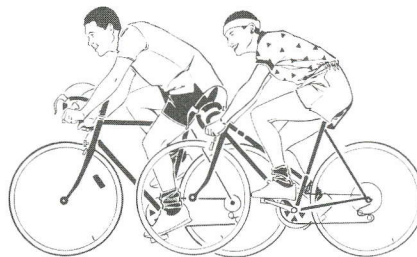
**1** List the advantages and disadvantages of travelling on two wheels and on foot by completing the following.

*When travelling on two wheels / on foot*



*you can...  
you must...  
you needn't...  
you may...  
you won't have to...  
you shouldn't...  
you are sure to...  
you mustn't...  
you are not allowed to...*

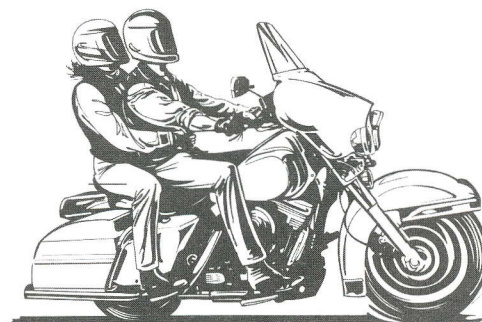
**3** Imagine that you have a summer job as a guide in a national park. Using some of the language from the preceding exercise, prepare a talk to the visitors, giving them instructions how they should behave.



**2** Some lines in the following text are without a mistake, others contain one word which should not be there. Find the mistakes.

- 1 More people have come to appreciate it that
- 2 travelling by rail is the easy way to make the
- 3 most of their holiday. By travelling by fast,
- 4 comfortable and frequent trains, combining
- 5 rail travel with walking there and cycling is
- 6 a convenient way to have explore an area.
- 7 This specially produced leaflet introduces
- 8 a choice of scenic walks and cycle and routes.
- 9 The map inside shows the railway network and
- 10 the stations from which walks can be made.
- 11 When you are all visiting the countryside please
- 12 observe the Country Code: Protect the wildlife,
- 13 plants and trees. Help to keep all water clean.
- 14 Take your litter to home. Guard against risk
- 15 of fire. Don't make no unnecessary noise.

**4** In groups of four plan a trip to the mountains. One of you is quite experienced and should tell the other three what to take with them. You should also consider the most appropriate means of transport and the most suitable accommodation. The "leader" of the group then goes to another group and the members tell the "new leader" about their plans. Finally, everybody jots down the essential information about the planned trip.

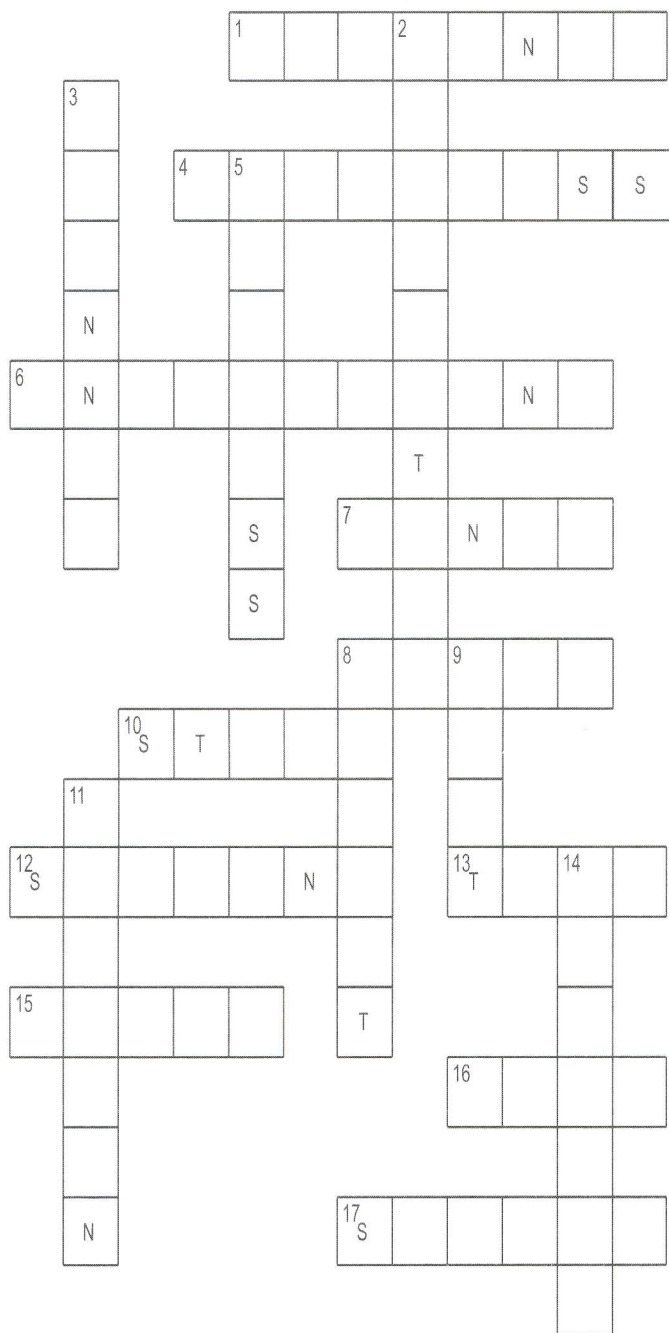


## On Two Wheels or on Foot

motorcycle  
pushbike (GB) / bicycle  
saddle / seat  
handlebars  
chain  
pedals  
spokes  
mudguards  
tandem  
pillion / passenger seat  
panniers  
to ride on the crossbar  
to sit side-saddle  
crash helmet  
to walk (in the hills, etc.)  
to trek / hike / backpack (in a wilderness area)  
to hitchhike  
to thumb a lift

to go camping  
to make × break camp  
to pitch a tent  
inner tent × flysheet  
tentpegs  
mallet  
guy ropes  
poles × ridge pole  
igloo tent  
carry mat  
groundsheet × built-in groundsheet  
pup tent  
two-person tent  
sleeping bag  
pressure × gas stove  
to cook over a campfire  
to sleep under the stars

Here are some interesting facts connected with travel. One word has been removed from each sentence to form the crossword.



#### Across

1. The world's largest \_\_\_\_ is the Boeing 747.
4. When petrol-powered \_\_\_\_ first replaced those drawn by horses, they were called horseless carriages.
6. The Japanese \_\_\_\_ employs uniformed officials with white gloves whose job is to push passengers into crowded trains.
7. One of the factors that brought the United States into the First World War was the sinking of the British \_\_\_\_ Lusitania which was carrying Americans.
8. The largest car and passenger \_\_\_\_ operates between Stockholm and Helsinki.
10. In canoeing, speed racing takes place on \_\_\_\_ water.
12. The fastest \_\_\_\_ boats are catamarans.
13. If a \_\_\_\_ loses its grip on a wet road and rides on a film of water, it is called aquaplaning.
15. The colour of all Model T Fords was \_\_\_\_.
16. slalom racing canoeing takes place on \_\_\_\_ water.
17. In London it is the underground, in New York it is the \_\_\_\_ and in Paris it is the metro.

#### Down

2. The Rocket steam \_\_\_\_ was designed by George Stephenson in 1829.
3. The engineering project opened in December 1993, shared between Britain and France, is sometimes called the \_\_\_\_.
5. Murder on the Orient \_\_\_\_, the 1974 film starring Albert Finney, was based on Agatha Christie's novel.
8. The first solo transatlantic \_\_\_\_ was made by Charles Lindberg.
9. In 1947, Norwegian anthropologist Thor Heyerdahl crossed the Pacific on the \_\_\_\_ Kon-Tiki.
11. The first transatlantic crossing by hot-air \_\_\_\_ was achieved by Branson and Lindstrand in 1987.
14. The world's steepest 'rack' \_\_\_\_ is in Switzerland.



# TRAVEL – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**I** The following expressions are typical of different situations when travelling. Choose from the following categories:  
a – air travel, b – train travel, c – car travel, d – hiking.

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Aisle or window seat?                            | 9 You missed your exit.              |
| 2 Please have your ticket ready for the conductor. | 10 When does the train get in?       |
| 3 Can I see your licence?                          | 11 Is there a layover?               |
| 4 What stop are we at?                             | 12 Have a safe trip.                 |
| 5 How much hand luggage is permitted?              | 13 When does the next train leave?   |
| 6 Can you tell me where to get off?                | 14 Does this train go to the centre? |
| 7 It's a stone's throw away.                       | 15 We will begin boarding soon.      |
| 8 For your safety, don't lean on the doors.        |                                      |

**II** The following expressions connected with transport can be used metaphorically. Choose which sentence they fit in.

## ENGINEER WHEEL VEHICLE GEAR BRAKE

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 16 An advertisement is not simply a _____ for its message.                                      | 19 There is no use trying to fight inflation through high interest rates which are designed to put a _____ on economic growth. |
| 17 They grease the _____ of the consumer boom by allowing us to buy what we want, when we want. | 20 We go skiing in the mountains each winter. Things get into high _____ there in November.                                    |
| 18 She had _____ that business trip partly to escape from the situation at home.                |  |

**III** Explain the meaning of the underlined parts of these sentences.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 21 We never even exchanged addresses. It's like that sometimes, when you travel a lot – <u>ships that pass in the night</u> . | 26 When I came back, my car was gone. I had locked it and it couldn't have <u>vanished into thin air</u> ! |
| 22 When in doubt, I <u>follow the crowd</u> . At least I don't stand out like a fool.   | 27 Get organised and <u>stop running round in circles</u> .  |
| 23 He was getting on my nerves, so I told him to <u>take a hike</u> .   | 28 <u>Fools rush in where angels fear to tread</u> .   |
| 24 <u>Bad news travels fast</u> .   | 29 She likes to <u>fly in the face of</u> standard procedures.   |
| 25 Sometimes it is dangerous to <u>hitch / thumb a ride</u> with a stranger.  | 30 What are you <u>driving at</u> ?  |

**IV** Look at this crossword and your partner will look at the crossword on the following page. You have got the 'acrosses' filled in and your partner has got the 'downs'. Ask each other for clues.

**Example:**

Can you tell me a clue for number 5?

What's a clue for number 5?

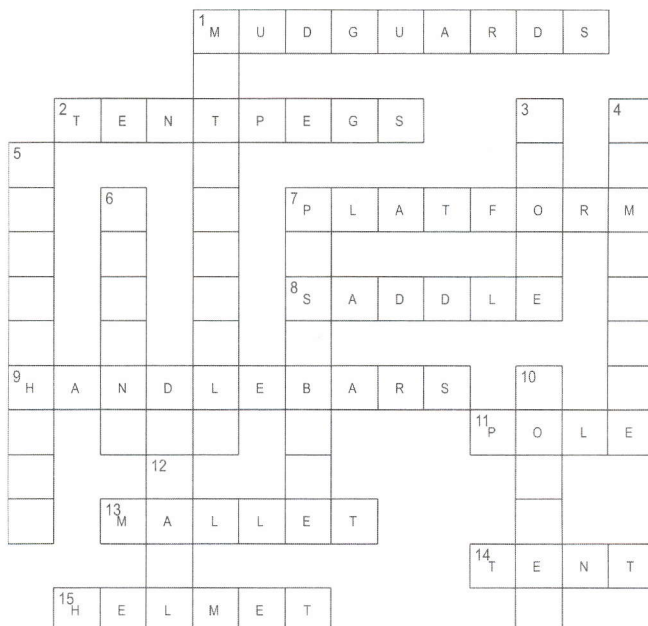
Could you explain number 5?

Give me an explanation for number 5, please.

Can you say it again?

Can you repeat what you've just said?

Could you explain it in a different way?



# TRAVEL – AND MORE PRACTICE...

**I** The following expressions are typical of different situations when travelling. Choose from the following categories: a – air travel, b – travel by bus, c – going by train, d – travel by road, e – hiking

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 It's making a funny noise under the bonnet.                   | 9 How much is the fare?  |
| 2 How far away is it?   | 10 You missed the turn.  |
| 3 Move to the rear, please. There's plenty of room in the back. | 11 Would anyone be interested in giving up their seat in exchange for a free ticket? |
| 4 You should try going stand-by.                                | 12 Will a meal be served?  |
| 5 Which line goes to the Museum?                                | 13 My battery is dead.   |
| 6 Can I reserve a seat in advance?                              | 14 When you get to the lake, go north.   |
| 7 You've got a long way to go.                                  | 15 Is there a dining car?  |
| 8 Is this seat taken?   |  |

**II** The following expressions connected with transport can be used metaphorically. Choose which sentence they fit in.

- | ENGINE   | CHAIN | PUMP | TOP GEAR  | STEER |
|--|-------|------|---|-------|
| 16 Trying to avoid any encounter, we _____ clear of each other for a couple of days. |       |      | 19 It makes economic sense to upgrade the existing rail systems rather than _____ money into roads. |       |
| 17 From that moment on his career went into _____.                                   |       |      | 20 The student uprising began the _____ of events that led to the fall of the government.           |       |
| 18 Small businesses are also an _____ of job-creation.                               |       |      |   |       |

**III** Explain the meaning of the underlined parts of these sentences.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 21 He is <u>driving me mad</u> .  | ship, but I can't stand it around here any more.   |
| 22 I am so busy that I <u>don't know if I'm coming or going</u> .       | 27 Learning that one has been totally wrong about something can really <u>take the wind out of one's sails</u> . |
| 23 Just <u>follow your nose</u> .                                       | 28 <u>It is better to travel hopefully than to arrive</u> .  |
| 24 She's <u>on the way to</u> becoming a very good teacher.             | 29 <u>Travel broadens the mind</u> .   |
| 25 They won't get it figured out – they are <u>on the wrong track</u> . | 30 On the last day of school, all the children were <u>walking on air</u> .                                      |
| 26 I hate to be the one to desert / <u>leave the sinking</u>            |  |

**IV** Look at this crossword and your partner will look at the crossword on the preceding page. You have got the 'downs' filled in and your partner has got the 'acrosses'. Ask each other for clues.

**Example:**

Can you tell me a clue for number 2?

What's a clue for number 2?

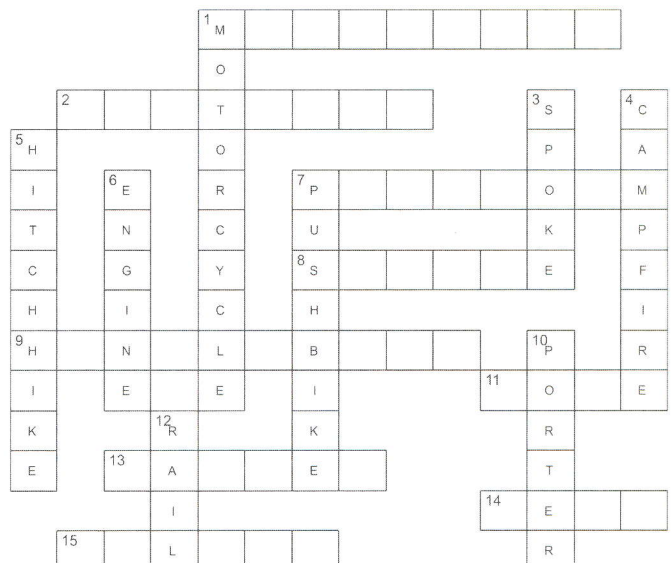
Could you explain number 2?

Give me an explanation for number 2, please.

Can you say it again?

Can you repeat what you've just said?

Could you explain it in a different way?





# FARMING

## 1 Find the following in the picture.

farmhouse	pasture
farmyard	fence
barn	orchard
silo	vegetable garden
pig sty / pig pen	tractor
stable – horses	harrow
loose box	estate car (GB) /
paddock	station wagon (US)
henhouse – hens	lorry / truck
field	ladder

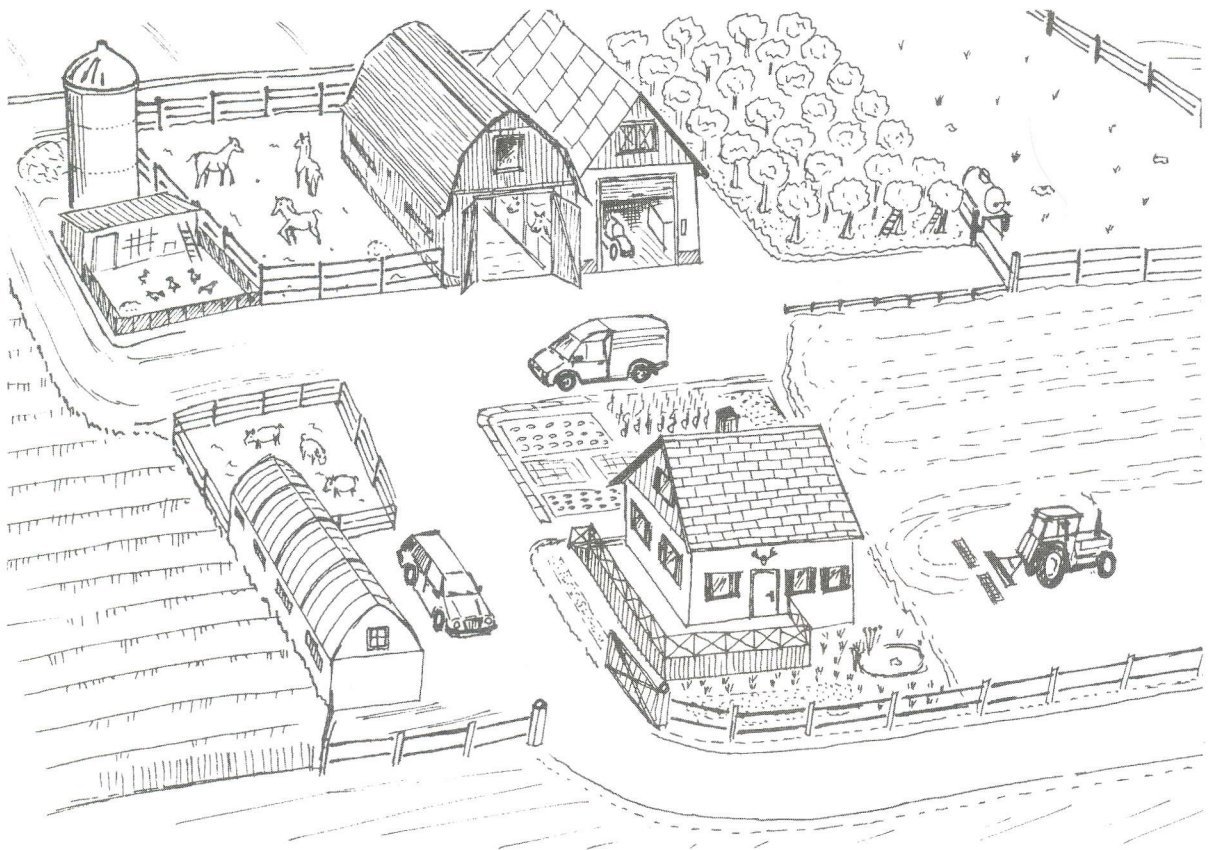
## 2 Using the following expressions speak about everyday life on a farm.

### People on the farm

farmer  
landowner  
landlord  
foreman  
tractor-driver  
farm-labourer / farm hand  
cowboy / cowhand  
casual labour  
veterinary surgeon / vet  
shearer  
shepherd

### Things to do

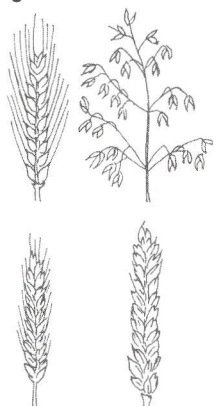
to plough	to graze
to sow	to feed
to reap	to slaughter
to mow	to muck out / clean up
to make hay	to lay eggs
to rake	to collect eggs
to stack	to shear sheep
to store	



## Farming

soil	hop garden	allotment	haymaking	<b>Some staple crops</b>	rye	oil-seed rape
earth	vineyard	kitchen garden	haystack		maize / corn	root crops
arable land	vine × grapes	market garden	grain elevator		hops	potato
meadow	wine cellar	standing crops	silo		cattle feed	turnip
cornfield	plot of land	stubble			sugar-beet	

**1** What kinds of crops are grown in your country? How are they used in cooking?



**2** Read the text opposite and find a word that means:

- to leak down slowly
- to make something unhealthy by introducing harmful substances into it
- financial support from governments
- a law that makes a thing or action illegal
- large shrubs and bushes that line fields throughout Britain
- the removal of soil by wind and water
- the top layer of earth rich in proteins and nutrients
- to remove the water from
- something that can be continued for a long time
- all over Britain

# MODERN DEVELOPMENTS

## JOIN THE EARTH AND FARMERS' PARTY AND STOP AGRIBUSINESS FROM RUINING OUR COUNTRYSIDE

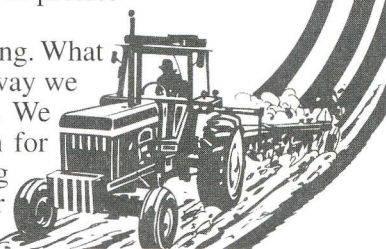
Over the last fifty years, British farming has become increasingly industrialised, run by a small group of powerful corporations and relying on machines and chemicals more than farmers and nature. Our environment and our health are paying the price for agribusiness profits. It's time to put a stop to the destruction of our countryside.

**1. The use of chemicals in farming.** Too many farms recklessly use dangerous pesticides and fertilisers on their fields. These chemicals often seep down into the groundwater and contaminate nearby rivers and lakes as well as the supply of drinking water. Nitrates from fertilisers are especially destructive, as they cause rapid growth in algae which chokes all other plant and animal life in contaminated streams. We demand a return to the natural system of farming, government subsidies to organic farmers, a ban on the most dangerous chemicals such as DDT and phosphate fertilisers, and strict penalties for farmers who damage the environment.

**2. The removal of hedgerows.** Hedgerows are a vital part of our ecosystem. They prevent erosion by holding the topsoil down with their roots and protecting fields from the wind, and they provide shelter for the plants, insects and animals which make up our ecosystem. We demand that industrial farms be stopped from removing their hedgerows to make bigger fields.

**3. Destruction of wetlands and forests.** In their quest for ever larger fields, industrial farms have been draining wetlands and slashing down forests at an alarming rate. Almost 90% of Britain's wetlands have now been drained for use as farmland. This recklessness hurts not only us, but other countries as well, as it deprives migrating birds of their natural resting and feeding grounds. We demand that the government move to protect these sensitive areas.

But these points are just the beginning. What is needed is a complete change in the way we view nature and the world around us. We can no longer afford to take the earth for granted and expect it to keep providing us with healthy food and water no matter how badly we mistreat it. Join us in our fight to make sustainable farming the rule throughout Britain!



### Modern Developments

mechanised farming  
factory farming  
monoculture  
collective farming  
market gardening  
land reform  
common agricultural policy (between nations)  
General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT)  
Common Market (European Union)

government subsidies  
overproduction  
food mountains  
wine lakes  
famine  
shortage  
ecological balance  
chemical fertilisers  
pesticides  
runoff  
leaching  
organic farming

health foods  
cruelty in farming  
battery house  
battery farming × free range  
pellets  
complete automation  
hormones  
steroids  
artificial colours  
flavourings  
pests  
parasites

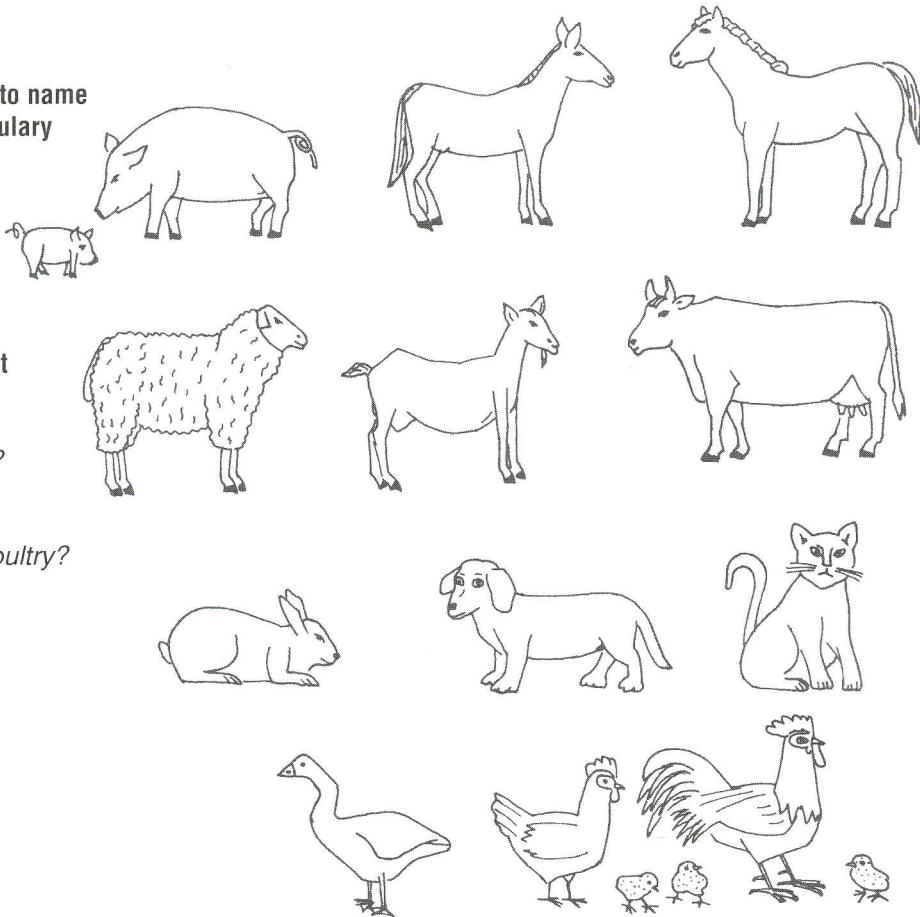


# ANIMALS ON AND AROUND THE FARM

**1** Look at the pictures and try to name all the animals, using the vocabulary from the box.

**2** First work on your own and fill in as many words in the table as you can remember. Then work in small groups. By asking questions try to find out the missing words:

Example:  
What do you call male cattle?  
What's the English for...?  
What's a baby horse called?  
Which product is typical of poultry?



Female	Male	Baby	Food products
cow			
	rooster		
		lamb	
			bacon
mare			


## Animals on and Around the Farm

cow × bull × calf, *pl.* calves  
heifer × bullock (GB) / steer (US) / ox, *pl.* oxen  
she-cat × tomcat × kitten  
rabbit (in a hutch, for eating, a pet or a wild pest)  
goose, *pl.* geese × gander × gosling  
duck × drake × duckling  
hen × cockerel (GB) / rooster (US) × chicken

pig / hog (US)  
sow × boar × piglet  
mare × stallion × gelding × foal  
bitch / female dog (US) × dog × puppy  
sheep: ewe × ram × lamb  
she-/ nanny-goat × he-/ billy-goat × kid  
watchdog

donkey  
ferret  
pigeon  
fox: vixen × dog-fox  
pheasant  
partridge  
buzzard

# THE SOUNDS OF A FARM

**1**  Match the following verbs with the animals in the table. Note that some animals can have more than one verb.

to bleat	to neigh
to bray	to purr
to cluck	to quack
to crow	to squeal
to grunt	to yap
to hee-haw	to whine
to miaow	to whinny
to moo	

**2** Think of the sounds the animals make. Fill in the right-hand column and ask your teacher if you need help.

VERB	ANIMAL	SOUND
<i>barks, growls</i>	dog	<i>bow-wow</i>
	cat	
	horse	
	cow	
	pig	
	hens	
	rooster	
	ducks	
	donkey	
	sheep	
	goat	

**3** Match the following names of animals with the sounds they make. Some of them may make more than one sound.

blackbird  
cricket  
bee  
frog  
mouse  
owl  
snake  
hawk  
fly  
sparrow

?

buzzes  
chirps  
croaks  
hisses  
hoots  
hums  
sings  
squawks  
squeaks  
twitters

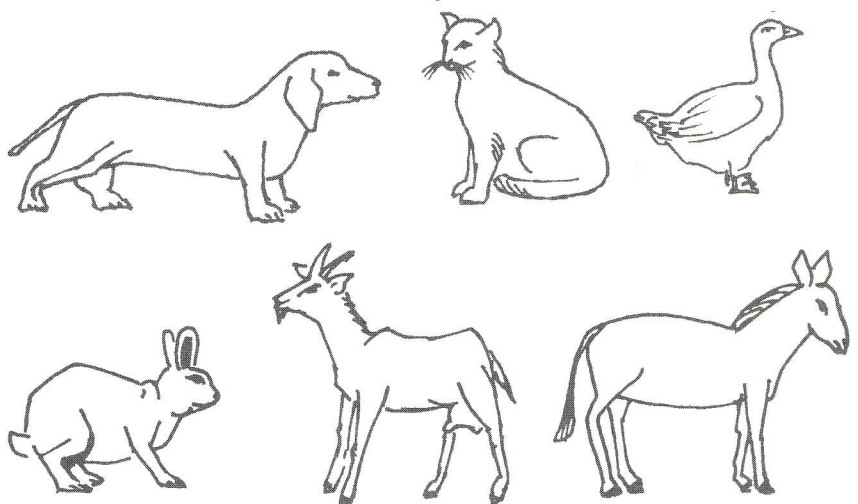
**4** Now sing the song!

Old McDonald had a farm  
E I E I O  
And on this farm he had a dog  
E I E I O

With a *bark! bark!* here  
And a *bark! bark!* there  
Here a *bark!*, there a *bark!*,  
everywhere a *bark! bark!*

Old McDonald had a farm  
E I E I O

And on this farm he had a cat  
E I E I O  
etc.





# FARMING – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

## Fill in the gaps, using one answer – a, – b, – c or – d.

- 1 Horses were among the last species of \_\_\_\_\_ to be domesticated.  
a cattle  
b pellets  
c studs  
d livestock
- 2 A mature male horse is called a \_\_\_\_\_, or, if used for breeding, a stud; mature females are mares. A castrated \_\_\_\_\_ is called a gelding.  
a champion  
b pony  
c stallion  
d paddock
- 3 Young horses (foals) may be known as \_\_\_\_\_ (males) and fillies (females).  
a colts  
b puppies  
c calves  
d dray horses
- 4 To enclose land was to put a \_\_\_\_\_ or fence around a portion of this open land and thus prevent the exercise of common grazing and other rights over it.  
a hedge  
b coop  
c manor  
d sty
- 5 They followed the coastline southward until they reached a heavily wooded region, perhaps some part of the Gulf of St. Lawrence shore, and settled there to engage in \_\_\_\_\_, hunting, and fishing.  
a muckspreading  
b top-dressing  
c haymaking  
d scattering

## Supply the right words according to the definitions.

- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ the science or art of cultivating the soil, growing and harvesting crops, and raising livestock.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ mate of a cockerel/rooster
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ young goat
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ an establishment for the sale or distribution chiefly of milk and milk products
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ two plants used for making beer
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ a planting of grapevines
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ a white root crop grown for sugar
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_ to cut the hair from sheep

## Fill in the right forms of verbs.

The two most significant changes in the pattern of agricultural development since the end of World War II have been the degree to which specialization **14** \_\_\_\_\_ (adopt) and the increased scale of farm enterprises. Large numbers of beef cattle **15** \_\_\_\_\_ (raise) in enclosures and **16** \_\_\_\_\_ (to feed) carefully **17** \_\_\_\_\_ (balance) rations by automatic equipment. Pigs by the thousands and poultry by the tens of thousands are housed in special buildings with **18** \_\_\_\_\_ (control) environments and **19** \_\_\_\_\_ (feed) automatically with complex rations. Dairy herds of up to 1,000 cows are machine-milked in **20** \_\_\_\_\_ (milk) parlours, and the cows are then individually **21** \_\_\_\_\_ (identify) and fed appropriate rations by complex electronic equipment. The milk **22** \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) directly from the cow into refrigerated bulk milk tanks and is ready for immediate shipment.

**IV** In the following metaphors, names of domestic and farm animals are used; sometimes they change into adjectives or verbs. Some of them are offensive. Decide which belongs where.

DOG CAT HOUND BITCH  
BULL PIG SWINE SHEEP

- 23 He gave them a \_\_\_\_\_ish grin and admitted it had all been a bad joke.
- 24 They were constantly \_\_\_\_\_ed by photographers; they never had a moment to themselves.
- 25 You could hardly call him a male chauvinist \_\_\_\_\_, given all the faith he expresses in women and their abilities.
- 26 Everybody knew that those foreign exchange fat \_\_\_\_\_s were making a fortune at the expense of others. (*showing disapproval*)
- 27 I know he has to make a living but there's no point in having a \_\_\_\_\_-eat-\_\_\_\_\_ attitude.
- 28 Life's a \_\_\_\_\_ and then you die. (*song*)
- 29 It was a \_\_\_\_\_ of a job – it took us hours longer than we expected.
- 30 In a \_\_\_\_\_ market many people buy shares and values go up.

# FARMING – AND MORE PRACTICE...

**I** Fill in the gaps, using one answer – a, – b, – c or –d.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ are named according to their purpose, as hog \_\_\_\_\_, dairy \_\_\_\_\_, tobacco \_\_\_\_\_, and tractor \_\_\_\_\_.  
a stocks  
b barns  
c balers  
d cages
- 2 Most of the \_\_\_\_\_ grown in the world is used for animal feed, but a special pure \_\_\_\_\_ is the source of malt for beer production. It is also used in the manufacture of vinegar, malt extract, some milk-type beverages, and certain breakfast foods.  
a barley  
b oats  
c hops  
d corn
- 3 Of the thousands of varieties of \_\_\_\_\_ known, the most important are *Triticum aestivum*, used to make bread; *T. durum*, used in making pasta such as spaghetti and macaroni; and *T. compactum*, or club \_\_\_\_\_, a softer type, used for cakes, crackers, cookies, pastries, and family flours.  
a sugar  
b ice  
c wheat  
d maize
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ are relatively easy to raise in confinement and can be slaughtered with a minimum of equipment because of their size and the many ways in which their carcasses can be processed into food and fat. They are also quite efficient in converting feed to food.  
a sheep  
b bulls  
c pigs  
d fowl
- 5 As early as 1936, more than 6,000,000 \_\_\_\_\_ and sheep were artificially inseminated in the Soviet Union.  
a bullocks  
b livestock  
c cattle  
d buzzards

**II** Supply the right words according to the definitions.

- 6 \_\_\_\_\_: an implement used for mowing and composed of a long curving blade fastened at an angle to a long handle
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_: birds with a stout body, rather short legs, and smooth and compact plumage; they exist in domestication and in the feral state in cities and towns throughout most of the world
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_: domesticated birds kept for eggs or meat
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_: an implement used to cut, lift, and turn over soil especially in preparing a seedbed
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_: an acute virus disease usually transmitted through the bite of an infected animal and typically characterized by increased salivation, abnormal behaviour, and eventual paralysis and death
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_: a planting of fruit trees, nut trees, or sugar maples; also: the trees of such a planting
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_: soft moist farmyard manure
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_: a young cow; especially one that has not had a calf

**III** Fill in the gaps with suitable words.

In organic farming, weeds are controlled by intensive cultivation of the soil by specialized machinery; by mulching, where bulky organic material such as hay, **14 s**\_\_\_\_\_, wood chips, or leaf mold is layered deeply between **15 p**\_\_\_\_\_ rows and in pathways (mulching also moderates **16 s**\_\_\_\_\_ temperatures and greatly reduces the need for irrigation). In place of chemical **17 f**\_\_\_\_\_, organic farming uses massive amounts of organic matter to provide nutrients for **18 c**\_\_\_\_\_ – much as a forest "feeds" itself with dead trees, fallen **19 l**\_\_\_\_\_, and the remains of animals and **20 i**\_\_\_\_\_. Manure from animals is also used, as are fish wastes, seaweed, and **21 c**\_\_\_\_\_, a rich, humuslike material created when **22 o**\_\_\_\_\_ material is deliberately allowed to decompose.

**IV** In the following metaphors, names of domestic and farm animals are used; sometimes they change into adjectives or verbs (some of them are offensive). Decide which belongs where.

WATCHDOG DOG HORSE  
HOG SHEEP PIG  
TURKEY SWINE CHICKEN

- 23 Don't \_\_\_\_\_ around, please; this is a serious issue.
- 24 No decent people turned up at the meeting, just a bunch of racist \_\_\_\_\_. (showing disapproval)
- 25 Although I trained for weeks for my first parachute jump, I \_\_\_\_\_ed out at the last moment. I was just too scared to do it.
- 26 Alien 3 was a complete \_\_\_\_\_; what a disaster of a film!
- 27 Look at them! Everyone waiting for someone else to be the first to move. Stupid \_\_\_\_\_!
- 28 Since the financial scandals in the government, a \_\_\_\_\_ committee has been set up to keep an eye on party contributions.
- 29 "...and there's me with stomach trouble and the bus breaks down. The whole holiday was \_\_\_\_\_ed by bad luck."
- 30 Hey! Don't \_\_\_\_\_ all the ice-cream! Leave some for me!



# CLIMATE

## TALKING ABOUT THE WEATHER

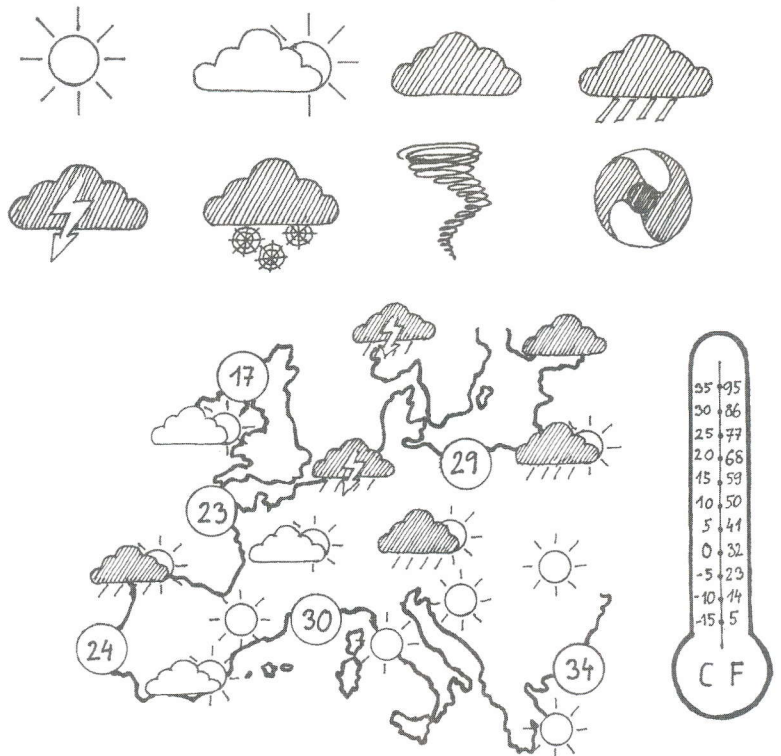
*N. B. Weather talk is part of the British "Hello" – a simple "nice", "lovely" or "terrible, isn't it" is enough to satisfy most needs in non-technical company. People who fly, climb, ski, fish or do watersports are, however, more serious about it.*

**1** What do the following symbols on a weather map mean?

**2** In small groups, look at the weather map of Europe and write the weather forecast for tomorrow.

Here is an example:

Here's the weather forecast for tomorrow. It'll be hot and sultry throughout most of southern Europe, with temperatures from the low to mid-thirties. It'll be partly cloudy in Spain, with some scattered showers in the north. Partly cloudy also in most of France and Great Britain, with temperatures going down to the low twenties and even as low as 17 degrees in Scotland. Germany and central Europe will experience scattered showers and temperatures in the high twenties, so it should be pretty humid out there. In the north of Europe, we're expecting steady rain as well as scattered thunderstorms, with temperatures in the high tens. And that's the weather for tomorrow. Thanks for tuning in, and have a nice day.



**3** Practise saying the weather forecast using the map on the right.

### Talking about the Weather

#### Weather forecast

temperatures from...to  
reaching /  
going down × up to  
around  
in the high × low...s  
low lying × hilly areas  
prolonged sunshine  
scattered showers ×  
steady rain  
thunderstorms  
light to moderate winds

#### Personal reactions

beautiful / lovely / nice  
ghastly / lousy / horrible  
cold / freezing  
hot / boiling / scorching

#### General description

fair  
bright and sunny  
windy  
cloudy / overcast  
rainy  
misty × foggy × smoggy

tropical  
temperate  
oceanic  
continental  
insular / island  
moist × humid  
dry / arid  
extreme  
(in)hospitable  
settled  
changeable  
unpredictable

#### Starting a conversation

Nice / Horrible weather we're  
having.  
Bad weather, isn't it?  
Lousy weather, huh?  
What a downpour!  
Lovely weather for ducks.  
Hot / Cold enough for you? (ironic)  
It's not the heat, it's the humidity.

## 4 Match the following sentences to the appropriate reactions and finish them.

"What's it like out?"

"I think it's going to clear up / turn out fine."

"Yesterday was a scorcher."

"We're in for rain (a storm)."

"There's not a cloud in the sky."

"Lovely day, isn't it?"

"A bit hot and sticky for me."

"Looks like rain."



"It's not the heat, it's the..."

"Yes, it's going..."

"It was over 30 ..."

"Yes, indeed, nice weather we're..."

"It's bright and ..."

"The sun is ..."

"It's raining, windy ..."

"Horrible weather we're ..."

## 5 Weather map activity.

Practise your US geography. Below are 20 of the US largest cities. Dots are found on the map locating each of the cities. See how many cities you can identify.

In groups, talk about what the weather is like in some of these cities throughout the year. In which region would you expect snow in winter?

Then put the symbols from the preceding page onto the map and tell someone the weather forecast.

### Example:

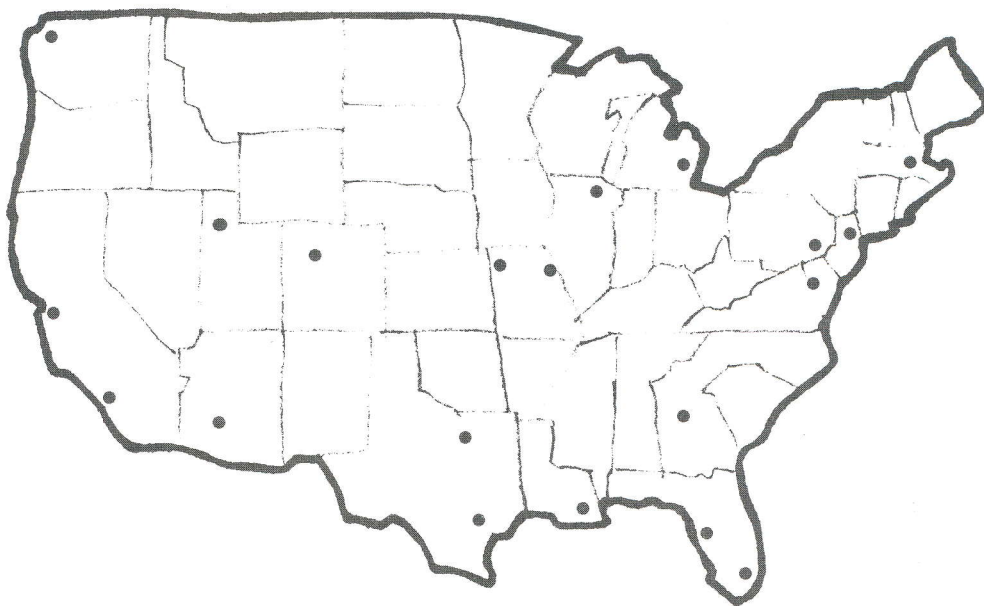
*This is the weather forecast for the South...*

*It will...*

*The weather will...*

*A cyclone will move from ... towards ... and along the way it will push warm air in our direction.*

*Night lows will be between ... and ...*



Atlanta  
Boston  
Chicago  
Dallas  
Denver

Detroit  
Houston  
Kansas City  
Los Angeles  
Miami

New Orleans  
New York  
Philadelphia  
Phoenix  
Salt Lake City

San Francisco  
Seattle  
St. Louis  
Tampa  
Washington, D.C.



# RAINY WEATHER

**1** Many cultures have traditional and sometimes superstitious ways of telling if it is going to start raining soon. Look at the list below and say whether these are used in your country. How accurate are they? Can you add any others to the list?

Ants move to higher ground.

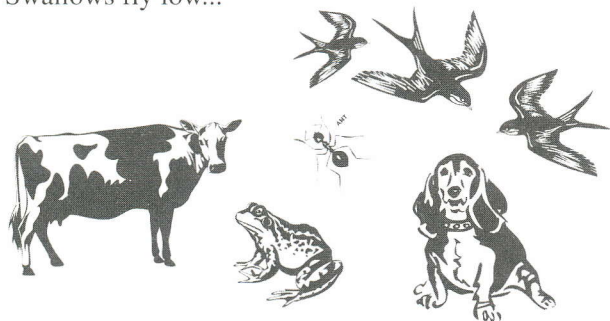
A halo or circle can be seen around the moon.

Frogs start croaking.

People with "trick knees" start to feel a stiffness in their joints.

Cows lie down.

Swallows fly low...



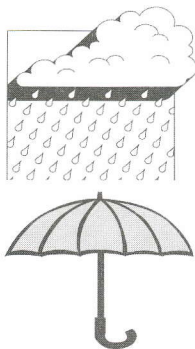
**3** Rainy weather can often make people sad or reflective, and they use the weather to describe how they feel. Look at the following expressions and match them to their meanings below, then use them in a short dialogue or story.

- 1 I'm feeling a bit under the weather today.
- 2 I'll have to take a rain check on dinner tonight.
- 3 I've been saving this for a rainy day.
- 4 It never rains, but it pours.
- 5 I'll do it, come rain or shine.
- 6 Nice / Lovely weather for ducks.
- 7 Everything will be as right as rain again.

- a Bad things don't happen a few at a time.
- b Sick or not well.
- c Reschedule for a better time.
- d Reserve something for some future need.
- e I can't do it now, I'll certainly do it later, regardless of the situation.
- f Very wet.
- g As it should be.

**2** Put the following ways of talking about rain in order, from lightest rain to heaviest. Translate them into your own language.

- ☐ It's pouring (with rain).
- ☐ It's drizzling.
- ☐ It's only a few drops.
- ☐ Looks like there'll be steady rain through most of the week.
- ☐ It's misty out.
- ☐ There are some scattered showers predicted for today.



**4** Use the idioms from exercise 3 in the following sentences.

- a If any of the kids felt a little \_\_\_\_\_, they were given a medical examination at bed time.
- b Thanks for the invitation, but I'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ on it.
- c Now that you've won the money, don't spend everything at once. \_\_\_\_\_.
- d First I had my wallet stolen, then I lost my passport – \_\_\_\_\_!
- e I'll give you an injection and you'll be \_\_\_\_\_ in a few minutes.
- f My grandfather gets up at five o'clock in the morning, \_\_\_\_\_.

## Rainy Weather

raindrop

drizzle

it's raining hard / heavily

it's pouring (with-GB) rain

(rain)storm

thunderstorm

(clap of) thunder

(flash of) lightning

forked lightning

sheet lightning

hail

squall

steady rain

rainbow

mist × fog × haze × smog

gap in the clouds

showers and sunny intervals

April showers

to be / get soaked to the skin

to be / get wringing / sopping wet / saturated

wet through

# COLD WEATHER

Have a look at the following word map and try to add more words to it. In pairs compare your charts and talk about them. Try to use some of the vocabulary from the box below.

**Example:**

*Cold weather can be quite dangerous because...*

*I like cold weather because I can go ...-ing.*

*People should / shouldn't...*



## Cold Weather

chilly  
frosty  
ground frost  
hoar frost  
icicle  
black ice  
a flurry of snow  
snowflake  
snowstorm  
blizzard  
3 inches of snow in 24 hours  
17 degrees below zero  
freezing point (0°C / 32°F)  
subzero temperatures  
to salt and grit the roads  
snowfall  
snowplough  
snowdrift

powdery snow  
packed snow  
crisp snow  
sleet  
melting / thawing  
meltwater (in swollen rivers)  
spring melt / thaw  
slush  
rivers in spate (GB)  
flash flooding (US)  
a cold snap / a cold spell  
burst pipes  
to shiver  
chattering teeth  
frozen to the bone  
to slip over  
to skid  
to slide (into)



# HOT WEATHER

**1** Fill the gaps in the text with the correct verb.

replenish  
dumped  
had  
parched  
went along  
tore  
blew  
lashed  
institute  
ripped  
reaching  
plaguing

**2** Find a word that means:

- 1 a prolonged period of abnormally hot weather
- 2 flooded
- 3 a sudden overflowing or influx of water beyond its normal confines, especially over land; an inundation
- 4 extremely and uncomfortably hot
- 5 large natural or artificial lakes used as a source of water supply
- 6 limiting (persons or provisions) to a fixed amount
- 7 the continuous absence of rain; dry weather

## GOING OUT WITH A BANG

It **1** \_\_\_\_\_ to end sometime. And yesterday the heatwave that has been **2** \_\_\_\_\_ most of England for the last three weeks went out with a bang.

Thunderstorms and lightning **3** \_\_\_\_\_ the South, forcing families to flee their homes as emergency services were overwhelmed with calls of fires and floods.

The storm **4** \_\_\_\_\_ across the Channel early yesterday morning, bringing with it high winds, lightning, and rain. Lots and lots of rain. Reports from Essex say that the storm **5** \_\_\_\_\_ almost four inches of rain on the country, causing heavy flooding throughout the area.

But most of the damage done by the storm was caused by lightning. In London, an end-of-terrace council house was **6** \_\_\_\_\_ apart when it was struck by lightning, and in Hampshire a thunderbolt **7** \_\_\_\_\_ a 15 ft hole in the roof of a block of flats. Emergency services were on full alert throughout the day.

The storm follows three weeks of blistering weather that have **8** \_\_\_\_\_ the countryside and caused serious problems in the cities. With temperatures regularly **9** \_\_\_\_\_ the mid- to high-thirties, old-age pensioners and people with heart conditions were warned to stay out of the sun during the hottest parts of the day.

Meanwhile, reservoirs were at all-time lows as the lack of rainfall that **10** \_\_\_\_\_ with the heatwave caused further speculation about whether the authorities would have to **11** \_\_\_\_\_ water rationing programs to deal with the drought. Authorities now say the heavy rainfall has helped to **12** \_\_\_\_\_ the water supplies, and no rationing will be needed.



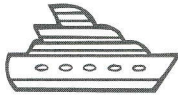
### Hot Weather

heat haze  
sultry / close / humid  
cloudless sky / clear sky  
the sun's blazing / beating down / boiling (US)  
glare  
heat wave  
in the shade  
to keep to the shadows

shimmering air  
mirage / mirror effect on roads  
melting tarmac  
dust  
drought  
cracked earth  
suntan × sunburn × heat-stroke

# WEATHER IN GENERAL

**1** What would be the perfect weather conditions for the occasions and activities on the right? What would be the worst conditions for them?



a ski trip  
a seaside holiday  
a walk in the mountains  
Christmas Eve in Europe  
New Year's Day in Australia  
sightseeing in a city  
crossing the Channel  
going fishing  
flying

**2** Match the news reports on the right to the natural disasters they are describing.

hurricane  
flood  
tornado  
landslide  
drought  
avalanche

**3** Write similar descriptions of the following natural disasters and read them out to your classmates.

earthquake  
erupting volcano  
tidal wave / tsunami  
famine  
epidemic

**4** Which of these natural disasters are possible threats in your country? Tell a partner about a natural disaster that once struck your country.

**a** Despite efforts by local inhabitants to stem the rise of the river, the North River yesterday broke its banks and spilled into several small towns. Rescuers have been working round the clock to evacuate...

**b** Local reservoirs are at an all-time low, and citizens in the area have been told to refrain from watering their lawns or gardens. Penalties of up to \$100 have been set for anyone who...

**c** Two skiers were killed and three others trapped for three hours in the latest catastrophe to hit the Ridgeville Ski Resort this year. Rescuers tried...

**d** Although it lasted for only thirty minutes, the twister managed to cause several million dollars worth of damage, destroying a number of houses and downing power lines...


**e** This small town was caught completely unprepared for the mass of dirt and mud that flowed down off the mountains early this morning, burying two houses and a local junior school...

**f** Residents across Florida have been preparing for this latest storm, which has been working its way up from the Caribbean and is expected to touch down somewhere near Miami at 4:00 p.m. today. Although many people have left, some still say...

**5** What kinds of damage do these natural disasters cause? What steps can be taken to protect communities from them?



# ATMOSPHERE

**1**  Everybody hears about global warming and the greenhouse effect, but how much do you really know about it? Take this test and see how well you do!

Then listen to the radio programme on global warming and check your answers.

**2** What do you think would happen if for some reason the earth's temperature suddenly increased? What things would change? What things would stay the same?

**3** In small groups, discuss what you can do as individuals to prevent global warming. Make a list of suggestions using the following prompts.

unleaded petrol  
cycling to work  
bottle bank  
recycled paper  
phosphate-free detergents  
CFCs  
energy-saving bulbs  
plastic bottles and bags  
catalytic converter  
public transport

## TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE OF GLOBAL WARMING

- 1 True or false: The greenhouse effect has always posed a serious threat to life on Earth.
- 2 Which of these is not a greenhouse gas caused by industry?
  - a carbon dioxide
  - b CFCs
  - c nitrous oxide
  - d oxygen
- 3 True or false: Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) have been banned all over the world because they break down the ozone layer and contribute to global warming.
- 4 Global warming is such a problem that it might cause
  - a a rise of one or two degrees over the next half-century.
  - b large changes in temperature from year to year.
  - c a steady rise in temperature of two degrees per year.
  - d the world to become uninhabitable within two hundred years.
- 5 True or false: Global warming is an established fact that is generally agreed upon within the scientific community.
- 6 Which of these is not a cause of global warming?
  - a The clear-cutting of the rain forests in Central America and other places.
  - b Radioactivity released into the atmosphere by nuclear testing, waste and power plants.
  - c The burning of fossil fuels as an energy source.
  - d The emission of other greenhouse gases by factories.

## Atmosphere

the earth / planet earth / globe  
northern × southern hemisphere  
atmosphere  
ozone layer  
ionosphere  
stratosphere  
cosmic radiation  
filtration  
reflection  
cycle of the moon × seasons  
new moon  
full moon  
half moon

wax × wane  
equinox  
equinoctial storms  
gravity  
equatorial convection current  
oceanic currents (hot and cold)  
melting polar icecaps  
tropical rain forests  
fossil fuel  
carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) build-up  
global warming  
greenhouse effect  
rising sea levels

ultraviolet radiation  
skin cancer  
atmospheric pollution  
sulphur dioxide (SO<sub>2</sub>)  
nitrous oxides  
acid rain  
aerosols  
refrigerants / CFCs  
(chlorofluorocarbons)  
el niño

# CLIMATE – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

## Fill in the appropriate terms.

At sea and along adjacent coastal areas, tropical cyclones (1 h \_\_\_\_\_, typhoons, and willy-willies) can cause great damage through excessive 2 r \_\_\_\_\_ and 3 f \_\_\_\_\_, winds, and wave action to ships, buildings, trees, crops, roads, and railways, and they may interrupt air service and communications. Heavy 4 s \_\_\_\_\_ and icy conditions can impede transportation and increase the frequency of accidents. The long absence of rainfall, by contrast, can cause 5 d \_\_\_\_\_ and severe dust 6 s \_\_\_\_\_ when winds blow over parched farmland, as with the "dustbowl" conditions of the U.S. plains states in the 1930s.

## Where do the following metaphorical expressions belong?

**A HAIL OF / A STORM OF, WET, UNDER A CLOUD, SNOWED UNDER, FROSTY, A FOG OF, LIGHTNING, TEMPESTUOUS, THE CALM BEFORE THE STORM**

- 7 There has been \_\_\_\_\_ criticism (protest, outrage) following the publication of the book.
- 8 She took the news quietly. Was she happy that he was leaving, or was this just \_\_\_\_\_?
- 9 Politicians sneaked out through a side door to avoid \_\_\_\_\_ abuse.
- 10 Have a drink to \_\_\_\_\_ your whistle!
- 11 No-one believed his reason for resigning, so he left the job \_\_\_\_\_ and has found it difficult to find another one.
- 12 I am constantly \_\_\_\_\_ with work: there's simply too much of it and not enough time.
- 13 Their relationship can be described as \_\_\_\_\_ – they're always fighting.
- 14 They were very unwelcome, and a \_\_\_\_\_ reception was all they received.
- 15 The news was bad, and \_\_\_\_\_ depression came down on everyone. We were helpless.
- 16 Driving on today's roads requires \_\_\_\_\_ reflexes.

## Supply the right words according to the definitions.

- 17 \_\_\_\_\_ a very strong wind, capable of damaging buildings and trees
- 18 \_\_\_\_\_ a hanging pointed piece of ice, formed by the freezing of dripping water
- 19 \_\_\_\_\_ forms when rapid temperature change condenses water from the atmosphere
- 20 \_\_\_\_\_ a bank of snow heaped up by the action of the wind
- 21 \_\_\_\_\_ change to a liquid condition by heat
- 22 \_\_\_\_\_ covered with cloud; dull and gloomy

## Fill the gaps.

- 23 \_\_\_\_\_ weather we're having.
  - a Nice
  - b Good
  - c Wrong
  - d Horrible
- 24 In the teeth of the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a cloud
  - b gale
  - c breeze
  - d flood
- 25 During the \_\_\_\_\_, the soil was as dry as a bone.
  - a drought
  - b equinox
  - c full moon
  - d ground frost
- 26 The climate is moister here; it's not the heat, it's the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a humidity
  - b hot
  - c hail
  - d scorcher
- 27 It never \_\_\_\_\_ but it pours.
  - a helps
  - b clears
  - c rains
  - d rises
- 28 As the moon waxes and \_\_\_\_\_, so the height of the tide changes.
  - a wastes
  - b winds
  - c wands
  - d wanes
- 29 Red \_\_\_\_\_ at night, shepherd's delight. Red \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning, shepherd's warning.
  - a squall
  - b sky
  - c rainbow
  - d lightning
- 30 Mad dogs and Englishman go out in the noonday \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a light
  - b suntan
  - c sun
  - d weather



# CLIMATE – AND MORE PRACTICE...

## I Fill in the appropriate terms.

Weather has a tremendous influence on human settlement patterns, food production, and personal comfort. Extremes of temperature and humidity cause discomfort and may lead to the transmission of disease; heavy **1 r**\_\_\_\_\_ can cause **2 f**\_\_\_\_\_, displacing people and interrupting economic activities; **3 t**\_\_\_\_\_, tornadoes, **4 h**\_\_\_\_\_, and **5 s**\_\_\_\_\_ storms may damage or destroy crops, buildings, and transportation routes and vehicles. **6 S**\_\_\_\_\_ may even kill or injure people and livestock.

## II Where do the following metaphorical expressions belong?

**THUNDERED, STORMED, WHIRLWIND, THE WINDS OF, HAZY, THE MISTS OF, FOGGIEST, CLOUDED, AVALANCHE, SUNNY**

- 7 Not everything is going well. Producers are well aware that in terms of sales, the outlook is far from \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 The horses \_\_\_\_\_ across the valley floor.
- 9 When the European colonists left Africa, the \_\_\_\_\_ change started to blow.
- 10 Nothing came back clearly. She had a very \_\_\_\_\_ impression (memory, recollection) of what had happened.
- 11 After only two weeks of a \_\_\_\_\_ romance they announced their engagement and were married soon after.
- 12 Their names are lost in \_\_\_\_\_ history, but the legacy of those first settlers lives on.
- 13 We were unprepared for the \_\_\_\_\_ of mail that came in after the programme; it took months to answer.
- 14 He \_\_\_\_\_ off to the bathroom and slammed the door behind him.
- 15 I would have liked to have helped but I did not have the \_\_\_\_\_ idea what he was asking for.
- 16 His face suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ with disappointment.

## III Supply the right words according to the definitions.

- 17 \_\_\_\_\_ a gentle wind
- 18 \_\_\_\_\_ very fine rain
- 19 \_\_\_\_\_ a flash of bright light produced by an electric discharge between clouds or between clouds and the ground
- 20 \_\_\_\_\_ cannot be predicted
- 21 \_\_\_\_\_ (of the atmosphere or the weather) hot or oppressive; close
- 22 \_\_\_\_\_ a very hot day

## IV Fill the gaps.

- 23 April \_\_\_\_\_ bring May flowers.  
a swallows  
b showers  
c colours  
d rains
- 24 \_\_\_\_\_ before seven, rain before eleven.  
a Son  
b Sleet  
c Snow  
d Sun
- 25 When swallows fly low, skimming land and water, expect rainy \_\_\_\_\_.  
a year  
b wind  
c luck  
d weather
- 26 We're in \_\_\_\_\_ rain (a storm).  
a for  
b from  
c forward  
d front of
- 27 What a \_\_\_\_\_!  
a snowstorm  
b blizzard  
c humid  
d smoggy
- 28 It's \_\_\_\_\_ weather for ducks.  
a lovely  
b badly  
c beloved  
d winding
- 29 There's not a cloud \_\_\_\_\_ the sky.  
a at  
b on  
c in  
d over
- 30 Every \_\_\_\_\_ has a silver lining.  
a whirlwind  
b cloud  
c cold snap  
d black ice

# NATURE

## IN THE WILD

**1** Read the following information about national parks in the United States. Could any of these be describing a place in your country?

**2** In which of these parks would you expect to find the following animals?

ducks    coyote    egrets

kangaroo rats

horned lizard    deer

alligator    cougar

bighorn sheep    grizzly bear

bald eagle    gray wolf

rattlesnakes    water

moccasins    wild turkey

beaver    lizards

## Yosemite National Park

Yosemite National Park is located in central California, bordering on the Sierra Nevada mountain range. Its most spectacular feature is the Yosemite Valley, a long gorge carved by glaciers during the Ice Age which contains several splendid waterfalls and cascades. The park contains several groves of ancient sequoia trees. Other forests of pine, fir, and cedar give way to alpine meadows at higher elevations.

## Everglades National Park

Everglades National Park in southern Florida is the largest subtropical wilderness and marshland in the United States. Because it contains both freshwater and saltwater areas, its vegetation is lush and diverse. The forest is host to numerous species of palm, cypress, live oak and pine trees. Wild flowers, including orchids and water lilies, also abound in the area. The park has many marked hiking trails and boardwalks to provide easier access to the marshes, as well as five canoe trails.

## Death Valley

Death Valley, which got its name from the large number of gold-seekers who died trying to cross it in the 1849 Gold Rush, is the hottest place in the United States. Despite this, the 7,800-square-kilometer desert basin is by no means lifeless. The mountains of the Panamint Range, which borders the desert, play host to thousand-year-old bristlecone pine trees which cling to the rocky slopes. Within the basin itself, a large number of cacti can be found, and scattered springs create marshy

oases. Only the desert's lowest areas, which consist of sandy dunes and salt plains, are completely devoid of vegetation.





**3** Write a short description of an area in your country that remains a wilderness. Find the correct English names of the main animals and plants. The lists on the following pages are designed to help you.

**4** Look at the animals below and say which of them move in groups and which are solitary.

**If they do live in groups, what do we call the groups?**

**What are they called when they are babies?**

### Are they predators, scavengers, or herbivores?

(Predators hunt; carnivores just eat meat; scavengers are carnivores, but usually eat what predators have killed – e.g. vultures; omnivores eat everything; herbivores eat plants.)

dogs groups - pack - puppy - predator

lions \_\_\_\_\_

pigs \_\_\_\_\_

horses \_\_\_\_\_

ducks \_\_\_\_\_

bald eagles \_\_\_\_\_

spiders \_\_\_\_\_

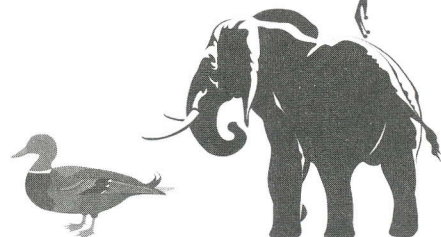
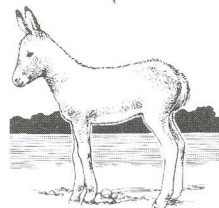
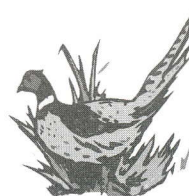
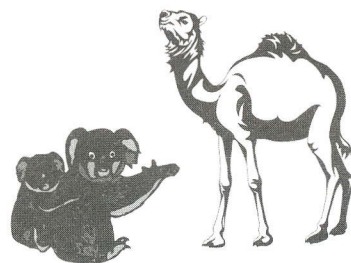
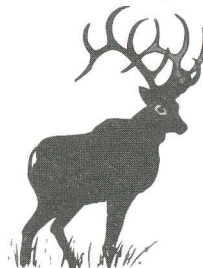
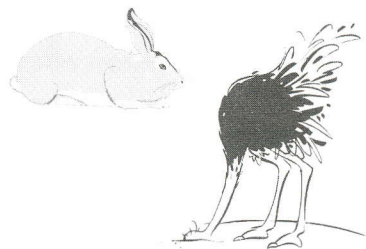
wolves \_\_\_\_\_

snakes \_\_\_\_\_

vultures \_\_\_\_\_

hyenas \_\_\_\_\_

**5** List the names of the animals in the pictures in the table and decide which category they belong to.

[illegible]

# Classification of Animals

(N.B. American terms for animals are sometimes different.)

**Mammals** keep their body temperature constant (they are warm-blooded), suckle their young, and are usually covered in hair. In general, a mammal's "hands" are known as paws, often containing sharp

Some typical wild mammals (the brackets contain male, female, young, and the special name of the home, if any, in that order)

mouse  
rat  
rabbit (buck, doe, starter, burrow or warren)  
hare (buck, doe, leveret, form); jackrabbit  
squirrel (nest is a drey)  
beaver (lives in a lodge on a dam)  
hamster  
marmot  
mole (makes molehills / moleheaps)  
hedgehog  
bat  
badger (boar, sow, cub, sett)  
stoat  
weasel  
polecat  
marten  
fox (dog-fox, vixen, cub, earth)  
otter (dog-, bitch-, kit, holt)  
wolf, *pl.* wolves (young are cubs)  
wildcat (tom, she-cat, kittens)  
lynx  
red deer  
roe deer  
fallow deer  
chamois  
moose

**All deer males are bucks, females are does, and young are fawns.**

bear (young are cubs)  
mouflon (ram, ewe, lamb)  
bison (bull, cow, calf)  
wild pig (boar, sow, piglets)



**Birds**  
nightingale  
blackbird  
thrush  
tit  
robin  
starling  
sparrow  
swallow  
swift  
martin  
finch  
stork  
cardinal



**Around fields and copses**

crow  
rook  
jackdaw  
magpie  
pigeon × dove  
buzzard  
kite  
hawk  
falcon  
partridge  
pheasant  
quail  
kestrel  
owl  
lark  
hoopoe  
cuckoo  
woodpecker  
tree-creeper  
nuthatch  
jay



**Waterside**

heron  
egret  
kingfisher  
gull  
tern  
duck  
goose, *pl.* geese  
coot  
cormorant  
swan  
wagtail



**In the mountains**

raven  
eagle  
vulture  
redstart

claws, unless it has hooves, like a cow or deer. Its covering is known as its fur, pelt or coat. It has forelegs, hind legs and (usually) a tail. Cows have horns on their heads; deer have antlers.

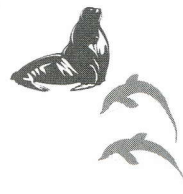
**Reptiles** are cold-blooded. They are covered in scales, and hatch from eggs, which they lay on land.

snake  
grass snake  
adder or viper  
asp  
lizards (including slow-worm, a legless lizard)



**Some mammals are adapted for life at sea**

seal  
sea-lion  
walrus  
dolphin  
porpoise  
whale



**Amphibians** are cold-blooded, lay eggs, and pass through several changes of form in water before they become adult, when they can venture onto land.

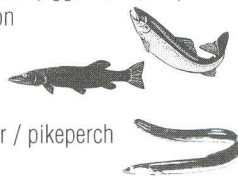
frog (eggs are spawn, young are tadpoles)

toad  
newt  
salamander



**Fishes** are cold-blooded, covered in scales, and "breathe" water using gills. Most of them have fins.

**In fresh water**  
sturgeon (eggs are caviar)  
salmon  
trout  
pike  
perch  
zander / pikeperch  
eel  
catfish (wels)  
asp  
carp  
roach  
tench  
bream



**In salt water**

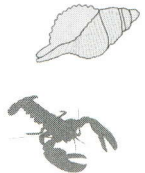
mackerel  
tuna  
herring



sardine  
cod  
hake  
bass  
shark  
skate × ray

**Shellfish**

shrimp  
prawn  
crab  
lobster  
octopus  
squid  
cockle  
mussel  
oyster  
scallop



**Invertebrates** are creatures without backbones. They include insects (six legs), spiders (eight legs), and millions of various 'creepy-crawlies'.

butterfly  
caterpillar  
fly  
moth  
bee  
bumblebee  
ladybird  
mosquito / midge  
wasp  
hornet  
ant  
locust  
cricket  
centipede  
spiders



black widow  
tarantula  
daddy-long-legs  
slugs and snails  
earthworm  
vermin  
lice  
fleas  
ticks  
cockroaches





# THE COUNTRYSIDE

**1** Fill in the missing words into the spaces in the text on the right, using the expressions below.

caves and caverns

streams

forests

current

stalactites

cliffs

mouth

meadows

beaches

low tide

source

stalagmites

white water rapids

creek

turns

reservoir

offshore

range of hills

**2** If someone loved fishing and seafood, where would s/he be able to gather, trap or catch the following creatures? Match the catch to the place and the equipment on the next page.

## FOOD FOR (NEARLY) FREE

Located on the beautiful Northern Coast, Badger Point is every nature-lover's dream holiday destination. The coastline here varies between rocky **1**\_\_\_\_\_ and sandy **2**\_\_\_\_\_, both of which are spotted with campsites and lodges. The rocky bottom of Badger Point Bay forms one of the largest systems of tide-pools in the country, and at **3**\_\_\_\_\_ an incredible variety of anemones, crabs, and other marine life gets trapped in its pockets until the tide **4**\_\_\_\_\_ again. Just a half-mile **5**\_\_\_\_\_ lies Badger Island, a haven for marine birds and especially seals.

The Badger River, which empties into Badger Point Bay, has its **6**\_\_\_\_\_ over two hundred miles away. As it passes through the mountains, it is fed by many **7**\_\_\_\_\_ and in some places has some exciting **8**\_\_\_\_\_. At the river's **9**\_\_\_\_\_, however, the **10**\_\_\_\_\_ is smooth and even, making it perfect for canoeing or kayaking.

A few miles inland, a **11**\_\_\_\_\_ rises out of the rolling **12**\_\_\_\_\_. Within these hills many **13**\_\_\_\_\_ can be found, filled with **14**\_\_\_\_\_, **15**\_\_\_\_\_ and other interesting rock formations. Beyond the hills lies the **16**\_\_\_\_\_, which was created when Badger **17**\_\_\_\_\_ was dammed fifty years ago. Surrounding the entire area are lush pine and oak **18**\_\_\_\_\_.

There is also a three-star hotel on the banks of the lake. So whether you've come to camp, spend a weekend in a lodge, or relax in the luxury of a hotel, Badger Point is the place for you!

mussels  
mackerel  
trout  
salmon  
carp  
shrimps  
cockles / clams (US)  
edible crabs  
crayfish



## PLACE

- 1 Hanging in great bunches from the harbour walls and rocks between the tides.
- 2 Living in the shallow water just below low tide.
- 3 Behind the seaweed in the tide pools, in the rocks around the harbour wall, in deep, rocky water.
- 4 In fresh water, usually still rather than running – the reservoir would be best.
- 5 In fast-running, clean fresh water, or in the estuary.
- 6 Best in fast, clear water, but also stocked in still water like the reservoir.
- 7 Whole beds of them buried in the sand between the tides.
- 8 Only in the cleanest fresh water, most easily caught in small streams.
- 9 In large shoals, often quite close to the shore.

## EQUIPMENT

- a a stick and quick reflexes, or a baited, basket-like pot set from a boat
- b rod, line and lots of fishing tackle; sweetcorn or potatoes for bait
- c a big basket or bag and a sharp knife
- d rod, line and lots of fishing tackle
- e a wide-mouthed push-net – little ones for the kids in the tourist shops, big professional ones made by local fishermen
- f bits of meat, a few long nails, a net on a stick and lightning reflexes; or a baited trap
- g rod and line, and/or boat, and anything flashy or shiny for bait – they even snap at bare fish-hooks
- h rod, line, and lots of fishing tackle, although some clever people know how to catch them with their hands (tickle them)
- i hands or little garden fork and a bag

**3** What can be gathered / caught by ordinary people in the rivers, coast and countryside in your country? Tell your partner about a trip to the countryside to hunt, catch or gather free food. Don't forget the plants. See p. 136.

TL

### Countryside

#### Hunting and shooting

gun / fishing licence (GB) / license (US)

to go shooting or fishing

fisherman

angler

hunting

shooting

foxhunt

hounds

huntsman on horseback

hunting horn

gundog

to find and retrieve game

ferret to flush rabbits

trap

gin-trap (GB) / spring trap / leg-hold trap

tunnel-trap

to snare

footprints × tracks × traces

field glasses / binoculars

to stalk × lie in wait for

a hide (GB) / a blind (US)

camouflage clothing

a rifle fires a single bullet

a shotgun fires lots of pellets from

a cartridge

to fire at

to hit × miss × wound × kill cleanly

poacher

gamekeeper

#### Fishing

water bailiff

pond × lake × river fishing

stocked waters

put-and-take fishery

coarse fishing × game fishing

(wet or dry) fly-fishing

fishing tackle

rod

reel

line

weight / sinker

hook

hook, line and sinker

bait

worm

livebait

artificial lures

plug

spinner

fly

to have a bite

to strike

to hook a fish

to play a fish

to land a fish

to catch st on rod and line

net

gaff

trophy



# FRIEND OR FOE?

**1** Animals are not always what people think they are. With your partner, fill in the table below but leave 'THE TRUTH' empty. Then read text A; your partner should read text B. Tell your partner what you have found out and fill in 'THE TRUTH'. 'IMAGE' means accepted idea – for example, the image connected with 'dog' is 'faithful', 'friendly', 'good company' etc., because these words spring to mind first.



You might find the following structures useful:

- Did you know that...?*  
*People think..., but actually / in fact...*  
*It says here that...*  
*I don't believe it!.... How interesting!*
- Really?*  
*No!*  
*Fancy that!*  
*Well, well!*

	DANGER TO PEOPLE				IMAGE	THE TRUTH
	lots	some	little	none		
polar bear						
killer whale						
chimpanzee						
dog						
bald eagle						
gorilla						
wolf						
hyena						
pig						
raven						

# Text A

## Beware of the ... Chimp?

### Polar Bear

One of the few animals that will actively and deliberately hunt people, the polar bear can be a menace to Arctic travellers and hunters. Superbly camouflaged and insulated by its white fur, and capable of a good turn of speed over a short distance, it is a master both of the stealthy stalk and the patient ambush.

### Killer Whale (Orca)

Although all the whales and dolphins have been getting a good press in recent years, the killer whale still strikes fear into the hearts of those who must live and work on and near the sea around Arctic waters. Intelligent and inquisitive, quite capable of co-operating with others of its own kind to tip up an ice-floe or to herd seals and fish into ambush, it thinks nothing of adding a person to the day's menu, and probably distinguishes him or her from a seal only by taste.

### Chimpanzee

Darling of the zoo tea party and Tarzan's sidekick in a thousand TV programmes, the wild chimp can also be a cannibal, murderer and killer for kicks. For example, when a new leader takes over a chimp social group, it systematically

murders the young of the previous leader. Although primarily vegetarians, chimps occasionally go on the rampage for meat, killing the young of other animals – even those of "alien" chimp groups – in grisly fashion, then eating them.

### Dog

Dogs kill, maim, and disfigure thousands of people every year, all over the world. The statistics in "civilised" countries, such as Britain, are appalling. The problem seems to be that no politician will risk losing an election to protect people from their favourite pet, and no police officer wants to be seen as a dog-hater. Apart from pet dogs, feral dogs are a menace. These are pets that have run off and bred in the wild, and their colonies are features of the outskirts of most third-world cities. But they're a big problem in America, too....

### Bald Eagle

In one of the most unfortunate clashes of fact and stereotype in history, the eagle that symbolises America on flags, coins and banknotes is of a species that often turns to robbery and scavenging to make a living. One of its specialities is chasing fish eagles until they drop what they have caught, then eating it. Benjamin Franklin, a founder-philosopher of the American state, was bitterly opposed to its use as a symbol, and suggested the wild turkey in its place.

# Text B

## King Kong Cuddles?

### Gorilla

The gorilla's reputation has been the victim of two of the least truthful and minimally intelligent groups of people on Earth: Hollywood and white hunters. It is, in fact, a gentle, sociable vegetarian, much given to chewing bamboo by day and building comfy beds for itself and its young by night. Its worst habit is beating its chest and running up to visitors, but if they stand their ground instead of shooting, the gorilla backs down. It's all show.

### Wolf

Co-operative hunters that kill only when they need to, look after each others' young and bring food back to the den for mates and young that cannot hunt, wolves might be cited as examples of good behaviour, rather than being systematically hunted for "crimes" they seldom commit. It is an interesting fact that there exists absolutely no scientifically proven evidence that a healthy wolf has ever killed and eaten a person in America, and close examination of evidence in Eurasia proves that this is a very rare event there.

### Hyena

Condemned, like many scavengers, to being a symbol of cowardice and underhand practice, the hyena has proved, on closer study of its nocturnal habits, to be a hunter every bit as

formidable and worthy of respect as, for example, a wild hunting dog. Ironically, similar studies of the so-called "noble" lion revealed that it, too, is a scavenger, a thief and coward – if these terms can be applied to animals at all.

### Pig

Intelligent, faithful, clean-living and co-operative animals, pigs have been the victims of inter-religious propaganda since the dawn of civilisation. Their alleged filthiness derives in part from an absence of sweat glands, which makes it very difficult to keep cool without wallowing in mud. At various points in history they have been used as forest clearers, seed planters, and pullers of carts. They have also been known to take over from dogs, herding cattle as well as any collie and finding and retrieving game in English forests. To this day, they are used to sniff out truffles – delicious and extremely expensive underground fungi – in France.

### Raven

Big, black and mysterious, the raven lives on the border of superstition and fact. A highly intelligent and adaptable bird, it mates for life and exists on carrion and whatever small animals, from beetles to rodents, it can catch. Despite the legends, it kills nothing larger than a rabbit. It is interesting to compare attitudes towards the raven, a black and useful scavenger from the mountains, and towards the swan, a white and thoroughly useless bird that does little but pollute lowland pastures and ponds.

TL



# AT THE ZOO

**1** Do you have a zoo in your city? What kinds of animals does it have?

**2** You have been appointed the zoo keeper of a new zoo. Decide which of the following animals should go in which of the cages or spaces below. Be careful that nobody gets eaten!

If you have difficulties in placing the animals, suggest putting in new enclosures or altering the existing ones.

- Lions** Temperamental carnivores. Will eat any animals they are caged with. Should be isolated.
- Monkeys** Master escape artists. Must be put either into cages or on islands. Very loud and rowdy.
- Giraffes** Very timid and tolerant. Can live anywhere as long as they have some leaves to chew on.

**Parrots and other exotic birds** Must be caged.

Need to have silence at night or they won't be able to get to sleep.

**Hippos**

Can be dangerous if antagonised but mostly peaceful. Need a nice pond to bathe in. Although they are gregarious, they don't like to share their ponds with any other large animals.

**Leopards**

Predators. Very fast, need some room to run around.

**Polar bears**

Extremely nasty. Will fight anything, no matter how big. Also very strong, able to tear down fences with their paws.

**Flamingos**

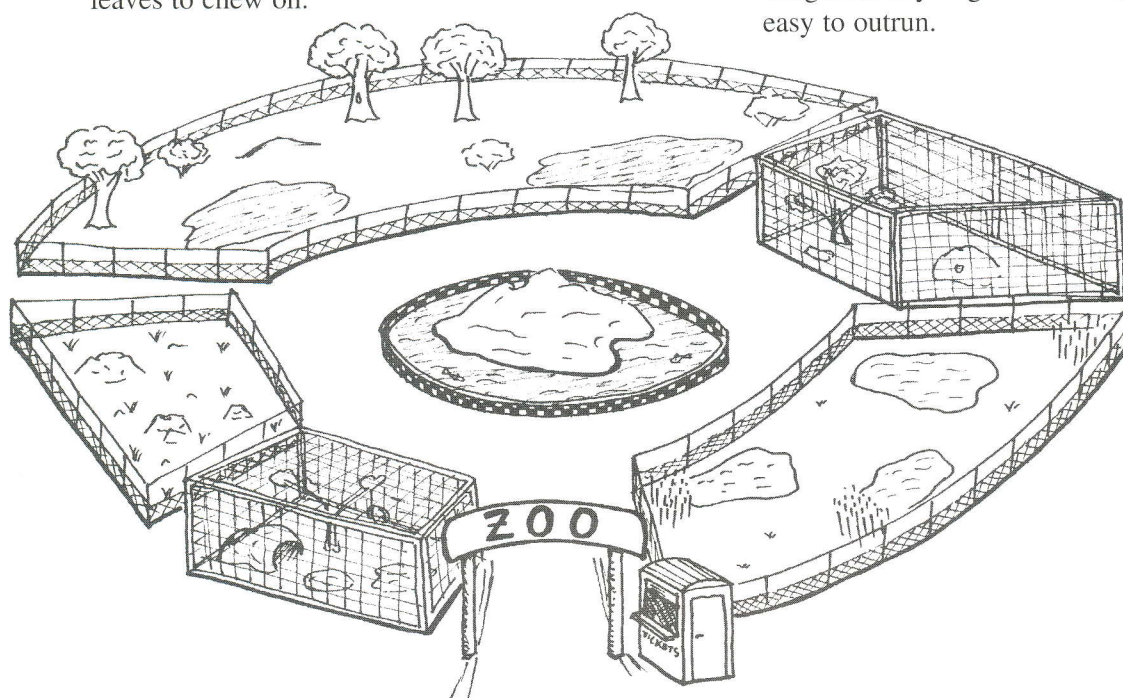
Not prone to escape. Need to be in water.

**Zebras**

Peaceful and not prone to escape. Need lots of room to run. Very fast.

**Crocodiles**

Need shallow ponds to bathe in. Very dangerous if you get too close, but easy to outrun.



## At the Zoo

cage  
enclosure  
confinement  
restricted movement  
reptile house  
big cats  
aquarium × vivarium  
room to move  
feeding time  
breeding nucleus

reintroduction to the wild  
breeding in captivity  
zoo keeper  
[animal name] keeper  
lion  
tiger  
leopard  
camel  
elephant  
African  
Indian



hippo(potamus), pl.  
hippopotamuses or -ami  
bison (GB) / buffalo (US)  
rhinoceros  
giraffe  
zebra  
grizzly bear  
polar bear  
koala (bear) (marsupial)  
kangaroo  
apes × monkeys

gorilla  
orangutan  
ostrich  
penguins  
flamingo  
crocodile × alligator  
lizards × snakes  
cobra  
python  
anaconda

**1** Do you have a pet? If you do, tell your partner about the first time you saw your pet. If you don't have a pet, talk about what kind of pet you would most like to have and why.

**2** Try to answer the questions below.

Why is the first day you bring a new pet into your house important for the pet?

Is Christmas Day a good day to bring home a new pet? Why/why not?

What can sometimes happen when you give young children pets such as dogs or cats?

Which are the easiest animals to look after? Which ones are the most difficult?

**3**  Now listen to the recording and check your answers.

**4** Certain animals are sometimes associated with certain personality traits. If the following people were animals, what kinds of animals would they be? Why?

- ⊙ your teacher
- ⊙ your mother or father
- ⊙ the leading politicians in your country
- ⊙ your partner or friend
- ⊙ your favourite musician or film star



## Pets

he has a way with animals  
animal lover  
aquarist / fish fancier

## Cats

Persian  
Russian blue  
tabby  
ginger / marmalade  
Manx  
a good mouser

## Dogs

pedigree × cross-breed  
mongrel  
poodle  
German shepherd / Alsatian  
doberman(n)  
pit-bull terrier  
fox terrier

labrador  
corgi  
retriever  
dachshund / sausage dog  
collie  
basset hound  
greyhound  
spaniel (cocker or springer)  
long-haired × short-haired  
to take the dog for a walk / a run  
to walk the dog  
regular exercise  
collar  
lead / leash (US)  
muzzle

## Other animals

parrot  
budgerigar / budgie  
turtle  
hamster

scorpion  
spider  
rat  
mouse, *pl.* mice  
guinea pig

## Riding horses

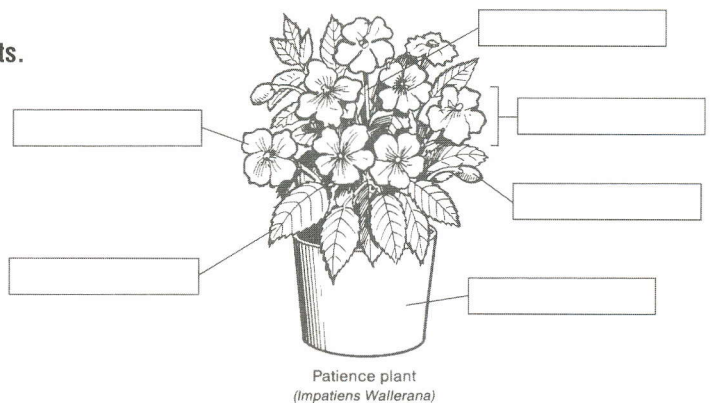
thoroughbred  
Arab  
hunter  
pony  
saddle  
bridle  
bit  
girth  
stirrups  
walk × trot × canter × gallop  
pony and trap  
trap racing  
show-jumping



# PLANTS

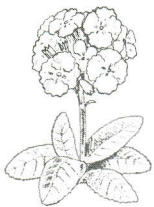
**1** Look at the plant and fill in the names of its parts.

root  
stalk  
leaf, *pl.* leaves  
bloom  
petal  
bud

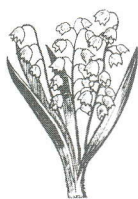


Patience plant  
(*Impatiens Wallerana*)

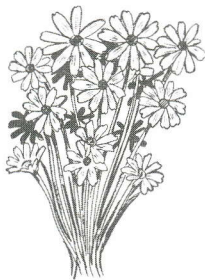
**2** Unscramble the names of the following plants (the first letter is in **bold**).



**p**imsorer



**i**lyl-fo-eth-yalelv



**i**asdy



**n**yaihcth



**c**cosru



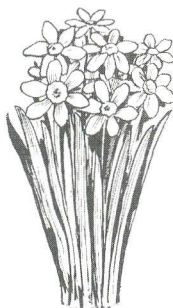
**s**iri



**s**anpy



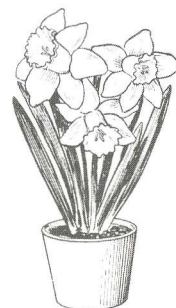
**l**iyl



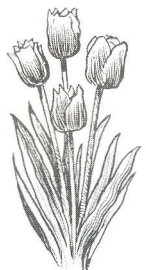
**s**ssriuacn



**m**umsanthechry



**l**idodaff



**p**util

## Plants

### Parts of a plant

stem  
flower  
pollen  
seed  
bulb  
rhizome  
cutting  
graft

### Flowers

snowdrop  
cowslip  
foxglove  
buttercup  
forget-me-not  
violet  
anemone  
bluebells  
peony  
pinks

### Flowers

carnation  
sweet pea  
rose  
lavender  
snapdragon  
geranium  
poppy  
sunflower  
cornflower  
dahlia

### Weeds

nettle  
thistle  
couch-grass  
poppy  
cornflower  
burdock  
dandelion  
daisy

### Herbs

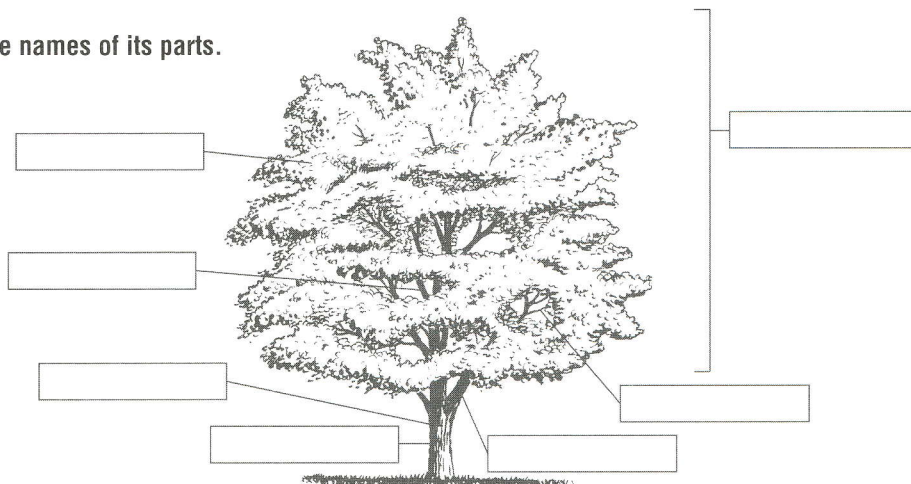
thyme  
marjoram  
parsley  
sage  
rosemary  
mint  
camomile  
chives

### Grass

meadow  
hay  
haymaking  
bales  
blades of grass  
**Water-plants**  
water lilies  
waterweed  
seaweed

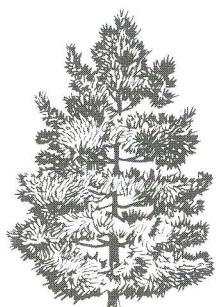
### 3 Look at the tree and fill in the names of its parts.

trunk  
bark  
branch  
bough  
twig  
leaf (*pl.* leaves)  
and blossom  
crown

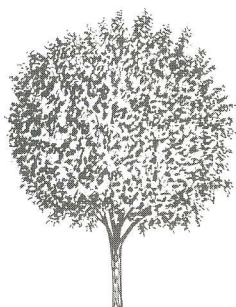


Flowering dogwood  
(*Cornus florida*)

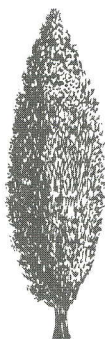
### 4 Talk about the following trees. Where would you find them? What other plants and trees would probably grow in the same place?



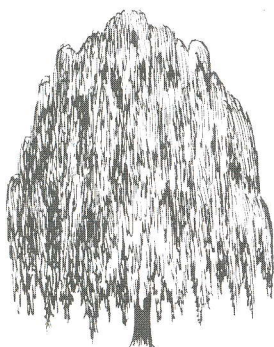
pine



hawthorn



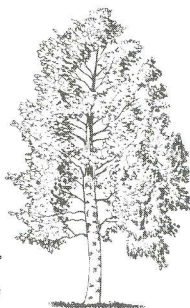
poplar



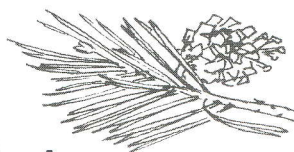
willow



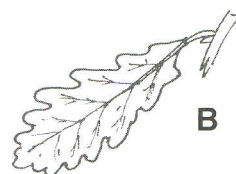
fir



birch



A



B



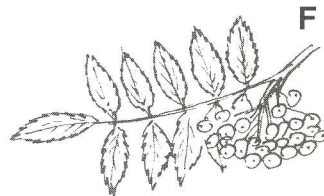
C



D



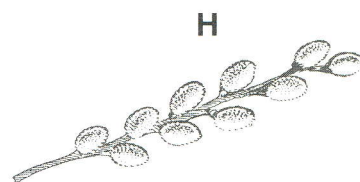
E



F



G



H

#### Plants

The forest  
evergreen x  
deciduous  
coniferous  
shrub  
bush  
stump / stub  
herb  
undergrowth  
brambles  
rain forest

#### Some types of tree (fruit / seeds in brackets)

pine (cone)  
fir (cone)  
larch  
spruce  
lime / linden tree  
hornbeam  
birch  
beech (mast)  
oak (acorns)

maple  
horse chestnut (horse  
chestnuts / conkers)  
sweet chestnut  
(chestnuts)  
elm  
rowan (berries)  
(weeping) willow  
pussy willow  
ash  
hawthorn (haws)

#### Mushrooms and fungi

field mushroom  
toadstool  
morel  
parasol  
cep (penny bun)  
chanterelle  
oyster mushroom  
bench fungus  
honey tuft  
puffball

death cap  
destroying angel  
fly agaric  
edible x inedible  
poisonous x deadly  
poisonous  
mycelium  
stem  
cap  
gills  
pores



# NATURE – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**I Choose the right expressions and fill in the gaps.**

- 1 He was working for the new boutiques and restaurants that were \_\_\_\_\_ across London.  
a growing up  
b flooding  
c mushrooming  
d rooting
- 2 Love of money is the \_\_\_\_\_ of all evil.  
a stem  
b source  
c seed  
d root
- 3 The affair was deeply \_\_\_\_\_ in the way the company was run.  
a rooted  
b set  
c cutting  
d nested
- 4 She \_\_\_\_\_ into an utterly beautiful woman.  
a blossomed  
b bloomed  
c became  
d fruited
- 5 After twenty years of \_\_\_\_\_ searching she returned home.  
a blooming  
b growing  
c fruitless  
d seaweed
- 6 That project may well come to \_\_\_\_\_ after all.  
a flower  
b fruit  
c fruition  
d fun
- 7 The work will \_\_\_\_\_ for future development.  
a make hay  
b dig the ground  
c lay the ground  
d cultivate the field
- 8 A \_\_\_\_\_ of doubt may have been planted in our minds.  
a corn  
b grain  
c seedling  
d seed
- 9 She could \_\_\_\_\_ the harvest of her sound training.  
a gather  
b reap  
c mow  
d receive
- 10 Unexpected work \_\_\_\_\_ up when it was most inconvenient.  
a picked  
b cropped  
c grew  
d figured

**II Fill in the correct names of plants.**

- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ is the plant that turns moors and heaths purple every August. It is also found in bogs, open woods and on old dunes. White \_\_\_\_\_ is a variant.
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ is a common weed with small grey-blue flowers appearing from April onwards. It can be found in fields, in woods, and in wet places. There is also a garden variety.
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_ is well-known for its sweet smell. It has pinkish-purple flowers like marjoram and wild basil. It is a low-growing plant and is common on heaths and downs throughout the British Isles.
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_ was originally found in cornfields but because of modern herbicides its bright blue flowers can nowadays be found mostly only on waste ground.
- 15 \_\_\_\_\_ is a common weed of lawns and waste places. It has solitary flowerheads on leafless stems. The name derives from "dent de lion" (French for lion's tooth) which refers to the shape of its leaves.

**III The following names of wild animals have been left out of the sentences below. Put them back.**

**APE RAT FERRET BEAR FOX**

- 16 I tried very hard, but I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the information out of the clerk.
- 17 The money market is a \_\_\_\_\_ race, and some people who work in it die of the stress.
- 18 You would have to be sly as a \_\_\_\_\_ to outwit me.
- 19 Careful on Monday mornings! The boss is like a \_\_\_\_\_ with a sore head.
- 20 I really go \_\_\_\_\_ over chocolate.

**IV Match the names of trees with their fruits or seeds.**

21	pine	cone
22	beech	berries
23	oak	conkers
24	horse chestnut	acorns
25	fir	mast
26	rowan	

**V Match the following proverbs and clichés with their explanations.**

- |    |   |   |  |
|----|---|---|--|
| 27 | beard the lion in his own den                 | a | to support both sides of the dispute                                 |
| 28 | when the cat's away, the mice will play       | b | if you wake up and get to work early, you will succeed               |
| 29 | to run with the hare and hunt with the hounds | c | to confront someone on his or her own territory                      |
| 30 | the early bird catches the worm               | d | when no authority is present, the subordinates can do as they please |

# NATURE – AND MORE PRACTICE...

**I Choose the right expressions and fill the gaps.**

- 1 A call warned police that a bomb had been \_\_\_\_\_ in a car in the centre of the town.  
a planted  
b rooted  
c pruned  
d cropped up
- 2 The teaching staff had to \_\_\_\_\_ the curriculum and the tests.  
a fertilize  
b prune  
c harvest  
d weed
- 3 The United States emits more \_\_\_\_\_ gases than any other country.  
a nature  
b biological  
c greenhouse  
d global
- 4 Suddenly a new idea \_\_\_\_\_ and we started talking about it.  
a turned up  
b cropped up  
c grew up  
d set in
- 5 He began to \_\_\_\_\_ the harvest of his hard work.  
a dig  
b feed  
c sow  
d reap
- 6 Many firms started \_\_\_\_\_ employees to cut costs.  
a shedding  
b sprouting  
c flourishing  
d planting
- 7 I think I'll just rest on my \_\_\_\_\_ for a time before attempting anything new.  
a leaves  
b roots  
c petals  
d laurels
- 8 They are enjoying the \_\_\_\_\_ of success and having a good time.  
a harvest  
b spell  
c fruits  
d blooms
- 9 Make \_\_\_\_\_ while the sun shines.  
a straw  
b hay  
c corn  
d beet
- 10 Everybody is expecting a few green \_\_\_\_\_ of economic recovery.  
a shots  
b springs  
c stems  
d shoots

**II Fill in the correct names of plants.**

- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ can be told from bilberry by its evergreen leaves, creeping habit, whiter flowers and edible berries which turn red when ripe.
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ is widely planted in ornamental waters. Its leaves are small and circular and the big white flowers float on the surface of water. They are related to true lilies.
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_ has deep scarlet petals, often with a black patch at the base and globular seed-pods; it flowers in the fields from June to the autumn.
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_ is common in lawns and disliked by many tidy gardeners. It flowers throughout the year except in prolonged hard frosts.
- 15 \_\_\_\_\_, also called Lent Lily, is the only native British wild narcissus. Wild \_\_\_\_\_ grow in grassy places, mainly in Southern and Western England, but have been introduced elsewhere.

**III The following names of animals have been left out from the sentences below. Put them back.**

**MOUSE HARE SQUIRREL MONKEY WOLF**

- 16 I was not sure what to do. I didn't want to hurt him but I didn't want to be a \_\_\_\_\_ either.
- 17 This proposal seems harmless enough, but I think it's a \_\_\_\_\_ in sheep's clothing.
- 18 I have been \_\_\_\_\_ away a little money each week for years.
- 19 There's been some \_\_\_\_\_ business in connection with the bank's accounts.
- 20 If you run after two \_\_\_\_\_, you will catch neither.

**IV Sort the following names of trees under the two headings. EVERGREEN (21), DECIDUOUS (22).**

larch spruce pine lime fir hornbeam birch beech oak  
maple horse chestnut elm rowan willow ash

**V Match the following proverbs and clichés with their explanations.**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 23 a big fish in a small pond                  | a have an obsession about something  |
| 24 money does not grow on trees                | b something you already have is better than to risk losing everything by trying to get much more       |
| 25 a leopard cannot change its spots           | c the most important person in some small group or community   |
| 26 a little bird told me                       | d immense things can come from small beginnings  |
| 27 a bird in the hand is worth two in the bush | e be crazy   |
| 28 have bats in the belfry                     | f it is not easy to get money  |
| 29 have a bee in one's bonnet                  | g one cannot change the basic way one is   |
| 30 great oaks from little acorns grow          | h a way of indicating that you do not want to reveal who told you something – sometimes used playfully |



# EVERYDAY PHRASES

The following phrases are the type of highly colloquial language that one hears every day and needs to understand. Read through the following list of explanations and then try to complete the dialogues using the phrases from the list. Then practise the dialogues in pairs:

- a **For what it's worth** (a phrase added to a piece of information)
- b **You're telling me!** (I know all the truth of what you are saying very well.)
- c **suit yourself** (you can decide to have something you want it)
- d **Take it or leave it** (There is no choice. Take this option or none.)
- e **Stay / keep out of this!** (This does not concern you, so do not get involved.)
- f **we must / should do this again** (sometime) (to indicate that you have enjoyed st)
- g **as we speak** (just now, at this very moment)
- h **when you get a minute / a chance** (introducing a request)
- i **If there's anything you need, don't hesitate to ask** (offering help, usually said by a host)
- j **there you are** (that's the way things are)
- k **Where is the restroom?** (US, asking for a toilet in a public building)
- l **good / nice talking to you** (a polite phrase said at the end of a conversation)

Alice: There's nothing more that can be done. We've done what we could. So

1 \_\_\_\_\_.

Peter: 2 \_\_\_\_\_, you are doing great! — Alice: Thanks! It's worth a lot!

Mary: Well, I have to get off. — Paul: 3 \_\_\_\_\_. Bye, Mary.

Tom: 4 \_\_\_\_\_, Mary. — Mary: It's just as much my business as it is yours.

Peter: This food is really terrible. — Paul: Wow! 5 \_\_\_\_\_.

Mary: I think I will go home. — Alice: 6 \_\_\_\_\_ – I am staying.

Bob: What a nice evening! — Alice: Yes, it certainly was – 7 \_\_\_\_\_.

The plane is taking off 8 \_\_\_\_\_.

Bill: Tom, 9 \_\_\_\_\_, I'd like to ask you a question.

Peter: 10 \_\_\_\_\_? — Clerk: Next to the reception desk, on the right.

Eve: I'm sure, I'll be comfortable here. — Jane: 11 \_\_\_\_\_.

Paul: This is my last offer. – 12 \_\_\_\_\_.

# THE HUMAN BODY

**1** How would you describe the typical American man and woman? What do they look like? Do you think this is an accurate description of real Americans?

**2** Read the text and then do the exercises below.

Find the word in the passage that means the following:

- 1 without a mark or stain
- 2 large and swelling
- 3 shining in the sun
- 4 the state of being fat
- 5 more healthy
- 6 a hairstyle common among street punks
- 7 ideas
- 8 a girl who behaves in a way usually considered boyish
- 9 losing one's hair
- 10 a large group

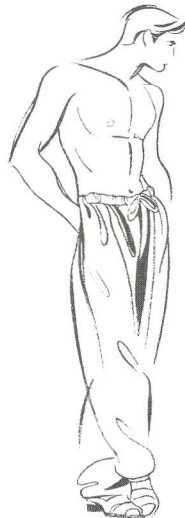
**3** Find the nouns that go with the following adjectives.

long	sculpted
firm	wide
flat	slim
huge	pierced
tanned	stocky
god-like	short
muscular	double

**4** Try to add some nouns to the adjectives in the box.

## FIRST IMPRESSIONS

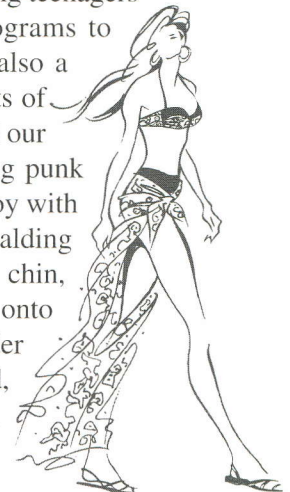
### THE IMAGE OF AMERICA



For much of the world, America exists only on the television and cinema screen, and it has a certain image. The American Woman is seen walking on a beach, her toned body only slightly covered by a bikini. She has a perfect hourglass figure, accentuated by her long legs, firm thighs, flat stomach, and huge breasts, all of it wrapped up in a layer of tanned, unblemished skin. Next to her walks the god-like American Man, tall and muscular, his bulging biceps shining in the sun, a slight layer of sweat glistening on his sculpted chest and wide shoulders. This mythical couple seems to appear on every American television show and movie that is broadcast across the world.

In reality, however, America has a much different image, if it can be said to have one image at all. The first surprise is that America is not a slim nation. In

fact, obesity has become such a problem among teenagers that the government has started special programs to make schoolchildren fitter. But America is also a place where there are many different concepts of beauty, so on one street you will not only find our American Woman and Man, but also a young punk with a pink mohawk and pierced lips, a tomboy with short hair and a stocky masculine build, a balding businessman with his beer-belly and double chin, and a whole host of others who never make it onto the television screen. It is just another reminder that, in America as well as the rest of the world, life is much bigger, and much more interesting, than what we see on the television screen.



#### First Impressions

gorgeous  
stunning  
handsome  
well-built  
athletic  
pear-shaped

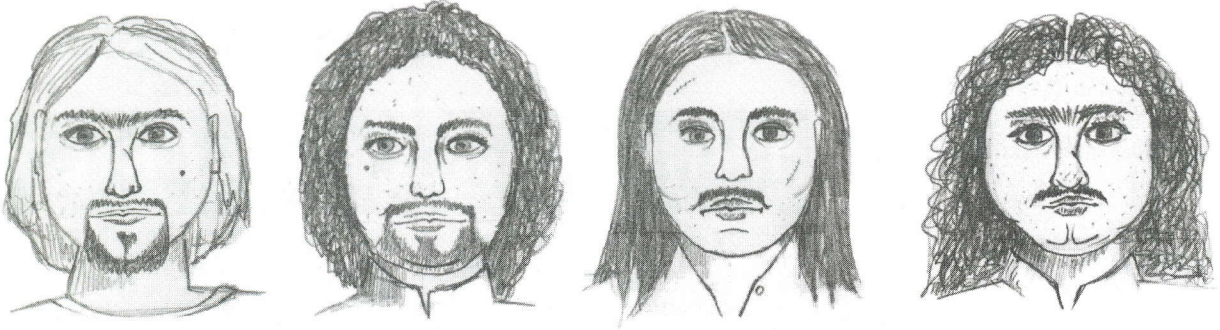
fat / portly / corpulent / well-rounded  
obese  
gross  
dumpy  
thin  
emaciated

skinny  
slim / slender  
lithe  
dark × light  
tomboy  
beauty is only skin deep



# HEAD AND FACE

**1**  You will hear a conversation between Ms Begbie, a woman who has had her purse stolen, and a police officer. Listen to the description of the mugger and then match it to one of the pictures below.



**2** One of the four adjectives on each line does not collocate with the same noun as the other adjectives. Add the right nouns and write your answers in the table below.

- a even gapped chapped bucked
- b pointed rosy double dimpled
- c straight curly short low
- d dimpled straight Roman hooked
- e oval wrinkled lined slanted
- f arched plucked bushy receding
- g high short low furrowed
- h high-boned rosy pale lank
- i full chapped yellow cracked


**3** Look at the other three men in the pictures and match them with the following descriptions.

- slanted eyes
- flat crooked nose
- birthmark under the right eye
- birthmark on one cheek
- beard
- straight nose
- dimpled chin
- scars
- moustache
- thick bushy eyebrows
- pockmarked face
- thin lips
- thick arched eyebrows
- double chin
- round eyes
- round face

**4** Think of a famous person (an actor, singer, politician) or a student or a teacher you know. Use the collocations from this and the preceding page to describe them. Write at least two or three sentences, then read them out without saying who the person is. The other students can guess who you are describing.

a	chapped lips	bucked / even / gapped teeth
b		
c		
d		
e		
f		
g		
h		
i		

**5** Have you ever had a haircut that you didn't like? Why didn't you like it? What did you do about it?

**6**  Unscramble the lines in the dialogue on the right and answer the following questions. Then listen and check your answers.

How are Sue and John's new hairstyles different from their old ones?

Why don't they like them?

**7** Look at your classmates. Try to describe their faces, using the vocabulary from the box below. Prepare at least three descriptions and let your partner guess who they refer to. Example:

*She has got curly auburn hair with a parting in the middle. Her face is round with a high forehead...*

1

.....

.....

2 .....

.....

.....

3 .....

.....

.....

A Oh, it's not really that bad... I mean, maybe when it grows out it'll...

B Don't even talk about my hat! God, I am so mad I could just scream!

A Well, you know how John used to have such lovely long hair? Well, he got a new job in an insurance company so he had to cut it off. He wanted it just to be a nice, normal length, with a parting on the side and all that. You know, the businessman look. Well, the barber shaved it all the way off. By the time he realised what was happening, it was too late, so he had to get a crew cut. It doesn't look so bad now that he's grown a moustache and beard, but when he first got it he looked like a skinhead! Not exactly the way to make a good first impression at your new job.

B It's awful! God! All I asked her for was a trim and a perm. I had a lot of split ends, and I was tired of my fringe always getting in my eyes, so I wanted it a little shorter. But she chopped my fringe completely off, and the sides are too short too. And this perm is so curly that I look like I have an afro! It's terrible!

A Well, you know, it could be worse. Have you seen John's new haircut?

B What's the matter? Just look! (*Sue takes off her hat.*) I went to the hairdresser's today and look what she did! She butchered me!

A Hi, Sue. Nice hat. Is it new?

B No, why?

A Why? What's the matter?

## Head and Face

### Hair

blond  
fair  
auburn  
red  
ginger  
brown  
black  
grey  
curly  
frizzy  
wavy  
straight  
mousy  
greasy  
lank  
dry  
full of dandruff  
plaited  
ponytail  
to be balding / bald  
receding hairline

to be thin on top

crew cut  
afro  
dreadlocks  
mohawk  
parting (GB) / part (US)

### Facial hair

moustache  
beard  
whiskers  
goatee  
sideburns

### Face

round  
square  
oval  
aquiline  
pockmarked  
spotty  
acne  
pimples

### wart

mole  
birthmark  
dimple  
freckled  
lined  
craggy  
wrinkled  
fresh × pale complexion

### Forehead

furrowed  
wrinkled  
high  
low

### Eyes

oval  
slanted × wide  
sunken  
deepset  
sparkling  
dull

### Eyebrows

straight  
arched  
thick  
thin  
plucked  
bushy

### Nose

bulbous  
straight  
hooked  
Roman  
snub  
broken  
flat  
veined  
drinker's

### Cheeks

rosy  
high-boned  
cheekbone

### Chin

long  
pointed  
short  
chiselled  
double  
cleft  
dimpled

### Lips

full  
thin  
cracked  
chapped

### Teeth

even  
crooked  
gapped  
horsy  
yellow  
bad  
bucked



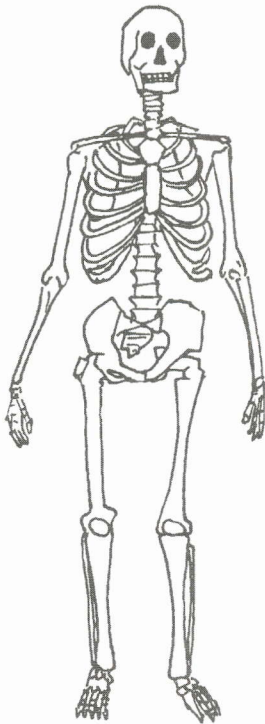
# BODY AND LIMBS

**1** Match the parts of the body below to the injuries or illnesses associated with them. There may be more than one correct answer.

- |        |           |
|--------|-----------|
| shin   | stomach   |
| knee   | bladder   |
| ankle  | hamstring |
| muscle | wrist     |
| toe    | finger    |
| leg    | nose      |
| arm    | tooth     |
| head   | ear       |
| back   | lung      |
| neck   | heart     |
| tendon | kidney    |

- 1 to have a / an \_\_\_\_\_ infection
- 2 to sprain your \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 to bruise your \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 to have a collapsed \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 to have \_\_\_\_\_ stones
- 6 to pull a \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 to have (a) \_\_\_\_\_ ache
- 8 to break your \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 to dislocate \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 to tear a \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 to stub your \_\_\_\_\_
- 12 to get cramp in a \_\_\_\_\_
- 13 to have a \_\_\_\_\_ attack
- 14 to have a stiff \_\_\_\_\_

**2** Name the parts of the skeleton below. The expressions in the box on the opposite page might help you.



---

---

---

---

---

---

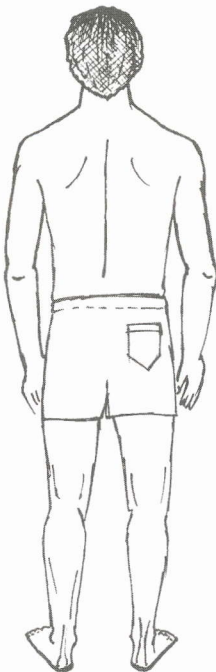
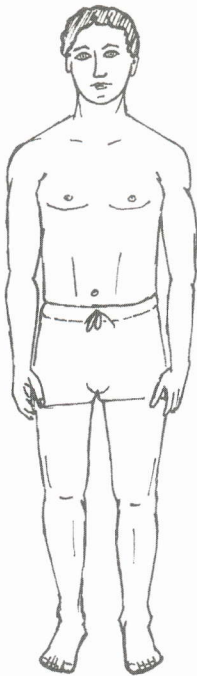
---

---

---

---

**3** Fill in the lines below, using the vocabulary from the box on the following page.



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**4** Since “body language” and shared feelings can be very vivid, many parts of the human body are used in everyday expressions; find the equivalents of the following idioms in your mother tongue. Which ones are nearly the same in literal translation and which ones are completely different?

to have a sweet tooth  
to fight tooth and nail  
to have a nose for news  
there was a lump in his throat  
Grandpa is young at heart  
blood is thicker than water  
he was completely tongue-tied  
he opened his mouth and put his foot in it  
he paid an arm and a leg for that car  
he broke her heart  
into the teeth of a gale  
head over heels in love  
don't let him fix the bike; he's all thumbs  
he made a clean breast of it  
I'm all ears  
he's got a level head on his shoulders  
he was only pulling your leg  
it took guts to climb Everest  
he doesn't have the stomach for a fight  
two heads are better than one  
he may be ugly, but he's got a heart of gold

**5** Match the following verbs with the respective parts of the body and use them in sentences to illustrate their meaning.

**A**

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 to clench     | a one's arms (across one's chest)          |
| 2 to fold       | b one's limbs, legs, arms                  |
| 3 to nod, shake | c nose, one's teeth                        |
| 4 to pick       | d one's legs, fingers, eyes, arms, oneself |
| 5 to rub        | e one's shoulders                          |
| 6 to stick out  | f one's eyes                               |
| 7 to shrug      | g one's head                               |
| 8 to cross      | h one's neck, tongue, chest, belly, chin   |
| 9 to blink      | i one's teeth, hands, fists                |
| 10 to stretch   | j one's hands, nose, eyes                  |

**B**

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 to clean           | a one's nose          |
| 2 to turn up ____ at | b one's own feet      |
| 3 to hold            | c a tooth, one's leg  |
| 4 to point           | d with a finger       |
| 5 to snap            | e one's nails, teeth  |
| 6 to stamp           | f one's foot, feet    |
| 7 to pull            | g hands, one's breath |
| 8 to stand on        | h one's brains        |
| 9 to rack            | i one's shoulder      |
| 10 to throw st over  | j one's fingers       |

## Body and Limbs

### Shoulders

wide  
thin  
round  
square

### Chest

deep  
narrow  
pigeon  
concave  
barrel  
flat

### Stomach / tummy/ abdomen / belly / gut

flat  
muscular  
beer  
pot (-belly)  
belly button / navel

### Hips

slim  
broad  
wide

### Legs

thick × thin  
knock-kneed  
bowlegged

### Skeleton

skull  
socket  
sinus  
jawbone  
funnybone  
ribcage / ribs  
breastbone  
collarbone  
spine / backbone  
pelvis

### coccyx

knee cap  
shin  
shoulder blade

### Genitals / sex organs

vagina  
clitoris  
testicles  
penis

### Organs, systems and glands

brain  
heart  
windpipe  
lungs  
blood  
veins  
arteries  
circulatory system  
nervous system

### liver

gall-bladder  
gullet  
stomach  
spleen  
pancreas  
gut  
small intestine  
large intestine  
colon  
appendix  
bowels  
kidneys  
bladder  
tendons  
ligament  
cartilage  
muscles  
hamstring



# BODY – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Match the expressions on the left with their definitions on the right.

- |    |                                      |   |  |
|----|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| 1  | to have a sweet tooth                | a | people will tend to be like their ancestors, good or bad |
| 2  | head over heels in love              | b | struggle energetically and with great determination      |
| 3  | to fight tooth and nail              | c | very much in love with someone                           |
| 4  | to be all thumbs                     | d | to confess something, to tell a necessary truth          |
| 5  | to have an itchy palm                | e | to be listening eagerly and carefully                    |
| 6  | to make a clean breast of something  | f | a funny feeling, as if you were going to cry             |
| 7  | to get / have a lump in one's throat | g | feel young in spite of the actual age                    |
| 8  | to be young at heart                 | h | to tend to ask for tips (placing money in the palm)      |
| 9  | to be all ears                       | i | to have a preference for sweet foods                     |
| 10 | blood will tell                      | j | very awkward and clumsy                                  |

Fill in the gaps with suitable expressions.

He was a tall, willowy youth, with long, lank **11** h\_\_\_\_\_ and a vacant expression.

His **12** m\_\_\_\_\_ was dry with fear, sweat beaded on his **13** f\_\_\_\_\_, and his **14** k\_\_\_\_\_ knocked together.

The human **15** s\_\_\_\_\_ is badly designed for walking on two **16** l\_\_\_\_\_, and middle age often brings back problems.

He was an enormous man, with a big beer-**17** b\_\_\_\_\_, **18** th\_\_\_\_\_ like tree-trunks and **19** h\_\_\_\_\_ like hams.

She grew from a skinny, toothy adolescent into a gorgeous young woman with a perfect **20** f\_\_\_\_\_.

Choose the right meaning of these metaphors.

**21** He has set up **a body** called the Security Council.

- a a community
- b an organization
- c a business
- d a structure

**22** He will **head** a provisional government.

- a execute
- b form
- c put together
- d lead

**23** Although your heart is breaking, you must **face** the truth that the romance has ended.

- a accept
- b tell
- c follow
- d bring

**24** This work has kept his name **in the public eye**.

- a on the radio
- b on TV
- c in the press
- d he was receiving a lot of public attention

**25** He has always had **a good ear for** accents and dialects.

- a good hearing
- b good understanding
- c ability to interpret and reproduce
- d knowledge

**26** **My heart goes out to you.**

- a I sympathize very deeply with
- b I am leaving
- c I decided to help
- d I feel odd

**27** Let me know if you need **a hand!**

- a someone to help you
- b a friend
- c an artificial limb
- d a new experience

**28** He is your **closest blood relative**.

- a a person you marry
- b your stepbrother
- c father-in-law
- d next of kin

**29** What can she do if her husband has **no backbone?**

- a no second job
- b no extra income
- c is weak and useless
- d no backyard

**30** I felt in my **bones** that something was badly wrong.

- a sure without a logical reason
- b absolutely sure
- c at a loss
- d a shiver running down my spine

# BODY – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Match the expressions on the left with their definitions on the right.

- |    |   |   |  |
|----|---|---|--|
| 1  | to have something on the tip of one's tongue                        | a | two people working together have a better chance of success                                  |
| 2  | to pull someone's leg   | b | you had to be courageous to accomplish that  |
| 3  | to put one's foot in it   | c | to kid, fool or trick someone  |
| 4  | it took guts to do it   | d | to be generous, sincere, and friendly  |
| 5  | to pay an arm and a leg for it <i>or</i><br>to pay through the nose | e | to say something insulting, stupid or hurtful that you regret, often by mistake              |
| 6  | not to have the stomach for it                                      | f | to be on the verge of remembering, to have just forgotten                                    |
| 7  | two heads are better than one                                       | g | to be very cheeky / disrespectful  |
| 8  | it takes some neck / gall to try that                               | h | just at the worst moment   |
| 9  | to have a heart of gold   | i | to be unable to do something because you think it is wrong; to lack courage or determination |
| 10 | into the teeth of a gale  | j | to pay too much for something  |

Fill in the gaps with suitable expressions.

Heavy drinking is a strain on the **11** l\_\_\_\_\_, **12** k\_\_\_\_\_, **13** h\_\_\_\_\_ and mind, as well as being a good way to lose friends.

People in the mountains have short, chunky bodies, and generally smaller **14** e\_\_\_\_\_.

At the smell of dinner, his **15** m\_\_\_\_\_ watered and his **16** b\_\_\_\_\_ rumbled.

He had his **17** t\_\_\_\_\_ taken out.

She was frozen to the **18** b\_\_\_\_\_; her **19** l\_\_\_\_\_ were blue, her **20** f\_\_\_\_\_ were white, and she shivered constantly.

Choose the right meaning of these metaphors.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>21</b> The janitor has a <b>skeleton key</b> to all the classrooms.   | <b>26</b> His father <b>shouldered the burden</b> of leadership.                      |
| a key specially made to open several locks   | a accepted the responsibilities and problems  |
| b no key   | b took up   |
| c old key  | c took over   |
| d new key  | d gave up   |
| <b>22</b> I love music. It is <b>in my blood</b> .   | <b>27</b> Latin used to be the <b>common tongue</b> for much of academic Europe.      |
| a I inherited a violin   | a common problem  |
| b it's part of my nature   | b lingua franca   |
| c I can't do without it  | c the only language   |
| d I play the piano   | d official language   |
| <b>23</b> They <b>worked their guts out</b> from 6 a.m. to 2.30 p.m. every day, often all evening and weekend too. | <b>28</b> He had a <b>nose</b> for news.  |
| a start early and finish late  | a problems with his nose  |
| b need much money  | b a talent for finding out  |
| c put all available time and energy into working   | c needed more help  |
| d forget all   | d was nosy  |
| <b>24</b> The government's <b>hands-off</b> policy caused many more problems.                                      | <b>29</b> He also worked as <b>head</b> of modern languages at a London school.       |
| a non-intervention   | a person in charge  |
| b big-stick  | b inspector   |
| c short-sighted  | c teacher   |
| d co-ordinated   | d played a major role in  |
| <b>25</b> <b>Take heart</b> , all is not lost.   | <b>30</b> There certainly is a large <b>body</b> of evidence to support these claims. |
| a don't be light-fingered  | a a strong personality  |
| b pluck up your courage  | b large amount of   |
| c kill two birds with one stone  | c need for  |
| d don't stick your chin out  | d clash of  |



# HEALTH

## ROUTINE ILLNESSES AND ACCIDENTS

**1**  Listen to the following conversation and fill in the information below.

1. Samantha's illness:

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Symptoms:

\_\_\_\_\_

3. How long she's been sick:

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Medicines she's been taking:

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Has she been to the doctor?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Why/why not?

\_\_\_\_\_

**2** Now complete the dialogue between Samantha and her doctor.

**Doctor:** Good morning. What seems to be the problem?

**Samantha:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Doctor:** And how long have you been feeling like this?

**Samantha:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Doctor:** Have you been running a fever?

**Samantha:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Doctor:** Any nausea or upset stomach?

**Samantha:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Doctor:** I see. And have you been taking anything for it?

**Samantha:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Doctor:** OK, well, it looks like a minor throat infection, maybe the flu. I'm going to write you a prescription for some antibiotics. Take them three times a day after meals for five days. And I'm going to recommend five days' sick leave. Just stay in bed and get plenty of rest, and you'll be back in shape in no time.

**Samantha:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Doctor:** You're welcome.

### Routine Illnesses and Accidents

influenza / flu  
sore throat  
to sneeze  
to blow one's nose  
bad chest / cough  
something goes down the  
wrong way  
to choke  
to swallow a bone  
indigestion / upset stomach  
to burp  
wind / gas  
to fart / break wind  
diarrhoea × constipation  
food poisoning  
being sick / vomiting /  
throwing up  
he's got a temperature /  
fever  
loss of appetite  
infection

contagious  
rash  
to squeeze a pimple  
hay-fever  
allergy  
encephalitis  
Lyme disease (transmitted by  
ticks)  
illness / sickness / ailment  
earache  
headache  
migraine  
hangover  
depression  
nervous breakdown  
stress-related disease  
psychosomatic  
diabetes  
slipped disc  
sciatica  
physiotherapy

blister  
cold sore  
ulcer  
mouth ulcer / canker sore (US)  
scrapes, grazes and cuts (skin)  
sprains and dislocations (joints)  
fractures and breaks (bones)  
to twist (an ankle)  
to pull a muscle  
in plaster (GB) / in a cast (US)  
to have the tonsils / adenoids  
taken out  
to have / get something in one's  
eye  
to cut oneself shaving  
to get sunburnt  
to peel

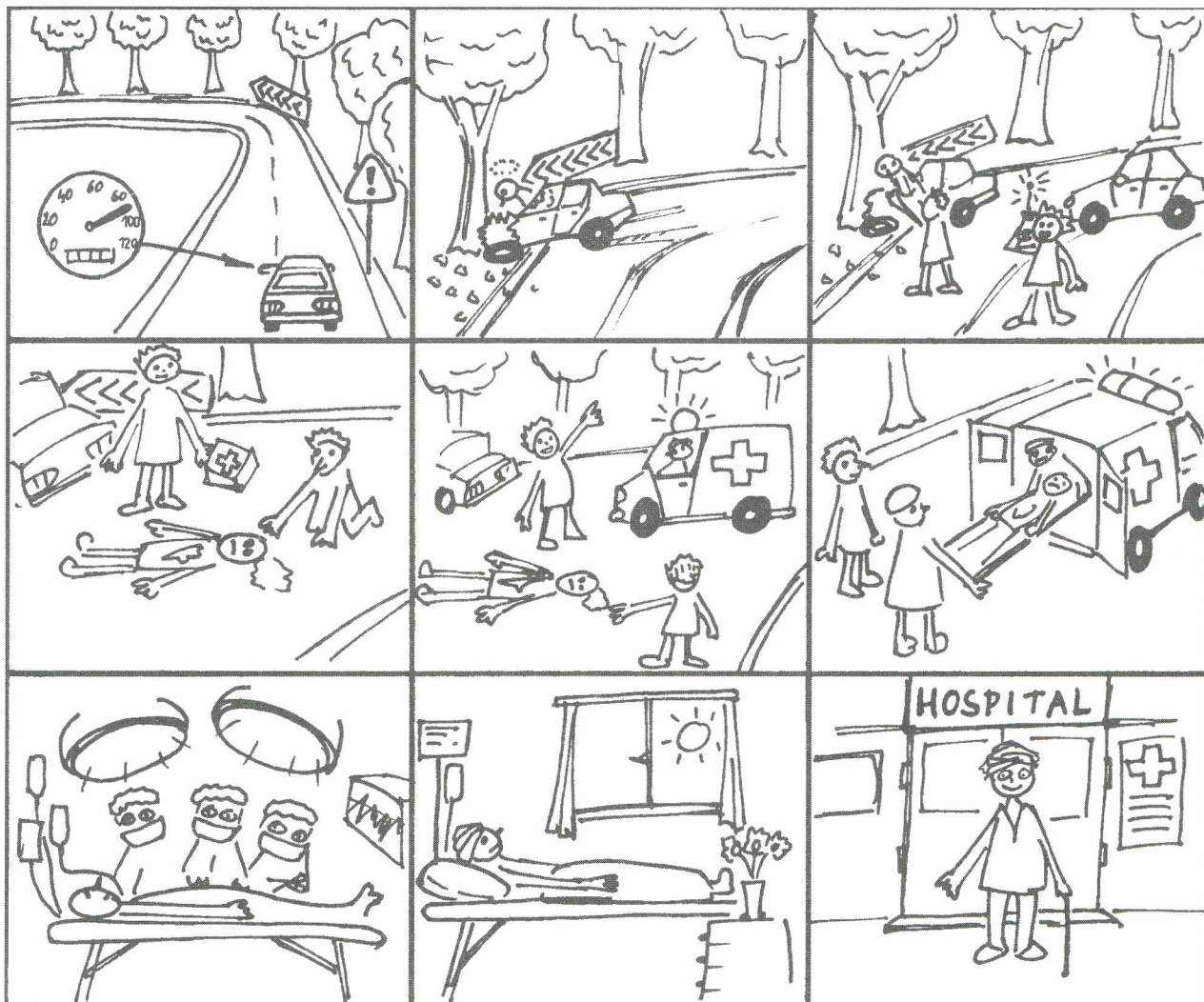
**Travellers' problems**  
to take medicine / be on  
medication (US)  
dysentery

parasites  
smallpox  
cholera  
yellow fever  
snakebite  
infestation  
lice / nits  
fleas  
typhus  
typhoid  
hepatitis  
jaundice  
malaria  
tuberculosis  
rabies  
zoonosis  
inoculation  
vaccination / jab(s)  
injection / shot  
preventive medicine  
hygiene

# FIRST AID

Look at the following pictures and make a list of words and phrases for each one. Then write the story. You could start like this:

*Late one afternoon, Chris was driving on a country road, speeding through the forest when his wife called him on his mobile...*



## First Aid

ambulance  
accident and emergency department  
fire brigade (GB) / fire department (US)  
to have an accident  
to be involved in an accident  
minor × major × fatal injury  
cardiac arrest / heart attack  
to give first aid  
to stitch  
to bandage  
to put sb in a splint  
arm in a sling

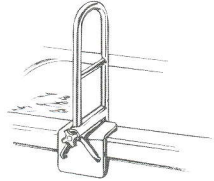
to staunch the flow of blood / (arterial)  
bleeding  
pressure points  
electric shock  
electrocution  
drowning  
artificial respiration / "kiss of life" /  
mouth-to-mouth  
CPR = cardiopulmonary resuscitation  
concussion  
burn × scald  
stretcher  
bandage

emergency dressings  
sticking plaster (GB) / Band-Aid (US)  
gauze  
cotton wool  
scissors  
tweezers  
safety pin  
tourniquet  
life-support system  
medical insurance



# DISABILITIES

**1** Which of the following aids for people with disabilities have you seen? What are they called?



## Disabilities

blind  
deaf  
dumb / mute (US)  
deaf-and-dumb (GB) /  
deaf-mute (US)  
crippled with rheumatism

mentally or physically  
handicapped  
the disadvantaged /  
handicapped  
in a wheelchair  
sign language  
to sign

Braille  
closed-caption television  
seeing-eye dogs  
hearing aids  
sounding traffic lights  
text-phones  
handles

crutches  
Zimmer (frame)  
white canes  
rumble strip  
ramps  
lifts  
wheelchair lifts

**2** For more information on the following text see Exercise 2 on page 152.

If there's one thing I hate more than anything in the world, it's hiccups. They're so annoying. I always get them when I'm out at a pub or after I've had a heavy meal, and once I have them, I can't get rid of them for hours. Or at least, that's the way it used to be, until \_\_\_\_\_ showed me a fool-proof cure for the hiccups.

We were sitting at the table after having finished a large meal, and I was just about to light a cigarette when it started. My friend, Beppino, smiled and said, "You have the hiccups, don't you?"

"Yes," I replied. "It always happens to me when I've finished eating."

"\_\_\_\_\_" offered Beppino.

Yeah, sure, I thought. I've tried everything. There is no cure for the hiccups.

Beppino seemed to see the scepticism on my face. "No, really," he insisted. "\_\_\_\_\_" Before I could say anything, he rushed into the kitchen and came back with a large glass filled with a delicious red wine he had brought from Italy. "This only works with red wine," he said. "Beer is no good. Too many, how do you say, bubbles, yes?"

"What do I have to do?" I asked, feeling a little bit like a guinea pig in a scientific experiment.

"\_\_\_\_\_" instructed Beppino. "\_\_\_\_\_" Now let it out. Now another deep breath. Yes, good."

I've already tried this, I thought as I repeated the deep breathing five or six times. It always seems like it's helping, but the minute I stop breathing deeply the hiccups come back. I didn't want to offend my guest, however, and I was curious about what he was going to do with the glass of wine, so I continued. After breathing for two or three minutes, Beppino took the glass and said, "Good, now exhale, yes. \_\_\_\_\_ All of it! DON'T STOP! GOOD!"

Beppino was getting incredibly excited watching me gulp down a half-litre of wine, and I was wondering if he was just pulling my leg. I was also getting so sick that I wondered if Beppino's cure consisted of making me drink so much that I would have to throw up. But I drank the whole glass, gasped for air, and waited. And waited. And waited. It was a miracle! My hiccups were gone!

"You see," smiled Beppino. "It works every time."

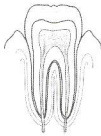
And he was right. Every time.

# TEETH AND THE DENTIST

- 1** Have you ever done a survey similar to the one below?  
Where would you probably find such a survey?  
What is your opinion on these surveys?  
Do they really show the truth?

## DENTAL HYGIENE SURVEY

- 1 How would you rate your overall dental hygiene?
  - a excellent
  - b very good
  - c average
  - d poor
  - e terrible
- 2 When was the last time you visited the dentist?
  - a within the last six months
  - b between six months and one year ago
  - c between one and two years ago
  - d between two and five years ago
  - e longer than five years ago
- 3 How often do you brush your teeth?
  - a after every meal
  - b after waking up and before going to sleep
  - c once a day
  - d infrequently
- 4 How often do you floss your teeth?
  - a once a day
  - b every once in a while
  - c hardly ever or never
- 5 How often do you rinse with mouthwash?
  - a every time you brush your teeth
  - b when you wake up in the morning
  - c hardly ever or never
- 6 Do you eat a lot of fried foods or sweets?  
☐ Yes ☐ No
- 7 Do your gums sometimes bleed when eating apples or other hard foods? ☐ Yes ☐ No
- 8 Are your teeth sensitive to temperature and pressure? ☐ Yes ☐ No



- 2** Are you afraid of the dentist? What scares you most?  
Is there anything you like about going to the dentist?

- 3** Your friend, who is very frightened of going to the dentist, has to have some major dental work done. Give him some tips about how to relax at the dentist.

- 4** Put the following sentences in the right order.

- a Primary teeth differ from permanent teeth in being smaller, having more pointed cusps, being whiter and more prone to wear, and having relatively large pulp chambers and small, delicate roots.
- b The first set of teeth are called primary, or deciduous, ones, and the second set are called permanent ones.
- c The primary teeth are shed when their roots are resorbed as the permanent teeth push toward the mouth cavity in the course of their growth.
- d Humans have 20 primary and 32 permanent teeth.
- e The primary teeth begin to appear about six months after birth, and the primary dentition is complete by age 2 1/2; shedding begins about age 5 or 6 and is finished by age 13.
- f Like most other mammals, humans have two successive sets of teeth during life.



## Teeth and the Dentist

to study stomatology  
waiting room  
dental nurse  
appointment  
oral surgeon  
orthodontist  
braces  
false teeth / dentures  
oral hygiene

to brush one's teeth  
dental floss  
plaque  
tooth decay  
cavity / caries  
drill  
filling  
extraction  
to have a tooth out / have a tooth pulled (US)

wisdom teeth  
gum abscess  
to crown a tooth / have a tooth capped  
to fit (or be fitted for) a bridge  
loose tooth  
bad teeth  
toothache  
pyorrhoea alveolaris  
pus



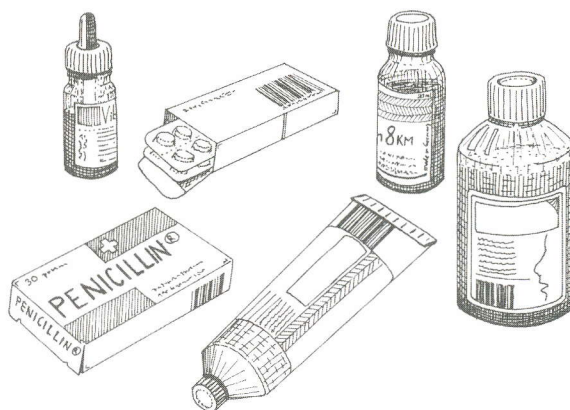
# MEDICINES AND TREATMENTS

**1** Look at the pictures of medicines on the right. Say what each medicine is, and then make sentences saying when you would use these medicaments. Can you think of any other ways to treat the respective health problems?

**Example:**

*When I have a headache, I take two aspirin and lie down for a while. If I had the time, it would be better to go for a walk instead of taking medicine.*

**2** Working in pairs, one person looks at this text, and the other looks at the text on page 150. Both texts contain the information that is missing from the other one. Take turns asking each other questions until you have all of the missing information.



If there's one thing I hate more than anything in the world, it's hiccups. They're so annoying. I always get them when \_\_\_\_\_, and once I have them, I can't get rid of them for hours. Or at least, that's the way it used to be, until an Italian friend of mine showed me a fool-proof cure for the hiccups.

We were sitting at the table after a large meal, and I was just about to \_\_\_\_\_ when it started. My friend, Beppino, smiled and said, "You have the hiccups, don't you?"

"Yes," I replied. "It always happens to me when I've finished eating."

"I can show you a way to get rid of them," offered Beppino.

Yeah, sure, I thought. \_\_\_\_\_.

Beppino seemed to see the scepticism on my face. "No, really," he insisted. "It works every time." Before I could say anything, he rushed into the kitchen and came back with a large glass filled with a delicious red wine he had brought from Italy. "This only works with red wine," he said. "Beer is no good. Too many, how do you say, bubbles, yes?"

"\_\_\_\_\_, " I asked, feeling a little bit like a guinea pig in a scientific experiment.

"OK, take a deep breath," instructed Beppino. "Now hold it in as long as you can. Now let it out, good. Now another deep breath. Yes, good."

I've already tried this, I thought as I repeated the deep breathing five or six times. \_\_\_\_\_. I didn't want to offend my guest, however, and I was curious about what he was going to do with the glass of wine, so I continued. After breathing for two or three minutes, Beppino took the glass and said, "Good, now exhale, yes. Let all of the air out of your lungs. Now drink the wine! All of it! DON'T STOP! GOOD!"

Beppino was getting incredibly excited watching me gulp down a half-litre of wine, and I was wondering if he was just pulling my leg. I was also getting so sick that I wondered if Beppino's cure consisted of making me drink so much that I would have to throw up. But I drank the whole glass, gasped for air, and waited. And waited. And waited. It was a miracle! My hiccups were gone!

"You see," smiled Beppino. "It works every time."

And he was right. Every time.

## Medicines and Treatments

prescription  
drugs  
medicines  
pharmaceuticals  
pills  
tablets  
capsules  
ointment  
lotion  
drops  
gargle  
antibiotics

painkillers  
sedatives  
sleeping pills  
aspirin  
penicillin  
side-effect  
interaction  
long-term effect  
drug trials / clinical trials  
animal testing  
allopathic medicine  
homeopathic medicine

alternative medicine  
herbal medicine  
healers  
holistic medicine  
acupuncture  
massage  
chiropractic  
aromatherapy  
osteopathy  
hypnosis  
meditation

**Mental problems / Diseases**  
neurosis  
psychosis  
nervous disorder  
paranoia  
schizophrenia  
mania  
manic depressive  
senility  
Alzheimer's disease  
tranquilliser  
stimulant

# STDs AND DRUG ABUSE

**1** Sexually transmitted diseases are an emotionally charged issue and people often have quite different views on people who have them than they do on people who have other diseases. What is the attitude of the various segments of society in your country (e.g. religious sectors, the government, schools, etc.) towards STDs? What programs are there to help people who have these diseases or to prevent people from contracting them?

**2** In small groups, draw up a proposal for your local government's new campaign to fight STDs. Present this proposal to the class and compare it with other groups' suggestions.

## Sexually Transmitted Diseases (STDs)

venereal disease (VD)  
gonorrhoea (the clap /  
a dose)  
syphilis  
hepatitis B  
herpes  
fungal infections

AIDS (Acquired Immune-  
Deficiency Syndrome)  
HIV (Human Immune-Deficiency  
Virus)  
safe sex  
condom  
promiscuity

one-night stand  
prostitute / whore  
pimp  
passive immunity  
help lines  
sex education  
heterosexual

homosexual  
gay  
lesbian  
epidemic  
pandemic  
drug addict / junkie  
needle (syringe)

## A LIVELY DEBATE ON DRUGS

**3** Is drug abuse a serious problem in your country? If so, in what way? What steps are being taken to combat this problem? Are the steps effective?

**4** In small groups, read the article and complete the paragraphs with what you think each person might have said.

**5** In groups of four, use the information you have come up with to act out the debate.

Last night's televised debate over the drug problem in Britain eventually turned into a shouting match as the participants voiced their strong and often differing opinions on the topic. The debate was called in response to a fast-growing petition campaign in favour of establishing a Dutch-style system of decriminalisation and controlled distribution of drugs.

The campaign's organiser, J.D. Buckley, a psychiatrist who has spent years studying drug addiction, claimed that the "War on Drugs" has failed. Insisting that drug addicts were victims who needed treatment

and not jail sentences, he continuously used Holland as an example of a better alternative, saying that...

Buckley was interrupted several times by Capt. John Stewart of the Liverpool Police Department, who denied that Holland's drug policies had led to less drug addiction in that country. Stressing the danger to the public if drugs should become legal, he ridiculed Buckley's campaign for...

Another participant in the debate was Janet Homely of the Children's Defence League. Homely focused on the message that legalising drugs would send

to children, comparing it to the use of alcohol and tobacco by children and warning that...

A somewhat comical note was struck in the debate when a young man dressed in faded jeans and a tie-dye T-shirt began asking a long and surprisingly intelligent series of questions about marijuana, until finally a chair was brought out for him and he joined the panel of debaters. The young man, Martin Blank, protested that marijuana as well as other "recreational drugs" should not be placed into the same category as hard drugs, insisting that...

## Drug Abuse

### Hard drugs

opium  
morphine  
heroin  
cocaine (crack) / coke  
methamphetamine (Pervitin  
/ speed)  
solvents

Powerful drugs that alter perception and may be very disturbing (hallucinogens)  
LSD (acid)  
ecstasy (E)  
psilocybin (from mushrooms)  
liberty cap / magic mushroom  
mescaline (from cactus)

### Less powerful and dangerous "recreational" drugs

hash  
grass / pot / marijuana

### Addiction

to shoot up  
withdrawal symptoms  
to cut back / go cold turkey

methadone  
methadone programme  
to be addicted to / hooked on

### Legal drugs

alcohol  
tobacco  
prescription drugs



# OTHER HEALTH PROBLEMS

**1** Read the following comments and say which illnesses or disorders they are describing.

"I'm finally out of the hospital, so I guess that's good. The doctor told me I'll have to wear the cast for a few months, but I already want it off. My skin itches so badly, especially when I start to sweat, and I can't get anything in there to scratch it. And I just can't get used to walking on crutches..."

"Oh, God, it must have been something I ate yesterday, maybe that pizza I had for lunch, but just around five o'clock I started to feel really sick. I just managed to get home from the office and I made straight for the bathroom. I must have thrown up for hours, I thought it would never end..."

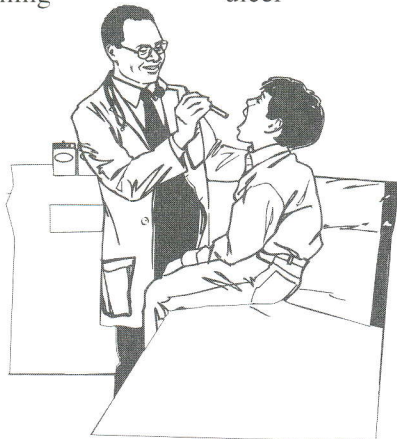
"Well, basically I have an imbalance in my blood sugar levels, and it's quite serious. If I don't keep an eye on it and take care of myself, it could be fatal. So I have to test my blood-sugar level several times a day, and then give myself shots of insulin to regulate the level when it gets too low..."

"Well, I got the results of the tests, and it looks like it's malignant, so they're going to have to operate to remove it. But what really worries me is the chemotherapy. And, I mean, I just can't stand the thought of being pumped up with all of that radiation. I just remember my father and how nauseous and weak he felt, and ashamed to go out in public once his hair fell out..."

**2** Write some similar comments about another illness and write the name of the illness on the back of the paper. Then pass the papers around the room and try to guess the illnesses from the descriptions.

**3** Which of these illnesses are children's diseases? What parts of the body do these illnesses affect? Which of them can you get vaccinated against? Which ones have to be treated only after you are ill with them?

constipation	chickenpox
scarlet fever	whooping cough
pneumonia	typhoid
flu	throat infection
mumps	diarrhoea
cholera	polio
tuberculosis	indigestion
appendicitis	allergy
headache	measles
food poisoning	hepatitis
	ulcer



**4** Put the following story about a child having tonsillitis into the correct order.

- \_\_\_\_\_ and I spent the next week at home recovering.
- \_\_\_\_\_ I first started feeling sick
- \_\_\_\_\_ My throat felt sore
- \_\_\_\_\_ and I was having trouble swallowing.
- \_\_\_\_\_ at school one day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ My mother let me stay home from school for a few days,
- \_\_\_\_\_ It wasn't all bad, though – I got to eat all the ice cream I wanted for a whole week!
- \_\_\_\_\_ but my throat swelled up even further.
- \_\_\_\_\_ and he said that I had tonsillitis.
- \_\_\_\_\_ They operated on me the next day,
- \_\_\_\_\_ We went to the doctor,

**5** Which of the following illnesses have you or someone else you know had? Compare your list with a partner and tell each other about how you felt, how long you were ill, etc.

measles  
mumps  
scarlet fever  
German measles (rubella)  
chickenpox  
whooping cough  
glandular fever / mononucleosis / mono  
diphtheria  
acne  
vitamin deficiency  
appendicitis  
tonsillitis  
polio

# PREGNANCY AND CHILDBIRTH

**1** Before reading the text about pregnancy and childbirth, try to answer the following questions.

- What cravings do pregnant women sometimes have and why?
- What is the most crucial time of pregnancy for the developing baby?
- How long does labour usually last?
- Match the words on the left to the definitions on the right.

premature baby  
contractions  
trimester  
labour  
foetus



a developing baby  
tightening of the muscles  
of around the uterus  
the series of contractions  
which pushes the baby  
out through the birth  
canal  
a stage of pregnancy  
a baby born early

**2** Now read the text and check your answers.



A normal pregnancy lasts about 9 months, or 39 weeks, after the beginning of the last menstrual period. Each stage of pregnancy, called a trimester, has its own special characteristics.

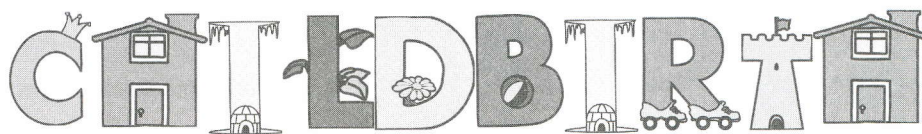
The first trimester of pregnancy is the most critical for the developing foetus, because it is during this period that the infant's brain, arms, legs, and internal organs are formed. During this time, some women experience strange cravings for unusual substances such as ice, clay, or pickles; this condition is often related to a lack of iron, as the new baby takes the nutrients it needs to grow from its mother.

As the pregnancy enters the second trimester, (12–24 weeks) these symptoms subside while new ones arise. The most noticeable one is weight-gain; most physicians now approve of a gain of about 9 to 12 kg (about 22 to 26 lb.) by the end of pregnancy. The foetus continues to form

its internal organs and muscles through the second and third trimesters, until it is ready to come out into the world.

Childbirth usually happens after the 36th week of pregnancy. Some babies, however, are born prematurely, or before this time. These babies can often face serious health problems, as they are born before their bodies have fully developed. Childbirth begins with irregular contractions that begin to force the baby out of the uterus and through the birth canal. These contractions, called labour, increase in frequency and intensity as the process continues. First-time mothers are usually in labour for 13 to 14 hours, while women who have previously given birth are usually in labour only 8 or 9 hours.

Finally, the baby is expelled from the womb, usually head first, and starts breathing air, resulting in the baby's first cry, a sound which will become familiar to its parents in the years to come.



**3** In pairs, speak about what you've been told about your own birth or some births in your family.

## Pregnancy and Childbirth

conception  
she's pregnant  
she's expecting (a baby)  
maternity clothing  
morning sickness  
ante-natal clinic / classes  
"when are you (is it) due?"  
to go into labour

labour pains  
to give birth to  
to have a baby  
postnatal depression / postpartum  
obstetrician  
maternity ward  
natural childbirth  
home birth

midwife  
miscarriage  
abortion  
premature birth  
Caesarean birth / delivery  
forceps delivery  
epidural  
induced birth  
confinement



# HEALTH – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Decide which of the following expressions collocates with HEALTH (a) and which with DISEASE (b).

- |                  |                              |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 to transmit    | 7 is failing                 |
| 2 to have        | 8 hereditary                 |
| 3 chronic        | 9 to be in good              |
| 4 prone to       | 10 susceptibility to         |
| 5 fragile        | 11 took a turn for the worse |
| 6 to suffer from | 12 to neglect                |

These words are used metaphorically in the gapped sentences. Place them appropriately.

INFECTIOUS/CONTAGIOUS    ILLS    CRIPPLING    SICK/AILING    UNHEALTHY  
SYMPTOMS    PARALYSED    PAIN

- 13 Organised crime is now taking a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ interest in computer fraud.
- 14 Politicians are now being blamed for all the \_\_\_\_\_ of society.
- 15 The fact is that we are dealing with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ economy here.
- 16 His speech was a success; and what's more, his enthusiasm seems to be \_\_\_\_\_.
- 17 There were other \_\_\_\_\_ of decline.
- 18 His economic reforms brought more \_\_\_\_\_ than progress.
- 19 Last summer many travel agencies suffered a \_\_\_\_\_ blow.
- 20 The latest events left the country with a \_\_\_\_\_ government unable to react quickly.

Match the following expressions in the left column with their meanings on the right.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 21 PWA                                    | a any taboo medical condition (e.g. truancy) |
| 22 syndrome (e.g. School Phobia Syndrome) | b to feel unwell                             |
| 23 shrink / head shrinker                 | c nearly blind                               |
| 24 visually challenged / handicapped      | d cancer (the language of obituary notices)  |
| 25 hearing impaired / hard of hearing     | e dead                                       |
| 26 feet first                             | f the consequence of negligence              |
| 27 long illness                           | g psychiatrist                               |
| 28 (therapeutic/surgical) misadventure    | h partly deaf                                |
| 29 partially sighted                      | i people living with AIDS, AIDS victims      |
| 30 to feel funny / have a funny tummy     | j blind                                      |

# HEALTH – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Decide which of the following expressions collocates with HEALTH (a) and which with DISEASE (b).

- |                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 to affect               | 7 deteriorated     |
| 2 broke down              | 8 incapacitated by |
| 3 broke out               | 9 to be in bad     |
| 4 contagious              | 10 to look after   |
| 5 fatal                   | 11 to die of       |
| 6 to inoculate sb against | 12 to wipe out     |

These words are used metaphorically in the gapped sentences. Place them appropriately.

PAINFUL HEALTHY HEADACHE DEADLY BRUISED  
FATAL CANCER JAUNDICED

- 13 After his criticism there were also a few \_\_\_\_\_ egos and broken hearts.
- 14 The concept of equality is the basis of a \_\_\_\_\_ society.
- 15 I like to cook and I love eating and that's a \_\_\_\_\_ combination.
- 16 His reports are always accurate and reliable but \_\_\_\_\_ boring.
- 17 The transition to market economy will be slow and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 18 We have to fight against racism. It is a \_\_\_\_\_ sweeping across Europe.
- 19 The biggest \_\_\_\_\_ for teachers is testing the students.
- 20 What you usually get, is just a \_\_\_\_\_ view of a society.

Match the following expressions in the left column with their meanings on the right.

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 21 happy event                              | a near death / very old             |
| 22 facts (of life)                          | b to die                            |
| 23 feed the fishes                          | c the human process of reproduction |
| 24 one foot in the grave                    | d the birth of a child              |
| 25 smear                                    | e a test for cervical cancer        |
| 26 throw up                                 | f a weak heart                      |
| 27 coronary insufficiency / heart condition | g cancer (medical jargon)           |
| 28 Lucy in the sky with diamonds            | h haemorrhoids                      |
| 29 mitotic disease                          | i to vomit                          |
| 30 Emmas, piles                             | j LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide)  |



# SPORT

**1** Are you a sportsperson? Which is your favourite sport?  
Interview at least two other people and find out the following information.

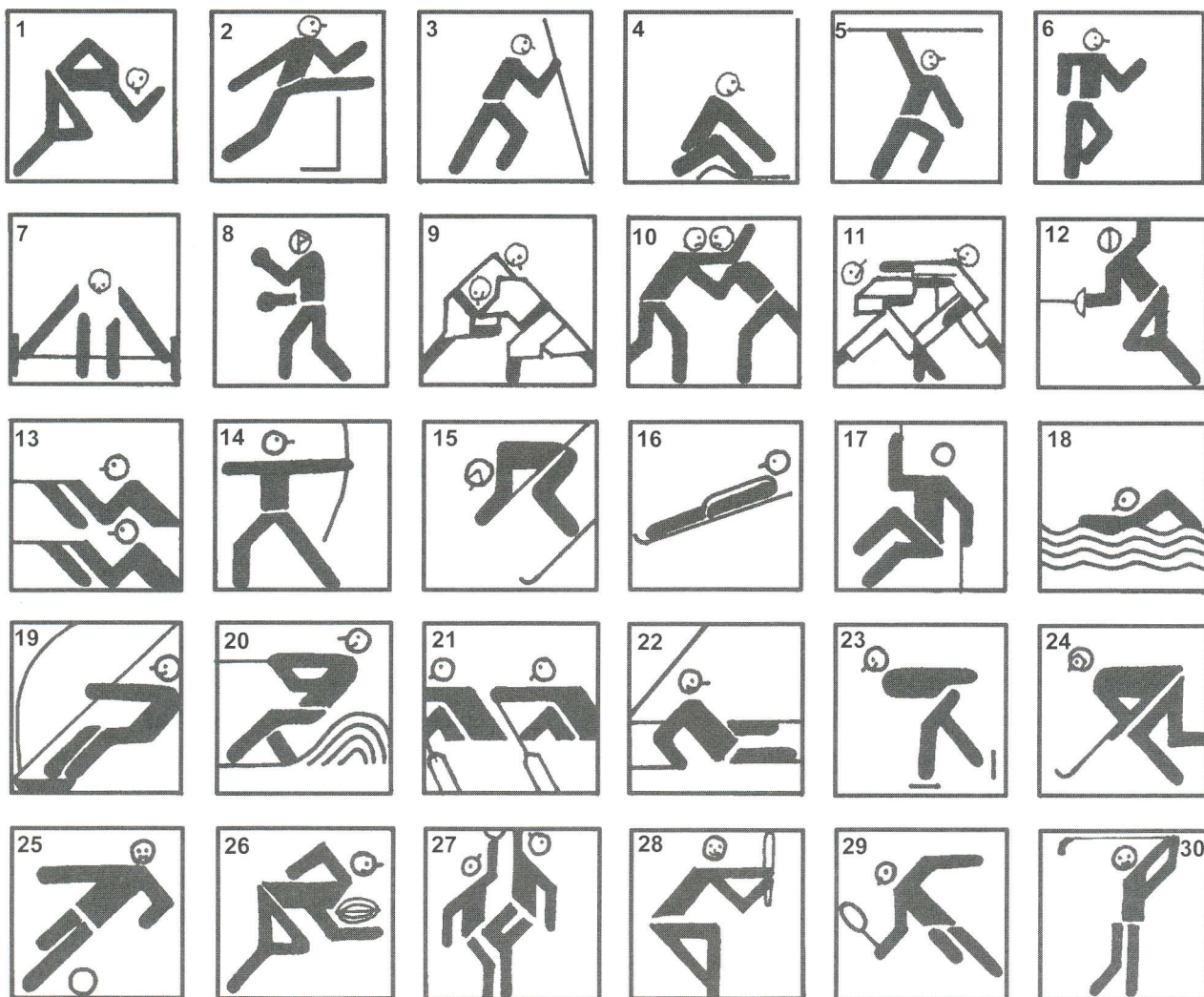
What are their favourite summer and winter sports?

Do they prefer indoor or outdoor sports?

How many hours per week / month do they spend playing them?

What sports do they like watching on TV?

**2** Look at the following symbols and give the names of the sports you recognize. Try to find the names for the sports you do not know in English on the following page. Talk to your partner or teacher about those you cannot name.



# Sports in the Modern Summer Olympic Games

## ARCHERY

to draw a bow  
to shoot  
bow and arrow  
target  
bowstring

## BADMINTON

to serve  
to return  
tie-break  
badminton court  
net  
lightweight rackets  
shuttlecock

## BASEBALL

to hit  
to throw  
to pitch  
to catch  
bat  
batting helmet  
catcher's mask  
b. glove  
b. field

## BASKETBALL

to bounce  
to dribble  
to travel  
to shoot  
backboard  
b. hoop  
net  
b. court

## BOXING

to punch  
to hit below the belt  
to throw in the towel  
to win on points  
b. gloves  
b. trunks  
ring

## CANOEOING

canoe  
kayak  
paddles  
slalom and wildwater  
canoeing and  
kayaking  
to commit a fault

## CYCLING / BICYCLING / BIKING

to race  
bicycle / bike  
road races  
track or velodrome races  
off-road mountain bike  
races  
youth BMX races  
helmets  
padded gloves and  
shorts  
stiff-soled shoes  
goggles  
to ride / cycle

## DIVING

to dive  
competitive diving  
takeoff  
springboard  
to go diving  
to go snorkelling  
scuba

## EQUESTRIAN SPORTS

horse  
rider  
dressage  
show jumping  
and three-day  
eventing  
obstacles  
hurdles  
steplechase

## FENCING

foil  
épée and sabre  
mask / visor  
to score touches  
épée fencing is one of  
the five events in the  
modern pentathlon

## FIELD HOCKEY

ball  
sticks  
shirts and shorts  
or skirts  
mouth and shin guards  
goalkeepers  
face guards  
and gloves  
umpires  
timekeepers and  
scorekeepers

## GYMNASTICS

sports gymnastics  
(men and women):  
floor exercise:  
mat  
knee bend  
somersault  
cartwheel  
handstand  
headstand  
pommel horse, vault,  
rings, parallel bars,  
horizontal bar,  
uneven bars, balance  
beam  
rhythmic sports  
gymnastics  
(only women): mat, rope,  
a hoop, a ball, clubs  
and a ribbon  
floor exercise – judged  
on composition and  
execution

## TEAM HANDBALL

an indoor court game  
to throw  
pass  
dribble  
catch  
bounce  
hold or strike the ball

## JUDO

adapted from traditional  
Japanese martial art,  
means "gentle way"  
to throw or pin the  
opponent on the mat  
to apply holds  
4 minutes for women and  
5 minutes for men  
to score an ippon  
jacket  
trousers  
no socks or shoes  
belts of different colours

## MARATHON

running event  
traditionally the longest  
race, 42 km to duplicate  
the distance run by  
a Greek soldier from the  
town of Marathon to  
Athens in 490 BC to  
bring the news of a  
Greek victory over the  
Persians

## PENTATHLON

originally: jumping,  
running, wrestling,  
throwing the discus,  
and hurling the spear  
or javelin  
nowadays: the contest  
includes pistol  
shooting, fencing,  
swimming, an  
equestrian event, and  
cross-country running

## ROWING

to pull one oar  
to face the stern  
to steer the boat  
cox(swain)  
to pull a pair of oars –  
sculling

## TARGET SHOOTING

to aim  
to fire a pistol / gun  
a rifle  
bull's-eye  
small-bore  
high-power events

## SWIMMING

swimsuit / bathing suit  
bathing cap  
goggles  
can you do the crawl  
breaststroke  
backstroke  
butterfly  
sidestroke  
freestyle  
starting block  
swimming lane  
medley race  
relay

## TABLE TENNIS

table  
lightweight celluloid ball  
and small rackets  
often called bats or  
paddles  
to hold  
to hit  
to miss the ball  
to touch the net  
umpire  
net ball



edge ball  
strokes  
to serve  
to return

## **ATHLETICS (GB) / TRACK AND FIELD (US)**

spikes  
running shoes  
"on your marks, get set,  
go!"  
on the starting blocks  
to jump the gun  
inside × outside lanes  
dash / sprint  
sprinter  
hurdling  
middle-distance run  
distance run  
long-distance runner  
relay  
steeplechase  
walk  
high jump  
pole vault  
long jump  
triple jump  
shot put  
discus/hammer/javelin  
throw  
decathlon and heptathlon

## **VOLLEYBALL**

court  
high net  
volleyball  
to serve  
to hit  
to return the ball  
to rotate / move  
clockwise  
referee  
scorer  
umpire  
line judges; spikers  
blockers – single or  
multiple blocks

## **WATER POLO**

to shoot / hold a ball  
netted goals  
goalie  
pool  
referee, goal judge  
timekeeper  
recorder  
to impede movement  
penalties

## **WEIGHTLIFTING**

to lift metal weights  
encased in rubber

barbell – a steel rod to  
which plates (also  
called disks) of  
different weights may  
be attached by  
means of clamps  
called spin-lock  
collars

snatch  
clean and jerk  
different classes  
according to body  
weight

## **WRESTLING**

freestyle: holds below the  
waist and the use of  
the legs  
Graeco-Roman: tripping,  
tackling and using the  
legs to secure a hold  
are not permitted;  
attempt either to  
throw the opponent to  
the mat or to use  
holds to drop him to  
the mat

## **SAILING**

sailboat  
bow

stern  
life-jacket  
sailing or running before  
the wind  
sailing off the wind  
fixed keel  
mast  
wishbone

## **SOCCER**

field (US)  
(association) football /  
football pitch (GB)  
strip  
shin-guards  
kick-off  
direct free kick  
to foul  
obstruction  
penalty  
throw-in  
goal kick  
to dribble  
to pass  
to tackle  
to shoot  
to hit the post  
crossbar  
goalkeeper / goalie  
offside  
referee  
linesmen

# **Sports in the Winter Olympics**

## **SKIING**

**Alpine**  
downhill s.  
slalom  
giant slalom  
combined event  
ski boots  
bindings  
poles  
steep slopes  
ski-tow  
ski-lift  
T-bar lift  
chair lift  
gondola lift  
cable car / aerial  
tramway (US)  
funicular  
**Nordic**  
cross-country s.  
wax  
ski jumping  
free-style skiing

snowboarding

## **BIATHLON**

combined cross-  
country skiing and  
rifle-shooting

## **BOBSLEDDING**

sledge (GB) /sled (US)  
twisting courses on  
hillsides  
glare ice  
to push the sledge  
forward  
to leap into position  
to "bob" the sledge  
captain  
braker

## **ICE HOCKEY**

goal nets  
playing area

skaters  
long sticks  
puck  
protective pads  
helmets  
thick gloves  
referee  
linesmen  
face-off / throw-in  
attacking zone  
offside  
icing  
cross-check  
hat trick  
sudden-death overtime  
penalties – holding,  
tripping, slashing  
with the stick  
power play  
shoot-out

## **ICE SKATING**

rink

speed skating  
skates  
skate-guards  
figure-skating:  
compulsories  
individuals  
free skating  
pairs skating  
ice dancing

## **LUGE**

a racing toboggan on  
which riders lie on their  
backs, descending feet  
first

# THE OLYMPICS

## FROM ATHENS TO LONDON

**1** Try to list all of the activities that are part of the Olympics today. Which of them do you think were part of the original Olympics in ancient Greece? Was there anything in the original Olympics that is missing today?

**2** Read the following text and match the appropriate title to each paragraph.

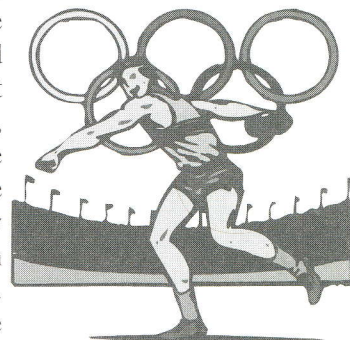
- a The rebirth of a tradition
- b War and conflict in the Games
- c The success of the Games
- d Keeping the Games fair
- e Establishing the tradition

**3** In the text opposite find a word that means:

- 1 was formed in imitation of
- 2 special importance or prominence attached to st
- 3 identifying divinity or spirituality in nature; pantheistic
- 4 came into conflict
- 5 promote the growth or development of
- 6 transmit by radio or television
- 7 heightening, intensifying or improving the quality
- 8 any of a group of organic compounds with a characteristic structure of four rings of carbon atoms, including many hormones, alkaloids, and vitamins
- 9 have been deprived of
- 10 combined in refusing to join the Games as punishment

**1** ☐ In 1896, a French nobleman named Pierre de Coubertin welcomed athletes from thirteen countries to compete in the first Olympic Games in Athens. Of course, this event was not the first of its kind. Rather, it was modelled on the ancient Greek Olympic Games held between city states during the 'Golden Age' of Greece. The modern version of the games, however, is very different from the original ones.

**2** ☐ The original Olympics, in fact, had very little to do with sports at all. Of all the games held throughout Greece, those staged at Olympia in honour of Zeus are the most famous. The records of the earliest Olympics, which took place in 776 BC, show that there was only one sporting event at all: a foot race of about 180 meters. In these early competitions, the emphasis was more on cultural activities such as music and theatre. It was only in the 18th Olympics, when the warlike Spartans began participating, that many sporting activities such as wrestling, discus throwing, and chariot racing began to become more important than the cultural aspects of the competitions. The Olympics continued to play an important role in Greek society until 393 AD, when the Roman emperor Theodosius I outlawed them because their pagan nature clashed with the Christian ideology of the Empire.



**3** ☐ Today, the Olympic Games have nothing to do with honouring gods. Rather, they are inspired by the ideal that friendly non-violent competition can foster respect and understanding between nations. In some respects, the Olympics have been successful at this. Almost all of the world's countries compete regularly in the event, and every four years the games move to another city, thus allowing its participants to come in contact with different cultures. The Olympics have also become incredibly popular thanks to advances in technology that now allow the games to be broadcast live across the planet.

**4** ☐ But the games have also had their share of problems. One of them has been the use of performance-enhancing drugs by athletes in the Olympics. To counter this, the International Olympics Committee has set up a team of doctors who check players for steroids and other drugs in their blood. Several athletes have been stripped of their medals because of drug use.

**5** ☐ The spirit of non-violent competition has also been disrupted by international politics. The PLO murdered Israeli athletes in Munich 1972, and many countries have boycotted the games on numerous occasions: in 1976, thirty-three African countries refused to take part in the Olympics to protest against apartheid in South Africa, and the United States and the Soviet Union traded boycotts in the 1980s, with the US and its allies refusing to participate in the 1980 Summer Games in Moscow, and the USSR and its allies doing the same in the 1984 Summer Games in Los Angeles. These problems just go to show that although the Olympic Games reflect some of our loftiest ideals they also reflect some of our worst conflicts.



# WINTER SPORTS

**1** How good a skier are you? If you ski, tell a partner about your first time on skis. If you have never been skiing, discuss some other activity that you have learned and the first time you tried it (e.g. surfing, roller skating, riding a bicycle, etc.).

**2** Now read the text and fill the gaps with the words below:

slope / piste

skis

hard-packed

lodge

poles

lift

ticket / ski pass / lift pass

snowplough

cross-country

rack

downhill

skiing holiday

**3** After filling in the gaps, read the text again and underline words and phrases that you want to remember.

**4** Retell the story from the text in your own words. Use as many of the words you inserted as possible.

**5** Write a short paragraph (100 words maximum) describing a different first attempt at skiing, using the same vocabulary again. Then read it to your partner.

It was about 11 a.m. on a bright February morning when we finally arrived at our ski 1\_\_\_\_\_, ready for our 2\_\_\_\_\_. Being terribly excited, I immediately jumped out and started trying to get the skis off of the ski 3\_\_\_\_\_. All of my friends, however, went to the side of the road and started picking up handfuls of snow, muttering to each other in low voices. As I picked up a handful of snow, I realised why they all looked so worried. It was 4\_\_\_\_\_, snow that had been melted by a warm spell and then frozen again. Not exactly the perfect conditions for my first attempt at 5\_\_\_\_\_ skiing.



I was determined to try, however, and a half hour later I was sitting at the bottom of a threatening ski 6\_\_\_\_\_, trying to get used to standing on skis. My first disaster came at the ski 7\_\_\_\_\_. I showed the operator my 8\_\_\_\_\_ and, when it was finally my turn, he grabbed a little rope and shoved it between my legs. I was jerked up the slope, and made it about fifteen feet before I fell off and slid back down to the bottom. It took four embarrassing tries before I finally managed to stay up until the top.

Once at the top, I wished I had never tried. I pushed off, trying to 9\_\_\_\_\_ as my friends had taught me, keeping my 10\_\_\_\_\_ pointing inward in a little v, but I instantly realised I had no control over where and how fast I was going. I lost both of my 11\_\_\_\_\_, hit two trees and one old lady, and fell down countless times before I reached the bottom with a twisted knee and a wide range of bruises and scrapes. My friends encouraged me to keep trying, but I just shook my head and walked off to the pub, stopping to throw my useless lift ticket in the rubbish can. Next time, I thought, I'll try 12\_\_\_\_\_ skiing instead.

## KEEPING FIT

**1**  You will hear the first part of a recording in which the speaker describes his attempts at keeping fit.

Why did the speaker start exercising?

What kind of exercise did he begin with?

Was he happy with it? Why / why not?

Now give the speaker some advice on what kind of sport would be better suited for him and why, using some of the phrases from the box below.

**2**  Listen to the second part of the recording.

Does the speaker mention any of the sports you suggested?

Which sport does he finally decide on and why?

## Keeping Fit

keep-fit centre (GB) / fitness center (US)  
to lift weights / pump iron  
bench press / press 25 kilograms  
barbells

callisthenics  
aerobics  
exercise bike

sit-ups  
 push-ups  
 star jumps / jumping jacks (US)

## RECREATIONAL SPORTS

The following is a list of equipment for various sports. What are their names? Talk about those you enjoy taking part in.

- tennis racquet
- jogging shoes
- roller skates
- sledge / sled
- parachute (sky-diving)
- saddle (equitation)
- frisbee
- pool stick
- squash racquet
- skateboard
- walking shoes
- dartboard
- fishing rod
- swimming costume
- bat
- snowmobile
- wet suit
- water skis
- surfboard
- mallet (croquet)
- raft
- aqualung and flippers
- crampons
- caddy





# PROFESSIONAL SPORT

Julie is fifteen years old. As far back as she can remember, she has loved figure skating. She started training with a personal trainer when she was twelve, and since then she has won several national youth competitions and even one international competition. Her dream is to compete for Britain in the Olympic Games one day, and her trainer says that she has what it takes to make the Olympic team, if she commits herself to a rigorous training programme.

The only problem is that Julie already spends most of her free time training and feels that she doesn't have much time left for other activities. Her boyfriend, Jason, is very understanding and never tells her openly that he wishes she would spend more time with him rather than on the ice, but she knows he's a bit unhappy about how little they see each other. She has also got out of touch with all of her old friends. They are much more into going out to dances and movies and all of those other "normal teenager" things. Julie has already been wondering if she shouldn't try to be more of a "normal teenager", and if she decides to try out for the Olympic team, she'll have even less time for Jason and her friends.

**1** Athletes in many sports such as tennis and gymnastics start training at a very early age and devote a large part of their lives to their sport. What are your feelings on this matter? Should minors be banned from playing in the Olympics and in professional sports?

**2** Read the passage and discuss Julie's situation. Is this a common situation in your country? Do you know anyone who is in a similar situation?

**3** In groups of five or six, take turns giving Julie advice on what she should do, from several different points of view.

Possible roles: Julie, Jason, trainer, school friend, skating friend, parents, sponsor.

Act out what different combinations of these people might say to each other, e.g. mother – trainer, school – friend – sponsor.

**4** Try to imagine that you are a parent of a promising ten-year-old swimmer. Your partner wants her to pursue a professional career. She herself is very fond of competing but has other talents as well. Actually, she is good at almost anything that comes her way...

**5** Roleplay a discussion with your partner about your daughter's future.

## Professional Sport

sportsman  
sportswoman  
to take part in a sport  
to cheat / not to play fair  
amateur / non-professional  
professional × "shamateur"  
anabolic steroids  
muscle mass  
beta blockers  
to fail a drug test  
mandatory / obligatory urine testing  
to feel part of a team / team spirit  
to win × lose × draw

gold medal  
world record  
champion  
to be a good / bad loser  
coach / trainer  
transfer fee  
qualifying matches  
needle match (GB) / grudge match (US)  
a "friendly" between A and B (GB) / a non-conference match (US)  
home (field) advantage  
unfair advantage  
in the stands  
on the terraces  
hooliganism  
boycott

ban  
suspension  
TV revenues  
exclusive coverage

### Giving advice

I advise you to...  
Take my advice and...  
You should / ought to  
You'd better (not)...  
If I were you, I'd...  
Don't ...  
You can't please everybody.  
You need to set your priorities.  
You're burning the candle at both ends.

# SPORTS IN ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES

Read the following articles about various sports and fill in the names of sports below.

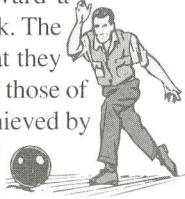
## SKITTLES    AMERICAN FOOTBALL    CRICKET    RUGBY    GOLF    BOWLING    BOWLS

1 \_\_\_\_\_ is a cross-country game played by striking a small ball with various clubs from a series of teeing grounds into a like series of holes on a course. The player who holes his ball in the fewest strokes wins. The game originated in Scotland and has spread from obscure antiquity to worldwide popularity. Its players participate at every level, from recreational \_\_\_\_\_ to popular televised professional tournaments. Despite its attractiveness, \_\_\_\_\_ is not a game for everyone; it requires a high degree of skill that is honed only with great patience and dedication, and it requires an investment in equipment and fees that persons of average means may not feel worthwhile. The novice is often discouraged by these factors.



2 The origin of \_\_\_\_\_ is uncertain. The game was first definitively recorded at Guildford in Surrey at the end of the 16th century, and the first known set of rules was written in 1744. The Marylebone \_\_\_\_\_ Club, which is the world governing body of the sport, was formed in 1787. It is a game played with bat and ball between two teams of 11 players each on a large field, which centres upon two upright wickets, each defended by a batsman. A bowler throws the ball (with a straight-arm, usually overhand delivery), attempting to put out the batsman by hitting the wicket or in other ways. Runs are scored each time that the batsmen exchange positions without being put out.

3 Lawn \_\_\_\_\_, outdoor game in which a ball (known as a bowl) is rolled toward a smaller stationary ball, called a jack. The object is to roll one's bowls so that they come to rest nearer to the jack than those of an opponent; this is sometimes achieved by knocking aside an opponent's bowl or the jack. A form of \_\_\_\_\_ was played in ancient Egypt, and by the Middle Ages the game was well-known in continental Europe. The International Bowling Board, the ruling body of lawn \_\_\_\_\_, was founded in 1905.



4 The modern sport of \_\_\_\_\_ at pins probably originated in ancient Germany, not as a sport but as a religious ceremony. As early as the 3rd or 4th century AD, in rites held in the cloisters of churches, parishioners may have placed their ever-present club, or Kegel (the implement most Germans carried for sport and, certainly, self-protection), at one end

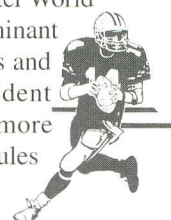
of a runway resembling a modern \_\_\_\_\_ lane. The Kegel was said to represent the Heide ("heathen"). A stone was rolled at the Heide, and those successfully toppling it were believed to have cleansed themselves of sin. Although the peasants' club evolved into pins, the association remained, and even today bowlers are often called keglers.



5 \_\_\_\_\_ was played for centuries in public houses or clubs, mostly in western England and the Midlands, southern Wales, and the Lothian region of Scotland. The rules and methods of scoring varied from place to place, but the basic principle of bowling a wooden or rubber ball (weighing about 10 pounds [4.5 kilograms]) at nine large, oval-headed pins, set in diamond formation 21 feet (about 6.5 m) away, remained the same.

6 According to legend, \_\_\_\_\_ began in 1823, when, during a game of football at \_\_\_\_\_ School, William Webb Ellis picked up the ball and ran with it. The run was a clear violation of the rules of the game that later came to be called association football, or soccer; but the illegality proved popular and led to the game of \_\_\_\_\_, a primarily ball-handling game, as distinct from soccer, a primarily kicking game. In 1846, rules of \_\_\_\_\_ were published at the school. In 1863, the Football Association (FA) was formed in London, and after a futile attempt to reconcile the rules to accommodate the two games, \_\_\_\_\_ was left outside the FA.

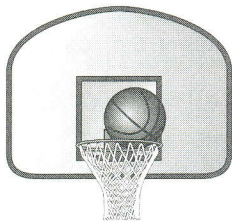
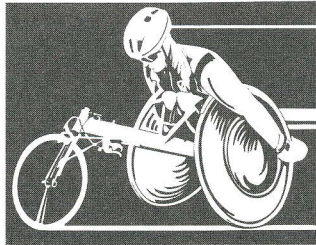
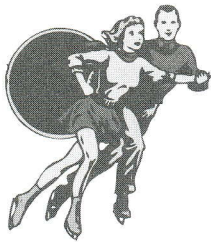
7 Professional \_\_\_\_\_ began in the 1890s, but it was not until the rise of television after World War II that it became one of the dominant American sports. A series of deaths and injuries in 1905 prompted President Theodore Roosevelt to call for more changes to make the game safer. Rules were thus created that included the introduction of the forward pass, new formations, and the prohibition of blocking with extended arms. In 1910, the National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA) was formed to govern American intercollegiate competition. Postseason, or "bowl," games played between leading college teams, became popular and now include the Rose Bowl (Pasadena, Calif.), Orange Bowl (Miami), Sugar Bowl (New Orleans), Sun Bowl (El Paso, Texas), Cotton Bowl (Dallas, Texas), and Gator Bowl (Jacksonville, Fla.).





# THE GAMES PEOPLE PLAY

**1** What kind of person would these sports be suitable for?  
What personality is not likely to be very good at them?



**2** Look at the following words and group them under the sport they refer to. Some words may be used for more than one sport.

throw-in  
serve  
shoot  
basket  
cleats  
corner kick  
travel  
baseline  
slam  
forehand  
net  
defence × offence  
umpire / referee  
backhand  
goalie

**3** In small groups, invent a new sport. Talk about the equipment needed to play it, some of the rules, and how to play it. Then use the space below and write a short description of your sport and present it to the class.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# SPORT – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**I** The following sentences should be rearranged. Read them and write numbers 1–7 to indicate the correct order. The first is g and the last is e.

- a Participants can display their knowledge of athletes without revealing anything considered private.
- b Games between teams classified as “major football powers” attract nation-wide television audiences that number in the millions.
- c Some football and basketball coaches are paid higher salaries than the presidents of their institutions.
- d College sports, especially football, are conducted in an atmosphere of intense excitement.
- e Expressions from sports are extraordinarily common in everyday American speech. Baseball is probably the source of more idiomatic expressions than any other sport.
- f Sports are a very frequent topic of conversation, especially among males. “Small talk” about sports is safe – interesting, but not too personal.
- g Nowhere else in the world are sports associated with colleges and universities in the way they are in the United States.

**II** Identify the correct collocations using the given words.

**FIELD   PITCH   COURSE   COURT   RINK   POOL**

- |           |          |           |            |
|-----------|----------|-----------|------------|
| <b>8</b>  | football | <b>12</b> | ice        |
| <b>9</b>  | baseball | <b>13</b> | volleyball |
| <b>10</b> | golf     | <b>14</b> | tennis     |
| <b>11</b> | swimming | <b>15</b> | roller     |

**III** The following expressions, used to talk about sport and games, can also be used metaphorically. According to their meaning, decide in which sentences (16–30) they belong.

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| trump card                                   | to gamble                |
| keep / play one's cards close to one's chest | ranked as favourite      |
| unsporting                                   | to be in the running     |
| key player                                   | to be out of the running |
| moving the goalposts                         | to make all the running  |
| the odds are                                 | skating on thin ice      |
| the stakes                                   | plain sailing            |
| to be a gamble                               |                          |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>16</b> The new leader has produced the _____ – reforms in the health-care system. | <b>24</b> They were always _____ so that nobody could tell what they actually wanted.       |
| <b>17</b> He _____, we have no idea what he is up to.                                | <b>25</b> In the competition he was _____ for the job.                                      |
| <b>18</b> Marriage is a _____.   | <b>26</b> This gives you an advantage in the promotion _____.                               |
| <b>19</b> The company _____ all on the new factory.                                  | <b>27</b> To be _____ to win this wonderful holiday just fill in the coupon and send it in. |
| <b>20</b> He has been _____ and so far he has always got away with it.               | <b>28</b> This may have put him _____ for the title.  |
| <b>21</b> It was _____, we had no problems at all.                                   | <b>29</b> Women _____ in the demands for change.  |
| <b>22</b> I found their behaviour _____. They had no reason for doing that to me.    | <b>30</b> _____ that this is not going to work.   |
| <b>23</b> Although he has no right to vote, he is a _____ in the scheme.             |   |



# SPORT – AND MORE PRACTICE...

The following sentences should be rearranged. Read them and write numbers 1–7 to indicate the correct order.

- a Read the newspapers or look in the telephone book under the name of whatever sport interests you for things such as ski clubs, walking clubs, fencing, gymnastics, judo, karate, and aerobic classes, ice skating, squash and racquetball clubs, bicycle clubs, bowling clubs, riding groups, and bird-watching clubs.
- b Roller-skating, Frisbee throwing, and kite flying are all popular, especially in parks; one can also find paths for biking, jogging, or walking in these areas.
- c Newcomers to the United States often find it difficult to participate in the particular sports they enjoy.
- d Golf and tennis are very popular.
- e Actually, this need not be so.
- f In addition to private clubs, nearly all cities maintain numerous tennis courts and golf courses which are open to the public for a fee.
- g By knowing where to look, it's possible to find a way to participate in any sport.

Identify the correct collocations using the given words.

**WRESTLER TRACK SHOES RINK TABLE HOOP RACQUET RING**

8	running	12	squash
9	boxing	13	basketball
10	skating	14	walking
11	billiards / pool	15	sumo

The following expressions, used to talk about sport and games, can also be used metaphorically. According to their meaning, decide in which sentences (16–30) they belong.

first past the post

outsider

put / lay your cards on the table

to be a pawn in

play someone's game

touch base (with someone)

game's up

good sport

play fair

marathon

own goal

baiting

neck and neck

at stake

against all odds

- 16 Running \_\_\_\_\_ as candidates were the former Prime Minister and his opponent.
- 17 Until the election campaign started, he was an unknown \_\_\_\_\_.
- 18 Hundreds of jobs were \_\_\_\_\_.
- 19 He managed to accomplish the task \_\_\_\_\_.
- 20 The existing \_\_\_\_\_ system of electing the government is considered by many people to be unfair.
- 21 I need to \_\_\_\_\_ with him on this matter.
- 22 Giving that project up would be an \_\_\_\_\_. It should be promoted and developed.
- 23 He wants me to \_\_\_\_\_, but he can forget about it: I'll quit the job.
- 24 I am certainly not in the mood to be a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 25 Always \_\_\_\_\_ with me, I warn you.
- 26 The meeting was a \_\_\_\_\_ three-hour session.
- 27 Come on, \_\_\_\_\_, there is no need to hide anything.
- 28 I suppose I'm proving to myself I'm not just a \_\_\_\_\_ in some financial system; I'm an independent person.
- 29 When the last attempt failed, he realised that the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 30 This racist \_\_\_\_\_ seems to be going on and on.

# PHRASES AND PHRASAL VERBS

Throughout the book you will find a number of verbs and phrases which are typical of everyday conversation. This page should remind you of some of them. Fill in the missing part and explain the meaning of the short phrases. The phrases have been grouped by topics:

## FAMILY

- 1 he takes \_\_\_\_\_ his father
- 2 go \_\_\_\_\_ maternity leave
- 3 kiss and make \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 they go \_\_\_\_\_ together
- 5 set \_\_\_\_\_ home / house

## HOME

- 1 her career has gone \_\_\_\_\_ the roof
- 2 take \_\_\_\_\_ a loan
- 3 take \_\_\_\_\_ one's shoes
- 4 put \_\_\_\_\_ a phone jack
- 5 put a ceiling \_\_\_\_\_ the income of sb

## FOOD

- 1 put the kettle \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 take-\_\_\_\_\_ (restaurant)
- 3 go \_\_\_\_\_ for dinner
- 4 the milk has gone \_\_\_\_\_

## SHOPPING

- 1 go \_\_\_\_\_ a shopping spree
- 2 prices have gone \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I was cheated – they took me \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 What size do you take \_\_\_\_\_ shoes?

## CLOTHES

- 1 take care \_\_\_\_\_ clothes
- 2 take \_\_\_\_\_ a hemline
- 3 take \_\_\_\_\_ waists
- 4 go \_\_\_\_\_ of vogue
- 5 put a sock \_\_\_\_\_ it

## WORK & LEISURE

- 1 make \_\_\_\_\_ a cheque \_\_\_\_\_ sb
- 2 make \_\_\_\_\_ meet
- 3 put \_\_\_\_\_ a price
- 4 go \_\_\_\_\_ strike
- 5 take a day \_\_\_\_\_

## TOWN & COUNTRY

- 1 food that has gone \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 go \_\_\_\_\_ alone at night

- 3 make \_\_\_\_\_ a story
- 4 take sb \_\_\_\_\_ court
- 5 take \_\_\_\_\_ crime

## SIGHTSEEING

- 1 put a spell \_\_\_\_\_ sb
- 2 take sb \_\_\_\_\_ st
- 3 make a mention \_\_\_\_\_ st

## TRAVEL

- 1 make your way \_\_\_\_\_ st
- 2 take \_\_\_\_\_ the hand-break
- 3 put \_\_\_\_\_ one's seat belt
- 4 put the car \_\_\_\_\_ neutral / reverse
- 5 set foot \_\_\_\_\_ dry land
- 6 put \_\_\_\_\_ the clutch
- 7 put \_\_\_\_\_ the brake
- 8 take the wind \_\_\_\_\_ of one's sails

## FARMING

- 1 make hay \_\_\_\_\_ the sun shines
- 2 a watchdog committee has been set \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 take st \_\_\_\_\_ granted

## CLIMATE

- 1 take a rain check \_\_\_\_\_ dinner
- 2 take steps \_\_\_\_\_ protect communities  
\_\_\_\_\_ st
- 3 It's going to clear \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 It's going to turn \_\_\_\_\_ fine.

## THE HUMAN BODY

- 1 have one's tonsils taken \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 it'll take some neck / gall \_\_\_\_\_ try that
- 3 put one's foot \_\_\_\_\_ it

## HEALTH

- 1 put sb \_\_\_\_\_ a splint
- 2 take care \_\_\_\_\_ sb



# MEDIA

## NEWSPAPERS

**1** How do you feel about the press in your country? Do you feel that it keeps you well informed?

**2** Do you have a tabloid press or gutter press in your country? How does it differ from the quality press, both in content and style?

**Find a word in the text that means:**

- 1 newspapers, usually popular in style with bold headlines and large photographs, having pages of half size
- 2 the state of requiring immediate action or attention
- 3 freelance photographers who pursue celebrities to get photographs of them
- 4 exceeding proper or permitted limits
- 5 the act or an instance of intruding
- 6 the number of copies sold, especially of journals and newspapers
- 7 to institute civil legal proceedings against someone
- 8 people or documents providing evidence that can be relied on
- 9 reporting that inquires intensively into controversial issues
- 10 unknown or undeclared source or authorship

**Here are the answers. What questions do they answer?**

- a More of an embarrassment than a real problem.
- b Princess Diana's death.
- c Invasion of privacy and personal attacks.
- d To sell the most newspapers.
- e Sue them for libel.
- f They won't want to talk to reporters.
- g The judges.

## A RESPONSIBLE PRESS OR LAPDOG JOURNALISM?

Although the tabloid press has long been the subject of scorn and criticism in British society, it was, for the most part, not taken as anything too serious. The sleazy, sensationalised newspapers were seen more as an embarrassment and a minor irritation than a real problem. The death of Diana, Princess of Wales, however, lent a new urgency to the whole issue. A fairy tale created and maintained by the tabloids was brought to a tragic end, at least in part by the behaviour of the *paparazzi*. In the public outcry that followed Diana's death, many called for strong action against the excesses of tabloid reporters and photographers. But how will these actions, if taken, affect British citizens and their right to be fully informed?

Many people agree that the tabloid newspapers often do go too far. Obviously, no celebrity can escape some level of intrusion by the media. However, the tabloid press does not always stop at this. Many celebrities have had to endure public exposure of the most intimate details of their lives, as paparazzi photographers snap shots of them in every imaginable setting. They have also had to endure countless assaults on their reputations, as the tabloid papers report half-truths and dirty rumours as if they were established facts. There are truly no holds barred in the battle to get the largest circulation.

So, what can be done? One way to keep journalists from this type of irresponsible behaviour is through the courts. If a newspaper writes an untrue story about you, or damages someone's reputation by telling lies about them in print, it can be sued for *libel*. Newspapers therefore have to make sure that their stories are based on the facts provided by reliable sources – the people who newspaper writers get their information from. Therefore, if I write a story which accuses an MP of being an alcoholic, I have to have at least one source who will testify that he or she has actually seen that person habitually drunk.

Sounds reasonable, right? Like many well-meaning laws, however, the libel laws can also be abused. The reason for this is that the line between investigative reporting and abusive paparazzi reporting is very difficult to draw. Suppose, for instance, that you were writing a story about the illegal disposal of nuclear waste at a local nuclear plant, and you were basing your story on the information supplied by a member of the plant's management. If your source's employers found out about this, they would most likely sack that person. Your source will therefore want to remain anonymous. If the manager of the nuclear plant takes you to court, however, you might be forced to reveal the identity of your source, who would then most certainly be dismissed. If sources cannot remain anonymous, then people will be much less willing to talk to reporters about sensitive issues. The judges who rule over these cases must therefore be careful that the laws are applied in a way which ensures responsible journalism, while still leaving reporters the freedom to inform their readers about important issues.

**3** List the various sections of a British newspaper. Put the sections you think are the most important first, and the ones you find less important last.

**4**  Andrew and Gary are sitting at a café, reading newspapers. Listen to their conversation and fill in what each of them likes about their newspaper and what they dislike about the other's newspaper.

Andrew	Gary

**5** Newspaper headlines have little space to convey their message to the readers. They must therefore use short words in order to save space, while also using colourful words to draw the eye and add interest to a story. Because of this, newspaper headlines have developed a vocabulary of their own. Match the headline words on the left to their more common synonyms on the right.

attacks		causes
backs		criticises
ban		rise
bid		prohibit
cuts		supports
deal		disagreement
fight		refuses
looms		bribery
plummets		opposes
probe		reductions
quits		ready
rejects		promise
row		attempt
set		investigation
surge		negotiation
talks		agreement
triggers		is about to happen
vow		falls
graft		resign

**6** Sort the following words into four newspaper headlines. Below are the first lines of each of the articles.

**CIG DRUG VOW BACKS TO QUIT  
SCANDAL GRAFT REVENUES CUTS  
TAX OVER PLUMMET PROBE  
WELFARE REJECT LOOM DEAL  
REBELS KEEP AS BAN FIGHTING  
MINISTER TEEN**

After an investigation into drug abuse amongst teens, it was announced yesterday that the government would support the proposed restrictions on cigarette sales.

The Minister of Defence announced today that he would resign, saying that he wanted to focus his full attention on the bribery charges being brought against him.

The government today announced major reductions in welfare spending due to the falling tax revenues brought about by the recession.

Rebel forces in the south of the country rejected yet another proposal to join peace talks with the government, saying that they were preparing another major offensive.

**7** Now create a headline and first sentence of your own. Jumble the headline and invite a classmate to unscramble it.



# TELEVISION

**1** What is your attitude towards television? Complete the survey below, then compare your answers with the rest of the class. In four groups prepare a survey result for the entire class. Then compare your findings.

- 1 How much television do you watch a day?
  - ☐ none
  - ☐ 2 hours or less
  - ☐ 2–4 hours
  - ☐ 4–6 hours
  - ☐ more than 6 hours
- 2 What time of day do you usually watch television?
  - ☐ morning
  - ☐ noon
  - ☐ afternoon
  - ☐ evening
  - ☐ late-night
- 3 How many televisions do you have in your house?
  - ☐ none
  - ☐ one
  - ☐ two
  - ☐ three
  - ☐ four or more
- 4 Do you watch television while eating dinner?
  - ☐ yes
  - ☐ no
- 5 Do you have the television on while doing other activities (e.g. homework)?
  - ☐ yes
  - ☐ no
- 6 From the following list, mark your three favourite kinds of programme and your least favourite.
  - ☐ News / Current affairs
  - ☐ Situation comedies (sit-coms)
  - ☐ Films
  - ☐ Plays
  - ☐ Sports
  - ☐ Quiz shows
  - ☐ Documentaries / Educational programmes
  - ☐ Soap operas
  - ☐ Chat shows
  - ☐ Variety shows
  - ☐ Cartoons
  - ☐ Music programmes
  - ☐ Religious programmes

## Television

the TV set / the box / the tube	remote control
satellite dish	channels
cable	music × news × cultural channels
screen	teletext
controls	TV host
volume	anchor (news)
brightness	host (talk show)
contrast	compere

**2** Now write a summary of the survey's findings for your class. Do you think that you are typical of your country? What differences might there be in a national survey?

**3** What is "prime time"? Why is it important? What kinds of shows do you usually see during prime time?

**4** You have been appointed the head of a new television station: ABC TV. Write out your broadcasting schedule for a Friday night, starting at 7.00 p.m. and ending at midnight.

ABC TV	
FRIDAY	
7.00	
8.00	
9.00	
10.00	
11.00	
12.00	

**5** Now compare your schedule with other students'. Give reasons why your station is showing certain programmes at certain times. Whose schedule is better?

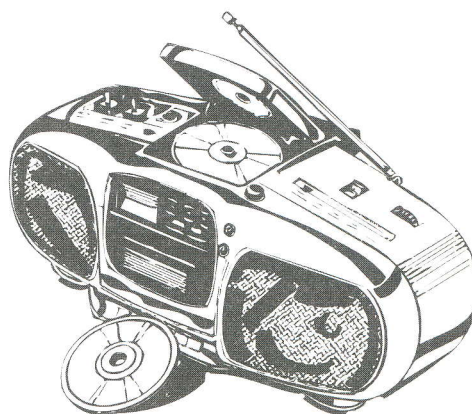
**1** Unlike television stations, which usually try to provide a wide range of programmes for everybody, radio stations are often specialised, targeting one specific audience. In the chart below, write the names of four of the major radio stations in your city, then fill in the rest of the chart. (Try to pick different kinds of radio stations! Don't just give four pop music stations!)

	Station name	Kind of programmes	Target audience
1			
2			
3			
4			

**2** What do you think of your local radio stations? What things could be improved?

**3** Video recorders (VCRs), tape / cassette recorders, compact disc (CD) players and other modern machines that reproduce sound and images have very similar controls. Talk about their functions and how often you use them.

volume  
record  
play  
fast forward  
rewind  
stop / eject  
timer



## Radio

broadcasting  
radio stations  
frequencies  
AM (Amplitude Modulation)  
FM (Frequency Modulation)  
long wave  
medium wave  
short wave  
wavelength  
tune in to a station

newsreader (GB) / newscaster (US)  
announcer  
to host a show  
chat-show host  
disc jockey / deejay / DJ  
phone-in  
sitcom (situation comedy)  
serial / series  
public service radio (US)  
panel discussion  
competition  
live broadcast

live music  
**The radio set**  
tuner (hi-fi)  
receiver (technical)  
bass  
treble  
graphic equaliser  
to turn up the volume  
turn it up × down  
to switch / turn the set on × off  
buttons

knobs  
switches  
digital display  
preset stations  
aerial (usually domestic) / antenna (US)  
antenna (usually big, commercial) (GB)  
interference  
static



# MEDIA – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**Read the following text and put in the nouns and prepositions.**

**CASE FEATURES PART ALLOWANCES IN FOR ON OVER ON OF AFTER WITH**

The shared authorship of news reports is suggested by their reliance on preferred forms of expression, their lack of stylistic idiosyncrasy (even in the reports of named journalists), and their consistency of style **1** \_\_\_\_\_ long periods of time. Once a publication or channel has opted **2** \_\_\_\_\_ a particular style, it tends to stay with it, and imposes it vigorously **3** \_\_\_\_\_ its material. This has particularly been the **4** \_\_\_\_\_ with the press. It is not difficult to identify certain **5** \_\_\_\_\_ which characterise certain newspapers. That is why it is possible to parody them so easily.

Probably the most famous journalistic parody of recent years appeared **6** \_\_\_\_\_ the UK newspaper *The Guardian* **7** \_\_\_\_\_ 1 April 1978. It reproduced the front pages **8** \_\_\_\_\_ twelve newspapers (clones of those published in the British Isles), said to have been published that day as **9** \_\_\_\_\_ of a journalistic merger on the island of San Serriffe – where the custom is evidently to name people and places **10** \_\_\_\_\_ concepts in the history of printing.

After making **11** \_\_\_\_\_ for the exaggerations which are part of a parody, a comparison **12** \_\_\_\_\_ today's papers would show little stylistic difference, despite a gap of over 15 years.

(From David Crystal: *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of the English Language*. Reprinted with permission of CUP 1995)

**The following adjectives go together with the nouns (A) ARTICLE and/or (B) HEADLINES. Use them together in sentences.**

- 13** to make
- 14** to edit
- 15** to summarise
- 16** to hit
- 17** deals with
- 18** to review
- 19** to publish
- 20** to skim

**Read the following article and then suggest the opposites of the underlined words.**

A monopoly until 1954, the BBC operates under a royal charter. It is funded from a fixed-term license fee paid by households with a television set. The BBC has four national radio networks.

The BBC has two **21** national television services, which together transmit more than 200 hours a week; both have mixed programmes that are coordinated **22** to avoid conflicts.

There is **23** substantial regional activity in both media. Of the six regions in the kingdom that formerly operated with a fair degree of **24** autonomy, only the “national” regions remain for Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland. **25** In place of the other three **26** regions, North, Midland, and West and South, there are 20 production centres for both radio and television. Regions **27** broadcast their own programmes by **28** opting out of Radio 4 or BBC 1 and using their own section of the **29** corresponding network. Radio Cymru broadcasts in the Welsh language for Wales. There are about 50 **30** local FM (VHF) stations.

# MEDIA – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Read the following text and put in the verbs and adjectives.

RECOGNIZE PROVIDE APPLAUD CRITICIZE CURRENT SEXIST VIOLENT  
CONCERNED RACIST IMPORTANT SUPERFICIAL IN-DEPTH

Some Americans criticize their media, especially television, for being 1 \_\_\_\_\_ (by showing only white people as responsible, important individuals), 2 \_\_\_\_\_ (by portraying women as “sex objects” rather than as whole human beings), 3 \_\_\_\_\_, and inadequately 4 \_\_\_\_\_ with realizing their potential for educating the public. They 5 \_\_\_\_\_ the media for providing only 6 \_\_\_\_\_ treatment of complex topics and events and for distracting Americans from 7 \_\_\_\_\_ issues. They 8 \_\_\_\_\_ the non-commercial “public” radio and television networks for at least attempting to provide 9 \_\_\_\_\_ analysis of 10 \_\_\_\_\_ issues and “serious” entertainment programs. They also 11 \_\_\_\_\_ that some newspapers (for example, the *New York Times*, *Washington Post*, and *Christian Science Monitor*) and magazines 12 \_\_\_\_\_ substantive coverage and commentary on current affairs.

(From Gary Althen: *American Ways*. Reprinted with permission of Intercultural Press, Inc., Yarmouth, ME. Copyright 1988).

Read the text and observe the collocations with the the words MEDIA and COVERAGE.

Why do the **mainstream** media **provide** such **partial** and **inadequate** coverage **of** our multicultural society? First, and obviously, the media **are owned** and **controlled by** the powerful and wealthy, whose interests are generally not in sympathy with those on the outside. And, historically, very few people of color and other minorities have been represented on the staffs of major television stations, newspapers, or magazines, making it unlikely that the concerns of their communities would **receive fair** or **adequate** coverage...

If you want **to get your feet wet** but don't know quite what interests you, pick up a copy of the *Utne Reader* at a magazine stand. Every other month, Eric Utne and his staff put together a compilation of articles from the **alternative** media, ranging from “Buddhism American Style” to “Class Bias on Campus”. You'll find lots of information here on alternative sources. Similarly, the magazine *Alternative Press Review*, which calls itself “your guide beyond the **mainstream**”, can help you find **available** periodicals, books and films. And when you're in a large bookstore, browse through the magazine section; you'll probably be surprised and delighted by the wide range of offerings.

(From Ellen Summerfield: *Survival Kit for Multicultural Living*. Reprinted with permission of Intercultural Press, Inc., Yarmouth, Copyright 1997.)

Now, give the opposites.

- 13 mainstream media
- 14 partial
- 15 adequate
- 16 majority

- 17 fair coverage
- 18 to be indifferent to st (idiom)
- 19 alternative sources
- 20 not to be had

The following adjectives are used with the nouns (A) ARTICLE and/or (B) HEADLINE. Use them together in sentences.

- 21 banner
- 22 in-depth
- 23 sports
- 24 front-page
- 25 illustrated

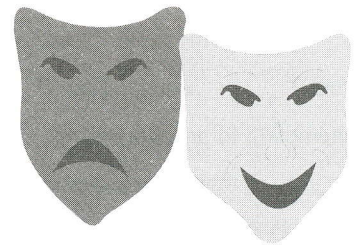
- 26 libellous
- 27 exclusive
- 28 three-part
- 29 brilliant
- 30 cookery



# CULTURE

## GOING TO THE THEATRE

**1** Ask two of your classmates the following five questions and write down their answers. If you need a new English expression, jot it down in your mother tongue. Then look at the box on the following page and go through the answers again with your teacher.



How often do you go to the theatre?

.....

.....

.....

Talk about different types of theatres. Why do you like them? Why not?

.....

.....

.....

Describe the parts of a theatre and what we do in the theatre.

.....

.....

.....

Can you name some of the staff and performers?

.....

.....

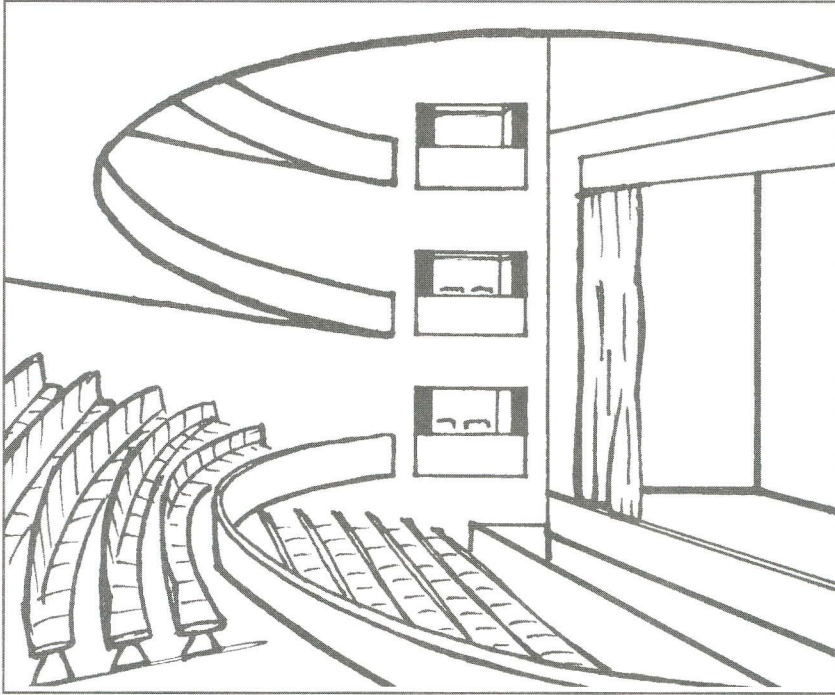
.....

Give names of different types of productions.

.....

.....

.....



**2** The following is a list of jobs in the theatre. Say what they do:

director  
lead  
composer  
stage designer  
performer  
costume designer

producer  
stage manager  
extras  
understudy  
prompter  
lighting operator  
playwright

**3** Describe the picture on the left using some of the vocabulary in the box below.

## Going to the Theatre

open-air / outdoor theatre  
variety theatre  
theatre workshop  
(to read) posters and bills  
newspaper review  
box office × ticket / theatre agency  
seating plan  
in the stalls (GB) / orchestra (US)  
box  
dress circle (GB) / balcony / mezzanine (US)  
balcony  
gallery  
"in the gods" (GB) / in the nosebleeds (US)  
standing room only  
sold out / full house  
complimentary ticket × backstage pass  
cloakroom (attendant)  
(to hire) opera glasses  
(to buy the) programme  
cast list  
an all-star cast  
lobby / foyer  
usher(ette)  
latecomers  
late seating  
auditorium × stage  
aisle / gangway  
emergency exits  
safety / fire curtain  
the curtain rises / goes up / opens × falls / goes down / closes  
centre stage  
(in the) wings

prompt(er's) box  
orchestra pit  
trapdoor  
stage props  
costumes  
set  
scenery  
dressing room  
backstage  
**Personnel**  
playwright  
based on a novel by Kafka  
producer  
director  
conductor  
stage designer  
costume designer  
stage manager  
prompter  
lighting operator / person  
make-up artist / person  
stage hand / stage crew  
stand-in  
to stand in for  
understudy  
extras  
tragedian × comedian  
chorus  
villain  
hero × heroine  
to play the part of / role of  
the leading part / role  
a supporting part

**Types of show**  
rehearsal × dress rehearsal

first night / premiere  
evening performance  
matinee  
gala performance  
drama  
tragedy × comedy  
tragicomedy  
farce  
historical play  
one-act play  
a play in 3 acts  
musical (comedy)  
pantomime  
variety show  
repertory / rep

## The performance

five-minute bell  
the lights are dimmed / go down  
the curtain goes up / opens  
acts × scenes  
interval / intermission  
to stretch one's legs  
to play to a packed × empty house  
to burst into applause  
to clap / applaud  
to give a bouquet  
standing ovation  
to take curtain calls  
to have a long run  
brilliant × dull performance  
failure / flop  
to hiss × to boo × to barrack  
to have stage fright  
"butterflies in the stomach"  
to forget one's lines



# GOING TO THE CINEMA

## 1 Types of films.

With your teacher, discuss what each of the following means. Then talk about a film that would fit in each category. Which of these genres do you prefer?

western	romance
war film	horror film
tearjerker	erotic film
thriller	sci-fi film
action film	adventure film
comedy	

## 2 Separate the following into positive and negative comments.

The leading man gave a great performance as Napoleon.  
 It was thrilling.  
 It was boring.  
 The story was predictable.  
 The direction was wonderful.  
 The actor wasn't very convincing.  
 The story wasn't believable.  
 I felt the passion.  
 A total waste of money.  
 It kept me on the edge of my seat.  
 I walked out half-way through the film.  
 It was full of tension and suspense.  
 A touching story.  
 A heart-warming film.  
 A film for the whole family.  
 The special effects and stunts were great.

## 3 In pairs, act out a conversation between two critics on a talk show reviewing the following four films. One critic should give each of the films good reviews, while the other should give them all bad reviews.

### Battering Ram III – The Last Stand

Joe Redding returns as Mack Bruscadilli, renegade cop ready to take on the Mafia. In this sequel, he joins forces with a Caribbean arms smuggler and a street-wise homeless girl to take on a powerful South American drug cartel. But his battle holds a surprise – his old enemy Manuele De Mingo is alive and well, and looking for revenge. Will Mack get out alive? **R**

### The Falling Leaf

Mary Jointer, a successful New York business executive, is pulled out of her world suddenly when she hears that her mother has had a car accident. Leaving behind the world of money and power, she visits her mother and tries to get to know her again. Together, they have to try to face a dark secret that has been haunting the family for years. **PG**

### Madball

Joey Rimpley plays the leader of a basketball team which is so bad that no one wants to buy or coach it. Together with his band of basketball misfits, he tries to work out something new - a self-owned, self-coached basketball team. But with a group that can hardly tie its own shoelaces without falling over, will he ever have a chance at reaching the finals? **G**

### The Fifth Letter

An intense spy-thriller that takes you across the globe, from Downing Street to Washington to the back alleys of Tehran. An assassin has been called out to eliminate ten of the world's most powerful people: an assassin so deadly that even his employers don't know his face, so cunning that no one can stop him. MI6 agent Jack Dowely and CIA agent Joseph Terreny work together to bring this madman down before he strikes again. **R**

## 4 Compare Hollywood with the film industry in your country. What kinds of films does your country make? What things do they do better than Hollywood? What things is Hollywood better at?

### Going to the Cinema

go to the pictures / movies  
 movie / motion picture (US)  
 outdoor cinema (GB) / drive-in (US)  
 newsreel  
 trailers (GB) / previews (US)  
 advertisements  
 filmed in colour × black and white  
 silent movies × talkies (historical)  
 subtitles × dubbed  
 feature film  
 (animated) cartoon  
 travel film  
 documentary  
 western  
 slapstick comedy

tearjerker  
 happy ending  
 remake  
 clip  
 (world) premiere  
 educational  
 science fiction  
 thriller  
 psychodrama  
 erotic × pornographic  
 romance / love story  
 horror  
 cops and robbers  
 buddy movie  
 road movie

art film  
 adventure  
 war film  
 period drama  
 to make / shoot a film  
 shot  
 scene  
 close-up × distance shot  
 slow motion / slo-mo  
 dolly shot  
 to pan  
 to fade in × out  
 in the studio × on location  
 sound track  
 special effects

to cut / edit  
 rushes  
 cutting room  
 screenplay  
 script  
 producer  
 director  
 scriptwriter  
 cameraman  
 stunt-man  
 theme music  
 an R-film (restricted)  
 a U-film (universal)  
 G (general audience)  
 PG (parental guidance)

# MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

With the help of the lists below, try to identify the instruments in the pictures and sort them into families:



stringed	
wind	
brass	
percussion	
keyboards	

## Musical Instruments

### Some common musical terms

to read music  
note  
sharp × flat  
to play by ear  
to play by heart  
staff / staves  
scale  
harmony  
counterpoint  
rest  
air  
tune  
melody  
bar  
melodious ×  
discordant  
harmonious ×  
cacophonous  
to play the piano  
to practise  
to accompany sb on  
the piano  
arrangement  
to tune (up)

to sight-read  
to improvise  
to sing / play out of tune  
music stand  
music stool  
to have no ear for music  
tone-deaf  
lyrics (the words of a song)

### Stringed instruments

(Usually picked, plucked or strummed with a plectrum)

guitar  
mandolin  
dulcimer  
harp  
banjo  
balalaika  
sitar

(Usually played with a bow)

violin  
viola  
cello  
double bass

### Woodwind, wind instruments

flute  
piccolo  
oboe  
clarinet  
bassoon  
bagpipes  
recorder  
fife  
mouth organ / harmonica  
panpipes

### Brass instruments

trumpet  
trombone  
French horn  
flugelhorn  
bugle  
cornet  
tuba  
B-flat bass / euphonium  
mouthpiece × reed  
fanfare

### Percussion

drum set  
drum  
bass drum

kettle drum  
side drum  
snare drum  
cymbals  
hi-hat  
a drum roll  
to beat the drum  
drumsticks  
brushes  
bells  
castanets  
tambourine  
triangle  
xylophone  
vibes (jazz)

### Keyboards

piano × grand piano  
spinet  
harpsichord  
organ  
keys and stops  
(piano) accordion  
Hammond organ  
synthesiser  
cymbalon / dulcimer



# GOING TO A CONCERT


**1** Here is a list of kinds of music. Can you add to it? Which ones are your favourites? Which ones don't you like?

- classical
- rock
- pop
- .....
- .....

Name all of the instruments likely to be found in each of the bands playing the various kinds of music.

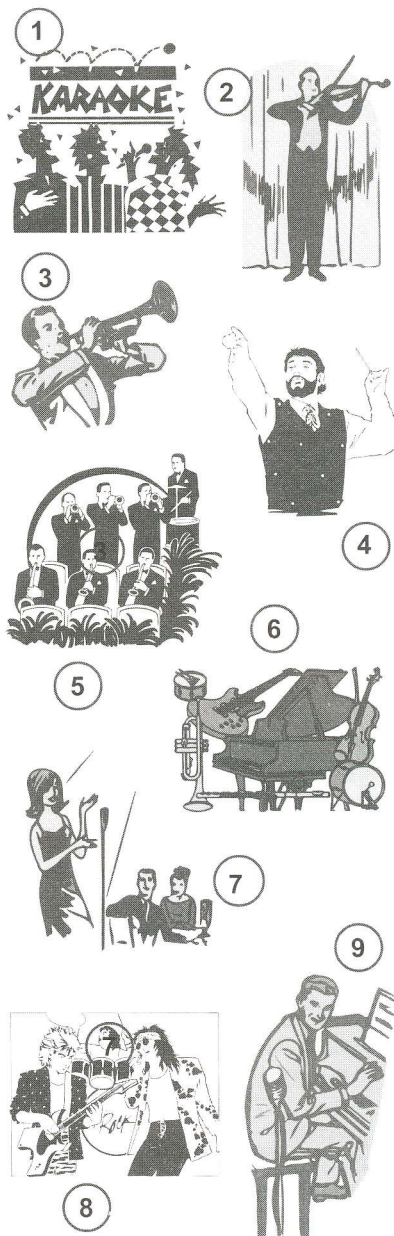
**2** What kind of music do you associate with the pictures on the right? Where are you likely to hear such music?

**3** What kind of music do your parents (or children) like? How do you feel about it? How do they feel about your music?

**4**  You are going to hear a father and a son talking about music. Listen and answer the questions below.

- a How does Tommy feel about classical music?
- b How does his father feel about Tommy's music?
- c Was his father upset when Tommy stopped playing the piano?
- d Did Tommy like the concert?
- e Is he looking forward to going to more of them?

**5** Role-play a conversation between Tommy and his father in which they talk about how they really feel about the concerts.



## Going to a Concert

concert-hall  
concert-goer  
orchestra × band × group  
follower  
instrumental × vocal  
classical × popular  
serious  
folk × traditional  
jazz (traditional × modern)  
orchestral  
contemporary × experimental  
× new age  
electronic / synthesised  
blues

rhythm and blues (R&B)  
rock'n'roll  
heavy metal × hard rock  
disco  
grunge  
punk  
techno

**Types of classical performance**  
symphony  
chamber  
promenade  
recital

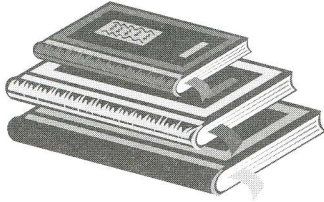
**Types of music**  
symphony  
symphonic poem  
concerto  
overture  
suite  
sonata  
toccata and fugue  
(national) anthem  
hymn  
lullaby  
madrigal  
aria  
cantata

oratorio  
requiem (mass)  
**Personnel**  
conductor  
soloist  
choirs  
school  
church  
university  
male voice  
**Voices**  
soprano  
alto  
mezzo soprano  
tenor

baritone  
bass  
boy soprano  
**Rock and pop**  
lead guitarist / singer  
rhythm guitarist  
keyboards  
synthesiser  
vocalist  
drummer (percussion section)  
session musician  
brass section

# BOOKS AND READING

**1** You have just started working at the local library, and it is your job to shelve books that have been returned. Put the following titles into their appropriate categories.



**TEACH YOURSELF SWAHILI IN 20 DAYS**  
**FOOT DISEASES SIMPLIFIED**  
**THE HITCHHIKER'S GUIDE TO FIJI**  
**GHANDI – UNAUTHORISED**  
**THE VAMPIRE DENTIST**  
**LOVE IN THE HOT SUMMER**  
**JJ SPANKS, PRIVATE EYE**  
**DANTE'S INFERNO**  
**THE WELL AT WORLD'S END**  
**LIFE'S A JOKE**  
**THE WHITE HOUSE FILES**  
**THE EATER OF STARS**  
**NAPOLEON'S RIGHT HAND**



horror story  
 fantasy  
 biography  
 detective story  
 humour  
 reference book  
 guide book  
 spy novel  
 science fiction  
 Mills and Boon  
 romance  
 classic  
 self-help book  
 historical novel

**2** Here are the beginnings of three stories. Try to match them up and put them in the right order. Then pick one of the stories and say what will happen next.

- After rubbing tanning lotion over her firm thighs, Janet lay down.
- A heavy rain fell on the streets, drenching the shadowy figure that waited beneath the streetlight.
- It was a beautiful day, and the sun was beating down on her creamy brown skin.
- He had just got it lit when a car came speeding around the corner and stopped in front of him.
- Having grown tired of looking out at the quiet stars, Zika Black left the computer monitor and started fixing herself an instant hamburger.
- Suddenly, there was a blinding flash of light, and all of the ship's computers started emitting warning signals.
- It was 3 a.m. Standard Earth Time and all was quiet in the Omega section of the frontier.
- Suddenly a shadow blocked out the sun's rays.
- Looking around nervously, the man tried to light a cigarette with his wet matches.

## Books and Reading

### Types of book

prose  
 poetry  
 short stories  
 fantasy  
 biography × autobiography  
 × memoirs  
 fiction × non-fiction  
 novel  
 diary  
 detective story  
 mystery  
 classic  
 pulp literature  
 atlas  
 encyclopaedia  
 dictionary  
 thesaurus  
 reference book  
 (academic) textbook  
 self-help book  
 guide book  
 travelogue

manual × handbook

art book

sequel

trilogy

volume

limited edition

### Parts of a book

spine × cover × (dust)jacket

flyleaf

publisher's blurb

title

dedication

binding (cloth × leather)

margin

heading × column × line

passage × paragraph

chapter × section × part

footnote × endnote

illustrations × plates × graphics

contents

preface × foreword × afterword

introduction × epilogue

summary

appendix

supplement

bibliography

references

index

### Publishing and printing

to submit a manuscript

author's proofs

to publish

printing

to edit

copyright

intellectual property

to pay royalties

first edition

revised and enlarged edition

complete and unabridged

translated by BF

to adapt (for)

printer

distributor

to launch a book / title

hardback × paperback × trade  
 paperback

bookshop × antiquarian  
 bookseller

booklet / brochure

paperback exchange

to remainder a book

remainder shop

### Library

lending library

reference library

to borrow a book

librarian

reading room

periodicals

catalogue × index × card

catalogue

stacks × racks × shelves

listed by author × subject × title

in alphabetical order

arranged by category

library card

overdue book

fine



# POETRY

## From a Writer to a Student

I've been holding hands with poetry all my life. It's been a very good friend: an inspiration, a refuge, a reality check, a reassurance that I still belong to the human race – and something I've never completely understood. But what is it? Poems come in all shapes and sizes and are written to express all kinds of ideas and emotions. Exactly what separates poetry and prose could be debated endlessly in modern times; the borders become less and less clear as years pass. Generally speaking, most experts would agree that poetry should have rhythm, shape and, very often, rhyme, sometimes in quite complex and repeated patterns.

The first poetry I remember took the form of nursery rhymes: rhythmic, regularly rhyming verses sung or recited by my mother to get me to sleep. I learnt more at infants' school, but the prime poems of childhood were the playground chants that provided the soundtrack for games, often quite grisly little rituals based on the child's view of history – beheadings, battles, political intrigue disguised as fairy-tale. From these to narrative poetry, or ballads – stories told in verse, often with quite strict patterns of rhyme and form – was only a short step. Highwaymen and chase stories, sailing ships and faraway places, life stories and tales of love, they fascinated me for years. Later I was to encounter their ancestors, the earliest known European poems, incredibly long pieces known as sagas, featuring ancient gods and goddesses, and the very first heroes and monsters, even saints and dragons. It seems that, for much of history, if a tale was worth telling, it was worth telling in verse.

Lyrical poems of various kinds carried me through the hormone hell of the late teens and early twenties: short pieces, usually divided into stanzas, that centre around one particular mood or emotion of the poet. They include sonnets, 14-line poems arranged in a strict formula of rhyme and rhythm, often divided into two sections – the first of eight lines, the second of six. In those that Shakespeare wrote, they ended with a pair of rhyming lines that summed up the poet's feelings – and often my own – in a short, perfect, brilliant display of words. For a confused youth trying to come to terms with love, death, war, family politics, and everything else that makes early adulthood so stressful, they were pure medicine. Of course, Old Bill was not the only one to write sonnets. Just about every budding poet has tried, including me. John Donne, one of Britain's greatest early poets, once remarked that anyone can write one sonnet, but only an idiot would write two.

So what do I remember now, what can I quote, in middle age? Snatches of ballads and narrative poems, lots of limericks – five-line nonsense poems, many of them dirty – some of the filthy doggerel that cannot be separated from playing British rugby football, lots of first lines to help me to find favourites in poetry collections, last couplets from a few sonnets, several magic and mystery pieces that have been set to music, and a couple of snatches of '60's free verse. Of my own purple, overwritten, obscure and pretentious output, fortunately, I remember little.

TL 1998

### Poetry

epic × lyric	narrative verse	purple poetry
saga	sonnet	dirty / filthy poetry
poem	limerick	poetic licence
line	free verse	to recite
rhyme	nursery rhyme	to chant
rhythm	doggerel	to quote
verse / stanza	ode	to learn by heart
ballad	elegy	budding poet

Below are some of the things the writer in the text remembers. Using the text, try to identify the types of poetry quoted below. Obviously, not all of them can be complete, but there is enough information to help any guesswork.

A

There was a young man of Devizes,  
Whose ears were of different sizes,  
One was quite small,  
And no use at all,  
But the other was large, and won prizes.

B

...  
The summer's flower is to the summer  
sweet,  
Though to itself it only live and die,  
But if that flower with base infection  
meet,  
The basest weed outbraves his dignity:

For sweetest things turn sourest by  
their deeds;  
Lilies that fester smell far worse than  
weeds.

C

...  
Come close and sleep now  
for in the morning  
when a policeman  
disguised as the sun  
creeps into the room  
and your mother disguised as birds  
calls from the trees  
you will put on a dress of guilt  
and shoes with broken high ideals  
and refusing coffee  
run  
all the way  
home

D

There was a little girl  
Who had a little curl  
Right in the middle of her forehead  
And when she was good  
She was very, very good  
But when she was bad she was horrid.

E

...  
Here comes a candle to light you to bed,  
And here comes a chopper to chop off  
your head  
The last

The last

The last

Man's

Head

F

...  
The fox was strong, he was full of  
running  
He could run for an hour and then be  
cunning  
But the cry behind him made him chill  
They were nearer now and they meant  
to kill.

...

# CULTURE – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**I** Each of the following groups of phrases have one word in common. Which one is it? Check the meaning of the phrases in a dictionary.

1

to \_\_\_\_\_ st out  
caught in the \_\_\_\_\_  
to clean up one's \_\_\_\_\_  
to get one's \_\_\_\_\_ together  
to put on an \_\_\_\_\_

2

to play second \_\_\_\_\_ (to someone)  
to \_\_\_\_\_ about / around with someone or something  
to \_\_\_\_\_ while Rome burns  
fit as a \_\_\_\_\_

3

\_\_\_\_\_ in the hole  
come within an \_\_\_\_\_ of doing something  
have an \_\_\_\_\_ up one's sleeve  
hold all the \_\_\_\_\_s

4

\_\_\_\_\_ between the lines  
\_\_\_\_\_ someone's mind  
\_\_\_\_\_ the writing on the wall  
\_\_\_\_\_ someone like an open book

**II** Match the phrases on the left with the meanings on the right.

- |    |                                 |   |  |
|----|---------------------------------|---|--|
| 5  | to face the music               | a | to make st more exciting, colourful or lively      |
| 6  | trumped-up                      | b | a lot of excitement for very little reason         |
| 7  | instrumental in doing something | c | accept the consequences of one's behaviour         |
| 8  | jazz something up               | d | without purpose, order, or logic                   |
| 9  | look to one's laurels           | e | false; fraudulent                                  |
| 10 | rest on one's laurels           | f | to take care to protect one's reputation           |
| 11 | in the limelight                | g | to enjoy one's success and not try to achieve more |
| 12 | without rhyme or reason         | h | at the centre of attention                         |
| 13 | reel / rattle something off     | i | playing an important part in doing something       |
| 14 | much ado about nothing          | j | to recite st quickly and accurately                |

**III** One of the words in each of the following sentences is wrong. Replace it with one of those provided.

- |    |  |    |   |
|----|--|----|---|
| 15 | Don't judge a man by its cover.<br>a magazine<br>b woman<br>c book<br>d people         | 19 | Something is forgotten in the state of Denmark.<br>a rotten<br>b changed<br>c missing<br>d false                                    |
| 16 | What's in a house?<br>a name<br>b girl<br>c boy<br>d surname                           | 20 | Truth is stranger than films.<br>a footsteps<br>b story<br>c fiction<br>d novels  |
| 17 | Lucky at cards, unhappy in love.<br>a unfaithful<br>b unworthy<br>c unlucky<br>d happy | 21 | Last impressions are most lasting.<br>a first<br>b third<br>c good<br>d other   |
| 18 | Ring down the street.<br>a door<br>b chain<br>c knocker<br>d curtain                   | 22 | Genius is one per cent admiration and ninety-nine per cent perspiration.<br>a reason<br>b intelligence<br>c brains<br>d inspiration |

**IV** Try to say the following tongue twisters out loud with a partner.

I think they were thick things with wings and they whistled as they went by.

Fanny Fowler fried five floundering fish for Francis Finch's father.

She stood on the balcony, inexplicably mimicking him hiccuping, and amicably welcoming him in.

Truly rural.

Does this shop stock short socks with spots?

The sixth sheik's sixth sheep's sick.

A big black bug bit a big black bear, made a big black bear bleed blood.



# CULTURE – AND MORE PRACTICE ...

**I** Each of the following groups of phrases have one word in common. Which one is it? Check the meaning of the phrases in a dictionary.

- 1  
to \_\_\_\_\_ it by ear  
to \_\_\_\_\_ one's trump card  
to \_\_\_\_\_ second fiddle (to someone)  
to \_\_\_\_\_ possum  
to \_\_\_\_\_ to the gallery

- 2  
\_\_\_\_\_ some business up  
\_\_\_\_\_ someone out of something  
\_\_\_\_\_ something into someone's head  
as tight as a \_\_\_\_\_

- 3  
He who pays the piper calls the \_\_\_\_\_.  
to be in \_\_\_\_\_ with someone  
to call the \_\_\_\_\_  
to change one's \_\_\_\_\_

- 4  
to go into / to make a \_\_\_\_\_ and dance about something  
to buy / sell something for a \_\_\_\_\_  
wine, women and \_\_\_\_\_  
swan \_\_\_\_\_

**II** Match the phrases on the left with the meanings on the right.

- 5 without further ado  
6 to beat the band  
7 to climb on the bandwagon  
8 to march to a different drummer  
9 to fluff one's lines  
10 to have the gift of the gab  
11 to sell like hotcakes  
12 Jekyll and Hyde  
13 to harp on  
14 to blow one's own trumpet

- a very much, very fast, at maximum effort  
b to join the crowd  
c to believe in a different set of principles  
d without further talk / thought  
e to be able to use language effectively  
f to keep talking or complaining about st  
g to speak badly or forget one's lines in a play  
h to sell well  
i sb with both an evil and a good personality  
j to boast, or to praise oneself

**III** One of the words in each of the following sentences is wrong. Replace it with one of those provided.

- 15 The road to heaven is paved with good intentions.

- a home  
b hell  
c Rome  
d theatre

- 19 A picture is worth a million words.

- a thousand  
b ten  
c hundred  
d billion

- 16 Song is long and life is short.

- a art  
b death  
c hope  
d wait

- 20 Play the piper, call the tune.

- a post  
b pay  
c pride  
d poster

- 17 Life isn't all rum and skittles.

- a smile  
b water  
c beer  
d read

- 21 To do a long story short.

- a hear  
b make / cut  
c understand  
d want

- 18 A rose by any other name would sniff as sweet.

- a sway  
b smell  
c seem  
d sigh

- 22 It takes three to tango.

- a four  
b polka  
c waltz  
d two

**IV** Try to say the following nursery rhymes out loud.

Pussy-cat, pussy-cat, where have you been?  
I've been up to London to look at the queen.  
Pussy-cat, pussy-cat, what did you there?  
I frightened a little mouse under the chair.

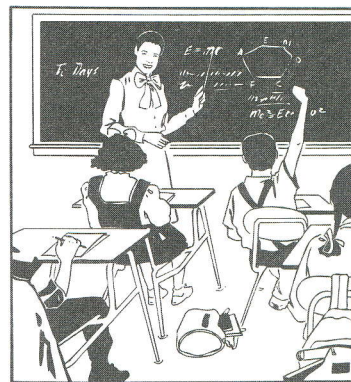
Needles and pins, needles and pins,  
When a man marries his trouble begins.  
Early to bed and early to rise,  
Makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

# EDUCATION

## STUDYING AND EXAMINATIONS

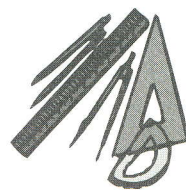
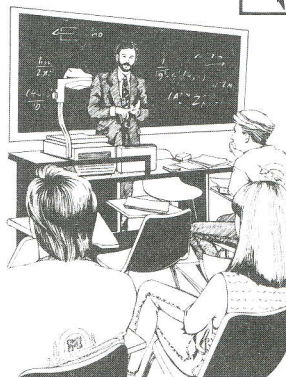
**1** In small groups, discuss these questions.

- What kind of student are you? Do you study steadily throughout the year or do you try to cram everything before exam times?
- How do you study? Do you prefer to study alone or in groups? Do you like to study for long periods of time or in small chunks? Do you have any special tips that you could suggest?



**2**  Listen to the radio programme and answer the following questions.

- What is the secret of being a good student?
- What is the difference between a prepared student and an unprepared student?
- How does a prepared student study?
- How should an unprepared student study?
- What is the danger of study groups?



**3**  Listen to the radio programme again and finish the sentences below. Then explain their meaning.

- 1 *There is only one issue facing students, and .....*
- 2 *...students everywhere are busily .....*
- 3 *You can't expect .....*
- 4 *...there must be more .....*
- 5 *I cannot stress enough .....*
- 6 *...you should always be .....*
- 7 *...everybody pools their .....*
- 8 *Of course, you're always at .....*
- 9 *...you are relying .....*
- 10 *And for all you students out there, good .....*

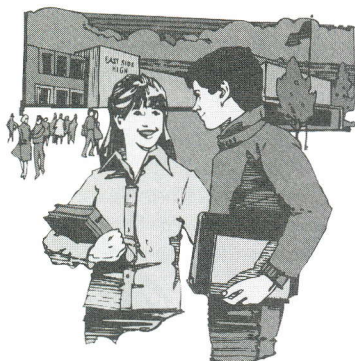


# SECONDARY SCHOOL

**1** Read the text on the right about secondary school dilemmas. What would you do in these situations?

**2** Can you think of any similar school dilemmas that you or a friend have had to go through? What were they? What did you do?

**3** Read the text on the right again and highlight all the useful collocations that you want to remember. Then use them in sentences of your own and check with your teacher.



A ➤ You sit down at a desk in class and find a really nice pencil case under the seat. It's just the kind you have always wanted, but your mother refuses to buy it for you because it costs too much. Someone has obviously left it there by mistake. Do you give it to the teacher, leave it where it is, or keep it for yourself?

B ➤ Some of the older kids at school are bullying you. They push you around in the halls during lunch break, and they even knocked you down and stole your lunch money once. You're afraid to tell your parents, because they'd probably make a fuss in front of everyone and make things even worse.

C ➤ There's an exam coming up in your maths class and you know you will do poorly because you have been ill for a long time and have fallen behind. You would ask your teacher if you can take the exam later, but he is the strictest and nastiest teacher in the school, and you're sure he'll say no. As you wait for the teacher to finish talking to another student, you see the answer sheet to the exam lying on the table.

D ➤ You were playing in the gym yesterday when you saw some older children vandalising the locker room. Now the headmaster has called you into his office and accused you of the vandalism. The children who did it are older, bigger, and tougher, and you know that the whole school hates a rat. On the other hand, the headmaster is threatening to call your parents and suspend you from school.

E ➤ Your boyfriend / girlfriend has asked you for help in writing a book report. You start by trying to make a few suggestions, but it soon becomes obvious that s/he hasn't read the book and wants you to write the report yourself.

## Secondary School

to teach  
to examine  
to substitute for sb  
to learn  
to study  
to cram / swot  
to memorise / learn by heart  
to do one's homework  
to make a mistake  
to write legibly  
legible handwriting  
to revise (GB) / review (US)  
to cheat  
cheat sheet / crib  
to copy  
to go to school / university  
to pay attention  
to make / take notes  
to write / jot down  
to play truant / skip classes / bunk (off)  
to take attendance  
to mark / grade  
to correct  
bullying

corporal punishment  
to lag / fall behind the class  
off the roll  
suspended / expelled  
private × state schools  
public school (GB × US)  
parental involvement  
parents' meeting  
tuition / school fees  
grammar school (GB)  
high school (US)  
secondary school  
apprentice school  
boarding school  
syllabus / curriculum  
compulsory subjects  
optional / elective subjects  
extracurricular activities  
break (GB) / recess (US)  
classroom  
timetable (GB) / schedule (US)  
headmaster / headmistress (GB) / school principal (US)

deputy head (GB) / assistant principal (US)  
janitor (GB) / custodian (US)  
guidance counsellor  
notice board (GB) / bulletin board (US)  
chalk  
locker room  
teachers' room / staffroom  
headmaster's office  
computer room  
language lab  
gymnasium / gym  
cafeteria / lunch room  
school report  
certificate / diploma  
school-leaving examination  
to sit (for) / take / do an exam  
mock-exam  
interview  
written × oral  
to pass an exam × fail an exam



## SPRINGDALE co-ed boarding school

**1** What do you understand by the term “public school” in Britain? Do you have any similar institution in your country?

**2** What is your opinion of sending children to boarding schools? Is it a good thing or a bad thing?

**3** Look at the description of two famous public schools in Britain. Which one do you think would provide a better education? Which would you rather go to? Why?

**4** In small groups, describe the school you went to. What kind of curriculum did it have? What kind of atmosphere?



### Curriculum

Most major subjects are taught, but classes are optional. If the student is not interested, he or she doesn't have to attend.

### Atmosphere

Very informal. Teachers do not try to influence or guide the students in any way. Teachers and students are seen as equals. Most school matters are decided in general school meetings, in which every student and teacher has an equal vote.

### Rules and discipline

Everyone has to respect other people and their property.

### Extra-curricular activities

Drama, art, games, field trips to various interesting places, etc. Emphasis on creativity, with competitive sports discouraged.

## DOVECOTE MANOR all-male boarding school

### Curriculum

Classics such as history, Greek, and Latin, as well as modern subjects such as chemistry and computers.

### Atmosphere

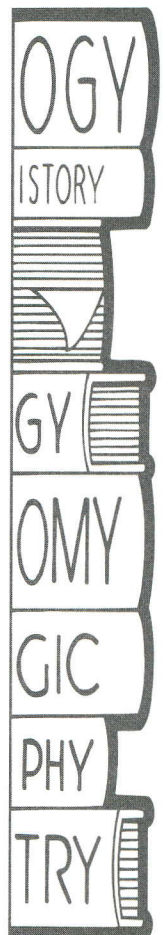
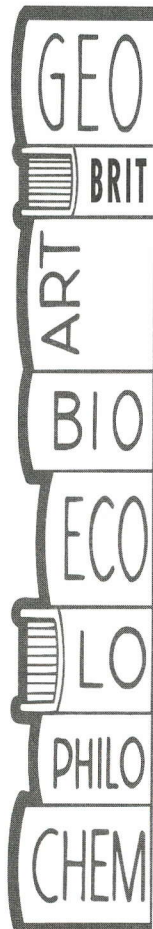
Very formal. There is a dress code. Students wear boaters and blazers. Teachers wear suits, gowns, and mortarboards. Students are expected to be formal and courteous towards their teachers and each other.

### Rules and discipline

Strict rules about when students are to be in bed, manners and behaviour. Punishment used to include beatings, but now is mostly community service such as picking up rubbish or cleaning bathrooms.

### Extra-curricular activities

Drama clubs, debating societies, philosophical societies, chess clubs, etc. Heavy emphasis on competitive sport; membership of military cadet force obligatory.





# UNIVERSITY

## 1 Role play

Possible roles:

Barbora's sister

her parents

a recruiter from a large computer

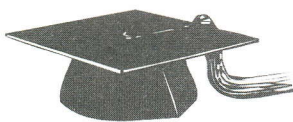
company

a friend who studies philosophy

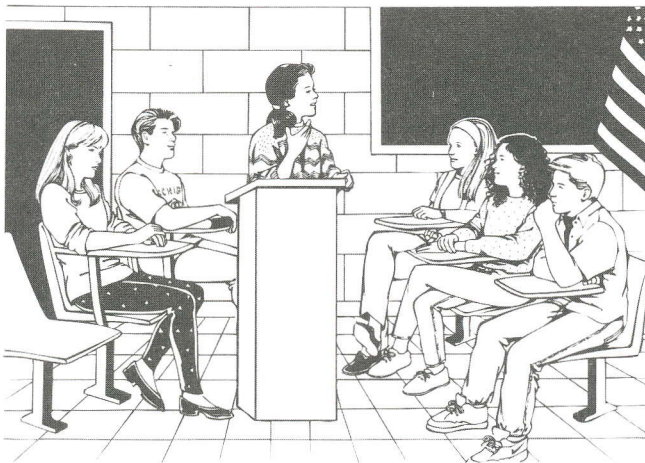
school counsellor.

### Situation:

Barbora is in her second year at a large American university. After trying out a few subjects, she has decided that she really wants to major in philosophy. She has taken a few introductory courses and is fascinated by the subject. The only problem is that she is worried about whether or not she will be able to find a job when she finishes college. Although part of her tuition is being paid by a small scholarship, Barbora is paying for most of her education through student loans, and she will owe quite a bit of money when she finishes university. Her older sister recently graduated in computer programming and immediately found a well-paid job, and has been urging her to "get real" and study something that will lead to a "real career". What should she do?



**2** Would you like to be a student at an American university? What problems do you think you could come up against? Is it easy to stay away from home for such a long time? How would you put up with the new environment? The following is an excerpt from *International Student Guide to Living & Adapting at Eastern Michigan University* describing four stages every student has to go through. They are referred to as: *Humor Stage*, *Home Stage*, *Honeymoon Stage* and *Hostility Stage*. Read the text and insert the right title for each paragraph.



## Why am I so unhappy here?

There are many reasons for you to be unhappy, even if you had been planning to come to the U.S. for a very long time. You may be experiencing culture shock – *every* international student experiences it at least once, and maybe more often than that, during his or her stay. Cultural adjustment usually happens over many months in 4 stages:

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_: students usually are very happy and excited to be in the U.S. They enjoy all of the new things and are confident.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_: students become frustrated and angry at the same things that made them happy during the honeymoon stage. They don't like the food, the people, the school, their apartment, or the unfamiliarity. They miss their family and friends a lot. This is the stage that most people call "culture shock".
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_: students begin to relax and realize that they will like some things; about the new culture and won't like other things. They often think that their cultural and language mistakes are funny instead of frustrating.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_: students feel comfortable in the new culture, even though they still may not like certain things.

It's important to remember that sometimes you can go back to a stage several times (you may experience the hostility stage a lot) or you may pass right through a stage in a very short time. The important thing to remember is that the hostility stage is not permanent. Talking to other international students may help, and so might keeping a diary. The internet has many places where you can write to people and tell them your problems. It may also help if you talk to an American student who has been to your country.

### 3 Read the text and fill in the following expressions:

catered	tuition	only	compared
admit	further	raise	entrance
degrees	appointing	mature	grants

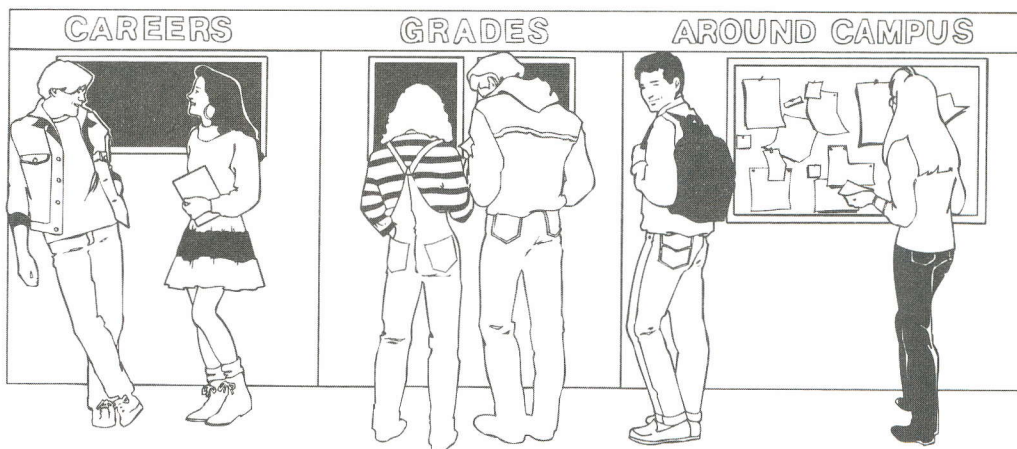
## Universities and Higher Education Colleges

There are 89 publicly-funded universities in the UK, counting the Universities of Wales and London as single institutions and including the Open University and 65 other higher education institutions. The University of Buckingham is the **1** \_\_\_\_\_ independent university. There are about 3,000 private colleges providing both higher and **2** \_\_\_\_\_ education. Some 300 further education colleges also offer higher education courses.

Universities and most other higher education institutions enjoy complete academic freedom, **3** \_\_\_\_\_ their own staff and deciding which students to **4** \_\_\_\_\_, what and how to teach, and which **5** \_\_\_\_\_ to award. Most first-degree courses last between two and four years.

More young people are entering higher education than ever before – about one in three, as **6** \_\_\_\_\_ to one in eight in 1979. More recent universities and colleges have **7** \_\_\_\_\_ increasingly to **8** \_\_\_\_\_ students and those without traditional **9** \_\_\_\_\_ qualifications.

Higher education institutions are mainly funded by central government **10** \_\_\_\_\_ paid through the Higher Education Funding Council and from tuition fees. British students usually have their **11** \_\_\_\_\_ fees paid for them by their local education authority. Many institutions also receive funding for research from Research Councils, charities, and industry. Universities and higher education colleges are also known to **12** \_\_\_\_\_ finance from the private sector.



### University

higher education  
college  
Oxbridge  
entrance examination / admission  
to be admitted to  
to study humanities  
    science  
    law  
    medicine  
    dentistry  
    computer science  
    at technical university  
    at business school  
    at School of Economics  
to concentrate / focus on

to change schools  
campus  
assembly hall  
dining hall  
lecture hall  
library  
halls of residence / hostel (GB) /  
    dormitory (US)  
to apply for a scholarship  
to be eligible for  
to get a grant / financial aid  
loan  
to enrol (GB) / enroll (US)  
enrolment  
academic year  
term / semester (US)  
to take a course

student / undergraduate  
professor  
to lecture / read  
chancellor (GB) / president (US)  
dean  
department head  
tutor  
teaching assistant (T.A.)  
credit  
paper  
to graduate from \_\_\_\_ with honours  
to get a degree in st  
to have a degree in st  
bachelor  
master  
BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD, BSc  
graduation ceremony



# EDUCATION – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**I** The expressions in the left column are used as euphemisms when talking about education. Match them with their meanings in the right column.

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1 backward                  | a developing early                                      |
| 2 education welfare manager | b someone who returns to class after years              |
| 3 special pupil             | c a truancy officer                                     |
| 4 special school            | d cooking and housekeeping                              |
| 5 home economics            | e entry to a university without previous examination    |
| 6 late developer            | f pupil suffering from a mental or physical abnormality |
| 7 mature student            | g poor scholar  |
| 8 less prepared             | h very dull   |
| 9 not a great reader        | i naughty or stupid                                     |
| 10 precocious               | j illiterate  |
| 11 open access              | k school for special pupils                             |
| 12 maladjusted              | l of inferior attainment                                |

**II** Compare the following extract with your experience of the educational system in your country. Are there any differences? Give a talk about your attitude to this problem and suggest ways of tackling it.

The American educational system is based on the idea that as many people as possible should have access to as much education as possible. This fact alone distinguishes the U.S. system from most others, since in most others the objective is as much to screen people out as it is to keep them in. The U.S. system has no standardized examinations whose results systematically prevent students from going on to higher levels of study,

as the British and many other systems do. Through secondary school and sometimes in post-secondary institutions as well, the American system tries to accommodate students even if their academic aspirations and aptitudes are not high, even if they are physically (and in some cases mentally) handicapped, and even if their native language is not English.

(From Gary Althen: *American Ways*. Reprinted with permission of Intercultural Press, Inc., Yarmouth, ME. Copyright 1988).

**III** The following adverbs are typically connected with the verbs TO STUDY and/or TO LEARN. Match them with the appropriate verb.

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 13 by heart        | 17 gradually       |
| 14 thoroughly      | 18 fast            |
| 15 in detail       | 19 conscientiously |
| 16 from experience | 20 by doing        |

**IV** Read the text below and fill in the following expressions.

BEYOND FOR IN WHOSE DURING OF FROM AND IN CONTRAST TO BY

21 \_\_\_\_\_ the United Kingdom, public school, also called independent school, is one of a relatively small group of institutions educating secondary-level students 22 \_\_\_\_\_ a fee and independent 23 \_\_\_\_\_ the state system as regards both endowment 24 \_\_\_\_\_ administration. The term “public school” emerged in the 18th century when the reputation of certain grammar schools spread 25 \_\_\_\_\_ their immediate environs. They began taking students 26 \_\_\_\_\_ parents could afford residential fees and thus became known as public, 27 \_\_\_\_\_ local, schools. By the late 20th century the term “independent school” was increasingly preferred 28 \_\_\_\_\_ the institutions themselves. The typical great public school – such as Eton, Harrow, Winchester, Westminster, Rugby, Shrewsbury, or Charterhouse – evolved 29 \_\_\_\_\_ an institution founded by a single benefactor 30 \_\_\_\_\_ the late European Middle Ages or Renaissance.

# EDUCATION – AND MORE PRACTICE...

**I** The expressions in the left column are used as euphemisms when talking about education. Put them back into the sentences.

- |   |                                  |    |   |
|---|----------------------------------|----|---|
| a | slow upstairs                    | 1  | No student ever gets expelled any more, though he may suffer _____.                                   |
| b | less academic                    | 2  | _____ was just another word for idleness or stupidity.  |
| c | concentration problem            | 3  | He clearly has a _____, to put it mildly.   |
| d | ADD (attention deficit disorder) | 4  | There is a special course for the active _____.   |
| e | school phobia syndrome           | 5  | _____ is what used to be called cramming.   |
| f | academic dismissal               | 6  | An _____ child can be either stupid, or “unusually good”, in its literal sense.                       |
| g | sent down                        | 7  | If children are _____, they are stupid or unteachable.  |
| h | underachiever                    | 8  | He is very good with his hands but, unfortunately, a bit _____.                                       |
| i | developmental course             | 9  | The disease which made it impossible for the child to attend school was the newly identified “_____”. |
| j | exceptional                      | 10 | You can get _____ (from university) because of misconduct or failure to achieve minimal results.      |

**II** Compare the following extract with your experience of the educational system in your country. Are there any differences? What is your opinion? Write a paragraph and have it corrected by your teacher.

The American approach to teaching may seem unfamiliar to many, not only because it is informal, but also because there is less emphasis on learning facts than is true in the systems of many other countries. Instead, Americans try to teach their children to think for themselves, to analyze, to explore, to develop their own intellectual and creative abilities. Students spend much time learning how to use resource materials, libraries,

statistics, and computers. Americans believe that if children are taught to reason and to research well, they will be able to find whatever facts they need throughout the rest of their lives. Knowing how to solve problems is considered more important than the accumulation of facts, which often grow obsolete.

(From Alison R. Lanier: *Living in the U.S.A.* Reprinted with permission of Intercultural Press, Inc., Yarmouth, ME. Copyright 1996)

**III** The following adverbs are typically connected with the verbs TO READ and/or TO WRITE. Match them with the appropriate verb.

- |    |                     |    |                     |
|----|---------------------|----|---------------------|
| 11 | brilliantly         | 16 | wittily             |
| 12 | aloud               | 17 | vividly             |
| 13 | knowledgeably       | 18 | over and over again |
| 14 | from cover to cover | 19 | (il)legibly         |
| 15 | convincingly        | 20 | with great interest |

**IV** Read the text below and fill in the following expressions.

**APPROXIMATELY TO THROUGH OR BY OF IN THROUGHOUT MOST HOWEVER**

In most school systems 21 \_\_\_\_\_ the United States, high school is any three- to six-year secondary school serving students 22 \_\_\_\_\_ 13 (or fourteen or fifteen) through 18 years 23 \_\_\_\_\_ age. Often in four-year schools the different levels are designated, in ascending order, freshman, sophomore, junior, and senior.

Most American high schools are public – meaning that they are tuition-free, supported 24 \_\_\_\_\_ state funds. There are, 25 \_\_\_\_\_, a number of private high schools 26 \_\_\_\_\_ the country, supported generally 27 \_\_\_\_\_ a combination of tuition charges and private grants 28 \_\_\_\_\_ endowments. 29 \_\_\_\_\_ of these schools offer primarily academic courses 30 \_\_\_\_\_ college-oriented students, and many are sectarian.



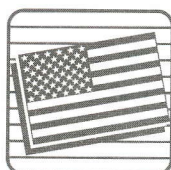
# HOLIDAYS

1 Look at the following pictures and say which holidays they refer to and what you know about them. Are they also celebrated in your country?

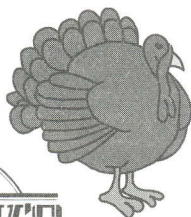
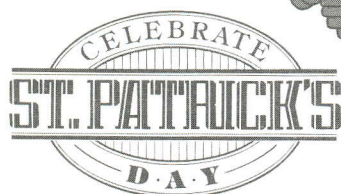
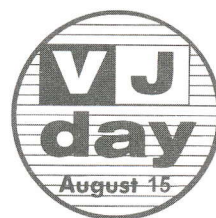
Season's Greetings

Merry Christmas

HAPPY  
*Thanksgiving*  
ONE  
AND ALL



Remember Our Country's  
Heroes on MEMORIAL DAY



VETERANS DAY



4TH  
OF  
JULY

HAPPY EASTER

Honoring America's  
**Work Force**  
Labor Day



Father's  
**DAY**



LABOR DAY



HAPPY  
MOTHER'S DAY

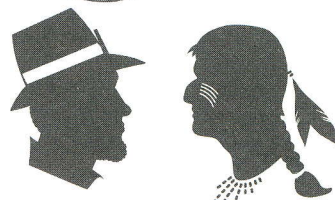
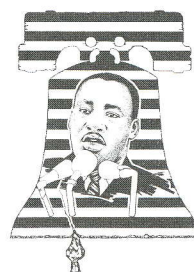
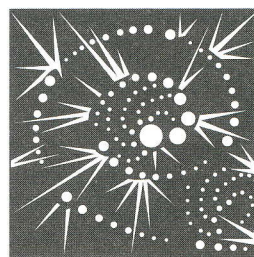
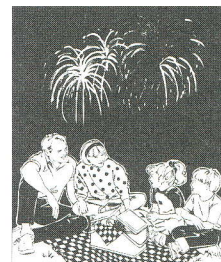
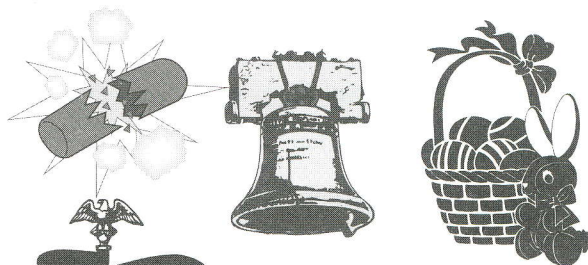
BOXING DAY



**2** The names of months have been deleted. Decide which paragraph belongs to which month.

- a** All Saints' Day (1)  
Guy Fawkes Night / Bonfire Night (5 – GB)  
Armistice / Remembrance / Veterans Day (11 – GB / US)  
International Students' Day (17)  
Thanksgiving (fourth Thursday – US)
- b** New Year's Day (1)  
Epiphany / Twelfth Night (6)  
Martin Luther King Day (third Monday – US)  
Australia Day (26)
- c** Lord Mayor's Show (9 – GB)  
Columbus Day (second Monday – US)  
Halloween (31)
- d** May Day (1)  
May Day Bank Holiday (first Monday – GB)  
VE-Day (8)  
Mother's Day (second Sunday)  
Memorial Day (last Monday – US)  
Spring Bank Holiday (last Monday – GB)
- e** St. Valentine's Day (14)  
Washington's Birthday (third Monday – US)
- f** All Fools Day / April Fools Day  
Anzac Day (25)
- g** St. Patrick's Day (Ireland, US)  
Easter (the first Sunday after the first full moon after the spring equinox)
- h** Labor Day (first Monday – US)
- i** August Bank Holiday (last Monday – GB)
- j** Christmas Eve (24)  
Christmas Day (25)  
Boxing Day (26)  
New Year's Eve (31)
- k** Independence Day (4 – US)
- l** International Children's Day (1)  
Trooping the Colour / The Queen's Official Birthday (second Saturday – GB)  
Midsummer Day (21 – GB)  
Father's Day (third Sunday – US)

**3** The following pictures are symbols of some of the holidays mentioned opposite, connected with the way they are celebrated. Identify them and speak about the customs, comparing them with the celebration in your country.





## 4 Which description fits to the following holidays?

- |                          |                        |                     |                   |
|--------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Martin Luther King Day | 6 Bank Holiday         | 11 Labor Day        | 16 Thanksgiving   |
| 2 St. Valentine's Day    | 7 Mother's Day         | 12 Halloween        | 17 Australia Day  |
| 3 Washington's Birthday  | 8 Memorial Day         | 13 All Saints' Day  | 18 Anzac Day      |
| 4 St. Patrick's Day      | 9 Independence Day     | 14 Guy Fawkes Night | 19 All Fools' Day |
| 5 Easter                 | 10 Trooping the Colour | 15 Veterans Day     | 20 May Day        |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>a</b> An official public holiday when all banks and post offices are closed, as well as most factories, offices and shops.</p> <p><b>b</b> A public holiday in Australia and New Zealand commemorating the Anzacs (i.e. Australian and New Zealand Army Corps) landing in Gallipoli in 1915.</p> <p><b>c</b> This is a sweethearts' day. People send cards as a token of love. Those who are in love express their affection for their partner.</p> <p><b>d</b> George Washington was the first U.S. President. His birthday was the first federal holiday to honor an American citizen. His birthday was February 22nd, but it is celebrated on the third Monday in February.</p> <p><b>e</b> Martin Luther King was a clergyman who is ranked among the greatest Americans. He fought for full civil rights for people and preached non-violence. He was assassinated.</p> <p><b>f</b> This holiday celebrates the resurrection of Jesus Christ in the Christian church. It symbolizes new life and fresh hope.</p> <p><b>g</b> It is a time of celebration for people of Irish descent. In New York City a parade is held on the Irish patron saint's festival day.</p> <p><b>h</b> On this day Americans honour their war dead. Special ceremonies are held in cemeteries or at monuments for the war dead by veterans of military services. Some hold parades and others hold memorial services or special programmes in churches, schools, or other public meeting places.</p> <p><b>i</b> This day is regarded as the birthday of the US as a free and independent nation. Picnics with patriotic speeches and parades are held. It is also a day on which fireworks displays fill the skies in the evening. The flying of flags is common.</p> <p><b>j</b> An annual ceremony held on the Official Birthday of the sovereign on Horse Guard Parade, London, when regiments of the Guards Division, and the Household Cavalry, parade ("troop") the regimental flag ("colour") before the sovereign. The ceremony dates from the 18th century and was originally a guard-mounting ceremony.</p> <p><b>k</b> It has neither political nor religious origin, nor is it celebrated in any uniform way. Its purpose is to honour the nation's working people. For most Americans it marks the end of the summer season.</p> | <p><b>l</b> A public holiday in Australia, commemorating the landing of the British in 1788.</p> <p><b>m</b> It was first celebrated in 1621 by the English settlers of the Plymouth Colony, after the first harvest following a winter of starvation and disease. Nowadays the whole nation gives thanks for a good harvest and the generous gifts of nature. On this day the Americans have the biggest feast of the year.</p> <p><b>n</b> Guy Fawkes (1570 – 1606), was one of several Roman Catholic conspirators in the Gunpowder Plot who tried to blow up the Houses of Parliament. Under torture he revealed the names of the other conspirators and was convicted and executed. In towns and villages you can see bonfires burning, fireworks banging and rockets shooting across the sky. In the weeks before, you will see groups of children pushing an old pram with a figure inside that looks like a scarecrow. The children will ask passers-by for "a penny for the guy".</p> <p><b>o</b> People decorate graves with flowers, lay wreaths, burn candles, pay respect to the family dead.</p> <p><b>p</b> On this day, the dead of all wars are remembered. In the US, the president and other high officials place a wreath on the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier at Arlington National Cemetery outside Washington, D.C. In Britain on Remembrance Sunday, the Sunday nearest to Armistice Day, the chief ceremony is the laying of wreaths at the Cenotaph in London.</p> <p><b>r</b> Although it is not really a holiday, this day is regularly observed. People play practical jokes on each other. Some news organizations also spread hoaxes.</p> <p><b>s</b> Children pretend to be goblins, witches and ghosts. They make jack-o'-lanterns out of pumpkins and put on costumes and masks.</p> <p><b>t</b> It's a day on which children honour their mothers, give them gifts, or perhaps take them to a restaurant for dinner.</p> <p><b>u</b> In Britain this day may be best known for its tradition of dancing round the Maypole and crowning of the May Queen. This day is also called International Workers' Day or Labour Day (to commemorate the Haymarket Riot of 1886 in Chicago, Illinois)</p> |
|--|---|
- 5** After finishing Exercise 4, add to each holiday the date, as in Exercise 2.

# CHRISTMAS



## 1 📻 Christmas greetings

Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year.

Wishing you every happiness in the New Year.

Season's Greetings.

## 2 Talk about Christmas. Describe the pictures on the left.

Has Christmas lost its true meaning in becoming commercialised?

Do you think that non-Christians should still celebrate Christian holidays?

Is Christmas really a pagan festival?

How do you celebrate Christmas and New Year's Eve?

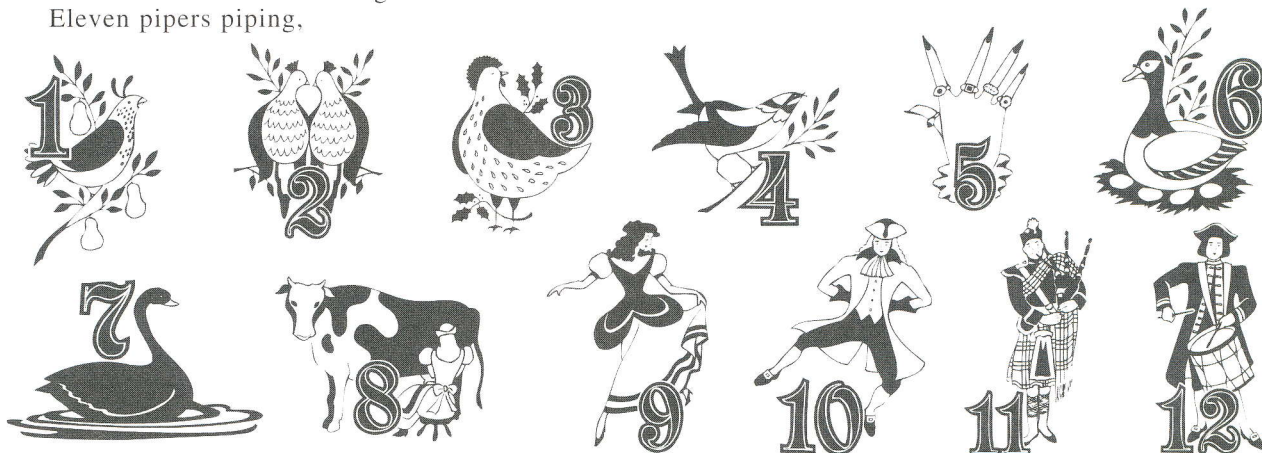
## 3 The Twelve Days of Christmas

- 1 On the first day of Christmas my true love sent to me  
A partridge in a pear tree.
- 2 On the second day of Christmas my true love sent to me  
Two turtle doves and a partridge in a pear tree.
- 3 On the third day of Christmas my true love sent to me  
Three French hens, two turtle doves,  
And a partridge in a pear tree.

....

- 12 On the twelfth day of Christmas my true love sent to me  
Twelve drummers drumming  
Eleven pipers piping,

Ten lords a-leaping,  
Nine ladies dancing,  
Eight maids a-milking,  
Seven swans a-swimming,  
Six geese a-laying,  
Five gold rings,  
Four colley birds,  
Three French hens,  
Two turtle doves,  
And a partridge in a pear tree.



### Christmas

#### Pantomimes

fairy tales

Cinderella  
Little Red Riding Hood  
Beauty and the Beast  
Puss in Boots  
Babes in the Wood  
Peter Pan

#### Christmas tree

spruce or Scots pine  
candles  
sparklers

sprigs of mistletoe

holly

trinkets

tinsel

a string of lights

a star at the top

homemade ornaments

walnuts

paper chains

strings of popcorn

to decorate the tree

to hang things on the tree

to dangle from the tree

to do Christmas shopping

decorated shop-windows

nativity scene / crib / creche

to fill stockings with presents

to hang up stockings

to write and send off Christmas

cards

#### Christmas food

stuffed roast turkey × goose

fried carp with potato salad

cookies

pastries

mince-pies

fruit cake

egg nog

pumpkin pie

cranberry sauce

to pour brandy over Christmas

pudding

#### Carols and other songs

Silent Night

Jingle Bells

White Christmas

Good King Wenceslas



# HOLIDAYS – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

The expressions on the left are used when talking about holidays. Match them with of holidays on the right.

- 1 trick or treat
- 2 carol singers
- 3 anonymous romantic cards
- 4 Queen's message
- 5 Auld Lang Syne
- 6 bonfire
- 7 green beer
- 8 Pilgrim Fathers
- 9 Maundy money
- 10 Trooping the Colour

- a Valentine's Day
- b Christmas
- c Guy Fawkes Night
- d Halloween
- e the Queen's official birthday
- f Maunday Thursday – Thursday before Easter
- g New Year's Eve
- h Saint Patrick's Day
- i Thanksgiving
- j Christmas Day

The following extract is a description of a holiday. Compare it with similar celebrations in your country. Are there any differences?

Festivals are usually devoted to merrymaking. One of the most famous in the United States is Mardi Gras in New Orleans. The custom was brought from France by the early settlers of Louisiana.

Mardi Gras is a time of feasting and fun just before Lent begins. The celebrations start sometime in January, though the most elaborate activities take place during the week preceding Ash Wednesday. They end on the

night of "Fat Tuesday," which is the literal translation of the French "Mardi Gras." Every year thousands of tourists crowd New Orleans to see elaborate floats, dancing in the streets, and the colorful crowning of a queen by Rex, the Lord of Misrule.

(From *Compton's Interactive Encyclopedia Deluxe*  
© 1999 The Learning Company, Inc.)

The expressions on the left go with the verbs on the right. Match them.

- 11 money for charities
- 12 a speech
- 13 tricks on each other
- 14 hidden eggs
- 15 old traditions
- 16 this popular event
- 17 jack-o-lanterns out of large pumpkins
- 18 parties
- 19 the discovery of the Gunpowder Plot of 1605
- 20 the Queen in full regalia in a spectacular horse-drawn carriage

- a carve
- b play
- c takes place
- d hold
- e arrives at
- f deliver
- g keep up
- h search / look for
- i collect
- j is commemorated

Read the text below and fill in the following prepositions.

TO AS FOR IN BY IN OF ACROSS AT THAN

## Bank Holiday

In Britain, any of several days designated **21** \_\_\_\_\_ holidays **22** \_\_\_\_\_ the Bank Holidays Act of 1871 and a supplementary act of 1875 **23** \_\_\_\_\_ all the banks in England, Wales, Northern Ireland, and Scotland. Although these days are not statutory public holidays, their observance is no longer limited **24** \_\_\_\_\_ banks.

By March 2, 1933, more **25** \_\_\_\_\_ 20 states in the U.S.A. had declared bank "holidays" to stop panic withdrawals. Then Governor Lehman closed all banks and stock exchanges **26** \_\_\_\_\_ New York. Governor Horner did the same in Illinois. **27** \_\_\_\_\_ a few days banking operations were halted **28** \_\_\_\_\_ the country. The economic life **29** \_\_\_\_\_ the nation was almost **30** \_\_\_\_\_ a standstill. The American people awaited Roosevelt's solution.

(From *Compton's Interactive Encyclopedia Deluxe* © 1999 The Learning Company, Inc.)

# HOLIDAYS – AND MORE PRACTICE...

The expressions on the left are used when talking about holidays. Match them with the holidays on the right.

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 hot cross buns                        | a Columbus Day         |
| 2 holly and ivy                         | b Christmas            |
| 3 turkey and pumpkin pie                | c Good Friday          |
| 4 crackers                              | d Halloween            |
| 5 first-footing following Hogmanay      | e Independence Day     |
| 6 pancake                               | f Shrove Tuesday, Lent |
| 7 the Declaration of Independence       | g New Year's Day       |
| 8 dunking for apples                    | h May Day              |
| 9 discovery of America                  | i Thanksgiving         |
| 10 May Queen, maypole or Morris dancing | j Christmas Day        |

The following extract is a list of American holidays. Compare them with similar celebrations in your country. Are there any differences?

In 1968 Congress passed a bill – effective in 1971 – changing the days of observance of three existing legal holidays to Mondays and making Columbus Day a ninth legal holiday. The nine legal public holidays established by this bill were: New Year's Day (January 1), Washington's Birthday (third Monday in February), Memorial Day (last Monday in May), Independence Day (July 4), Labor Day (first Monday in September), Columbus Day (second Monday in October), Veterans Day (fourth Monday in November), Thanksgiving (fourth Thursday in November), and Christmas Day (December 25). In 1978, the government moved the observance of

Veterans Day back to November 11, which was originally Armistice Day. In 1986, the birthday of Martin Luther King, Jr., became the tenth legal holiday (third Monday in January).

Sunday is the only holiday under common law. When a legal holiday falls on Sunday, the holiday is observed on the following day.

(From *Compton's Interactive Encyclopedia Deluxe*  
© 1999 The Learning Company, Inc.)

The expressions on the left go with the verbs on the right. Match them.

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 11 Christmas wishes                       | a revived                            |
| 12 traditions have all but                | b is flown                           |
| 13 local celebration are being            | c is put on in London                |
| 14 a gift                                 | d fulfil                             |
| 15 Notting Hill Carnival                  | e is honoured on March 1             |
| 16 Guy Fawkes tried to                    | f covered with brandy and set alight |
| 17 a man called Black Rod                 | g blow up Parliament                 |
| 18 Christmas pudding is                   | h bring                              |
| 19 the national flag                      | i leads the Queen                    |
| 20 Saint David, the patron saint of Wales | j died out                           |

Read the text below and fill in the following prepositions.

AS FOR WITH IN SINCE FROM WITH TO OF IN

## Origin of Festivals and Holidays

Festivals and holidays have been celebrated 21 \_\_\_\_\_ ancient times. The earliest festivals seem to have been connected 22 \_\_\_\_\_ offerings 23 \_\_\_\_\_ the dead. Later, people celebrated the change 24 \_\_\_\_\_ seasons with festivals. Planting time and harvest offerings time were occasions 25 \_\_\_\_\_ special rejoicing. The festivals of the ancient Greeks and Romans were elaborate affairs. The Romans celebrated Lupercalia 26 \_\_\_\_\_ February and Saturnalia in mid-December. Dances, amusements, and offerings of presents were mingled 27 \_\_\_\_\_ pagan religious rites.

Many modern festivals and holidays originated 28 \_\_\_\_\_ religious celebrations, 29 \_\_\_\_\_ both terms indicate. These celebrations usually included sacred communal meals, 30 \_\_\_\_\_ which the term festivals, also called feasts, was derived. And the word holiday originally meant "holy day." Holidays celebrating historic events and other occasions came later.

(From *Compton's Interactive Encyclopedia Deluxe* © 1999 The Learning Company, Inc.)



# MODERN SOCIETY


## GLOBALIZATION

**1** Look at the ten words and try to put them into pairs to form names of some world problems.

economic      mania      crisis  
                 globalization  
agriculture      industrial  
genetic      extinction  
                 techno      engineering

**2** Now read the following newspaper headline. Can you guess what the article might be about? Can you give some concrete points the article could touch upon?

## World Culture Resists Bowing to Commerce

**3**  Now listen to the speaker talking about globalization and what she sees as the future of people in the 21st century. This is a summary of the talk. Fill in the missing words according to the meaning.

Those in favour of globalization think that **1** \_\_\_\_\_ relationships are vital to successful developments in the future. On the contrary, as the speaker suggests, this **2** \_\_\_\_\_ is not right. Only when **3** \_\_\_\_\_ are well developed is it possible to create commercial and **4** \_\_\_\_\_ institutions.

Civil society movement groups are determined to **5** \_\_\_\_\_ local cultures. However, the position of culture today is not very strong, and it has to **6** \_\_\_\_\_ its role as a political force. The new international WCO (World Cultural Organization) is meant to be a counterpart to the existing **7** \_\_\_\_\_. It is necessary for world leaders to identify with the interests of the **8** \_\_\_\_\_ society and take the time to listen to those protesting in the streets. If people start sharing their own cultures with others, the 21st century could mean a truly humane **9** \_\_\_\_\_ of commerce and trade. Nevertheless, if the **10** \_\_\_\_\_ fail to take this opportunity, the world's future could look rather dim.



**4** Work with another student. Using the expressions below, try to prepare a similar talk to deliver at a student conference. First make a plan of your talk, stating the main ideas.

### Globalization

global street parties  
industrialized countries  
developed countries × less well-developed countries  
developing × underdeveloped  
to impoverish × to become richer and richer  
growing influence of multinational corporations  
impact on the environment  
loss of traditional values  
IMF – International Monetary Fund  
skinheads × anarchists  
bottle battles and violence

# ECONOMIC AND POLITICAL SITUATION

**1** Read the following text. Put in the parts of sentences that are missing. One part does not fit anywhere.

- A** This was particularly true in the case of military installations and equipment
- B** the unprecedented requirements for dividing the economy assumed a somewhat tentative order of priority
- C** Problems associated with the transition from a centrally planned economy to a market-oriented one led many countries to completely restructure their social security
- D** was relatively diversified and stable, reflecting both a more amenable geography and the historic predominance of Czechs in the federal administration
- E** had caused a dramatic short-term increase in prices and unemployment.
- F** and separate currencies were inaugurated

In many respects, the partition of Czechoslovakia in 1993 represented for the emergent Czech Republic an economizing measure far more effective than any that domestic government policy could hope to accomplish. While the Czech Republic and Slovakia officially shared the status of successors to the federal state, long-standing inequities in economic development gave the Czechs a decided advantage at independence. Rigid compartmentalization under the Czechoslovak planned economy made Slovakia, with its mineral resources and hydroelectric potential, a major producer of armaments for the former Communist nations of eastern Europe. The economy of the Czech Republic, on the other hand, **1**\_\_\_\_\_. Similarly, the transition to a market economy initiated after the so-called Velvet Revolution of 1989 lagged behind in Slovakia. Irrespective of deeper societal factors, these imbalances predisposed Czechs to favour partition, while the Slovaks were divided in their view of the federal partnership as either an obscuring shadow or a sheltering wing. Once the political breach came to seem inevitable, **2**\_\_\_\_\_. At partition, the federal monetary system remained essentially intact, each country identifying its currency supply by means of applied stamps. The rapid economic divergence of the two republics, however, ended the arrangement after only one month, **3**\_\_\_\_\_. The historic imbalance in government assets between the two territories made fair apportionment after partition a difficult goal. **4**\_\_\_\_\_, of which the Czech Republic held the great majority. The bulk of Slovakia's military-industrial component, by contrast, consisted in its armament manufacture, which had declined precipitously with the collapse of Communism. Despite its inherent advantages, the Czech economy faced independence at a time when recent emergence from the Soviet bloc, coupled with the rigours of privatization, **5**\_\_\_\_\_. The government instituted a value-added tax in its effort to align the economy with Western markets.

(From *Encyclopaedia Britannica* 2001)

**2** Go through the text again. Highlight any useful phrases and supply their Czech equivalents.

**3** Working in groups of three, prepare a short summary of events that followed after the described developments and write what the economic and political situation is like at the moment. Which political party is now in power in your country? For inspiration, look at the box below.

## Economic and Political Problems, Elections

transformed economy	money laundering	to bring down the government	winning party
half-finished economic reforms	Clean Hands Campaign	to resign / to step down	Parliament x Congress
mass privatisation	financial transparency	no-confidence vote	Lower Chamber x Upper Chamber
centralised x market-oriented	corruption	elections	Chamber of Deputies
low-wage, low-tech economy	financial scandal	general election x local election x by-election	Senate x House of Representatives
working practices	political problems	universal franchise / suffrage	House of Lords x House of Commons
enterprise restructuring	the split of Czechoslovakia	to register as a voter	Speaker x Lord Chancellor x Chairman
pace of industrial modernisation	a phase Slovakia had to go through	electorate	watchdog body
export competitiveness	independence	electoral register / roll	first-past-the-post
balance of trade	the birth of a sovereign republic	to have the right to vote	hung parliament
price liberalisation	political scene	to go to the polls / the polling station	to fulfil pre-election promises
cheap and qualified labour force	Communist dictatorship	to put one's ballot (paper) in the ballot box	post-electoral demoralisation
the incentive to enter the EU	government x Cabinet x administration	to cast a vote	to tarnish international reputation
economic stability	caretaker government of non-elected technocrats	constituency	to abuse the ideals of freedom and democracy
rising unemployment and inflation	(radical) right-wing x left-wing x centrist	to know the election results	
the collapse of banks	majority x minority party	to lose in the elections	
bankruptcy	coalition	to gain x to lose a seat	
	cross-party coalition	to win / to achieve a sweeping / landslide / overwhelming x marginal victory	
	opposition		



# DISCRIMINATION

**1** Read the following article and discuss whether a similar situation could arise in your country or not.

**2** Talk to your neighbour. Do you happen to know what the outcome of this trial was?

**3** In groups of four, if you were the judge, what would your ruling be? Give reasons for your decision.

**4** In your groups, answer the following questions, using the vocabulary from the box at the bottom of the page.

■ What forms of racism have you come across recently? How were they dealt with?

■ What is the attitude of the people you know towards racial discrimination?

**5** Emigration has increased in recent years and has become a very controversial topic. The most discussed questions are listed on the right. Try to provide as many answers as possible.

## Microsoft sued for racial discrimination

Software giant Microsoft is facing one of the largest discrimination suits in US history as a group of current and former employees accuse the firm of racism and a "plantation mentality" in the workplace.

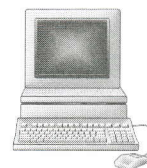


The seven African American plaintiffs are seeking \$5bn in compensation, claiming they were paid less than their fellow employees and repeatedly passed over for promotions given to less-qualified white workers.



The workers, who are filing a class action suit against both Microsoft and its figurehead Bill Gates, also claim to have been subjected to racial harassment and retaliation when they complained.

Microsoft has declined to comment in detail on the case but it has vigorously defended its commitment to diversity. While African-Americans make up 2.7 per cent of Microsoft's workforce, minorities as a whole account for 22.7 per cent, company spokesman Dean Katz said.



- Why do people emigrate?
- Why are many people opposed to immigration?
- How can the host country profit from immigrants?

### Discrimination, Racism, Immigration

ethnic minority groups / communities  
Gypsies / Romanies / Romas  
African American  
racism  
anti-Semitism  
racial discrimination  
ethnic cleansing  
racial disadvantage  
equal opportunities  
anti-discrimination legislation  
to support unprivileged minorities

to be entitled to equal rights  
to integrate into the majority community  
to discriminate against  
prejudice against minorities  
tension in the relations between  
to combat racism  
subject to intimidation  
to feel the hatred of sb  
to feel contempt for sb  
to despise / treat sb as inferior  
to treat sb decently  
to commit acts of violence  
to be mobbed  
to shout abuse

to seek refuge  
refugees  
upsurge in crime  
to emigrate x to immigrate  
legal x illegal immigration  
desperate economic or legal situation  
political or religious persecution  
economic reasons  
better economic opportunities  
influx of immigration  
to restrict immigration  
to impose controls limiting the numbers

levels the country can absorb / support  
cultural diversity  
to corrupt traditions  
to destroy local culture  
problems of deprivation  
exploitation  
cheap labour  
to take jobs away from the citizens

# WAR AND PEACE, TERRORISM

**1** The following extract provides information about the former president of Yugoslavia. Fill in the correct verb forms. Change the word order if necessary.

**2** Talk about the following questions to your neighbour.

What happened to Milosevic in the following years?

Talk about more examples of trials with former dictators.

What, in your opinion, is the right way to treat these people?

**3** On the map, indicate the current hotbeds of international tension, terrorism or war.

Then compare your map with your classmates.

Did you mark the same places? If not, justify your decision.

**4** Using the expressions from the box below, briefly describe some of the current events in the world and present them to the class.

As Serbia's president, Milosevic continued to dominate the new Federal Republic of Yugoslavia, which had been inaugurated in 1992 and consisted of only Serbia and Montenegro. He **1** \_\_\_\_\_ (maintain) his power by his repression of political opponents, his control of the mass media, and the opportunistic alliances he formed with parties across the political spectrum, **2** \_\_\_\_\_ (include) the Yugoslav United Left, the party **3** \_\_\_\_\_ (lead) by his wife. **4** \_\_\_\_\_ (Serve) two terms as president of Serbia, Milosevic constitutionally **5** \_\_\_\_\_ (bar) from serving a third term. He retained power, however, by having the federal parliament **6** \_\_\_\_\_ (elect) him to the presidency of Yugoslavia in 1997. Milosevic's attempt to cling to power by taking the federal presidency **7** \_\_\_\_\_ (expose) him to indictment by the International Criminal Tribunal for Former Yugoslavia at the Hague, Netherlands. As president of Serbia before 1997, it **8** \_\_\_\_\_ (be) difficult to charge Milosevic with any possible offences **9** \_\_\_\_\_ (commit) by Yugoslav troops during the war with Bosnia, but as president of Yugoslavia he was also the commander-in-chief of the federal armed forces. He thus **10** \_\_\_\_\_ (deem) responsible for any offenses against international law committed during the Kosovo conflict and was indicted in May 1999.

(From Britannica 2001)



## War and Peace, Terrorism

to break off diplomatic relations with sb

to declare war on sb

to have military superiority

to fight x win x lose a decisive battle

to skirmish

to attack from ambush

bombing / bombardment

to plant a bomb

to go off

to launch an attack / offensive

retaliation / reprisal

to shift and regroup the forces

to bring in reinforcements

to inflict heavy losses

to strike at an enemy

to repulse / beat an attack

to besiege

to be under curfew

to flee

to pursue

to withdraw

to capture 10,000 troops

to surrender

warring factions

to negotiate a ceasefire

to declare / call a truce / ceasefire x break truce

to force to surrender

lasting ceasefire

the need for restoration of ceasefire

the collapse of ceasefire

to resume campaign of violence

to hand over / surrender one's weapons

decommission of illegally held arms

to accept terms x carry out terms

to oust sb from power

to deploy peace-keeping troops in ...

to take sb prisoner

to set up the War Crime Tribunal in the Hague

to bring former leaders of the guerilla movement to trial

genocide

to be charged with war crimes

to issue sentences as severe as 45 years in prison

to sentence to life imprisonment

jailed for life

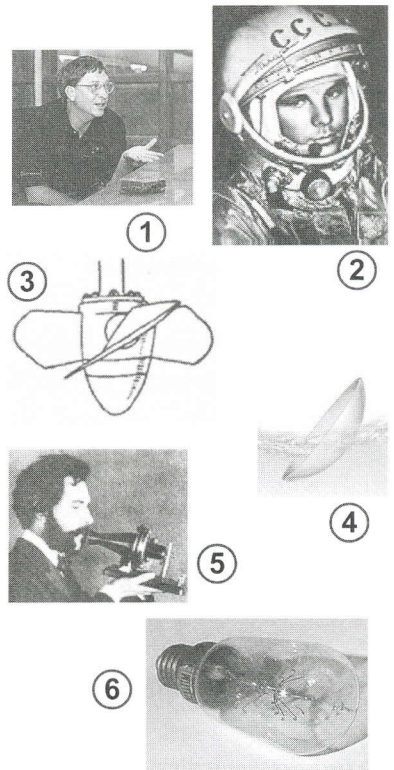


# PROGRESS IN SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

**1** Look at the pictures on the right. Can you recognize the people and inventions in them?

**2** Match the names in the first column with the inventions or events in the second and dates in the third. Then discuss the questions below.

Neil Armstrong	propeller water turbine	1969
Alfred Bernhard Nobel	soft contact lenses	1913
Alexander Graham Bell	first man to set foot on the moon	1876
Victor Kaplan	telephone	1961
Otto Wichterle	dynamite	1867
Thomas Alva Edison	electric light bulb	1961
Yuri Alekseyevich Gagarin	Microsoft	1879
Bill Gates and Paul Allen	first manned space flight	1975



- How would the world be different if these events hadn't happened?
- Looking at the box above, think of some more significant events or inventions that have not been included in the table.
- In your view, which is the most useful invention in the last 100 years for all mankind? Try to support your choice with some facts. Which invention is the most useful for you personally? Give reasons.

**3** In groups of three, make a list of negative aspects associated with some technical and scientific inventions. In what way can they be abused? Be prepared to discuss your list with the class.

Invention and its use	Negative aspects
<i>Laser - perations, painless drills for dentists</i>	<i>deadly weapon</i>

#### 4 Place the missing words in the correct sentences in the text:

controversial  
human

ethical  
identical twins

genetically  
organ

replacement  
reproductive

### Human Cloning

Human cloning is the creation of a 1. \_\_\_\_\_ identical copy of a 2. \_\_\_\_\_. The term is generally used to refer to *artificial* human cloning; human clones in the form of 3. \_\_\_\_\_ are commonplace, with their cloning occurring during the natural process of reproduction. There are two commonly discussed types of human cloning: therapeutic cloning and reproductive cloning. A third type of cloning called replacement cloning exists in theory, and is a combination of therapeutic and reproductive cloning. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ cloning entails the replacement of an extensively damaged, failed, or failing body through cloning.

Human cloning is 5. \_\_\_\_\_. There have been numerous demands for all progress in the human cloning field to be halted. Some people and groups oppose therapeutic cloning but many more oppose 6. \_\_\_\_\_ cloning. Various scientific organizations have made public statements suggesting that human reproductive cloning be banned until safety issues are resolved. Serious 7. \_\_\_\_\_ issues have arisen in discussions of harvesting of organs from clones. Some people have considered the idea of growing organs separately from a human organism – in doing this, a new 8. \_\_\_\_\_ supply could be established without the moral implications of harvesting them from human organisms.

*From Wikipedia*

**5 Conduct a survey in your class. Do more classmates think that scientists should clone body parts or vice versa? Then choose three representatives on each side to defend their standpoints in an open panel discussion. Each of you should write one question on a slip of paper for these representatives. A moderator should choose the best questions and submit them to the panel. One or two interpreters can interpret the discussion into their mother tongue.**

### Progress in Science and Technology

advances  
research  
awards ceremony  
Nobel Prize

#### Outstanding inventions

weapons  
arms race  
H-bomb × A-bomb  
ballistic missile  
supersonic aircraft  
hovercraft  
air-cushion vehicle  
satellite/orbiting satellite

satellite communication  
automatic camera  
Polaroid camera  
calculator  
computer technology  
scanner  
websites  
adoption websites  
buy babies from adoption brokers  
overhead projector (OHP)  
photocopier  
laser  
genetic engineering

test-tube babies  
cloning  
human reproductive cloning  
serious monitoring of research  
nanotechnology  
biotechnology  
genetically modified foods

#### Space exploration

solar system  
planets  
stars  
meteors and meteorites  
UFO (unidentified flying object)

flying saucer  
cosmonaut × astronaut  
space flight / travel  
(un)manned flight  
circle the Earth  
to land on the moon  
lunar landing  
the Sun  
Venus probe  
spaceship  
space laboratory  
space shuttle



# ENERGY

**1** Here is some information about renewable energy resources. Read the text on the right and decide which type of energy from the headings below the descriptions refer to.

- Geothermal Energy
- Wind Power
- Biomass
- Ocean Thermal Energy Conversion (OTEC)
- Tidal Energy
- Hydroelectric Power

**2** Find a word in the text that means:

- 1 change into another form, substance or state
- 2 petrol with a small amount of alcohol in it
- 3 relating to or produced by motion
- 4 utilise

**3** Can you think of other energy sources not listed above?

**1**

Hot springs, geysers, pools of boiling mud, and fumaroles are the most easily exploited sources of such energy. The greatest potential for this energy, however, lies in the generation of electricity.

**2**

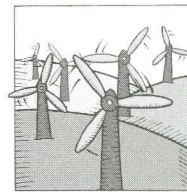
This type uses two methods: extracts energy from ocean currents in a way similar to wind power, and uses the temperature differences between the ocean surface and ocean depths to run a heat engine.

**3**

Wood and other plants can be burnt directly or converted into a fuel. Conversion of grain to ethanol and the production of gasohol (10 % ethanol and 90 % gasoline) is an example of this process.

**4**

The power that can be extracted from the kinetic energy of wind depends upon the wind speed. The theoretical limit of power from wind is 59% of its kinetic energy.



**5**

This kind of electricity is produced by generators driven by water turbines that convert the potential energy in falling or fast-flowing water to mechanical energy.

**6**

Hydraulic turbine-generator units are presently used to extract energy from ocean tides, although on a very limited scale. There are few sites throughout the world that are suitable for harnessing this kind of energy without constructing prohibitively expensive damlike structures.

**4** In the box below you will find a few expressions concerning energy. Using some of them, write a paragraph on nuclear energy and its advantages and disadvantages.



## Energy

nuclear power plants  
nuclear reactors  
radioactive waste  
to store nuclear waste  
to contaminate  
disputes over safety  
to jeopardise public safety  
to pose a potential risk  
disastrous effects of the nuclear accident at Chernobyl  
nuclear energy perceived in Hiroshima-like terms  
protracted nuclear debate  
anti-nuclear opponents  
environmental groups  
activists  
blockades

energy resources  
power station  
electricity generation and power supply  
annual energy consumption  
finite nature of the world's fossil-fuel energy resources  
fossil fuels  
firewood  
converting the heat from burning fuels into mechanical energy  
petroleum / oil  
natural gas  
domestic and industrial heating  
exploration and new methods of extraction  
reserves of coal, oil, and gas  
impact on the environment  
burning fossil fuels  
alternatives to these fuels  
biofuels

biomass  
biogas  
renewable energy / alternative energy sources  
to cause little environmental pollution  
economic viability  
hydroelectricity  
nuclear energy  
controversial issue  
fears concerning safety  
undesirable environmental consequences  
solar power  
solar cells / batteries  
wind power  
wind farms  
wind mills / turbines  
geothermal energy  
combustible plant or animal materials  
wave / tidal power

# SOCIETY – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

**Choose the right expressions and fill in the gaps.**

- 1 Japan and other \_\_\_\_\_ countries ...  
a growing up                      c underdeveloped  
b developing                      d industrialized
- 2 It will continue to \_\_\_\_\_ many of the poorest parts of the world.  
a enrich                              c verify  
b impoverish                      d poverish
- 3 They have built up the industry on \_\_\_\_\_.  
a cheap labour                      c bankruptcy  
b money laundering              d balance of trade
- 4 They also notify the government's other \_\_\_\_\_ body...  
a watching                          c watchdog  
b checking                          d control
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ is seen as the best way to overthrow a dictator.  
a enterprise restructuring        c fruition  
b assassination                      d price liberation
- 6 The costs of the \_\_\_\_\_ will be worth bearing.  
a no-confidence vote              c economic stability  
b political scene                      d cheap labour
- 7 However, \_\_\_\_\_ boundaries are changed from time to time.  
a demoralisation                      c constituency  
b opposition                          d coalition
- 8 To use raw materials that have minimum \_\_\_\_\_ on the environment.  
a consequence                      c result  
b impact                                  d outcome
- 9 For the disabled, less abled and \_\_\_\_\_ ...  
a underprivileged                      c minority  
b equal                                  d coloured
- 10 Manifestations of \_\_\_\_\_ and xenophobia are steadily growing in Europe.  
a intimidation                      c racism  
b cultural diversity                      d pickpocketing

**Fill in the missing expressions.**

- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ is hostility to or prejudice against Jews.
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ is the belief that all members of each race possess characteristics, abilities, or qualities specific to that race, especially so as to distinguish it as inferior or superior to another race or races.
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who has been forced to leave their country in order to escape war, persecution, or natural disaster.
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_ is a relatively small group of people, especially one commonly discriminated against in a community, society, or nation, differing from others in race, religion, language, or political persuasion.
- 15 \_\_\_\_\_ unfair treatment on the basis of prejudice.

**The following words have been left out of the sentences below. Put them back.**

**CLEANSING    REFUGE    INFLUENCE  
SKINHEADS    RESULTS**

- 16 The election \_\_\_\_\_ had been announced.
- 17 The children have been forced to seek \_\_\_\_\_ in neighbouring countries.
- 18 This is the harsh reality of ethnic \_\_\_\_\_, Europe's version of apartheid.
- 19 Maybe this is a consequence of the recession, maybe the growing \_\_\_\_\_ of the chains.
- 20 By this time all London's pubs and clubs had firmly shut their doors to \_\_\_\_\_.

**Match the collocations.**

- |    |           |   |             |
|----|-----------|---|-------------|
| 21 | computer  | a | missile     |
| 22 | test-tube | b | shuttle     |
| 23 | space     | c | technology  |
| 24 | flying    | d | saucer      |
| 25 | genetic   | e | engineering |
| 26 | ballistic | f | babies      |

**Spot the mistake and correct the following sentences.**

- 27 Nigeria has lead African countries in banning the importation of waste from industrialized countries.
- 28 Meanwhile the effectiveness and cost of aids from France (the largest donor to Africa) was being increasingly scrutinized.
- 29 This would be achieved by formulating a convention on climate change, to include legally binding protocols on cutting emissions of gases which contributed to global warming.
- 30 The talks failed produce any clear commitments on proposed treaties to control climate change and to safeguard species diversity.



# SOCIETY – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Choose the right expressions and fill in the gaps.

- 1 The Foreign Secretary also predicted that a \_\_\_\_\_ parliament would lead to another election within a year.  
a hung                      c wrought  
b stung                    d stuck
- 2 Importing waste into the EC will also be banned, with the exception of shipments from \_\_\_\_\_ countries for treatment or recycling.  
a developing              c underdeveloped  
b industrialized          d industrial
- 3 Although human cloning could be a scientific breakthrough, there are \_\_\_\_\_ concerns.  
a functional              c ethical  
b elemental              d colloquial
- 4 An increasing number of Italians want to adopt a British \_\_\_\_\_ system so that there can be a periodic clean sweep.  
a vote                      c electorate  
b first-past-the-post    d strong
- 5 Cast a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ for Britain.  
a election                  c vote  
b word                      d slogan
- 6 If a socialist government came into power and carried out their extravagant promises to the \_\_\_\_\_, this country would be finished.  
a political scene          c constituency  
b opposition              d electorate
- 7 The voting reportedly passed off peacefully and was marked by \_\_\_\_\_ among the electorate.  
a democracy              c apathy  
b sympathy                d bankruptcy
- 8 Universal \_\_\_\_\_ has not produced the working-class political dominance which so many people either feared or hoped that it would.  
a price liberation        c corruption  
b franchise                d ballot
- 9 And, as with all myths, there is a kernel of truth in the \_\_\_\_\_ perception of themselves as outcasts.  
a skinheads                c politicians  
b technocrats             d coalitions
- 10 But the same stone-throwing anarchists complained that they had been brutalized by policemen and thrown into \_\_\_\_\_.  
a Black Marias            c Old Bills  
b Green Antons            d bear cars

Fill in the correct expressions.

- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ is a disc-shaped flying craft supposedly piloted by aliens.
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ is a device that generates an intense beam of coherent monochromatic light (or other electromagnetic radiation) by stimulated emission of photons from excited atoms or molecules.
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_ is a rocket-launched spacecraft able to land like an unpowered aircraft, used to make repeated journeys.
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_ is the deliberate modification of the characteristics of an organism by manipulating its genetic material.
- 15 \_\_\_\_\_ is the branch of technology that deals with dimensions and tolerances of less than 100 nanometres, especially the manipulation of individual atoms and molecules.

The following nouns have been left out from the sentences below. Put them back.

**BIOMASS FIREWOOD OIL COAL BIOGAS**

- 16 The people who run the country also run the \_\_\_\_\_ industry.
- 17 The ideal for the future must be a private \_\_\_\_\_ mine and a power station working together.
- 18 With more breeding and genetic engineering, the productivity of \_\_\_\_\_ coppices could be doubled.
- 19 We must gather \_\_\_\_\_.
- 20 \_\_\_\_\_ is produced by the fermentation of organic matter.

Match the following expressions with their collocations. Sometimes more than one collocation is possible.

- |                                  |                   |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| 21 burning                       | a pollution       |
| 22 to pose a potential           | b public safety   |
| 23 to jeopardise                 | c issues          |
| 24 controversial                 | d energy          |
| 25 renewable                     | e plant           |
| 26 impact on                     | f consumption     |
| 27 annual energy                 | g fossil fuels    |
| 28 nuclear power                 | h resources       |
| 29 energy                        | i risk            |
| 30 to cause little environmental | j the environment |

# KEY

## FAMILY

### 5/2

1. c
2. d
3. a
4. a – altered  
b – tolerance  
c – praise  
d – deplore

### 8/1

**Jamie:** Hello, Jamie speaking.

**Mark:** Hi, Jamie! This is Mark. Listen, I was wondering if you wanted to go and see that new Spielberg film.

**J:** Sounds great! When should we do it?

**M:** How about tomorrow night at 8:00? We could go get something to eat first and then maybe go out for a drink afterwards.

**J:** Mmm. You know, tomorrow's out for me. I've already got something planned. Why don't we make it Thursday night instead?

**M:** Sounds good to me. So I'll pick you up at around 6:00, okay?

**J:** Great. I'll see you then. Bye.

**M:** Bye.

### 8/1

**Joe:** Hey Anne! I'm having a party on Saturday. Would you like to come?

**Anne:** Yeah, I'd love to... Oh, wait a minute. What time on Saturday?

**J:** I don't know. It'll probably start sometime around nine. Why?

**A:** Oh, shame! I can't make it on Saturday night. I'm going to dinner with my mother.

**J:** Well, you can always come out after dinner. We'll be going all night.

**A:** I know, but I have to work early on Sunday morning. Thanks anyway.

**J:** Sure. Maybe next time.

### 10/2

1. church wedding
2. organ
3. church bells
4. civil wedding
5. invitations
6. guest list

7. banns posted
8. big day
9. wedding dress
10. lace veil
11. aisle
12. altar
13. tuxedo
14. minister
15. vows
16. ceremony
17. best man
18. wedding rings
19. husband and wife
20. rice
21. wedding reception
22. honeymoon suite
23. white wedding
24. limousine
25. honeymoon

### 12/1

1. teddy bear
2. rattle
3. bib
4. squeaky toys
5. fluffy animals/soft toys
6. high chair
7. pushchair (GB) / stroller (US)
8. pram
9. baby walker
10. playpen
11. carry-cot

### 13/3

**Dad:** Mark, can we talk for a second?

**Mark:** Uh, yeah, hi dad. What's up?

**D:** What's up? Do you even have to ask what's up? This report card is disgraceful!

**M:** Oh, yeah, that.

**D:** Yes, that! I thought last term's was as bad as it could possibly get, but now this.

**M:** I know, I'm sorry.

**D:** I mean, a D in history! A D in Latin. You've totally failed Greek.

**M:** I know, I know! But I can't help it! All of those stuffy teachers lecturing me, trying to teach me a language that hasn't been spoken in over two thousand years. I mean, what's the point? What good is an A in Latin going to do me?



D: It'll get you into a decent university, that's what it'll do you.

M: Oh, not this again.

D: Well, it's true! Do you really think that Cambridge is going to accept someone with marks like this?

M: I told you I don't want to go to Cambridge or Oxford or any of those snobby places.

D: Oh, yes, that's right! You want to be a car mechanic. I almost forgot, my son wants to be the first Eton graduate to become a grease-monkey! That's a fine future for you.

M: How many times do I have to tell you, I don't just want to work on cars. I want to be a Formula One mechanic, work on the real machines. And I can do it, too! Or at least, I could, if you'd just let me.

D: I didn't spend all of that money on your education just so that you could...

M: No-one ever asked you to spend all of that money, Dad. Besides, the mechanic school is much cheaper, and at least I'd be learning something.

D: Nobody ever asked me? Oh, that's wonderful. That's gratitude for you.

M: Gratitude? Am I supposed to be grateful? Grateful for packing me off to some boarding school, to be shoved in with a bunch of whiny, snobby little brats?

D: It's a place where you can find friends and a job that are worthy of our family name.

M: Aaah! I'm so sick of that! You know what, I don't give a damn about Eton or Cambridge or Oxford. And for that matter, I don't give a damn about our family name either!

D: What? Wait a minute! Come back here!

### 13/2

The first headline is American; principal – headmaster; program – programme

### 14/1

1. b;a/b/c/d
2. a;b/d, c
3. e;d
4. b;d
5. c;d

### 15/2

1. granny flat
2. meals on wheels
3. arthritis
4. senile
5. hard of hearing
6. pension
7. live-in nurse
8. home help
9. nursing home

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 16

1. c – gold
2. a – thrown

3. d – outside
4. b/c – grandfather
5. c – wake up
6. to start a, to break up the, an adoptive, an extended, a single-parent, to look after the, a large, to feed the, to leave the, the immediate
7. undying, to inspire, to send, to fall out of, puppy, to declare, blind, everlasting, unrequited, to show
8. one-parent
9. spouse
10. divorce
11. remarriage
12. marriage
13. child
14. stepfamily
15. siblings
16. c
17. a
18. e
19. b
20. h
21. g
22. i
23. f
24. d
25. b
26. e
27. c
28. a
29. f
30. d

### And More Practice... – p. 17

1. b – upwards
2. d – site
3. c – uncle
4. a – woman
5. b – hill
6. foster, illegitimate, naughty, to keep an eye on, to neglect, to scold, to spoil, well-behaved, to abuse a
7. arranged, hasty, loveless, mixed, of convenience, to announce a, break up, to consummate, collapse, to end a, to neglect
8. control
9. infertility
10. unmarried
11. together
12. cohabit
13. households
14. foster
15. alternative
16. g
17. i
18. b
19. d
20. h
21. f

22. c
23. e
24. a
25. b
26. e
27. f
28. a
29. c
30. d

## HOME

### 19/2

**Landlady:** Hello.

**Peter:** Uh, hello. My name is Peter Smith. I'm calling about the ad you placed for the flat. Is it still available?

L: Yes, it is.

P: Great. Could you tell me a little about the flat?

L: Certainly. It's a two-bedroom flat in a Victorian house. It's really spacious, and it has wonderful tall ceilings and everything. Uhm, let's see. It's on the top floor and there's a nice porch in the back that leads to the garden.

P: Ah, it has a garden!

L: Yes, it's very nice. I have my little vegetable plot out there.

P: So you live in the house as well.

L: Yes, I live on the ground floor.

P: And how many other flats are there in the house?

L: There's just three flats, so it's nice and quiet. We are looking for quiet people, you know. No wild parties or anything.

P: No, no, you won't have to worry about that.

L: Right. Well, let's see. What else. The flat has hard-wood floors, uhm, central heating, of course, uh, and, oh yes, there's a laundry room that we all share in the garage.

P: It sounds great! Could I come by and have a look at the place?

L: Yes, well, uhm, that'd be fine. But I have to let you know, there are no pets allowed, and no smokers.

P: Well, I don't smoke. But I do have a dog, Fifi. But I assure you she's completely house-trained. She wouldn't be any bother at all.

L: I'm sorry, but I must insist on no pets.

P: Ohh. Well, that's a shame. Are you sure? I mean, I've never had any problems with...

L: No, I'm afraid I must insist on this point. No pets.

P: Well, thanks anyway. Good bye.

L: Good bye.

### 19/2

1. two
2. Victorian
3. three
4. landlord / landlady / owner
5. hardwood
6. ceilings
7. laundry room

8. porch
9. garden
10. vegetable plot
11. quiet
12. non-smoker
13. has no pets

### 19/4

... it was right up ...; It was very cramped; It had a kitchen corner; ... it was in bad part of ...; There was a large swimming pool ...; It was so spacious ...; It is nice and cosy.

### 20/1

- 4, 3, 7
- 1, 6
- 5, 2
- 8

### 21/1

1. chimney
2. roof tiles/ roof
3. lightning conductor (GB) / rod (US)
4. gutter
5. handrail
6. window-box
7. banister
8. sash window
9. window sill
10. patio/porch
11. French window / porch

### 21/2

Solar panels provide electricity; Sawdust pellets fuel the wood stove; Insulation and double-glazed windows keep in the heat; Wood stove provides heat; Shingles keep water from leaking into the house.

### 22/1

1. b
2. c
3. c

### 22/2

inherit; put off; rotten; compress; barren; blisters

### 23/3

The hinges should be on the other side of the door.

### 25/2

take/ have a long bath; stand on the scales/ mat/ tiled floor; fill/ to run the bath (tub); spray the floor/ tiles; pull the shower curtain/ the plug; flush the toilet; squeeze the sponge/ toothpaste; go to/ sit on/ read on the toilet; clean one's teeth using a toothbrush, a tooth mug and toothpaste; the bath or washbasin can overflow; slip on the floor tiles



**28/2, 3**

1. sowing machine – sow the lawn; or a machine for spreading fertilizer
2. wheelbarrow – a small cart with one wheel and two handles for garden work
3. lawn/ grass rake – rake the leaves
4. lawnmower – mow the grass
5. seedling – prick out the seedlings
6. pitchfork – spread manure in the vegetable plot
7. rake – rake the leaves
8. carrot seeds – put into ground to grow, thin out the carrot patch
9. gloves – protect your hands
10. trowel – plant the lettuce and cabbage
11. garden clippers / shears – trim the hedge
12. hoe – weed the flower bed
13. chainsaw – saw big pieces of wood
14. deck chair – sit and rest in
15. lay the lawn – avoid sowing grass
16. watering can – water the plant
17. spade – dig the garden
18. seeds – put into ground to grow
19. spray nozzle – water the plants
20. shears – cut plants and shrubs, trim the hedge
21. pruning shears – prune the fruit trees, trim the hedge
22. ladder – climb to places you cannot reach from the ground
23. flower pots – plant flowers and plants in
24. hosepipe – water the plants

**29/1**

1. screwdriver – to screw and unscrew; turn screws into and out of their place
2. nails – nail things together
3. saw – saw / cut wood
4. paintbrush – paint walls, furniture etc.
5. spray paint – paint things without touching them
6. spirit level – test a surface to see if it is level
7. pliers – hold things, cut or bend wire
8. brace (and) bits – bore holes in wood
9. adjustable spanner – twist nuts
10. tape measure – measure distance
11. nuts and bolts – fasten things together
12. plane – make surfaces smooth
13. paint roller – paint walls etc.
14. electric drill – to make holes
15. spanner (double open-ended) – twist nuts
16. (drawing) pins – fasten things
17. a set of combination spanners (ring and open-ended)
18. hammer – hit things, esp. nails
19. axe, hatchet – cut or chop wood, etc.
20. folding ruler – measure things
21. vise – hold things tightly while work is done on them

**Practice Makes Perfect – p. 30**

1. accommodation
2. mansions

3. houses
4. tenants
5. detached
6. detached
7. terraced
8. mortgage
9. property
10. building
11. a, c
12. d
13. c
14. d
15. a, d
16. b
17. b
18. c
19. b
20. c
21. a, b
22. a, c
23. d
24. b
25. c
26. d
27. roof
28. cemented
29. brick wall
30. home

**Crossword p. 30**

- 1 mansion
- 2 skylight
- 3 gutter
- 4 drive
- 5 bedsitter
- 6 roof
- 7 loft

**And More Practice... – p. 31**

1. housing
2. flats
3. terraced
4. detached
5. occupy
6. rent
7. need
8. maintain
9. households
10. landlords
11. b
12. b, c
13. c
14. a
15. d
16. c
17. a, c
18. b

19. d
20. a
21. c
22. d
23. a
24. b, c
25. b, c
26. d
27. window
28. ceiling
29. foundations
30. ruins

### Crossword p. 31

- 1 stool
- 2 peephole
- 3 tub
- 4 bedlinen
- 5 shelf
- 6 threshold

### FOOD

1. peas
2. Chile peppers
3. sweet corn
4. cauliflower
5. aubergine (GB) / eggplant (US)
6. pumpkin
7. spinach
8. cabbage
9. broccoli
10. grapes
11. asparagus
12. peppers
13. celery
14. blackberries
15. lettuce
16. green beans
17. radishes
18. turnip
19. squash
20. blueberries
21. watermelon

### 33/2

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. b

### 33/2

*I don't know, I know a lot of people who did it because they just don't like the taste, or because the idea of eating flesh really makes them sick, or maybe they had a pet sheep when they were kids or something and have never been able to eat a lamb chop since. The funny thing about me*

*is that, when I was a kid, I actually used to like eating meat, a lot. I used to feel like a meal just wasn't a meal without at least some meat in it.*

*No, for me it was mostly a health issue. There are just so many chemicals that go into industrial meat production. There are all of the steroids that the animals are given when they are being raised, and then the preservatives that are put into the meat to keep it from spoiling before it gets to the market. You know, it's just not good for you.*

*So I decided to stop eating meat for a while, just to see what it was like. I thought about just eating fish, but then I found out that that wasn't any better. You just end up eating all of the pollutants that go into the sea. So now I'm a full vegetarian. I just eat lots of fruits and vegetables and grains, you know, lots of stir-fries and pastas and things. And I try to make sure I get enough beans and things, as well, because you need to replace the proteins that you lose from not eating meat. And I really do feel healthier for it. It's great. You know, I think that, now that I'm so used to it, even if you could get good, healthy meat, I probably wouldn't change my diet.*

### 35/1

**Cutting:** peel, chop, dice, mince, quarter, crush; **Cooking:** stir, stew, roast, simmer, microwave, boil, fry, grill, bake, steam, sauté, poach, thicken; **Mixing:** stir, blend, whip, beat, scramble, purée

### 36/1

1. reserve a table
2. go to the restaurant
3. leave your coats in the cloakroom
4. wait for the waiter to seat you
5. ask for the menu
6. look at the menu
7. order your meal
8. eat the appetiser
9. eat the main course
10. eat the dessert
11. ask for the bill
12. pay the bill
13. leave a tip
14. leave the restaurant

### 37/1

NOTE: The dishes in bold could be on either menu.

American: BBQ chicken wings, nachos, **chef's salad**, chili cheeseburger, Philly steak and cheese sandwich, New York sirloin steak, **spaghetti bolognese**, french fries, **baked potatoes**, **Caesar salad**, apple pie and ice cream, British: **prawn cocktail**, pâté and toast, fillet steak with mushrooms and onion rings, jacket potatoes, **roast duckling in orange sauce**, chips, apple tart and custard, **chocolate mousse**, **banana split**



39

all statements are false

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 40

1. d
2. a
3. c
4. d
5. a
6. c
7. roots
8. orange
9. hop
10. cinnamon OR nutmeg OR cloves
11. cinnamon OR nutmeg OR cloves
12. cinnamon OR nutmeg OR cloves
13. ingredient
14. peach
15. alcohol
16. b
17. a
18. c
19. a
20. b
21. a
22. a, b
23. a
24. a
25. a
26. b
27. a
28. b
29. b
30. a

### And More Practice – p. 41

1. d
2. a
3. c
4. c
5. a
6. b
7. vanilla
8. ginger
9. food
10. artificial
11. alcohol
12. celery/lemon/rosemary/thyme
13. celery/lemon/rosemary/thyme
14. celery/lemon/rosemary/thyme
15. celery/lemon/rosemary/thyme
16. c
17. b
18. a
19. b
20. a
21. a

22. b
23. b
24. a
25. a
26. b
27. b
28. a
29. a
30. b

## SHOPPING

### 43/4

1. drain
2. budget
3. distributor / wholesaler
4. household
5. perishable
6. appliance
7. dump
8. charity / Salvation Army
9. reject shops
10. minor imperfection

### 44/2

basketball – sporting goods store  
 whisky – off-licence (GB) / liquor store (US)  
 CD player – hi-fi shop  
 fresh cod – seafood shop  
 frozen pizza – supermarket  
 greeting cards – stationer's  
 guide book – bookstore  
 hammer – D.I.Y. store / hardware store  
 holiday – travel agent's  
 house – estate agent's  
 magazine – newsagent's  
 nails and screws – ironmonger's  
 new boots – shoe shop  
 perfume – chemist's (GB) / drugstore (US)  
 pipe – tobacconist's  
 rolls – baker's / bakery  
 sandwich – delicatessen (deli)  
 sofa – furniture store  
 steak – butcher's  
 sweets – confectioner's  
 tofu – health food store

### 45/1

**Dialogue 1:** Joe's corner shop (Joe knows his customers well); **Dialogue 2:** a big shop or a department store (the shop assistant does not know the customer); **Dialogue 3:** at home (people living together); **Dialogue 4:** a hi-fi shop perhaps or any specialized shop, the shop assistant tries to be helpful suggesting mail-order.

#### 45/1/1

**Joe:** Morning, Mr. Palmer.

**Mr. Palmer:** Ahh, good morning Joe. What would you like today?

**J:** Oh, the usual. A pint of milk, half a dozen eggs, a packet of baking powder...

**P:** I'm afraid we've run out of baking powder.

**J:** Oh, that's too bad. Barbara wanted to bake a cake. Do you think you'll have it in by tomorrow?

**P:** No, Joe, I'm not ordering anything any more. I'm closing the shop down, going out of business.

**J:** What? You can't be serious! I've been shopping here for fifteen years.

**P:** I know, Joe, and I thank you for it. But with these new supermarkets popping up everywhere, well, I just can't compete.

**J:** But those markets are way out on the outskirts of town. Surely there's plenty of people who would rather just come down here to the corner shop.

**P:** Oh, yes, people still come. But it's just for odds and ends these days. The real shopping they do in those big shops. I can't blame them, of course. The supermarkets can buy in bulk, so they have lower prices than I do, and a larger selection too. It's no use.

**J:** Well, I'll still keep shopping here, even if you don't have any baking powder.

**P:** Thanks, Joe.

#### 45/1/2

**Shop assistant:** Well, what do you think?

**Customer:** I don't know. I hadn't really planned to spend that much. It's a bit too expensive for us.

**S:** Well, it is true, quality like this doesn't come cheap. But I'll tell you what, next week we're going to be starting our summer sale, and you can get this for a reduced price.

**C:** Oh, yeah? How much less?

**S:** Well, the price lists aren't out yet, but I'd say it'll probably be at least fifteen percent off.

**C:** Well, that's quite good. But it's still more than I can afford right now.

**S:** No problem! The people in our credit department can put you on a payment plan. You can take this home tomorrow and pay it off in low monthly instalments, at a very reasonable interest rate, too.

**C:** Uhhm... I don't know.

**S:** Look, there's no hurry. Think about it for a while, go home, talk to your partner. Then, next week, come and look at the sale price and then decide.

**C:** Yeah, that sounds like a good idea.

**S:** Just one thing, though. You might want to leave a deposit, just in case somebody tries to buy it before you make up your mind.

**C:** Uhhm... I don't know...

#### 45/1/3

**Lee:** Hey, Susan, come on in.

**Susan:** Thanks. So what's the big surprise?

**L:** Well, close your eyes, keep them closed, ready... OK, open them.

**S:** Wow! You bought a new computer!

**L:** Yeah, what do you think?

**S:** Great! You'll finally stop using mine all of the time!

**L:** Yours! This one's much better than yours! And I got a great deal on it.

**S:** Did you buy it down at Computer Century?

**L:** No, at Crazy Mike's Computer Warehouse.

**S:** Oh, there... Did they have a sale going, too?

**L:** Well, no, but their retail price was great! Take a look.

**S:** What? You call that a bargain? Lee, you got ripped off!

**L:** What do you mean? That's a great price!

**S:** Lee, I'm telling you, you got taken in! Computer Century has this model on sale for almost half that price.

**L:** Half that price?

**S:** When are you going to learn to shop around before you buy something? Look, you didn't even get a decent warranty on it. Only six months.

**L:** Damn it! And I thought I'd done so well.

**S:** Look, the next time you go shopping, take me with you, OK?

#### 45/1/4

**Shop assistant:** Hello, sir, can I help you?

**Customer:** Yes, I'm looking for this specific model here.

**S:** Let's see. Oh, I'm sorry. It's out of stock right now.

**C:** I was afraid of that.

**S:** We don't normally stock that model, actually. It isn't really in great demand.

**C:** I know, I know. And you wouldn't happen to know where I could find it?

**S:** Well, I think it might be pretty much the same story all over town. Have you tried over at Brightimax?

**C:** Yeah, I've been there already. I've been running all over town looking for it. Could you order it for me specially?

**S:** Oh, sure, but it would probably take about three to four weeks to get here.

**C:** Blimey, that's a long time!

**S:** You know, sir, you might be better off buying it mail-order.

**C:** Yeah?

**S:** If you look in Blackwood's Catalogue, I think they've got it in there for a pretty good price. And it'll get to you quicker, too.

**C:** Well, thanks a lot.

**S:** Not at all. Just don't tell my boss where you heard it from.

#### 45/2

True statements: **Dialogue 1:** Shoppers can get a better price at the hypermarkets because they can buy goods in bulk.

**Dialogue 2:** The saleswoman offers to sell the customer the



product even though she does not have all of the money to pay for it immediately. **Dialogue 3:** Lee thinks she got a good deal on her computer. **Dialogue 4:** The shop doesn't usually have the model the customer is looking for.

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 45

1. monolithic hypermarket
2. hypermarket chains
3. jumble sale
4. supermarket trolley
5. wholesale prices
6. street market
7. department
8. grocery
9. enterprise
10. store
11. gourmet
12. cash
13. customer
14. retailers
15. counters
16. cash
17. credit
18. f
19. g
20. b
21. c
22. a
23. d
24. e
25. wrap (sort)
26. obligation (destination)
27. serving (tending)
28. looking/browsing (staring)
29. run (gone)
30. leave (let)

### And More Practice – p. 47

1. discount prices
2. shopping malls
3. small shops
4. mail order
5. retail price
6. clearance sale
7. register
8. clerk
9. item
10. checkout
11. code
12. receipts
13. purchase
14. inventory
15. manager
16. retail
17. warehouse
18. g
19. e

20. a
21. d
22. c
23. f
24. b
25. match (snatch)
26. include (conclude)
27. extend (pretend)
28. attended to (listened to)
29. size (taste)
30. look (cook)

## CLOTHES

### 50/2

From left to right: chequered / checked, polka-dot / dotted, tartan, argyle, flowered, paisley, herringbone, zigzag

### 50/3

1. d
2. f
3. a
4. c
5. b
6. g
7. e

### 51/1

1. V-neck
2. shawl neck
3. polo neck (GB) / turtleneck (US)
4. crew neck
5. cowl neck

### 51/2

1. flares / bellbottoms
2. drainpipes / fitted / skin-tight trousers
3. shorts / Bermuda shorts
4. bib and braces / overalls
5. miniskirt
6. knee-length skirt
7. pleated skirt
8. slit skirt
9. kilt

### 52/1

- a. strap
- b. lace
- c. toe
- d. buckle
- e. heel
- f. sole

### 52/2

1. Called trainers (GB), sneakers, tennis shoes, or running shoes, these casual shoes are very popular, and not only for sports. Young people wear them quite often. They do

not need polishing: you can just clean them occasionally. Sometimes you may need to wash the shoelaces or buy new ones. They are comfortable.

2. Clogs have wooden soles and are easy to slip on. It's almost impossible to wear them out. Usually they are very comfortable, worn in the summer months or at home.
3. Stilettos, also known as high-heels, need frequent mending of the heels, which can wear down quickly. Although many women prefer platform shoes nowadays, classical high-heels are still a part of evening dress.
4. Hiking boots are lace-up shoes; they are usually strong and heavy duty. As all other sports shoes, they should be comfortable and have a good thick sole. They are low-heeled or almost flat. They should protect you from getting wet feet. That is why they require special care – you have to clean and treat them with the necessary cream or spray as required.
5. Sandals are shoes in leather, fabric or manmade material, consisting of a sole held on to the foot by straps or thongs. They are usually easy-care, soft, lightweight and durable. They are worn in summer by both men and women.
6. Loafers are classic, casual shoes with a broad flat heel.

#### 53/1

1. got undressed / undressed
2. getting dressed
3. dressed
4. tried / put on
5. dressed up
6. fit; letting out
7. take off; loosen; roll up
8. taking in; taking up
9. put on
10. changes out of / takes off; (changes) into / puts on
11. clashes
12. suits
13. matches
14. grown out of

#### 54/1

1. T
2. F
3. T
4. F
5. T
6. T
7. T
8. T

#### 54/1

*Well, I actually started modelling when I was in my teens, sort of as a joke. You see, I never really thought of myself as exceptionally beautiful. I've always thought I was rather plain, nothing out of the ordinary or anything. When I was going through my teens I was really concerned about how I looked, and I hated my body and my face and was just really self-conscious. Well, my uncle is a professional photographer, and to help me get over*

*this negativity I had about my body he brought me to a studio and dressed me up and took some photographs of me. He put together my portfolio, and sent it off to a few modelling agencies, and he said "I'll bet you get a job offer in no time." You know, we both took the whole thing as a kind of a joke, but sure enough, one of the agencies got in touch with us, and I started modelling.*

*Well, most people don't think so, but it really is. I mean, psychologically it really takes its toll. You always have to be concerned about your body, and always take care of yourself. It seems like everybody wants their models to be thinner and thinner these days, so you have to keep a very careful diet. The pressure to be thin is so great some girls turn to drugs or bulimia and just really get unhealthy, both physically and mentally. My program is much more natural – diet and regular exercise. But I love my body and I think I would take care of it even if I wasn't doing this job.*

*Photo shoots can be a lot of fun, when they take place in exotic locations and stuff like that. I once did a photo shoot for a new line of bikinis, so I was flown out to Hawaii and they had me standing under these great waterfalls, and it was really beautiful. But it's not really like a vacation because the minute you're done shooting they usually whisk you back to the airport and you don't have any time to see any of the sights. But what I really love are fashion shows. There's nothing like being on a live show. You know, you're there with these really big names in the business, and everyone is excited about the launching of a new line. And I love the pressure of it. You come in off the catwalk and instantly someone is there to whip off your clothes, and you have to change into an entirely new outfit in only a few minutes. And there're always problems, someone has misplaced a necklace or a shirt gets ripped in the rush or something, but when you have to walk out in front of those cameras again you've got to be cool as ice. Like you're just taking a stroll through the park. You know, the feeling at the end of a successful show, when you're out there with the designer and everyone's applauding, it's great. It makes you feel like there's a little part of you in all of those wonderful dresses and clothes that are being sold all over the world.*

#### 56/2

old, coarse, prickly

#### 56/3

1. malice
2. keen
3. garment
4. naked
5. ancient
6. spent
7. tension
8. stirred



**56/4**

1. Yes, he does.
2. No, it isn't.
3. No, he isn't.
4. No, he isn't / hasn't.
5. Sometimes he does.

**57/7**

**iron** – used for ironing clothes after they have been washed in a washing machine and dried in a dryer or on a clothesline; **two pairs of scissors** – used for cutting paper and material; **sewing machine** – used for making or mending clothes; **a spool of thread and a needle** – usually used for mending, sewing on buttons, etc.; **knitting needles and yarn** – used for knitting; needle, hook, cotton, **fabrics** – used for embroidering; **washing machine and dryer** – used for washing and drying clothes

**57/8**

hand wash – bleach – 40° warm wash  
tumble-dry – dry-clean – iron

**Practice Makes Perfect – p. 58**

1. black, white
2. green
3. blue
4. black, red
5. red
6. white
7. white
8. blue
9. red
10. green
11. weaving
12. clothes making
13. metal needles
14. sewing machine
15. stitching
16. clothing
17. a
18. a
19. b
20. a, b
21. b
22. b
23. b
24. h
25. g
26. e
27. c
28. d
29. f
30. a

**And More Practice... – p. 59**

1. blue
2. black

3. white
4. green
5. grey
6. blue
7. black
8. black
9. red
10. rose
11. dressmakers
12. clothing
13. ready-to-wear
14. haute couture
15. designers
16. fashions
17. a
18. a, b
19. a, b
20. b
21. a, b
22. b
23. b
24. g
25. h
26. f
27. e
28. a
29. d
30. c

**WORK & LEISURE****65/1**

1. temporary / summer
2. self-employed / freelance
3. hard-hat worker / unskilled labourer
4. military / national service
5. civil servant / state employee
6. family business

**66/2**

1. perks
2. company car
3. expense account
4. travelling
5. health scheme
6. sick pay
7. promotion
8. overtime
9. stressful
10. working environment
11. slave-driver / workaholic
12. initiative
13. responsibility
14. passing the buck
15. self-motivated
16. slave-driver / workaholic
17. career change

18. pension
19. retraining
20. qualifications

### 66/3

**Friend:** Hi Jane. What's wrong? You look a little down.

**Jane:** Yeah, it's my job. I really don't know what to do.

**F:** Why? I thought you were really happy with it.

**J:** Well, in many ways it's a great job. It definitely has a lot of perks. I have a company car I can use at any time, and I have an expense account I can use to pay for my travelling. The job offers a great health plan with full sick pay when I get ill. And there's a good chance of promotion if I stay with the company for a few years.

**F:** It sounds great! So what's the problem, then?

**J:** Well, I'm just not satisfied with the job. I have to travel a lot, so I'm always away from Dan and the kids, and when I am here I always have to work overtime so I don't get a chance to see them much either. It's also a very stressful job, and every body in the office is feeling it, so it's a pretty tense working environment. The boss is a slave driver, which doesn't help. He just walks around yelling about how we all have to show more initiative, take more responsibility for things instead of passing the buck, be more self-motivated, and all of those things. He can be a real workaholic sometimes. But most of all, I'm just sick of selling computers. I want to do something else with my life.

**F:** Like what?

**J:** I really want to be a teacher, but I'm not a young girl anymore, and I'm afraid that it's a bit late to be thinking about a career change at my age.

**F:** Yeah, but what are you going to do, stick with a job you don't like until you get your pension? If I were you I'd leave and find something you like doing better.

**J:** I know, but how can I do it? I can't go back to school at my age.

**F:** Well, you might not have to do a full degree. You've got "A" level history, haven't you? You should see if that's enough to get a job teaching history somewhere. And even if you do have to do some retraining, you could go to evening classes before you quit your present job and get all of the qualifications you need.

**J:** You know, maybe you're right. I'll have to give it some thought.

### 67/1

1. d
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. extra headline

### 68/1

In order: d, c, a, b / f, f / b, e.

### 68/2

1. c  
sign up – commit oneself in writing to an activity or group  
overdraw – take more money out of the bank than you have  
afford – have enough (money, means, time, etc.) for; be able to spare
2. d  
open an account – business arrangement whereby money is deposited in and may be withdrawn  
get oneself into debt – spend more than you have  
make a withdrawal – take money out of a bank account
3. a  
charge – debit the cost of something to a person or account  
take out a loan – borrow a sum of money from a bank  
affiliate – associate oneself with a society
4. c/d  
automatically pay – transfer money to pay bills without direct action  
make a deposit – to put money into a bank account
5. a  
high-interest account – bank account with a high interest rate  
credit limit – the maximum amount a customer can charge  
savings account – an interest-bearing account for customers
6. c  
open an account (see 2 above)  
make a deposit (see 4 above)  
withdraw cash – take money out of bank account

### 69/5

- A. 5
- B. 4
- C. 1
- D. 3
- E. 2
- F. 6

### 69/6

**Across:** 1. ATM 6.purchase 8. overdraft 9. deposit 10. withdrawal 12. bank **Down:** 2. mortgage 3. cheque 4. cash 5. interest 7. loan 11. debt

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 70

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. a, b
5. a
6. a
7. b
8. a
9. a



10. b
11. a
12. a
13. b
14. a
15. wholesale, discount, off the, retail, drop in, official, competitive, adjustment
16. extra, prize, amount of, pocket
17. salaries
18. amount
19. much
20. note
21. change
22. spend
23. owns
24. bill
25. dollar
26. exchange
27. big
28. deserves
29. value
30. money

## COMMUNICATION

### 73/1

1. c
2. f
3. d
4. b
5. e
6. a

### 74/1

Dear Sirs:

I am writing to enquire about tourist information on your city. I will be visiting your city in late April. Please send me some information about the ... transport routes. Any information about accommodation would also be appreciated.

Yours faithfully,  
Patrick McCulley

Hi Christina,

Guess what? I'm going to be in town sometime in late April. I don't know anything about the city... in the mail for me. It doesn't have to be anything too big... tourist map if you have one. Oh, yeah! If you know the names... as well. I can't wait to see you! Love, Pat

### 75/1

1. make
2. dial
3. number
4. call
5. language
6. calls
7. statement
8. fees / charges
9. rates / bills / charges / calls
10. rates

### 75/2

- a. push buttons for dialling
- b. earpiece
- c. receiver / handset
- d. mouthpiece
- e. cord

### 75/3

rotary telephone – push-button phone – mobile  
cordless telephone – fax (machine)

### 76/1, 2

#### Conversation 1

*Hello, 276964.*

*Hello. Can I speak to Mary, please?*

*This is Mary speaking.*

*Hi, Mary. It's David. I was just ringing to make sure that we're still on for the cinema tomorrow.*

*Oh, yeah! I'd completely forgotten. I'm sorry, I can't make it tomorrow. I've got a lot of work right now.*

### And More Practice... – p. 71

1. a
2. a
3. a
4. b
5. b
6. a
7. b
8. a
9. a
10. a
11. b
12. a
13. a
14. a
15. range, exorbitant, of shares, stability, reductions, tag, group, worth paying
16. hush, order, easy
17. notes
18. coins
19. pieces
20. year
21. dimes
22. cents
23. love
24. each
25. money
26. market
27. rolling
28. spending
29. interest
30. buy

*Oh well, maybe we can see it some other time.  
That'd be great. Maybe some time next week, ok?  
That'd be fine. So I'll call you on Thursday, all right?  
Great. Talk to you on Thursday, then. Bye.  
Bye bye.*

### Conversation 2

*Hello, Taylor Residence.  
Hello. Could I speak with John, please?  
Hold on one second. I'll see if he's in. (Pause.) I'm sorry,  
John's in the shower right now. Can I take a message?  
Sure. Could you just tell him that Jane called and ask him  
to call me when he gets out of the shower?  
Does he have your number?  
Yes, I think he does.  
Ok, I'll let him know you called.  
Thank you. Bye.  
Bye.*

### Conversation 3

*Hello. Bernstein Bank. May I help you?  
Yes, I'd like to speak to Mr. Smith, please.  
Hold on, I'll put you right through. (Pause.) I'm sorry.  
Mr Smith is in a meeting right now and can't come to the  
phone. May I take a message?  
No, that's all right. I'll try again later. Thank you.  
Good bye.  
Bye.*

#### 77/1

1. laptop
2. CD ROM
3. sound
4. personal computers
5. networks
6. automatic teller machines
7. telephone lines
8. networking
9. retrieval of information
10. transfer of funds

#### 78/3

1. c
  2. f
  3. b
  4. d
  5. a
- e does not fit

#### 78/4

mouse – used to move ...; monitor – the screen ...; modem  
– allows computers ...; cursor – used to highlight ...

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 79

1. a
2. b
3. e
4. d
5. f

6. c
7. to peek
8. technique
9. a
10. b, c
11. b, c
12. a
13. a, b, c
14. a
15. b
16. b, c
17. b, c
18. c
19. a, b, c
20. a
21. stamp
22. civil servant
23. postal reforms
24. knighted
25. labels
26. collect a tax
27. released
28. adhesive postage stamp
29. reigning monarch
30. name of the country

### And More Practice... – p. 80

1. d
2. b
3. e
4. a
5. c
6. f
7. –educated
8. millions of
9. a, b, c
10. b
11. a
12. b
13. c
14. a, b, c
15. b
16. a
17. a
18. c
19. a, b, c
20. b
21. established
22. technical advice
23. postal services
24. postal
25. transportation
26. international mail
27. charges
28. letter mail
29. parcel
30. international money orders



## TOWN & COUNTRY

### 83/3

1. quaint
2. charm
3. has gone way up/ doubled in size
4. arable
5. developed over
6. facilities
7. winds its way

### 83/5

Billy thinks that Mark has got a big house in the country with a big garden.

He thinks that all the people living in the village are farmers and get up early.

He imagines that life in the village must be terribly boring with no nightclubs.

Mark disagrees with Billy.

He thinks his house is a shack on the outskirts of the village. It needs fixing up.

Most of his neighbours are from the city like him. The old villagers are generally quite friendly.

For him life in the village is just right. He enjoys having peace and quiet.

### 84/3

1. d
2. b
3. c
4. c

### 83/4,5

**Billy:** Hey there, Mark! How's the lord of the manor, then?

**Mark:** How do you mean, Billy?

**B:** Well, you finally bought that mansion in the countryside, didn't you? I can just see you, sitting in your wicker chair in the back garden as you watch the groundsman trim the hedgerows. It must be beautiful, the life of luxury...

**M:** Oh, it's hardly all that! It's more of a small shack on the outskirts of a village, really. It needs some fixing up, but it's cosy, and I've always wanted to move out of Manchester into the countryside.

**B:** But how do you get by out there in the sticks? Don't you miss the convenience of the city, you know, the shopping centres and all that?

**M:** Well, it's not exactly out in the middle of nowhere. We've got our little village shop that stocks just about everything you really need, and I do commute into the city every day, so I do most of my heavy shopping here after work. No, I have to say that I don't miss living in the city one bit.

**B:** Yeah, but it must be terribly boring! I mean, not many night clubs out there, are there?

**M:** To tell the truth, I don't mind at all. I quite enjoy

having a bit of peace and quiet. And when I do want to go out, I just pop down to the village pub for a few pints and a game of darts.

**B:** Yeah, it must be interesting, having a few pints with all of those old farmers and the villagers. But I bet everyone in the town wakes up before dawn, huh?

**M:** Well, I'm definitely not the first person to move out to the village. People have been escaping Manchester for the countryside for years. Most of my neighbours are from the city like me. There's a computer programmer who works at home, a writer who likes to go walking around the town all day with his dog and this enormous walking stick, an airline pilot, and all kinds of other professionals. I'd say the town is about half old villagers and half people like me.

**B:** And how does that work? Do you all get on well?

**M:** Well, for the most part it works out fine. There are a few of the old timers who really resent people like me living there, but on the whole, people are a whole lot friendlier than in Manchester, I can tell you. If anything, they're a little too friendly.

**B:** What do you mean?

**M:** Well, you know, everybody knows everybody, and there's a fair amount of gossip that goes on. Especially in the village store. You know, I've been making special requests, asking them to stock tofu and some other natural foods for me. So, the other day I walked in, and I asked them if they had any vitamin B-12. Well, these two old men who had been talking by cash register stopped talking and stared at me as if I was from another planet. The owner, James, he's a nice old bloke, and he's pretty much used to it now, so he just shook his head a bit sadly. But those other two, I swear they must have thought I was the weirdest thing on earth.

### 84/3

I'm sick to death of hearing about the homeless problem! You want to know what the problem is? It's really easy. The problem is that in our society, there are some people who just don't want to take responsibility for themselves. Go down to the train station, or anywhere downtown, for that matter, and what do you see? Lots of able-bodied people, who are perfectly able to work for a living and keep their lives together, sitting around begging change and going on about how hard their lives are. If they wanted to, they could get a job, the papers are full of them. But they just don't want to. For whatever reason, they'd rather drink their lives away in the street, no matter how filthy and disgusting that life is. Well, if they want to, then that's fine with me. But I'm not responsible, no matter what the bleeding hearts say, and they can't expect me to finance their lifestyle for them. Not with my spare change and not with my tax dollars.

Oh yeah, I've heard people talking about how a lot of them have mental problems and really need help. Well, sure, I agree that those people probably can't take responsibility

*for themselves and need to be looked after. But that's not society's job, that's their family's job. I mean, if I had a brother or a son that had a mental problem, I sure wouldn't let him just wander around the streets, and I wouldn't expect other people to take care of him. I'd take care of him myself. But these people are really a tiny minority. Most of the homeless people out there know exactly what they're doing. Playing on our sympathies to live an easy life, that's what they're doing. And I'm sick of it!*

#### 85/4

1. migration
2. expand
3. prefabricated
4. escape/flee
5. cramped
6. reversal
7. miseries
8. sterile
9. resources
10. neglect

#### 86/5

*Role-play – Waste disposal (slips of paper with roles to be distributed in class):*

**Mr / Ms Whitman:** You are the mayor of Crustyville and are facing an election. You don't really have any position on this issue: you just don't want to upset any voters. Try to figure out a solution that makes everybody happy.

**Mr / Ms Stinkwell:** You are the head of the Crustyville Waste Disposal Centre. You are already understaffed and underfunded, and it's getting harder every day to keep things at the dump from falling apart. You aren't really against ecological waste disposal, but you just don't have the money to make it happen. You don't think the project could work, and don't want to make things at the dump any worse than they already are.

**Mr / Ms Smitney:** You live next to the landfill and you are totally fed up with the way Stinkwell and his / her staff are running the show. The rubbish is just thrown everywhere and the stench is completely disgusting. You're for anything that might change the way things get done at the landfill.

**Mr / Ms Humper:** You are sick and tired of Mayor Whitman and all of the new taxes he / she has imposed. This new plan would not only cost more money, but it would also require you to sort out your rubbish into four different categories. You think the whole thing is a terrible idea.

**Mr / Ms Shrublove:** You are the local representative of Greenwar, a radical environmental organisation. You have made this project the main focus of Greenwar, and are intent on it going through. Don't back down on your position.

**Mr / Ms Scrapnest:** You are the owner of the local junkyard, and you don't care about environmentalism. What you do care about is money. You see many people dumping working refrigerators and stoves at the landfill, and there is a lot of money in recycling. Offer your help, but don't let anyone know how much money there is in this. They might steal your idea and do it themselves!

#### 88/1

1. called
2. told
3. had been kidnapped
4. gave
5. told
6. had used
7. began
8. apprehended
9. charged
10. could
11. had been seen
12. lurking
13. insisted
14. was
15. produced
16. confused
17. was not contacted / had not been contacted
18. were ever made / had ever been made
19. was acting / acted
20. thought
21. found
22. were
23. broke
24. confessed
25. had killed / killed
26. made
27. to cover
28. was immediately arrested
29. charged
30. were dropped
31. was released
32. portrayed
33. asked
34. pled / pleaded
35. testified
36. had / had had
37. pronounced
38. distinguishing
39. was acquitted
40. sent
41. stayed
42. began
43. serving
44. lives
45. raised / had raised
46. killed / had killed



**89/2**

1. d
2. i
3. e
4. a
5. f
6. b
7. y
8. j
9. g
10. c

**89/3**

1. murder / murderer
2. blackmail / blackmailer
3. rob / robber OR thief
4. kill / killer
5. drive drunk / drunk driver
6. rape / rapist
7. burglary, burglarise (US) / burglar
8. mug / mugger
9. assault / assailant
10. kidnap / kidnapper

**89/5**

1. judge
2. witness stand
3. barrister
4. accused / defendant dock
5. jury
6. public

**Practice Makes Perfect – p. 90**

1. e
2. h
3. j
4. i
5. c
6. f
7. g
8. b
9. a
10. d
11. retrieval
12. stolen
13. wanted
14. urban
15. direct access
16. missing property
17. a
18. b
19. b
20. a
21. a
22. b
23. a
24. a

25. a
26. b
27. b
28. a
29. b
30. a

**And More Practice... – p. 91**

1. c
2. h
3. e
4. a
5. i
6. j
7. f
8. d
9. g
10. b
11. patrol cars
12. aircraft
13. fire stations
14. crime
15. mobile
16. transmission
17. a
18. b
19. b
20. a
21. a
22. b
23. a
24. a, b
25. a
26. b
27. a
28. a
29. a, b
30. a

**SIGHTSEEING****93/2**

**John:** Hi, Mike. How was your trip to Italy?

**Mike:** It was a disaster.

**J:** Oh, no. Why? What happened?

**M:** Everything! Everything that could have possibly gone wrong did!

**J:** But you spent so much time planning the tour. I thought you would have been ready for anything.

**M:** I thought so too, but I couldn't have been more wrong. Our first stop was Venice, so of course, I thought, everyone would like to go take a ride on a gondola. Well, of course, one of the tourists in my group tried to stand up in the boat to get a photograph.

**J:** Oh, no. Don't tell me he fell into the canal.

**M:** Yes, he fell right in. So the gondolier had to haul him out, and he was perfectly fine, you know, just a little wet,

but he insisted on going to the hospital immediately. He said he was worried about the chemicals in the water.

J: So what did you do?

M: Well, I took him to the hospital, of course, and they said that he was fine, but in the meantime the rest of my group got scattered all over Venice.

J: Oh, how awful.

M: And then, in Florence, we were going to drop in on the Uffizi Gallery, because they had this great exhibition of Botticelli's works. I had called ahead to arrange the tickets, but when we got there, they said they had never heard of me, and we had to wait for three hours in the sun to get in.

J: Yeah, the line to get into the Uffizi was a nightmare when I went there, too.

M: But it was so hot, and most of the people in the tour group were pensioners. I was afraid that someone was going to get heat stroke or something.

J: Did they?

M: No, they were all right. But they were so stupid! I don't know why any of them even went to Italy. They were really bored with all of the historical background I had prepared for them. I would explain what something was, and they would all stand there and stare at me with glazed over eyes, but five seconds later someone would ask "OOOHHHH, this is pretty. What is it?". I really had to fight to keep my temper with them.

J: I'm sure.

M: They didn't even want to eat Italian food!

J: What?

M: Yes. They just wanted to eat at hamburger stands. They said that they wanted to eat somewhere where they could understand the menus.

J: That's outrageous! How could anyone go down to Italy, be surrounded by all of that wonderful food, and eat hamburgers?

M: I don't know, John. I'm telling you, after that trip, I'm considering a career change.

### 93/3

1. charm
2. fatigue
3. desensitise
4. stuffy
5. teeming
6. blend
7. confidence
8. fiercely
9. manage

### 93/4

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. a

### 95/6

1. e
2. d
3. g
4. c
5. a
6. f
7. b

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 96

1. bank
  2. dating from
  3. rich in
  4. hundred spires
  5. taverns
  6. housing estates
- Oban Highland Games – 7, 10, 13, 15, 16, 18, 19  
Falkland – 8, 9, 11, 12, 14, 17, 20
21. made (done)
  22. owned (owed)
  23. inheritance (heritage)
  24. sold (bought)
  25. taken (caught)
  26. part (place)
  27. court (yard)
  28. out (over)
  29. constructed (conducted)
  30. later (latter)

### And More Practice... – p. 97

1. Romanesque
  2. Gothic
  3. Baroque
  4. classical
  5. cemetery
  6. ancient core
- Isle of Skye – 7, 8, 11, 14, 17, 18, 19  
St. Giles' Cathedral – 9, 10, 12, 13, 15, 16, 20
21. weaken (weak)
  22. persisted (perceived)
  23. maypole (mayrod)
  24. pressure (press)
  25. peasant (pheasant)
  26. abound (abandon)
  27. customs (usages)
  28. Catholic (Empire)
  29. observance (conservancy)

## TRAVEL

### 99/2

Airport: k, d, c (terminal); b, m (check-in counter); e (security check);  
f (immigration officer); i (booking flight back)  
Plane: j, l (flight attendant); a, h (captain); g (attendant after landing);



**100/1**

1. cruise
2. sail
3. dock
4. ports
5. guides
6. ruins
7. land
8. board
9. cabin
10. suites
11. liner

**100/3**

**Paul:** *Oh, come on. You're not still upset, are you?*

**Mary:** *I don't want to talk about it.*

**P:** *Look, I'm sorry you didn't like the trip. What am I supposed to do? You're always going on about the Greek Islands and how beautiful they are and how you've always loved them and how someday you've got to go back... so, we went to the Greek Islands! Great! But all you can do is complain...*

**M:** *Yes, I do love the Greek Islands and yes, they are beautiful, but how can you tell just from looking at them from a ship? I wanted to actually go down onto the islands, look around, see the people..*

**P:** *Then why didn't you go on any of the tours? We had plenty of time in port, you could have gone with the groups and seen the ruins...*

**M:** *Oh, God! And listen to that stupid tour guide go on and on about how smart he is? I hate those tour groups, filled with pensioners and their Hawaiian shirts and always taking photos of everything. No thank you, once was enough for me.*

**P:** *Well, then, you could have gone off on your own, explored the place.*

**M:** *I know, but I didn't want to do it on my own. I wanted you to come with me. I mean, this was supposed to be our holiday together, right? Besides, I was too busy being sea-sick to go on shore. God, I felt awful.*

**P:** *I know, I'm sorry. I didn't think you'd get so sick. I mean, the sea isn't usually so rough at this time of year...*

**M:** *Why couldn't we just have flown to one or two of the islands and then spent some time really getting to know them?*

**P:** *Honey, you know I don't care about the Greek Islands. I only agreed to go there because you love them so much. But I've been working so hard, lately, and you know how hard I've been working. The last thing I wanted to do was go hauling a backpack around some dirty little islands, trying to ...*

**M:** *They're not dirty! They're very beautiful...*

**P:** *OK, OK they're not dirty, they're beautiful. But all the same, I just wanted to relax! You know, relax! As in sit in a chaise longue, get some sun, read a little. And there's nothing more relaxing than the rolling of the sea.*

*I've really missed it.*

**M:** *Yeah, it did wonders relaxing my stomach!*

**P:** *I said I was sorry, OK? I was just trying to plan something we'd both enjoy.*

**M:** *Well, then, why don't you try planning it with me? We could have put our heads together and come up with something...*

**P:** *I know, I wanted it to be a surprise. I'm sorry. Look, next time, we'll plan it together. We'll do it right, OK?*

**M:** *All right.*

**102/2**

no left turn; steep hill; stop

level crossing; no through road; no U-turn; roadworks ahead  
cyclists only; slippery road; give way; roundabout; no overtaking

**103/1**

1. windscreen (GB) / windshield (US)
2. wing mirror (GB) / side mirror (US)
3. bonnet (GB) / hood (US)
4. headlight
5. bumper / fender (both)
6. sightlight; foglight (both)
7. number plate (GB) / license plate (US)
8. tyre (GB) / tire (US)
9. rear lights (GB) / taillights (US)
10. wheel; hubcap
11. indicator (GB) / turn signals (US)
12. rear-view mirror
13. steering wheel
14. petrol gauge (GB) / fuel gauge (US)
15. speedometer
16. gearlever (GB) / stick shift (US)
17. seat belt; safety belt
18. handbrake
19. accelerator (GB) / gas pedal (US)
20. brake
21. clutch

**105/2**

*Oh, yeah, I saw the whole thing. I was riding my bike through here, right, and I stopped to pick some of these berries here that are growing on the side of the road, so I saw the whole thing. OK, so, what happened was... up there, where the dirt road joins the tarmac, there's where that truck there started to pull out into the street. I swear, the kid who was driving it looked about twelve. He obviously doesn't know what he's doing, because he's just pulling out when he pops the clutch and, Bang! stalls the truck. So he's sitting there, with his nose out in traffic, trying to get the thing started again, right, when that fancy sports car over there comes screaming around the corner. You know, it's a pretty sharp bend there, and you can't really see what's around the bend on account of them trees, right? So the sports car comes whipping around there and all of a sudden finds this truck sticking*

*out in the middle of the street. So the driver of the sports car hits the brakes and tries to swerve out of the way, but of course, he's going too fast, so he fish-tails right across the middle of the road into the oncoming traffic. Almost had a head-on collision with that station wagon that was coming the other way, right, except the station wagon swerved off, and ended up wrapped around a tree. It's a shame, really, cause the station wagon's the only one who really didn't do anything wrong, y'know? Are they OK?*

### 105/3

1. drunk tank
2. double-parked
3. parking ticket
4. tailgate
5. defective brakes
6. pulled over
7. ran over
8. thumb a lift
9. running a few red lights
10. pulled over by the police
11. driving licence
12. insurance
13. clocked me with a radar gun
14. had been drinking
15. breathalyser
16. speeding / reckless driving
17. driving under the influence
18. reckless driving / speeding

### 106/1

1. commute
2. driveway
3. rush-hour
4. bumper-to-bumper traffic
5. fender-bender
6. road workers
7. exhaust fumes
8. exit
9. congested
10. one-way
11. "no left-turn"
12. parking places

### 108/2

1. it
2. 0
3. by
4. 0
5. there
6. have
7. 0
8. and
9. 0
10. 0
11. all

12. 0
13. all
14. to
15. don't / no

### 109

1. airliner
2. locomotive
3. Chunnel
4. vehicle
5. express
6. underground
7. liner
8. flight
9. raft
10. still
11. balloon
12. sailing
13. tyre
14. railway
15. black
16. wild
17. subway

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 110

1. a
2. b
3. c
4. b
5. a
6. b
7. d
8. b
9. c
10. b
11. a
12. all
13. b
14. b
15. a
16. vehicle
17. wheels
18. engineered
19. brake
20. gear
21. people who meet for a brief but intense moment and then part, never to see each other again
22. do what everyone else does
23. leave
24. negative information is passed more quickly than positive information
25. to try to catch a free ride with strangers by standing on the side of the road
26. disappeared
27. behaving in a disorganized way
28. foolish people do not understand danger and therefore do things that would frighten sensible people



29. go against
30. trying to say

### And More Practice... – p. 111

1. d
2. all
3. b
4. a
5. b
6. c
7. all
8. c
9. b, c
10. d, e
11. a
12. a
13. d
14. e
15. c
16. steered
17. top gear
18. engine
19. pump
20. chair
21. getting on my nerves
22. I'm very confused
23. follow your instincts OR keep going straight
24. in the process of
25. going the wrong way
26. leave a situation that is bad
27. challenge someone's optimism
28. enjoy the process of doing something rather than anticipate the result
29. when you travel, you learn new things
30. very happy

## FARMING

### 113/1

barley, oats, corn, wheat

### 113/2

1. seep down
2. contaminate
3. subsidies
4. ban
5. hedgerows
6. erosion
7. topsoil
8. drain
9. sustainable
10. throughout Britain

### 113

*Role-play – Environmental issues (slips of paper with roles to be distributed in class):*

You are a representative of a new environmental group that wants to restrict the use of pesticides and fertilisers, the Earth and Farmers' Party, distributing literature outside of a grocery store.

You are a small farmer who is trying to compete with the big industrial farms. As if the pressures of running a farm weren't enough, now there is a new environmental group that wants to restrict the use of pesticides and fertilisers. Without these products, you have no chance of keeping your farm. You hate the way that environmentalists trumpet their high causes but give no thought to how their actions hurt people economically.

### 114/2

Female	Male	Baby	Food Products
cow	bull	calf	milk, beef, veal, cheese, suet
hen	cock / rooster	chick(en)	(chicken) meat, eggs
sheep / ewe	ram	lamb	milk, cheese, mutton, lamb
sow	boar	piglet	bacon, ham, pork, lard
mare	stallion/ gelding	foal	horsemeat
duck	drake	duckling	eggs, meat
goose	gander	gosling	eggs, meat
she-/ nanny- goat	he-/billy- goat	kid	milk, meat, sausages, cheese

### 115/1,2

Verb	Animal	Sound
barks, growls, yaps, whines	dog	bow-wow; ruff; woof
miaows / meows / mews, purrs	cat	miaow / meow / mew
neighs, whinnies	horse	--
moos	cow	moo
grunts, squeals	pig	oink oink
clucks	hens	bok-bok-bok, cluck-cluck-cluck
crows	rooster	cock-a-doodle-doo
quacks	ducks	quack-quack
brays, hee-haws	donkey	hee-haw
bleats, baas	sheep	baa-aa-aa; baa, baa
bleats	goat	mee

### 115/1

*a dog barks: bow-wow*

*a dog yaps*

*a dog whines*

*a cat miaows: miaow*

*a cat purrs*

*a horse neighs*

*a horse whinnies*  
*a cow moos: moo*  
*a pig grunts: oink, oink*  
*a pig squeals*  
*hens cluck*  
*a rooster crows: cock-a-doodle-doo*  
*ducks quack*  
*a donkey brays or hee-haws: he-haw*  
*sheep bleat*  
*a goat bleats*

### 115/3

a blackbird sings; a cricket chirps; a bee hums; a frog croaks; a mouse squeaks; an owl hoots; a snake hisses; a hawk squawks; a fly buzzes; a sparrow twitters

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 116

1. d
2. c
3. a
4. a
5. c
6. agriculture
7. hen
8. kid
9. dairy
10. barley, hops
11. vineyard
12. sugar-beet
13. to shear
14. has been adopted
15. are raised
16. fed
17. balanced
18. controlled
19. are fed
20. milking
21. identified
22. passes
23. sheep
24. hound
25. pig
26. cat
27. dog
28. bitch
29. swine / bitch
30. bull

### And More Practice... – p. 117

1. b
2. a
3. c
4. c
5. c
6. scythe
7. pigeons
8. hens/chickens / poultry

9. spade, pitchfork
10. rabies
11. orchard
12. dung
13. heifer
14. straw
15. plant
16. soil
17. fertilizer
18. crops
19. leaves
20. insects
21. compost
22. organic
23. horse
24. pigs / swine
25. chicken
26. turkey
27. sheep
28. watchdog
29. dogged
30. hog

## CLIMATE

### 118/1

sunny – cloudy – overcast – rain  
thunderstorm – snow – tornado – cyclone

### 120/3

1. b
2. e
3. d
4. a
5. c
6. f
7. g

### 120/4

- a. under the weather
- b. take a rain check
- c. save some for a rainy day
- d. it never rains, but it pours
- e. as right as rain
- f. come rain or shine

### 122/1

1. had
2. plaguing
3. lashed
4. blew
5. dumped
6. ripped
7. tore
8. parched
9. reaching
10. went along



11. institute
12. replenish

### 122/2

1. heatwave
2. overwhelmed
3. flood
4. blistering
5. reservoirs
6. rationing
7. drought

### 123/2

- a. flood
- b. drought
- c. avalanche
- d. tornado
- e. landslide
- f. hurricane

### 124/1

1. false
2. d
3. false
4. a, d
5. false
6. b

### 124/1

**Phone-in Host:** Good evening, and welcome to “Keep it Simple”, the phone-in for the people who are sick of hearing discussions about the answers to questions they seem to have missed. With us in the studio is **Professor Bluntsworthy**, an expert on pollution and energy problems. And our first caller is **Jane Bletheron** from Kingsfield – Jane?

**Caller:** Good evening. Listen, I keep hearing people talking about the greenhouse effect as if it were the end of the world, and I don’t even know what it is. Why “greenhouse”? What’s the effect? What’s it got to do with me anyway?

**Phone-in Host:** Good evening Jane. Well, that sounds like three questions for the price of one. Just to start with, why “greenhouse”, prof?

**Professor:** I think we’d better start at the very beginning. Jane, have you got a greenhouse?

**Jane:** No, Kingsfield’s just high-rise flats and concrete. You’re lucky if you can get something to grow in a window-box, here...

**Host:** I worked in a big, commercial greenhouse once, when I was a student.

**Prof:** What was it like?

**Host:** Bl.. very hot and uncomfortable.

**Prof:** Why grow tomatoes in a greenhouse, anyway?

**Host:** It was too cold for them to grow outside.

**Prof:** Right. That’s where the name comes from. Life needs warmth. The greenhouse effect is what keeps our planet

warm enough to live on. Without it, life could not exist on earth. The atmosphere traps the sun’s heat, with the gasses and vapours that make up the air acting like the glass in a greenhouse: they let the heat in, but they don’t let it out again. So, strictly speaking, the greenhouse effect is not a problem, that’s basic to all life.

**Host:** But even a greenhouse needs to control its temperature, right? I mean, if it gets too hot, even tomatoes die. We had a complicated system of ventilation where I worked, to keep the temperature within limits. What does the planet do? After all, you can hardly open a window for the whole earth!

**Prof:** You’re right about the temperature regulation – let’s call it the world’s thermostat – it’s complicated. Since the 1960’s, many scientists have started to worry that the world’s thermostat isn’t working properly, or that people have created conditions that it can’t deal with. They think that the world is getting warmer, and they call the whole process global warming. And just like the tomatoes, life can only exist between surprisingly tight limits.

**Jane:** So the greenhouse effect is no problem, but global warming is, right?

**Prof:** Exactly.

**Jane:** So, go on, what’s wrong with the thermostat, what’s global warming and, again, what’s it got to do with me?

**Prof:** As I said, some of the gasses that make up the atmosphere act like the glass in a greenhouse, so, surprisingly enough, they’re called the greenhouse gasses. It’s generally felt that concentrations of them are getting too high for natural systems to deal with. For example, we all breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide. Carbon dioxide is a greenhouse gas, but we don’t have to stop breathing yet because plants breathe in carbon dioxide and breathe out oxygen. But burning fossil fuels – oil products like petrol and diesel, and coal – also generates carbon dioxide, and cutting down forests takes away many of the trees and plants that have helped to absorb it in the past. Industry also generates nitrous oxides, methane and CFC’s, all of which make the world warmer.

**Host:** CFC’s – what’s that short for?

**Prof:** Chlorofluorocarbons. Although they’re partially banned in most developed countries, developing countries are still using them in aerosols and refrigeration systems.

**Host:** So the place is getting warmer, right.

**Prof:** Some scientists think so, and that there is a very real danger of climate change and natural catastrophes. Others maintain that global weather goes through cycles naturally, and that this one will come and go like all the others before it. Obviously, the figures are difficult to calculate, but a rise of two degrees centigrade over the next fifty years is definitely possible, and when international conferences discuss the problem at a high level, you can be sure than someone, somewhere, is worried.

*Host: Worried about two degrees? We would certainly enjoy some more warm weather, but that's not much, surely.*

*Prof: First of all, two degrees is an average. It could be as much as ten degrees at the poles within the next 25 years, and four degrees or more in northern Europe.*

*Host: Ten degrees at the poles would melt a lot of ice, I hear.*

*Prof: Enough to flood low-lying land all over the world – look at the world map and you'll be surprised how many million people live within a metre of sea level – and that's the figure we're talking about!*

*Jane: Can I say something? If we all know this, why don't people get away from the sea? If they don't, it's their fault and their problem, surely? We're hundreds of metres above sea level where I live. Why should I worry if the place is a bit warmer?*

*Prof: When millions of people lose their homes and jobs, there's bound to be social trouble, even war, when they start to migrate inland. And if the climate patterns change, we're looking at damage to land and property on a vast scale. If a country has no history of, for example, very heavy rain and flooding, or high winds, even hurricanes, it's simply not ready for them and their effects are exaggerated. And agricultural patterns would change, too, with all the economic and social changes that go with changing from, for example, potatoes to rice in central Europe.*

*Jane: You must be joking! War and hurricanes! It sounds like something from a mad preacher on late-night radio!*

*Prof: You're right. But mad preachers just want you to pray and pay. There's lots of ways you can live a greener life, from using public transport to boycotting burger franchises that destroy rain forest to graze beef cattle. It's up to you. You don't have to live like some back-to-nature '60's freak – just adjust the life style to sit a little more lightly on the planet.*

*Host: Now we're getting into politics and running out of time. Thank you, Jane, thank you, professor. And if you've a question it's too late to ask your friends – or you think they don't really know either – join me and the prof next week for another edition of "Keep it Simple".*

### **Practice Makes Perfect – p. 125**

1. hurricanes
2. rainfall
3. flooding
4. snowfall
5. droughts
6. storms
7. a storm of / a hail of
8. the calm before the storm
9. a hail of / a storm of
10. wet
11. under a cloud
12. snowed under

13. tempestuous
14. frosty
15. a fog of
16. lightning
17. gale
18. icicle
19. haze / mist / fog
20. snowdrift
21. melt / thaw
22. overcast
23. a, d
24. b
25. a
26. a
27. c
28. d
29. b
30. c

### **And More Practice... – p. 126**

1. rain
2. flooding
3. thunderstorms
4. hail
5. sleet
6. storms
7. sunny
8. thundered
9. winds of
10. hazy
11. whirlwind
12. the mists of
13. avalanche
14. stormed
15. foggiest
16. clouded
17. breeze
18. drizzle
19. lightning
20. unpredictable
21. sultry
22. scorcher
23. b
24. d
25. d
26. a
27. a, b
28. a
29. c
30. b



## NATURE

127/2 (Please, feel free to correct this information if it is wrong.)

	Yosemite	Everglades	Death Valley
ducks	yes	yes	no
coyote	yes	yes	yes
egrets	rarely	yes	no
kangaroo rats	yes	yes	yes
horned lizard	no	no	yes
deer	yes	yes	no
cougar	yes	yes	no
alligator	no	yes	no
bighorn sheep	yes	no	yes
grizzly bear	yes	no	no
bald eagle	yes	yes	no
grey wolf	no	no	no
rattlesnakes	yes	yes	yes
water moccasins	no	yes	no
wild turkey	no	no	no
beaver	maybe not	no	no
lizards	yes	yes	yes

### 128/4

lions	groups	pride	cub	predator / scavenger
pigs	groups	herd	piglet	omnivore
horses	groups	herd	foal	herbivore
ducks	groups	flock	duckling	herbivore
bald eagles	solitary	-	eaglet	carnivore / scavenger
spiders	solitary	-	-	predator
wolves	groups	pack	cub	predator
snakes	solitary	-	baby snake	predator
vultures	groups	flock/pack	chick	scavenger
hyenas	groups	pack	pups	predator / scavenger

### 128/5

ANIMAL	PET	FOOD	HUNT	WILD	WORK
rabbit	pet	food	hunt	wild / domestic	
ostrich		food	hunt	wild / domestic	
deer		food	hunt	wild	
camel				wild / domestic	transport
koala				wild	
parrot	pet			wild	

snail		food		wild	
bald eagle				wild	
pheasant	-	food	hunt	wild	
donkey				domestic	transport
frog	-	food		wild	
elephant				wild / domestic	transport

### 130/1

- cliffs
- beaches
- low tide
- turns
- offshore
- source
- streams
- white water rapids
- mouth
- current
- range of hills
- meadows
- caves and caverns
- stalactites / stalagmites
- stalagmites / stalactites
- reservoir
- creek
- forests

### 130/2

- c mussels
- e shrimps
- a edible crabs
- b carp
- d salmon
- h trout
- i cockles / clams
- f crayfish
- g mackerel

### 135/3

**Host:** Well, Christmas time is coming, and many families across the country are busily looking for a gift for their loved ones and especially for their children. And what could be better than a pet, a cute, furry playmate waiting under the tree on Christmas morning, right? Well, not always. Today we have in the studio **Dr. Mark Preskett**, a veterinarian, who is going to tell us a little bit about the dangers of giving a pet as a Christmas gift.

**Host:** Hello, Mark.

**Mark:** Hello.

**H:** So tell us, what is wrong with giving a pet as a gift?

**M:** Well, it's not that giving a pet as a gift is wrong, it's just the way that many people do it that sometimes causes trouble.

H: How so?

M: Well, the first day you bring home a pet, whether it be a dog or a cat or even a canary, is extremely important for the relationship you are going to have with the animal. You have to remember that most of the times the animals are very young, and it is the first time they have been away from their mothers, so of course they are very vulnerable and need to be taken care of and made to feel comfortable in their new home. And if you think of Christmas morning, with all of the excitement and the presents and all of the family gathered round the tree, it's probably the worst time to bring a young animal into your household.

H: Yes, if you see it from the animal's point of view, it must really look quite mad.

M: It certainly does. So, a good idea is to tell your children what their present is, maybe by putting a dog collar or something like that under the tree, and then wait a few days until things have settled down before you actually bring the animal home.

H: Well, that makes sense. And tell me, are certain pets better than others as gifts?

M: Well, the animal you choose should fit the person who is going to look after it. Many times people bring home a puppy, and at first the children are all excited and play with it all the time, but then school starts again and they see the puppy needs to be looked after and the puppy gets kind of forgotten...

H: And the parents end up looking after it.

M: Exactly.

H: You're pretty much better off buying fish, then.

M: Well, actually, it's interesting you should say that because fish are some of the most difficult pets to care for. You have to keep the fish tank clean and at a proper temperature, which can sometimes be rather tricky. So many people who buy fish as a kind of low-maintenance pet end up finding out that it's much harder than they thought.

H: So what kinds of animals are the easiest to care for?

M: Well, generally caged animals are the easiest. By this I mean something like hamsters, birds, or even turtles.

H: Well, now, that's definitely an original Christmas gift. Well, Dr. Preskett, thank you very much for coming on the show.

M: Thank you.

### 136/1

Left: petal, leaf; Right: stalk, bloom / flower, bud, roots (in the flower pot)

### 136/2

primrose; lily of the valley; daisy; hyacinth; crocus; iris; pansy; lily; narcissus; chrysanthemum; daffodil; tulip

### 137/3

Left: leaf and blossom, branch, bark, trunk; Right: crown, twig, bough

### 137/5

- A. pine cone
- B. oak leaf
- C. (horse) chestnut leaf with a conker / chestnut
- D. three acorns
- E. beech leaf
- F. rowan berries
- G. beech nut / mast
- H. pussy willow / catkins

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 138

- 1. c
- 2. d
- 3. a
- 4. a, b
- 5. c
- 6. c
- 7. c
- 8. d
- 9. b
- 10. b
- 11. heather
- 12. forget-me-not
- 13. thyme
- 14. cornflower
- 15. dandelion
- 16. ferret
- 17. rat
- 18. fox
- 19. bear
- 20. ape
- 21. cone
- 22. mast
- 23. acorns
- 24. conkers
- 25. cone
- 26. berries
- 27. c
- 28. d
- 29. a
- 30. b

### And More Practice... – p. 139

- 1. a
- 2. b
- 3. c
- 4. b
- 5. d
- 6. a
- 7. d
- 8. c
- 9. b
- 10. d
- 11. cowberry/cranberry
- 12. water lily
- 13. poppy
- 14. daisy



15. daffodil
16. mouse
17. wolf
18. squirreling
19. monkey
20. hares
21. spruce, pine, fir
22. larch, lime, hornbeam, birch, beech, oak, maple, horse chestnut, elm, rowan, willow, ash
23. c
24. f
25. g
26. h
27. b
28. e
29. a
30. d

### EVERYDAY PHRASES – p. 140

1. j
2. a
3. l
4. e
5. b
6. c
7. f
8. g
9. h
10. k
11. i
12. d

## THE HUMAN BODY

### 141/2

1. unblemished
2. bulging
3. glistening
4. obesity
5. fitter
6. concepts
7. mohawk
8. tomboy
9. balding
10. host

### 141/3

Phrases from the text: long legs, firm thighs, flat stomach, huge breasts, tanned skin, god-like man, muscular man, sculpted chest, wide shoulders, slim nation, pierced lips, stocky masculine build, short hair, double chin

### 142/1

It is the fourth man from the left.

### 142/1

**Police Officer:** All right, now, Ms Begbie, I know this is difficult for you, but we need you to give a description of your assailant for the police artist so that we can make a sketch of him. Do you think you can do that for us?

**Ms Begbie:** Yes, I think so. I got a good look at him. God, I don't think I could ever forget his face.

**P:** All right then, let's start with the face. Was it a round face or an oval one?

**B:** Oh, it was round, definitely round. He was a very fat man, and he had a double chin and, I think, yes, with a big cleft.

**P:** Ok, a cleft chin. Like this? Good. Now let's do the eyes. What kind of eyes did he have?

**B:** Well, they were big round eyes. No, not quite that round, a little bit more square than that... Yes, good, now you've got it. They were big and brown, and he had big bushy eyebrows that kind of came together. Yes, perfect.

**P:** Right, and what about the nose? Was it a straight nose?

**B:** No, no, he had a big flat nose, kind of like a drinker's nose, you know, all veined and red. And it was a little bit crooked, as if it had been broken and never set right.

**P:** Right, like this? Good. And the lips? Were they full lips?

**B:** Yes, and very chapped and cracked, as if he had been outside in the cold a long time. And he had a moustache as well. Yes, exactly like that.

**P:** And did he have any distinguishing features, like a scar or a birthmark?

**B:** No, but he did have rather bad acne. His face was covered in pimples.

**P:** All right, let's have a look at the hair, then. How long was it?

**B:** Oh, it was about shoulder-length, parted in the middle, and very wavy. It was dark brown, but streaked with grey. Right. Oh my god! That's him! That's the man who took my purse!

### 142/2

- a. chapped lips; teeth
- b. rosy cheeks; chin
- c. low forehead; hair
- d. dimpled chin; nose
- e. slanted eyes; face
- f. receding hairline; eyebrows
- g. short hair; forehead
- h. lank hair; cheeks
- i. yellow teeth; lips

### 142/3

**1st picture:** round eyes, flat crooked nose, thick bushy eyebrows, a birthmark on one cheek, dimpled chin; **2nd picture:** straight nose, a pockmarked face, a birthmark under the right eye, thin lips, beard, double chin; **3rd picture:** scars, moustache, thick arched eyebrows, round face, straight nose; **NOTE:** None of them has slanted eyes.

**143/6**

**Friend:** Hi, Sue. Nice hat. Is it new?

**Sue:** Don't even talk about my hat! God, I am so mad I could just scream!

**F:** Why? What's the matter?

**S:** What's the matter? Just look! (Sue takes off her hat.) I went to the hairdresser's today and look what she did! She butchered me!

**F:** Oh, it's not really that bad... I mean, maybe when it grows out it'll...

**S:** It's awful! God! All I asked her for was a trim and a perm. I had a lot of split ends, and I was tired of my fringe always getting in my eyes, so I wanted it a little shorter. But she chopped my fringe completely off, and the sides are too short too. And this perm is so curly that I look like I have an afro! It's terrible!

**F:** Well, you know, it could be worse. Have you seen John's new haircut?

**S:** No, why?

**F:** Well, you know how John used to have such lovely long hair? Well, he got a new job in an insurance company so he had to cut it off. He wanted it just to be a nice, normal length, with a parting on the side and all that. You know, the businessman look. Well, the barber shaved it all the way off. By the time he realised what was happening, it was too late, so he had to get a crew cut. It doesn't look so bad now that he's grown a moustache and beard, but when he first got it he looked like a skinhead! Not exactly the way to make a good first impression at your new job.

**144/1**

1. bladder, ear, stomach, lung
2. ankle, wrist
3. arm, shin
4. lung, kidney
5. kidney, gall
6. tendon, hamstring, muscle
7. head, tooth, ear, stomach
8. ankle, toe, leg, arm, wrist, finger, nose, tooth, neck
9. knee, ankle, wrist, finger, collarbone
10. hamstring, tendon, ligament
11. toe
12. muscle, leg, arm
13. heart
14. neck

**145/5****A**

1. i
2. a
3. g
4. c
5. j
6. h
7. e
8. d
9. f

10. b

**B**

1. e
2. a
3. g
4. d
5. j
6. f
7. c
8. b
9. h
10. i

**Practice Makes Perfect – p. 146**

1. i
2. c
3. b
4. j
5. h
6. d
7. f
8. g
9. e
10. a
11. hair
12. mouth
13. forehead
14. knees
15. spine
16. legs
17. belly
18. thighs
19. hands
20. figure
21. b
22. d
23. a
24. d
25. c
26. a
27. a
28. d
29. c
30. a

**And More Practice... – p. 147**

1. f
2. c
3. e
4. b
5. j
6. i
7. a
8. g
9. d
10. h
11. liver



12. kidneys
13. heart
14. extremities
15. mouth
16. belly
17. tonsils
18. bone
19. lips
20. fingers
21. a
22. b
23. c
24. a
25. b
26. a
27. b, d
28. b
29. a
30. b

## HEALTH

### 148/1

1. influenza / flu / infected throat
2. sore throat, hacking cough, headache, sore muscles
3. about four days
4. aspirin, cough syrup, throat lozenges
5. not yet
6. she thinks the doctor will give her antibiotics and she hates them

### 148/1,2

**Friend:** Hi, Samantha, how's it going?

**Samantha:** Oh, not so good.

**F:** Yeah, you look a bit under the weather. What's wrong?

**S:** Oh. I think I've got the flu. My throat is so sore, and I have this hacking cough that just won't go away. Every morning I wake up with this terrible headache and my muscles are sore all over. I feel like I could just die!

**F:** Yeah, there has been a flu bug going around lately. Jane's been home sick with it for the last few days, and I just hope she doesn't give it to me. I've got too much work right now to get sick.

**S:** Tell me about it! I'd love to just take a few days off and recover from this, but I can't. My boss is a real slave-driver. I don't think she'd let me have a sick day if I came to work in a coma. Besides, I don't want to go to the doctor. He'd just give me antibiotics, and I hate antibiotics.

**F:** Well, you should at least go down to the chemist's and get yourself some medicine.

**S:** I have. I've been taking aspirin and cough syrup, and I go through a bag of throat lozenges a day, but nothing seems to help. Now I think I'm getting a fever.

**F:** Yeah, you are a little bit hot. How long has this been going on?

**S:** About four days now. It just keeps getting worse, too.

**F:** Well, I think you should just go to your doctor. A fever is nothing to take lightly, you know!

**S:** Yeah, maybe you're right.

### 150/1

wheelchair; walking aids: walking stick, crutch, forked stick; special bathroom and toilet facilities: grab-handle, handrail; Zimmer frame / walking frame.

### 151/4

f, b, d, a, e, c

### 152/1

**Nasal drops** can be used when you have a bad cold and it is difficult for you to blow your nose because it's blocked. Some people prefer "natural" remedies for the same purpose – sucking mineral water or salt water; **Eye drops** can be used if you suffer from an eye infection or if you have worked somewhere where there was a lot of dust. You can use camomile instead; penicillin and other antibiotics should only be used when prescribed and dosed by a doctor. You should always follow your doctor's instructions carefully. **Various other medicines** can help you feel better – if you suffer from pain, you take painkillers. **Sedatives / tranquillisers** should help you relax. **Sleeping pills** help you induce sleep. **Homeopathic medicine** may be a solution for some, others will prefer various herbs or acupuncture, hypnosis or other alternatives; **Vitamins** can also come in the form of pills or capsules or tablets. **Ointments** are welcome help when you have various dermatological problems. **Camphor creams** relieve aching joints. **Sunscreens / creams** protect skin from sunburn and skin cancer.

### 153/4

*Suggested follow-up activity: Here are the four endings of the four paragraphs. Distribute the photocopied slips in class and ask students to match the speeches to the participants.*

1 ... by sanctioning the use of drugs you invite more young people to experiment with drugs until they try more powerful stuff and get hooked. He thinks that Dutch figures show that very clearly.

2 ... soft drugs might be sold under the same conditions as cigarettes and alcohol. He said no research has ever proved grass is more addictive than alcohol and there are no or few restrictions on its sale. He stressed tobacco and alcohol industries have a big share in the national economy.

3 ... legalizing the possessions of drugs. He thinks it evident from Dutch experience that war on drugs has failed. The remedy to drug abuse is to be sought outside the penal system, in schools and in families. Above all, drugs are a social, not a criminal problem. Criminalising the victims is going to lead to more alienation, which is behind drug abuse. More than anything else, it would show how powerless

we are in the face of the breakdown of the family and other institutions responsible for upbringing of the future generation.

4 ... the message "everything's allowed and risk-free" that we are sending out to the kids could be very damaging, especially at an age when they haven't yet developed their personalities and are thus more insecure and susceptible to all kinds of bad influence, such as alcohol and tobacco.

1. J. D. Buckley 2. Martin Blank 3. Capt. John Stewart 4. Janet Homely

#### 154/1

broken bone / limb / fracture; food poisoning, salmonella, upset stomach; diabetes; malignant tumour / cancer

#### 154/3

Children's diseases: scarlet fever, mumps, chickenpox, whooping cough, polio, measles

Affected parts of the body: constipation – bowels; scarlet fever – throat, skin; pneumonia – lungs; flu – respiratory tract, muscles; mumps – salivary glands; cholera – intestines; tuberculosis – lungs; appendicitis – appendix; headache – head; food poisoning – stomach; chickenpox – skin; whooping cough – throat and lungs; typhoid – intestines; throat infection – throat; diarrhoea – intestines; polio – limbs; indigestion – stomach; allergy – various parts; measles – skin; hepatitis – liver; ulcer – stomach, duodenum

NOTE: In the Czech Republic, you get vaccinated against all the children's diseases mentioned above; vaccination against some others (e.g. flu, hepatitis, tuberculosis) is also administered.

#### 154/4

I first started feeling sick at school one day. My throat felt sore and I was having trouble swallowing. My mother let me stay home from school for a few days, but my throat swelled up even further. We went to the doctor, and he said that I had tonsillitis. They operated on me the next day, and I spent the next week at home recovering. It wasn't all bad, though – I got to eat all the ice cream I wanted for the whole week!

#### 155/1

- a. women have strange cravings: pickles being the most well known
- b. the beginning of pregnancy is the most crucial time
- c. many hours
- d. premature baby – a baby born early  
contractions – tightening ...  
trimester – a stage of pregnancy  
labour – the series of contractions...  
foetus – a developing baby

#### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 156

- 1. b
- 2. b, a
- 3. b

- 4. b
- 5. a
- 6. b
- 7. a
- 8. b
- 9. a
- 10. b
- 11. b
- 12. a
- 13. unhealthy
- 14. ills
- 15. sick / ailing
- 16. infectious / contagious
- 17. symptoms
- 18. pain
- 19. crippling
- 20. paralysed
- 21. i
- 22. a
- 23. g
- 24. j
- 25. h
- 26. e
- 27. d
- 28. f
- 29. c
- 30. b

#### And More Practice ... – p. 157

- 1. a
- 2. a
- 3. b
- 4. b
- 5. b
- 6. b
- 7. a
- 8. b
- 9. a
- 10. a
- 11. b
- 12. b
- 13. bruised
- 14. healthy
- 15. fatal
- 16. deadly
- 17. painful
- 18. cancer/ disease / epidemic
- 19. headache
- 20. jaundiced
- 21. d
- 22. c
- 23. b
- 24. a
- 25. c
- 26. i
- 27. f
- 28. j



29. g
30. h

## SPORT

### 158/2

1. sprint / dash
2. hurdles
3. pole vault
4. long jump, triple jump
5. javelin
6. (competitive) walking
7. weightlifting
8. boxing
9. judo, ju-jitsu
10. wrestling
11. karate
12. fencing
13. shooting
14. archery
15. downhill skiing
16. sledging / sledding / luge
17. climbing / mountaineering
18. swimming
19. windsurfing / sailboarding
20. water-skiing
21. rowing
22. sailing
23. ice-skating
24. ice hockey
25. football / soccer
26. rugby
27. basketball
28. baseball
29. tennis, badminton, squash
30. golf

### 161/2

1. a
2. e
3. c
4. d
5. b

### 161/3

1. was modelled on
2. emphasis
3. pagan
4. clashed with
5. foster
6. broadcast
7. enhancing
8. steroids
9. have been stripped of
10. boycotted

### 162/2

1. lodge
2. skiing holiday
3. rack
4. hard-packed
5. downhill
6. slope
7. lift
8. ticket
9. snowplough
10. skis
11. poles
12. cross-country

### 163/1

Because he'd put on a lot of weight.

Lifting weights.

No. He was afraid his new muscles would turn to flab if he stopped exercising.

### 163/1

#### Part A

*I first started exercising in college, because I'd put on a lot of weight and just wasn't feeling good about myself. At first I was only concerned with how I looked, so I started lifting weights. I went to the gym three times a week, and I saw results almost immediately. My fat started turning into muscles, and if anything, I got bigger. But, even though I looked better, and I was definitely stronger, I still didn't feel much healthier. I was building up these large masses of muscle, and I was afraid that if I stopped exercising, they would all turn to flab and I would be in worse shape than I was before I started. It was also really boring, just lifting those weights up and down over and over again. So I decided that I needed to get some different kinds of exercise.*

### 163/2

#### Part B

*So I gave up weight training, and decided to get more aerobic exercise, but I couldn't decide which kind to take up. I know that swimming is supposed to be the best aerobic exercise, but I'm not a very good swimmer. I can barely do the breast stroke. So that was out. And aerobics, being a woman's sport and all, was definitely out. In the end I decided on cycling and squash. I bike to work every day, and my girlfriend and I go out on longer trips on the weekend when the weather's nice. And I have some friends who I play squash with on Thursday nights, so that works out my upper body and lets me release some tension as well. On the whole, I'd say I'm pretty fit.*

### 163

tennis racquet / racket – tennis; jogging shoes – running; roller skates / blades – roller skating; sledge / sled – sledding; parachute – jumping; saddle – riding; Frisbee – throwing; pool stick – pool; squash racquet – squash;

skateboard – skateboarding; walking shoes – walking; dartboard – darts; fishing rod – fishing / angling; swimming costume – swimming; bat – baseball, softball, cricket, table-tennis / ping-pong; snowmobile – riding a snowmobile; wet suit – diving; water skis – water skiing; surfboard – surfing; mallet – croquet, polo; raft – rafting; aqualung – diving; crampons – mountaineering; caddy – golf

NOTE: The pictures depict some more equipment and sports: golf clubs, cross-country boots, safety bindings, goggles, hiking boots, pin balls (ten-pin bowling), stone, broom (curling), landing net, reel (fishing / angling), saddle, stirrups, whip, riding boots (riding), flippers / fins, goggles / face mask, snorkel (diving)

### 164/3

*Role play – professional sports (slips of paper with roles to be distributed in class). Possible combinations: Julie's mother + Julie's trainer, Julie's father + Julie's sponsor, Julie + Jason, Julie's skating friend + Julie's school friend. After a while, the pairs may be exchanged, e.g. Julie's mother + Jason, etc.*

**Julie:** Your dream is to compete in the Olympic Games. You know that this, however, can't be achieved without costs. You suffer from some emotional problems – you worry a lot about your performance, you can't live like a "normal" teenager, you neglect your boyfriend. You don't know whether to commit yourself to a rigorous programme or not.

**Jason:** You are Julie's boyfriend. You believe secretly that Julie won't train rigorously enough to become a member of the Olympic team. You don't want to tell her openly because you understand her ambition, but you would like her to spend more time with you.

**Julie's mother:** You would like Julie to give up competitive skating. You are worried about your daughter. She starves herself to retain the lithe figure prized by judges of the sport. She spends most of her time at the ice rink or at competitions. And now she wants to enter even more rigorous training programme.

**Julie's father:** You support Julie a lot in her ambition to become a member of the team competing at the Olympic Games. You have already invested a lot of time and money in this dream and you believe it will come true.

**Julie's trainer:** You've been Julie's trainer for 3 years. You believe strongly that she has what it takes to make the Olympic team, but she should forget about her boyfriend and start training more rigorously than ever before.

**Skating friend:** You are Julie's skating friend. You know Julie as a talented and hardworking skater, who has won several national youth competitions and one international competition. You believe that she will make it into the Olympic team. You yourself would sacrifice anything for this goal.

**Sponsor:** You are a representative of a large company that produces skating boots. Your company is prepared to fund Julie's new training programme for two years if she appears in a commercial for their product.

**School friend:** You are Julie's school friend. The two of you have always been quite close. You think Julie's schedule is gruelling. It leaves her very little time for studying, let alone socializing. She doesn't go to the movies or dancing with you any longer. You feel very strongly, that she should give up figure skating and be more of a "normal" teenager.

### 165

1. golf
2. cricket
3. bowls
4. bowling
5. skittles
6. rugby
7. American football

### 166/2

**throw-in** – football and other ball games, ice-hockey; **serve** – tennis and any other net-sport; **shoot** – football, any goal sport; **basket** – basketball; **cleats** – football, rugby, any team sport on a pitch, athletics; **corner kick** – football; **travel** – basketball; **baseline** – tennis, any racquet sport; **slam** – any racquet sport; **forehand** – tennis, any racquet sport; **net** – fishing, polo, football, basketball, volleyball, some racquet sport; **defence x offence** – any team sport with goals / targets, e.g. football, ice-hockey; **umpire** – tennis, American football, volleyball, field hockey, cricket, baseball, badminton; **backhand** – table tennis, any racquet sport; **goalie** – football, hockey, any sport with goals

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 167

1. g
2. d
3. b
4. c
5. f
6. a
7. e
8. pitch / field
9. field
10. course
11. pool
12. rink
13. court
14. court
15. rink



16. trump card
17. keeps his cards close to his chest
18. gamble
19. gambled
20. skating on thin ice
21. plain sailing
22. unsporting
23. key player
24. moving the goalposts
25. ranked as favourite
26. stakes
27. in the running
28. out of the running
29. make all the running
30. the odds are

### And More Practice... – p. 168

1. c
2. e
3. a
4. d
5. f
6. b
7. g
8. shoes / track
9. ring
10. rink
11. table
12. racquet
13. hoop
14. shoes
15. wrestler
16. neck and neck
17. outsider
18. at stake
19. against all odds
20. first-past-the-post
21. touch base
22. own goal
23. play his game
24. good sport
25. play fair
26. marathon
27. put / lay your cards on the table
28. pawn
29. game was up
30. baiting

### PHRASES AND PHRASAL VERBS – p. 169

#### Family

1. after
2. on
3. up
4. out
5. up

#### Home

1. through
2. out
3. off
4. in
5. on

#### Food

1. on
2. out
3. out
4. off

#### Shopping

1. on
2. up, down
3. in
4. in

#### Clothes

1. of
2. up
3. in
4. out
5. in

#### Work & Leisure

1. out, to
2. ends
3. up
4. on
5. off

#### Town & Country

1. off
2. out
3. up
4. to
5. to

#### Sightseeing

1. on
2. round
3. of

#### Travel

1. to
2. off
3. on
4. in
5. on
6. in
7. on
8. out

#### Farming

1. while
2. up
3. for

#### Climate

1. for
2. to
3. from
4. up
5. out

## The Human Body

1. out
2. to
3. in

## Health

1. in
2. of

## MEDIA

### 170/2

1. tabloid press
2. urgency
3. paparazzi
4. excess
5. intrusion
6. circulation
7. sue
8. reliable sources
9. investigative reporting
10. anonymous

### 171/3

Contents of a typical newspaper: front page; local news; international news; business and financial news; arts reviews, previews, and people – including book, movie, and theatre news; TV and radio guide; birth, marriage, and engagement announcements; obituaries; sport; lifestyle and fashion; advice column; crosswords; health; law reports; letters to the editor; weather; gossip column; comic strips; horoscopes; classified advertisements

### 171/4

**Andrew:** Gary! I can't believe you read that trash!

**Gary:** What? I like this newspaper.

**A:** But it's the worst of the gutter press! All of the home news is sensationalised trash about the Royal Family or some sex scandal in the government. There's not a scrap of serious news in that whole paper!

**G:** It's not that bad.

**A:** Oh, come on! It doesn't even have an international news section, and the editorials seem as if they were written by the page three girls.

**G:** All right. All right. But, you know, Andrew, I couldn't care less about the Royal Family. Look, when I read a newspaper, I don't start on the front page. I start at the back. Sports, mate, that's what I wanna hear about. And this paper has the best sports round-up in England. It's got everything on footy, the best full coverage of the games, and the inside stories about each team. And the racing page is spot on, maybe! Best racing page in England! Besides, if you want politics, take a look at the political cartoons in the funnies.

**A:** You can't form your political opinions from a cartoon strip!

**G:** Well, what are you reading? Ah-ha! That's a fine example of journalism for you.

**A:** Well, I know...

**G:** That's the most mainstream, commercial paper in London! At least my paper says something. That paper just takes whatever the Home Office says and prints it like gospel. They couldn't find a real story if it came up and hit them in the face.

**A:** I know, I know! I really don't like it either. But my wife insisted that we subscribe to it. She likes the women's pages. You know, the lifestyle and fashion section and things like that. But it does have a decent business section. Almost as good as your racing page.

**G:** And the crossword puzzle in it is quite good.

**A:** Yes, especially the Sunday one. It takes me all Sunday morning to finish it.

**G:** Yeah, but, Andrew...

**A:** Yes?

**G:** What about the news?

**A:** Oh, that. Well, I get that from television.

### 171/5

attacks – criticises

backs – supports

ban – prohibit

bid – attempt

cuts – reductions

deal – agreement

fights – opposes

looms – is about to happen

plummets – falls

probe – investigation

quits – resigns

rejects – refuses

row – disagreement

set – ready

surge – rise

talks – negotiations

triggers – causes

vow – promise

graft – bribery

### 171/6

Suggested activity: Cut each headline into words, divide the class into 4 groups and give each group a set of jumbled words for one of the four headlines.

1	Drug	Probe	Backs	Teen	Cig	Ban
2	Minister	Quits	Over	Graft	Scandal	
3	Welfare	Cuts	Loom	as	Tax	Revenues
4	Rebels	Reject	Deal	Vow	to	Keep

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 174

1. over
2. for
3. on
4. case
5. features



6. in
7. on
8. of
9. part
10. after
11. allowances
12. with
13. b
14. a
15. a
16. b
17. a
18. a
19. a
20. a, b
21. regional OR international
22. to bring about; encourage
23. meaningless; minimal
24. dependency
25. together with
26. states
27. receive
28. taking over
29. different
30. nationwide

#### And More Practice ... – p. 175

1. racist
2. sexist
3. violent
4. concerned
5. criticize
6. superficial
7. important
8. applaud
9. in-depth
10. current
11. recognize
12. provide
13. alternative media
14. complete
15. inadequate
16. minority
17. biased coverage
18. to wet one's feet
19. mainstream sources
20. available
21. b
22. a
23. a / b
24. a / b
25. a
26. a / b
27. a
28. a
29. a / b
30. a

## CULTURE

### 177/2

**director** – tells the actors how to play, is the head organizer;  
**lead** – plays the main role; **composer** – writes music;  
**stage designer** – invents the setting that the play takes place in, and finds props; **performer** – actors; **costume designer** – designs clothing for the actors; **producer** – organizes and funds the show; **stage manager** – carries out what the stage designer has planned; **extra** – people hired only for the big scenes; **understudy** – actor studying a role to substitute for an absent colleague; **prompter** – whispers forgotten lines to help the actors; **lighting operator** – keeps the stage bright or dark; **playwright** – the author of a play

### 178/2

**Positive:** The leading man gave a great performance as Napoleon. It was thrilling. The direction was wonderful. I felt the passion. It kept me on the edge of my seat. It was full of tension and suspense. A touching story. A heart-warming film. A film for the whole family. The special effects and stunts were great;  
**Negative:** It was boring. The story was predictable. The actor wasn't very convincing. The story wasn't believable. A total waste of money. I walked out half-way through the film.

### 179

**stringed:** lyre, violin, mandolin, balalaika, harp, guitar

**wind:** saxophone, recorder

**brass:** French horn, trumpet

**percussion:** drum, maracas, cymbals, triangle, drum set

**keyboards:** grand piano

### 180/2

1. pop music (pub, bar)
2. classical music, violin recital (concert hall)
3. classical music (concert hall), jazz (restaurant with live music)
4. classical music (concert hall, opera house)
5. popular music, jazz (restaurant with live music)
6. popular music, jazz (club, pub, bar)
7. singer (see numbers 5 and 6)
8. rock music, disco music (rock concert, discotheque)
9. classical music, piano recital (concert hall), rhythm and blues, rock (restaurant with live music)

### 180/4

- a. He thinks it is OK on some occasions.
- b. He isn't very enthusiastic, but says it's not at all bad.
- c. He doesn't mind because Tommy started playing the guitar.
- d. He thought it all right, perhaps a little boring, but he didn't want to hurt his father's feelings.
- e. No, he isn't, but he doesn't know how to tell his father.

**Father**

*As in most families, my son, Tommy, and I have very different lifestyles. But there is one thing, that bridges the generation gap between us, and that's music. I am a passionate lover of classical music and opera, and I am proud of the fact that I have helped to instil that same love in Tommy.*

*When Tommy was just an infant, I used to put on some Bach or Tchaikovsky when we were in the car on long journeys. He loved it, and he would sing Beethoven's Fifth at the top of his lungs all day long.*

*When he was older, Tommy started taking piano lessons, and he made excellent progress. He always had a great ear for music, and he played at several recitals. Then one day, when Tommy was 13, he told me that he wanted to try something different: the guitar. That's when things started to change a little. More and more, I started hearing the blaring sounds of heavy metal guitars and drums coming out of his room. He didn't touch the piano any more, but I don't really mind. All that's really important is that he still plays music. In fact, he joined a rock band which now rehearses every Sunday in our basement.*

*I suppose some parents would have been disappointed. But I consider myself an open-minded father, and I also know that his love for classical music is what drives his passion for heavy metal. After all, much of it is just classical scales played through a distorted guitar. It's not all that bad, when you really listen to it. To show Tommy that I understand, I bought us a pair of tickets to the concert hall and we went, just the two of us. It was a marvellous evening, and I knew then that, even though he might have other tastes in music, he still loved classical music as much as he did when he was a young boy. So I decided to buy season tickets for the two of us. That way, we can keep sharing our love of music together, as father and son.*

**Son**

*My dad's a pretty cool guy. He doesn't give me too much trouble, and he lets me dress and act pretty much the way I want to, as long as I get good grades in school. But there is one thing that sometimes annoys me about him. He's always going on and on about classical music.*

*Don't get me wrong, I don't mind classical. It's OK if you're trying to study or get to sleep or something like that. But he seems to have this idea that I'm as much of a fanatic about classical music as he is. I guess he used to play it to me when I was a kid, and it made me laugh or something like that, and he took that to mean that I was born to play classical.*

*I don't think Dad ever got over the fact that I gave up the piano for the guitar. I guess he had some idea that I would become some great concert pianist. But what I really like is the hard stuff, you know, music that gets your heart pumping. He tries to act like he doesn't mind it, I guess it makes him feel in touch with the younger generation or something like that. But I know he really*

*can't stand it, and wishes I was still playing Bach on the piano or singing Beethoven from the child-seat in the car.*

*The other night he took me out to a concert. It was all right, I guess. But it was a little boring. All of the musicians just sitting on the stage playing, and everybody being quiet and then clapping politely at the end. Of course, I didn't want to hurt Dad's feelings, so I told him it was great, just to make him happy.*

*Well, that was a mistake. The next day he ran out and bought season tickets, and now he wants me to go once or even twice a month for the whole year! I really don't want to do it, but I don't know how to tell him. He's so excited, and I mean, he does let the band practise in the basement. But oooh! Why can't he just understand that I don't love classical music as much as he does?*

**181/1**

TEACH YOURSELF SWAHILI IN 20 DAYS – self-help book

FOOT DISEASES SIMPLIFIED – reference book

THE HITCHHIKER'S GUIDE TO FIJI – guide book

GHANDI-UNAUTHORISED – biography

THE VAMPIRE DENTIST – horror

LOVE IN THE HOT SUMMER – romance

JJ SPANKS, PRIVATE EYE – detective story

DANTE'S INFERNO – classic

THE WELL AT WORLD'S END – fantasy

LIFE'S A JOKE – humour

THE WHITE HOUSE FILES – spy novel

THE EATER OF STARS – science-fiction

NAPOLEON'S RIGHT HAND – historical novel

**181/2**

Story 1: After rubbing tanning lotion ..., It was a beautiful day, and the sun ..., Suddenly a shadow blocked out...

Story 2: A heavy rain fell on the streets, drenching ..., Looking around nervously, the man ... He had just got it lit...

Story 3: It was 3 a.m. Standard Earth Time ..., Having grown tired of looking out ..., Suddenly, there was a blinding flash...

**182/1**

A. Limerick

B. Sonnet ending (Shakespeare, No. 94)

C. Part of a free verse (Roger McGough, Comeclose and Sleepnow)

D. Nursery rhyme

E. Playground chant (acted ending of Oranges and Lemons)

F. Narrative poem / Ballad (John Masefield, Reynard the Fox)

**Practice Makes Perfect – p. 183**

1. act
2. fiddle
3. ace
4. read
5. c
6. e
7. i



8. a
9. f
10. g
11. h
12. d
13. j
14. b
15. c – man
16. a – house
17. c – unhappy
18. d – street
19. a – forgotten
20. c – films
21. a – last
22. d – admiration

### And More Practice... – p. 184

1. play
2. drum
3. tune
4. song
5. d
6. a
7. b
8. c
9. g
10. e
11. h
12. i
13. f
14. j
15. b – heaven
16. c – song
17. c – rum
18. b – sniff
19. a – million
20. b – play
21. a – do
22. d – three

## EDUCATION

### 185/2

- to study steadily throughout the year;
- the prepared student is reviewing;
- the unprepared student is trying to learn it for the first time;
- a prepared student should always be highlighting, jotting down notes and using these notes as the basis of studying;
- to focus on the most important things, to form a study group;
- you are at the mercy of others.

### 185/3

1. ... and that's the coming exam season.
2. ... going over notes, trying to catch up on their reading.

3. ... to cram for a whole year's courses in one night or even in one week.
4. ... to it than that.
5. ...the importance of note-taking when learning.
6. ... highlighting or jotting down the most important points.
7. ... notes and goes through them all together.
8. ... the mercy of other students.
9. ... on them to give you the information that will help you pass the exam.
10. ... luck, and until next week, good bye.

### 185/2,3

**Host:** Hello everybody, and welcome to Schooltalk, the show that examines the major issues facing students, parents, and teachers today. Well, this time of year, there's really only one issue facing students, and that's the coming exam season. As we speak, students everywhere are busily going over notes, trying to catch up on their reading, and spending sleepless nights waiting for the dreaded day. Well, if you're one of those students, then put down your pencil for a few minutes, because in the studio today we have **Julia Briston**, author of the book *Success at School*, and she's going to share a few tips for studying and succeeding in your exams. Julia, welcome to the show.

**Julia:** Thank you.

**H:** So, tell us, Julia, what is the secret of success at exams?

**J:** Well, there's really only one true secret of being a good student, and that is to work steadily throughout the school year. You can't expect to cram for a whole year's courses in one night or even in one week. You have to pace yourself and work at it all year long.

**H:** Like a long distance runner, right?

**J:** Exactly.

**H:** But surely, there must be more to it than that. Students can't be expected to remember things they read six months earlier, can they?

**J:** Well, of course, you still have to study for exams. But the difference is that the prepared student is reviewing the material, while the unprepared student is trying to learn it for the first time. And I cannot stress enough the importance of note-taking when learning. Both in the class, and while reading, you should always be highlighting or jotting down the most important points, and then you can use those notes, and not your textbook, as the basis of your studying. Your textbook should only be used when you need more information to flesh out what you have in the notes.

**H:** Well, that's how a prepared student does it. But what about the unprepared students? Is there any hope for them?

**J:** Yes, of course, if you haven't been the perfect student all year long, all is not lost. The key is to focus on what's most important. The worst thing a last-minute studier can do is try to read all of the books at once. That's just not possible. The best idea is to get together with a few other

students and form a study group. You can then divide the workload into four or five parts, and each student just has to research and write good notes on one part of the class. Then, a few days before the exam, everybody pools their notes and goes through them all together.

H: Of course, then you're always at the mercy of the other students, aren't you?

J: Yes, you do have to make sure that you choose responsible people for your study group, since you are relying on them to give you the information that will help you pass the exam.

H: Well, Julia, thank you very much for coming on the program.

J: Thank you.

H: And for all of you students out there, good luck, and until next week, good bye.

### 188/1

*Role play – Barbora's dilemma (slips of paper with roles to be distributed to groups of seven students in class).*

**Barbora:** You are a student in your second year at a large American university. You would like to major in philosophy, but you aren't sure whether you will be able to find a job when you finish your studies. You pay for most of your education through student loans, which have to be paid off, so you will need a secure job after you graduate from college. Discuss your plans and your career prospects with your sister, your parents, a recruiter from a large computer company, a friend who studies philosophy, and a school counsellor.

**Barbora's sister:** You have recently graduated in computer programming and found a well-paid job. You don't like your sister's decision to major in philosophy. You don't think it is a sound education for a successful future career. You feel strongly that Barbora should "get real" and study something that will lead to a "real career" and earn her enough money to support herself and pay off student loans. Barbora should realize too that she can't expect any help from your parents, who are now retired.

**Barbora's father:** You don't want to dictate what Barbora should or shouldn't do. You are convinced that you have given your younger daughter enough sense of responsibility to cope with her problem on her own. You only want her to be happy. If she feels she has finally found a subject that interests her, she shouldn't hesitate to take it up.

**Barbora's mother:** You agree with your elder daughter that Barbora should choose a more practical subject than philosophy. You don't want to play the heavy and organize your daughter's life for her, but you believe that if you talk Barbora's dilemma over with her, she will do the right thing. You secretly believe Barbora will follow in her sister's footsteps and major in computer programming.

**Barbora's friend:** You study philosophy and you think it is a fascinating subject because it provides excellent intellectual stimulation. Philosophy studies are by no means easy (e.g. you have to submit a number of papers each term), but you encourage Barbora to major in this subject. The teachers at the Department of Philosophy are always ready to discuss philosophical problems with their students. Study and library facilities are very good.

**A recruiter** from a large computer company: Your company has links with Barbora's university. You offer to sponsor a large proportion of Barbora's studies if she decides to major in computer science. All throughout her studies she will undertake coursework assignments on the company premises and will gain business experience. After she graduates from university, she will be encouraged to accept her first work placement in this computer company. Point out that Barbora's sister works for the same company and is very satisfied.

**School counsellor:** Tell Barbora that she should think carefully and realistically when deciding about which subject to take up because her decision can have a very important bearing on her future. It is vital that Barbora should, after she has tried several subjects, major in a subject that really interests her. On the other hand, she should consider employment opportunities as well as the marketability of the qualification.

### 188/2

1. Honeymoon Stage
2. Hostility Stage
3. Humour Stage
4. Home Stage

### 189/3

1. only
2. further
3. appointing
4. admit
5. degrees
6. compared
7. catered
8. mature
9. entrance
10. grants
11. tuition
12. raise

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 190

1. j
2. c
3. f
4. k
5. d
6. g
7. b



8. I
9. j
10. a
11. e
12. o
13. learn
14. learn / study
15. learn / study
16. learn
17. learn
18. learn
19. study
20. learn
21. in
22. for
23. of
24. and
25. beyond
26. whose
27. in contrast to
28. by
29. from
30. during/in

#### And More Practice... – p. 191

1. f
2. d
3. c
4. h
5. i
6. j
7. b
8. a
9. e
10. g
11. write / read
12. read
13. write
14. read
15. write / read
16. write
17. write / read
18. read
19. write
20. read
21. in
22. approximately
23. of
24. by
25. however
26. throughout
27. through
28. or
29. Most
30. to

## HOLIDAYS

### 192/1

Holidays not described on p. 194: **Mardi Gras** – the festival of Shrove Tuesday, celebrated in some cities with great revelry; **VJ Day** – the day marking the Allied Victory over Japan in WWII (Aug 15, 1945); **Father's Day** – a day observed as a day in honour of fathers, the third Sunday in June; **Columbus Day** – the second Monday in October, commemorating the landing of Columbus in 1492.

### 193/2

- a. November
- b. January
- c. October
- d. May
- e. February
- f. April
- g. March
- h. September
- i. August
- j. December
- k. July
- l. June

### 193/3

**cracker** (pulled at Christmas dinner on **Christmas Day**)  
**Liberty Bell** (The historic bell rung to tell people of the Declaration of Independence from Great Britain, and of the founding of the United States, a symbol of **Independence Day**)

a **basket of eggs and bunny** (symbols of **Easter**)  
 the opening words of the U.S. **Constitution** written in 1787 (**Independence Day**)

**picnics and fireworks** on **Independence Day**  
**fireworks** on **New Year's Eve / Guy Fawkes' Night**

**jack-o'-lantern and a ghost** (**Halloween**)  
**Martin Luther King, Jr.** for **Martin Luther King Jr. Day**

a **Pilgrim and an Indian** symbolize **Thanksgiving Day**

**bat** for **Halloween**

**George Washington** (**Washington's Birthday**)

**cup** (**Father's Day**)

**witch on a broomstick** (**Halloween**)

**shamrock** (**St. Patrick's Day**)

**card** indicating **Memorial Day**

**heart with a Cupid** symbolizing **St. Valentine's Day**

### 194/4

1. e
2. c
3. d
4. g
5. f

6. a
7. t
8. h
9. i
10. j
11. k
12. s
13. o
14. n
15. p
16. m
17. l
18. b
19. r
20. u

### 195/1

*Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year.*

*Wishing you every happiness in the New Year.*

*Season's Greetings!*

### 195/2

Pictures from the left: Christmas tree, poinsettia, glass ball / bauble, Santa Claus / Father Christmas, holly, Father Christmas filling the Christmas stocking, holly, nativity scene / crèche

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 196

1. d
2. b
3. a
4. j
5. g
6. c
7. h
8. i
9. f
10. e
11. i
12. f
13. b
14. h
15. g
16. c
17. a
18. d
19. j
20. e
21. as
22. by
23. in
24. to
25. than
26. in
27. For
28. across
29. of
30. at

### And More Practice... – p. 197

1. c
2. b
3. i
4. j
5. g
6. f
7. e
8. d
9. a
10. h
11. d
12. j
13. a
14. h
15. c
16. g
17. i
18. f
19. b
20. e
21. since
22. with
23. to
24. of
25. for
26. in
27. with
28. in
29. as
30. from

### MODERN SOCIETY

#### 198/1

Suggested answers: extinction crisis; genetic engineering; industrial agriculture; economic globalization; technomania; industrial crisis; economic crisis...

#### 198/3

1. commercial
2. assumption / premise
3. cultures
4. governmental
5. preserve / promote / defend
6. re-establish / take up
7. WTO – World Trade Organization
8. civil / civic
9. globalization
10. leaders

#### 198/3

*World Culture Resists Bowing to Commerce*

*The advocates of globalization would argue that free and open trade and an expansion of commercial relationships and activities of all kinds are the keys to a brighter future for all. The flaw in this premise lies in the misguided*



assumption that commerce spurs culture when, in fact, the exact opposite is more often the case. The new cultural activists would argue that there is not an example in history where people first create commercial relations and then establish a culture. Commerce and government are secondary, not primary, institutions. They are derivatives of the culture not the creators of it. People first establish a common language; agreed-upon codes of behaviour and a shared sense of purpose – to wit, social capital. Only when cultures are well developed is there enough social trust to support commercial and governmental institutions.

If the G8 leaders are united in their support of global commerce and trade, the civil society movement groups are just as committed to the idea of preserving local identity and enriching both biological and cultural diversity. Unfortunately, today, the cultural sector exists in a kind of neo-colonial limbo between the market and government sectors. Only by making local culture a coherent, self-aware political force will it be possible to re-establish its critical role in the scheme of human society once again. Indeed, it may be time to establish a World Cultural Organization to represent diverse cultures around the globe, and give the “WCO” an equal footing with the World Trade Organization in international affairs.

Some people worry that a resurgent interest in local cultures must inevitably lead to xenophobia and ultra-nationalist sentiment. That doesn't have to be so. If people everywhere come to think of their own cultural resources not as possessions to defend but, rather, as gifts to exchange with one another, then the great human migrations of 21st century could spawn a cultural renaissance and create the conditions for a truly humane globalization of commerce and trade. The ability of political leaders to identify with and promote both the interests of the civil society and cultural diversity will be critical to ensuring their relevance and viability in the coming century. This was the lesson being taught by the protesters assembling on the streets of Seattle. It's a lesson that is likely to repeat itself again and again. The question is, will the heads of state take the time to listen carefully to the message coming from outside their windows? If they don't, the escalating frustration is likely to play into the hands of the growing number of violence-prone extremists, with untold consequences for the world's future.

#### 199/1

1. D
2. B
3. F
4. A
5. E

#### 201/1

1. maintained
2. including
3. led
4. Having served
5. was constitutionally barred
6. elect
7. exposed
8. had been
9. committed
10. was thus deemed

#### 202/1

1. Bill Gates
2. Yuri Alekseyevich Gagarin
3. propeller water turbine
4. soft contact lense
5. A. G. Bell – telephone
6. electric light bulb

#### 202/2

Neil Armstrong – first man to set foot on the moon – 1969  
 Alfred Bernhard Nobel – dynamite – 1867  
 Alexander Graham Bell – telephone – 1876  
 Viktor Kaplan – propeller water turbine – 1913  
 Otto Wichterle – soft contact lenses – 1961  
 Thomas Alva Edison – electric light bulb – 1879  
 Yuri Alekseyevich Gagarin – first manned space flight – 1961  
 Bill Gates and Paul Allen – Microsoft – 1975

#### 203/4

1. genetically
2. human
3. identical twins
4. replacement
5. controversial
6. reproductive
7. ethical
8. organ

#### 204/1

1. Geothermal Energy
2. Ocean Thermal Energy Conversion (OTEC)
3. Biomass
4. Wind Power
5. Hydroelectric Power
6. Tidal Energy

#### 204/2

1. convert
2. gasohol
3. kinetic
4. exploit

#### 204/4

Suggested follow-up activity: Ask the students to form two teams at opposite sides of the classroom – one team representing

citizens in favour of building a nuclear power plant in their area, the other one against it. The two groups exchange arguments.

Alternative exercise: The two groups are in favour or against Temelin.

### Practice Makes Perfect – p. 205

1. d
2. b
3. a
4. c
5. b
6. a
7. c
8. b
9. a
10. c
11. Anti-Semitism
12. Racism
13. Refugee
14. Minority
15. Discrimination
16. results
17. refuge
18. cleansing
19. influence
20. skinheads
21. c
22. f
23. b
24. d
25. e
26. a
27. (lead) – led
28. (aids) – aid
29. (contributed) – contribute
30. (failed produce) – failed to produce

### And More Practice... – p. 206

1. a
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. c
6. d
7. c
8. b
9. a
10. a
11. UFO / flying saucer
12. Laser
13. Space shuttle
14. Genetic engineering
15. Nanotechnology
16. oil
17. coal
18. biomass
19. firewood
20. Biogas
21. c, g
22. i
23. b
24. c
25. d, h
26. j
27. f
28. e
29. f, h
30. a



# VOCABULARY

## FAMILY

**absent-mindedness** roztržitost, nepozornost  
**abuse (a child)** zneužít, zneužívat, týrat (dítě)  
**accepted** přijatý, uznávaný, oficiální  
**act out** předvádět, ztvárnit  
**acute disease** akutní onemocnění  
**addiction to st** návyk na něco  
**adolescence** dospívání  
**adolescent** dospívající, mladistvý  
**adopt sb** osvojit, adoptovat  
**adoption** osvojení, adopce  
**adoption agency** agentura zprostředkující adopci  
**adoptive family** adoptivní rodina  
**adulterer** cizoložník  
**adultery** cizoložství  
**advantage** výhoda, přednost  
**age of consent** věk pohlavní odpovědnosti před zákonem  
**ageism** diskriminace starých lidí  
**aggressive** útočný, agresivní  
**alimony** ['æliməni] výživné, alimenty  
**alter the face of st** změnit tvář něčeho  
**amazement** úžas, ohromení, překvapení  
**ambitious** ctižádostivý, ambiciózní, náročný  
**amnesia** [æm'ni:ziə, ʒə] amnézie; oslabení, ztráta paměti  
**appointment book** termínový kalendář, diář  
**argue about, over st** diskutovat, hádat se o něco  
**argument between** hádka mezi (dvěma)  
**arrange a date** domluvit (si) schůzku  
**arranged marriage** sňatek domluvený příbuznými  
**arthritis** [ɑ:'θraɪtɪs] artritida, zánětlivé onemocnění kloubu  
**attain one's majority** dosáhnout zletilosti  
**au-pair** dívka, která pomáhá v rodině  
**autopsy** ['ɔ:topsi] pitva, ohledání mrtvol ke zjištění příčiny smrti

**availability of st** dostupnost něčeho  
**baby bouncer** hopsadlo  
**baby break** (coll) mateřská dovolená  
**baby carriage** (US) kočárek  
**baby minder** osoba, která se stará o dítě  
**baby monitor** zesilovací zařízení (umožňuje matce slyšet dítě po celém bytě)  
**baby-backpack** batoh na nošení dítěte  
**baby-carrier** nosítko na dítě; tzv. klokan  
**baby-sit for sb** hlídat někomu dítě  
**baby-sitter** osoba, která se stará o dítě po krátkou dobu  
**baby-walker** chodítko  
**bachelor** starý mládenec, neženatý muž  
**banns** ohlášky (veřejné oznámení církevního sňatku)  
**be cremated** mít kremaci, být zpopelněn  
**be entitled to st** mít nárok na něco  
**be jealous of sb** žárlit na někoho  
**beautician** [bju:'tɪʃən] kosmetička  
**behaviour** chování  
**bequeath st to sb** [br'kwi:ð] odkázat někomu něco  
**best man** družba, svědek (obvykle ženichův přítel)  
**bib** bryndák  
**borstal** (GB) polepšovna  
**bottle-feed** krmit z lahve  
**brat** spratek, fracek, fakan  
**breadwinner** živitel rodiny  
**break up (with sb)** rozejít se (s někým)  
**breast-feed** kojit  
**bride** nevěsta  
**(bride)groom** ženich  
**bridesmaid** družička  
**bring up** vychovat; zvracet  
**broad-minded** liberální, snášenlivý, tolerantní  
**budget** rozpočet  
**buggy** (GB) ['bʌgi] skládací kočárek

**buggy** (US) ['bʌgi] hluboký kočárek  
**bullying** ['bulɪŋ] šikanování  
**buried** [berɪd] pohřbený  
**caress** [kə'res] hýčkat  
**carry-cot** taška na přenášení dítěte  
**chat sb up** hučet do někoho, ukecat někoho, nabalit (si) někoho  
**cheat on sb** podvádět někoho  
**cheeky** (GB) drzý, troufalý  
**cheerful** veselý, šťastný, radostný  
**child-minder** osoba, která se stará o dítě  
**child-minding** hlídání dětí  
**civil wedding** občanský sňatek  
**comfort** chlácholit, konejšit  
**commit** spáchat, dopustit se  
**chore** ['tʃɔ:] (nepříjemná) povinnost; domácí práce  
**churchyard** hřbitov  
**co-respondent** spoluobžalovaná strana v rozvodovém řízení  
**cohabitation** soužití, spolužití  
**coil** nitroděložní tělísko  
**come of age** stát se zletilým, dosáhnout plnoletosti  
**come up** přijít na přetřes, vynořit se, nastat  
**condolences** kondolence, vyjádření soustrasti  
**confusion** zmatení, zmatek  
**congratulations** blahopřání, gratulace  
**conquer a disease** ['kɒŋkə] přemoci, zvládnout chorobu, nemoc  
**considerate** [kən'sɪdərət] ohleduplný, taktní, pozorný  
**consist of st** skládat se z něčeho  
**consummate a marriage** ['kɒnsjuːmɪt] naplnit, dovršit svazek ženy a muže pohlavním stykem  
**contraception** antikoncepce  
**contribute (to, towards)** přispět, přispívat (k, na)  
**copycat crime** zločinnost inspirovaná filmy  
**corny** staromódní, zastaralý  
**corporal punishment** tělesný trest  
**cot** (GB) postýlka pro dítě

**couch potato** vášnivý televizní divák  
**counterculture** alternativní kultura  
**cradle** ['krɛdl] kolébka  
**crèche** (GB) [kreʃ, kreɪʃ] jesle  
**crib** (US) postýlka pro dítě  
**cry** plakat, křičet  
**date sb** (US) chodit s někým  
**dating** chození na rande  
**dating agency** seznamovací kancelář  
**day care** pečovatelská služba  
**day nursery** mateřská škola; dětský pokoj  
**death duties** dědická daň  
**death notice** parte  
**deceased** (fml) [dɪ'si:st] zesnulý  
**dementia** [dɪ'menʃə] demence, slabomyslnost  
**dependants** vyživované osoby  
**deplore** odsuzovat  
**detention; in detention** trestní vazba, odnětí svobody; zůstat po škole  
**dexterity** [dek'stɛrətɪ] obratnost, zručnost  
**diapers** (US) plenky  
**die from (injuries)** zemřít následkem (zranění)  
**die of (e.g. cancer)** zemřít na (např. rakovinu)  
**die of old age** zemřít stářím, sešlostí věkem  
**different ways of life** různé životní styly  
**diminish** klesat, slábnout, ubývat  
**disagree** nesouhlasit  
**disobedient** neposlušný, odpírající poslušnost  
**disposable** na jedno použití  
**diversity** [daɪ'vɜ:sɪti] rozmanitost, rozrůzněnost, rozličnost  
**divorce** rozvod; rozvést se  
**divorced (man, woman)** rozvedený, rozvedená  
**divorcee** [dɪ'vɔ:'si:] rozvedená osoba  
**dowry** ['daʊri] věno  
**drinking age** věk, kdy je dovoleno pít alkohol  
**dummy** (GB) dudlík, šidítka  
**dump sb** nechat někoho, dát někomu kopačky, pustit někoho k vodě  
**dusting** utírání prachu  
**easily led** snadno ovlivnitelný  
**easy-going** bezstarostný; pohodový, (až příliš) tolerantní  
**elderly (people)** starší lidé

**energetic** [ˌenə'dʒetɪk] energický  
**epitaph** ['epɪtə:f] nápis na hrobě  
**euthanasia** [ˌju:θə'neɪzə, ʒɪə] eutanázie, ukončení života na žádost nemocného  
**executor, executrix** vykonavatel(ka) poslední vůle, závěti  
**expecting** (infml) v jiném stavu, těhotná  
**eye up** (coll) vrhat zamilované pohledy  
**faint** omdlet, ztratit vědomí  
**feminism** feminismus  
**feminist** feminista, feministka  
**fiancé, fiancée** [fi'a:nseɪ] snoubenec, snoubenka  
**foster sb** vychovávat cizí dítě  
**fun-loving** rád se baví, má rád legraci  
**funeral** pohřeb  
**funeral director** majitel či zaměstnanec pohřebního ústavu  
**funny** legrační, divný  
**gated** (GB) potrestán domácím vězením  
**geriatrician** [ˌdʒeriə'trɪʃən] geriatr  
**grandma** babička  
**granny flat** (GB) vejminek  
**grass widow** slaměná vdova  
**grave** hrob  
**gravestone** náhrobní kámen  
**greedy** chtivý, nenasytý, chamtivý  
**grounded** (US) potrestán domácím vězením  
**grow up** vyrůst, vyrůstat  
**grown-up, grown-ups** dospělý, dospělí  
**guardian** poručník  
**half-brother** nevlastní bratr (jeden z rodičů je společný)  
**hang out with sb** trávit s někým hodně času  
**hard of hearing** nedoslýchavý  
**hearse** [hɜ:s] pohřební vůz  
**henpecked** pod pantoflem  
**hilarious** veselý, bujarý, bujný, rozpustilý  
**hire** pronajmout; zaměstnat  
**homemaker** (US) žena v domácnosti  
**honeymoon** líbánky, svatební cesta  
**hoovering** vysávání prachu  
**househusband** muž v domácnosti  
**housewife** žena v domácnosti  
**housework** domácí práce, práce v domácnosti

**howl** [haʊl] brečet, skučet  
**husband and wife** muž a žena, manželé  
**hypercritical** příliš kritický  
**illegitimate child** nemanželské dítě  
**imitation** napodobenina, imitace  
**immaturity** nedospělost, nevyspělost  
**immediate family** nejbližší rodina  
**impertinent** nestydatý, neomalený  
**impressionable** citlivý, vnímavý  
**incompatibility** neschopnost přizpůsobit se  
**incompatible with st, sb** [ɪŋkəm'pætɪbl] nesnášející se, nekompatibilní s něčím, někým  
**independent** nezávislý, samostatný  
**indulge** [ɪn'dʌldʒ] povolit, dovolit, rozmazlovat  
**infant** malé dítě, nemluvně  
**infatuation** pobláznění, zaslepení  
**infidelity** nevěra  
**inherit** zdědit  
**inheritance** pozůstalost, dědictví  
**inquest** soudní vyšetřování příčiny úmrtí  
**invalidity** neplatnost; invalidita, pracovní neschopnost  
**ironing** žehlení  
**irritable** podrážděný, nedůtklivý, popudlivý  
**jealousy** žárlivost; závist  
**joy** radost, potěšení, štěstí  
**kid** (coll) dítě  
**kindergarten** školka, mateřská škola  
**leave st to sb** odkázat někomu něco  
**let sb down** nechat na holičkách, ve štychu  
**live-in nurse** pečovatelka, která bydlí u ošetřované osoby  
**lover** milenec; milovník, ctitel  
**major** zletilý  
**matchmaker** dohazovač, zprostředkovatel sňatků  
**maternity leave** mateřská dovolená  
**maturity** dospělost, zralost  
**mellow** vyrovnaný, plný porozumění, uvolněný  
**minor** nezletilý  
**mistress** milenka; paní  
**mobility** pohyblivost  
**moody** náladový, rozladěný, těžkomyslný  
**morals** morálka, mravy  
**nagging** sekýrování, popichování



**nanny** (GB) chůva  
**nanny** (US) dívka, která pomáhá v rodině s dětmi  
**nappies** (GB) plenky  
**naughty** ['nɔ:ti] zlobivý, neposlušný, nezdědný  
**née** [nei] rozená, jméno za svobodna  
**newborn baby** novorozeně  
**newlyweds** novomanželé  
**nursery** školka; dětský pokoj  
**obedient** poslušný  
**obituary** nekrológ  
**occur** [ə'kɜ:] vyskytovat se  
**old folks' home** domov důchodců  
**old maid** stará panna  
**old people's home** domov důchodců  
**one-parent family** neúplná rodina  
**open-minded** nezaujatý, objektivní  
**option** možnost  
**orphan** ['ɔ:fən] sirotek  
**orphanage** ['ɔ:fənɪdʒ] sirotčinec  
**outdoor** (konaný) venku, v přírodě, pod širým nebem  
**outgoing** společenský, otevřený  
**outline** osnova; synopse, nástin  
**pacifier** (US) dudlík, šidítko  
**pamper** hýčkat, rozmazlovat  
**partner** partner(ka), manžel(ka)  
**passed away** (euph) zesnul(a)  
**passed on** (euph) zesnul(a)  
**pension** penze, důchod (peníze)  
**personal ads** (US) inzeráty na seznámení, seznamka  
**playpen** dětská ohrádka  
**polite** zdvořilý  
**poor family** chudá, nemajetná rodina  
**position** umístit  
**post mortem** ohledání mrtvol, pitva  
**potty** nočník  
**pram** (perambulator) kočárek pro dítě  
**praise** chválit  
**pregnant** těhotná  
**preparations** přípravy  
**propose to sb** požádat někoho o ruku  
**protection** ochrana proti početí  
**punish** potrestat  
**pushchair** (GB) sportovní kočárek, golfové hole  
**quarrel** hádat se, hádka  
**quiet** tichý, klidný, zticha, ticho  
**raise** vychovat, vychovávat  
**rattle** chrastít

**rebel** [ri'bel] bouřit se, vzepít se  
**register / registry office** matrika  
**rebellion** povstání, vzpoura  
**relations** vztahy; příbuzní  
**relationship** vztah  
**relative** příbuzný  
**relaxed** uvolněný  
**remarriage** další sňatek  
**researcher in...** výzkumný pracovník, zabývající se...  
**retire** jít do důchodu  
**retired people** důchodci  
**retirement** odchod do důchodu; důchod  
**rheumatism** ['ru:mətɪzəm] revmatismus, revma  
**rise in st** růst, zvýšení (něčeho)  
**role** role, úloha  
**routine** pravidelná, opakovaná činnost  
**rude** hrubý, drsný  
**rut** zaběhlý způsob života  
**sarcastic** sarkastický  
**scold** vyhubovat  
**scream** křičet  
**selfish** sobecký  
**senile** senilní  
**senile dementia** ['si:nail di'menʃə] senilní demence  
**separation** odloučení, rozluka  
**sharp-tongued** jizlivý, kousavý  
**shoplifting** krádež v obchodě  
**shotgun wedding** sňatek, protože nevěsta je těhotná  
**show off** vytahovat se; vejta, ten, kdo se vytahuje  
**sibling** (tech) sourozenec  
**single mother** svobodná matka  
**single parent** samoživitel(ka)  
**single-parent family** neúplná rodina  
**slacking** flákačství  
**slap** plesknout  
**sleep around** jít, vyspat se s každým  
**smart** (US) drzý  
**sociable** společenský  
**soothe** [su:ð] konejšit  
**spank** naplácat  
**spinster** stará panna  
**split up** rozejít se  
**spoil** kazit, rozmazlovat  
**spot** najít, zpozorovat  
**spouse** choť

**standards** (morální) normy, standardy  
**stepbrother** nevlastní bratr  
**stepfamily** nevlastní rodina  
**stepfather** nevlastní otec  
**stepmother** nevlastní matka  
**stereotypes** vžité představy o postavení člověka ve společnosti  
**stroller** sportovní kočárek, golfové hole  
**stubborn** ['stʌbən] tvrdohlavý  
**suckling** ['sʌklɪŋ] kojeneček  
**superannuation scheme** [ˌsu:pəˌænjʊ'eɪʃən] systém penzijního připojištění  
**superstition** pověra  
**sympathetic** soucitný  
**take sb out to (dinner)** pozvat někoho na (večeři)  
**talented** nadaný  
**talk back** odmítovat  
**talkative** hovorný, řečný  
**tastes** zájmy a záliby  
**tax deductions** odpočty z daní  
**teddy bear** plyšový medvídek  
**teenager** dospívající, dítě v pubertě  
**tell off** vyhubovat  
**terminate the pregnancy** ukončit těhotenství  
**termination / abortion** umělé přerušování těhotenství  
**test-tube baby** dítě ze zkumavky  
**thoughtful** ohleduplný  
**toddler** batole  
**tolerant** tolerantní  
**tombstone** ['tu:m,stəʊn] náhrobní kámen  
**toy chest** skříňka na hračky  
**trousseau** ['tru:səʊ] výbava nevěsty  
**TV violence** násilí v televizi  
**twins** dvojčata  
**undertaker** zaměstnanec pohřebního ústavu  
**unfaithful** nevěrný  
**unfaithfulness** nevěra  
**upbringing** výchova  
**value** hodnota  
**venereal diseases** [və'nɪəriəl dɪ'zi:zɪz] pohlavní nemoci  
**violent** [vaɪələnt] brutální, násilný  
**visiting rights** právo navštěvovat dítě po rozvodu  
**vote** volit; volební hlas  
**walk out on sb** rozejít se s někým

**wedding** svatba, svatební

**widow** vdova

**widowed** ovdovělý, ovdovělá

**widower** vdovec

**wreath** [ri:θ] věnec

**yield** ustoupit

**youngster** mladík, chlapec, mládenec;  
dítě

**youth** mládí; mladík

**youth home** domov mládeže

## HOME

**accessory** doplněk

**alarm-clock** budík

**Allen key** ['ælən] imbusový klíč

**allotment** (GB) parcela, pozemek  
pronajatý zahrádkáři místním  
úřadem

**alter** ['ɔ:lta] změnit, přestavět

**apartment** (US) byt

**apparently** očividně, zřejmě

**attic** ['ætik] podkroví

**attractive (flat, offer)** příjemný,  
lákový, atraktivní (byt, nabídka)

**axe** sekyra, zednické kladívko, špičák  
(na hrubé opracování kamene)

**bannister, banister** zábradlí (u scho-  
diště)

**barren** ['bærən] neúrodný, pustý

**basement** suterén

**bath** vana, koupel

**bathroom** koupelna, záchod, toaleta

**bathtub** ['bɑ:θtʌb] vana

**beam** trám, kláda, nosník

**beams and rafters** krov

**bedlinen** ['bed,linɪn] ložní pádlo,  
povlečení

**bedroom** ložnice

**bedsit, bedsitter** garsonka; obývací  
ložnice

**bidet** ['bi:deɪ] bidet

**blender** mixér

**blind** roleta, žaluzie

**bloom (flowers)** kvést, rozkvést  
(květiny)

**bog** (slang) záchod

**bookcase** knihovna (kus nábytku)

**brace** spona, svorka; truhlářský  
kolovrátek

**bread bin** nádoba na uložení chleba

**breezblock** škvárobetonová tvárnice

**brick** cihla

**bricklayer** zedník

**broiler** (US) gril (ve výši očí)

**broom** koště

**bucket** kbelík, vědro

**bulldozer** buldozer

**bungalow** ['bʌŋɡələʊ] přízemní  
dům, bungalov

**callipers** ['kælipəz] posuvné měřítko

**cellar** sklep

**cement** [sɪ'ment] cement

**chandelier** [ˌʃændə'liər] lustr

**chateau** ['ʃætəʊ] zámek, zámeček

**chest of drawers** skříňka se zásuv-  
kami, komoda, prádelník

**chimney** komín

**chisel** ['tʃɪzəl] dláto

**cistern** ['sɪstən] splachovací nádrž;  
nádrž na vodu (např. na střeše)

**clearance** kolaudace

**clock** hodiny

**cloth** [klɒθ] látka; utěrka; hadr

**coffee table** konferenční stůl

**comb** [kəʊm] hřeben; česat se

**comfortable** pohodlný

**concrete** beton, betonový

**condo** (coll US), **condominium** (US)  
[ˌkɒndə'mɪniəm] byt v osobním  
vlastnictví v družstevním domě

**conservatory** (GB) zimní zahrada;  
zasklený balkón

**cooker** vařič, sporák

**cosy** ['kəʊzi] útulný

**cottage** domek, chalupa

**couch** [kaʊtʃ] pohovka, gauč

**cramped** [kræmpt] stěsnaný, pře-  
cpaný

**cupboard** (GB) [kʌbəd] skříň(ka),  
kredenc

**curtain** záclona, závěs; opona

**damp** vlhký; vlhko

**decorate** malovat, tapetovat, zdobit

**detached house** samostatně stojící  
dům

**dilapidated** [drɪ'ləpɪdeɪtɪd] zchá-  
tralý, na spadnutí, chátrající

**dingy** ['dɪndʒi] špinavý a tmavý,  
ošumělý

**dish rack** odkapávač na nádobí

**dishcloth** utěrka na nádobí

**dishwasher** myčka nádobí (stroj)

**distemper** (tech) malovat (zejména  
křídovou barvou)

**doorhandle** klika

**doorknob** ['dɔːnɒb] kulovitá klika

**doormat** rohožka (u dveří)

**doorstep** práh, zápraží

**dorm** (coll US, dormitory) studentské  
koleje; ubytovna

**dowel** [daʊəl] hmoždinka; špalík; čep

**drive** (GB), **driveway** (US) příjez-  
dová cesta, vjezd do garáže

**duplex** (US) [duplex] dvoupodlažní  
byt; dvojdoměk

**duster** prachovka

**duvet** (GB) ['duːveɪ] prošívaná  
péřová přikrývka, peřina



**eiderdown** (GB) ['aɪdədaʊn] prachová prošívaná příkrývka  
**electrician** elektrikář, elektroinstalatér  
**elegant** ['elɪɡənt] elegantní  
**estimate** udělat odhad  
**excavator** rypadlo, bagr  
**excited** vzrušený, rozčilený, nedočkavý  
**exquisite** [ɪk'skwɪzɪt] překrásný, neobyčejný, vynikající  
**faucet** (US) ['fəʊsɪt] kohoutek (vodovodu)  
**feeder** krmítko  
**fence** plot  
**fertile** ['fɜːtaɪl] úrodný, plodný, živný  
**file** pilník; pilovat  
**fireguard** mříž před krbem  
**fireplace** krb  
**fix** spravit, opravit  
**fix up** dát do pořádku, opravit, spravit  
**flagstone** zahradní chodníková dlaždice  
**flannel** (GB) žínka  
**flat** (GB) byt  
**flatlet** byt 1+1, malá garsoniéra  
**floor lamp** (US) stojací lampa  
**flowerbed** květinový záhon  
**flush** spláchnout  
**footstool** podnožka  
**foundations** základy  
**four-poster bed** postel s nebesy  
**French doors / windows** zasklené dveře na terasu, balkon nebo zahradu  
**foyer** ['fɔɪeɪ] foyer, vstupní hala  
**fretsaw** rejdovačka (pila)  
**fridge** lednička  
**furnish** zařídit, vybavit nábytkem  
**garret** ['gærɪt] skrovné podkroví, mansarda (zvl. pro chudé umělce)  
**gazebo** [gə'zi:bəʊ] besídka, altán s výhledem  
**girder** ['gɜːdə] nosný trám  
**glazier** sklenář  
**gravel** ['grævəl] štěrka  
**greenhouse** skleník  
**gutter** okap, rýna; stoka, odtokové koryto  
**halls of residence** (GB) studentské koleje  
**handbasin** malé umyvadlo  
**handrail** zábradlí; madlo  
**handy** (US) šikovný  
**handyman** údržbář (manuálně zručný člověk)

**hatchet** ['hætʃɪt] sekyrka  
**haunted** ['həʊntɪd] kde straší, strašidelný  
**headboard** čelo postele  
**hedge** živý plot  
**hideous** ['hɪdiəs] ohyzdný, ošklivý, příšerný  
**high-rise (building)** výšková budova  
**hinge** pant  
**hoe** motyka, motyčka  
**hose(pipe)** hadice  
**hostel** ['hɒstəl] mládežnická ubytovna  
**hotbed** pařeniště; semeníště (např. zločinnosti)  
**hothouse** skleník  
**housing estate** sídliště  
**hovel** [hɒvəl] chatrč (špinavá)  
**igloo** iglú  
**insulation** [ɪnsju'leɪʃən] izolace  
**john (the) (coll)** záchod  
**joiner** truhlář  
**joints** spoje (dřevěné)  
**kettle** konvice; kotlík, kotel  
**keyhole** klíčová díрка  
**keys** klíče  
**knock down** zbourat (např. starý dům)  
**knocker** klepadlo  
**ladle** [leɪdl] naběračka, sběračka  
**landlady** bytná, paní domácí; hostinská  
**larder** spižárna  
**lav (coll), lavatory** záchod  
**lawn (mower)** ['lɔːn ,məʊə] trávnik, (sekačka na trávu)  
**leaky** děravý  
**library** knihovna (místnost)  
**lightning conductor** (GB), **lightning rod** (US) hromosvod  
**lintel** ['lɪntəl] překlad (nad oknem, nad dveřmi)  
**live alone** žít sám  
**loan** půjčka  
**locksmith** zámečnický  
**loft** půda  
**log** poleno  
**log cabin** srub  
**loo (coll)** záchod  
**lumber** (US) stavební dříví, řezivo  
**luxurious** [lʌg'ʒʊəriəs] přepychový  
**magnificent** skvostný, skvělý, velkolepý

**maintain** udržovat  
**mantelpiece** římsa nad krbem  
**mat** podložka, předložka  
**mattress** matrace  
**mend** spravit, opravit  
**mess** nepořádek, špína  
**messy** neuklizený  
**mixer** šlehač  
**mop** mop; setřít, utřít  
**mortar** malta  
**mortgage** ['mɔːɡɪdʒ] hypotéka; zatížit hypotékou, zastavit  
**mug** hrnek, kelímek  
**multimeter** voltmetr a ohmmetr  
**nails** hřebíky; nehty  
**ottoman** (US) taburet  
**oven** ['ʌvən] pec; kamna, trouba  
**overflow** přetéci  
**paintbrush** štětec  
**painting** malba, obraz; malování  
**paintroller** malířský váleček  
**pantry** spižárna, komora  
**path** cesta; vyšlapaná pěšina; chodník  
**patio** ['pætiəʊ] vydlážděný dvorek, vnitřní dvůr  
**peephole** kukátko ve dveřích  
**pelmet** (GB) garnýž  
**piano** piáno, klavír  
**pincers** štípací kleště  
**plank** fošna  
**plant** rostlina; pokojová květina  
**plant st** zasázet něco  
**plasterer** štukatér, omítkář  
**pleasant** příjemný  
**plumber** ['plʌmə] instalatér; klempíř  
**poky** těsný, malý, ubohý, chatrný  
**porch** veranda, krytý vchod  
**pouf(fe)** (GB) [pu:f] taburet  
**prick out** (GB) přepichovat, přesazovat sazeničky  
**pull down** provést demolici  
**rafters** krokve  
**railing** zábradlí  
**ramshackle** zanedbaný, sešlý, zchátralý, na spadnutí  
**rebuild** znovu postavit, přestavět  
**redecorate** vymalovat (znovu)  
**refrigerator** lednička  
**relieved** uklidněný, s úlevou  
**rent** činže, nájem(né); dát nebo vzít do nájmu  
**rent out** pronajímat, pronajmout

**restroom** (US) záchod  
**rewire** dát nové elektrické vedení  
**roller (paint roller)** váleček (malířský)  
**roofer** pokrývač  
**roomy** prostorný  
**row** (US) / **terraced** (GB) **house** řadový dům  
**rug** menší koberec, předložka  
**saw** pila (nástroj)  
**scaffolding** ['skæfəldɪŋ] lešení  
**scales** váha, váhy  
**screw** šroub  
**secluded** odlehlý, izolovaný  
**seedling** sazenička  
**settee** [se'ti:] pohovka, gauč, sofa  
**shabby** ošuntělý, rozbitý  
**shears** zahradnické nůžky  
**shed** kůlna  
**shelf** police, policička  
**shelves** police, regály  
**shingle** šindel; střešní krytina  
**shovel** ['ʃʌvəl] lopata  
**shower** sprcha  
**shutter** okenice; kovová roleta (v obchodě)  
**sickle** ['sɪkl] srp  
**sideboard** (GB) příborník  
**sieve** síto, sítko  
**sink** dřez, výlevka  
**skylight** vikýř, střešní okno  
**slate** břidlice; střešní taška  
**slip on** vklouznout do (oblečení, obuvi)  
**sloping** šikmý, svažující se  
**soap** mýdlo  
**socket** zásuvka  
**sofa** pohovka  
**sofa-bed** pohovka  
**soot** [sut] saze  
**spacious** prostorný, velký  
**spade** rýč; **spades** piky  
**spanner** (GB) klíč  
**sponge** houba  
**spotless** čistounký, bez poskvrnky  
**squat** nelegálně zabraný prázdný dům (byt); bydlet ve squatu  
**squeeze** zmáčknout, vymačkat; vecpat se; vymámit, vyždímat (peníze)  
**staircase-landing** odpočívadlo  
**standard lamp** (GB) stojací lampa  
**(step)-ladder** žebřík

**stone** kámen  
**stool** židle, stolička bez opěradla  
**storeroom** skladiště, skladovací prostor; komora  
**stove** kamna; sporák  
**strainer** sítko, síto  
**study** pracovna  
**switch** vypínač; přepínač; spínač  
**tap** (GB) kohoutek; vnitřní závit  
**tea-towel** utěrka  
**tear down** provést demolici  
**teepee, tepee** vlgvam, indiánský stan, týpí  
**tenant** nájemník  
**thin out** prothrávat, jednotlivat  
**threshold** ['θreʃhəʊld] práh  
**tidy** uklizený, upravený  
**tile** dlaždice; kachlička; taška  
**tiler** dlaždič; pokrývač; obkladač  
**timber** (GB) stavební dříví, řezivo  
**toaster** toustovač  
**toilet** záchod, toaleta  
**tools** nářadí  
**toothbrush** kartáček na čištění zubů  
**toothmug** kelímek na čištění zubů  
**toothpaste** zubní pasta  
**towel** ['taʊəl] ručník  
**trailer** (US) obytný přívěs  
**transplant** (US) přepichovat, rozsa-  
 zovat sazeničky  
**tub** vana  
**utilities** služby  
**valance** (US) ['væləns] garnýž,  
 krátká záclonka nad okny  
**wallpaper** tapeta; tapetovat  
**wardrobe** skříň (šatní); garderoba  
**washbasin** umyvadlo  
**weed** plevel; plít  
**well-kept** dobře udržovaný  
**wheelbarrow** kolečko, trakař  
**whitewash** líčit vápnem, bílit  
**windowsill** okenní parapet, římsa  
**wipe one's shoes** otřít, očistit si boty  
**workshop** dílna  
**wrench** (US) maticový klíč, hasák,  
 francouzský klíč

## FOOD

**almond(s)** ['ɑ:mənd (GB) 'ælmənd (US)] mandle  
**anise** ['ænis] anýz (rostlina, koření)  
**aniseed** ['ænisɪ:d] anýz (koření)  
**anorexia nervosa** [ˌænə'reksɪə nɜ:'vʊsə] anorexie (chorobné nechutenství)  
**appearance** [ə'piərəns] vzhled  
**appetiser** předkrm, chuťovka  
**apple** jablko  
**apricot** ['eɪprɪkɒt, 'æprɪkɒt] meruňka  
**asparagus** [ə'spærəgəs] chřest  
**aubergine** ['əʊbəʒi:n] lilek, baklažán  
**baby leeks** mladý pórek  
**bacon** slanina  
**bake** péci  
**banana** banán  
**barbecue** opékat na rožni, na jehle nebo na otevřeném ohni  
**barmaid** barmanka, číšnice  
**barman** (GB), **bartender** (US) barman, číšník  
**basil** ['bæzəl, 'beɪzəl] bazalka  
**beans** fazole  
**beansprouts** naklíčené fazole; fazolové výhonky  
**beat the eggs** šlehat vejce  
**beef** hovězí, hovězí maso  
**beer and ale** pivo a anglické pivo (nadměrně svrchní)  
**beer mug** půllitr (pivní)  
**biscuits** (GB) sušenky  
**bitter** hořký, trpký; hořké pivo  
**bitters** hořká piva  
**blackcock** tetřívka  
**blend** míchat, mísit, mixovat  
**boil** vařit  
**bottle** zavařovat  
**bouillon** ['bu:jɒŋ] bujón, hovězí vývar  
**bowl** [bəʊl] mísa, miska; šálek  
**breadcrumbs** strouhanka  
**broccoli** brokolice  
**broiler** (GB) brojler, mladé kuře; gril  
**broth** vývar (silný, zejm. masový)  
**brown ale** tmavé pivo  
**brownies** (US) čokoládové pečivo s ořechy  
**Brussels sprout** růžičková kapusta  
**brunch** pozdní snídaně spojená s obědem



**bulimia** [buˌlɪmiə -'li:mi-] bulimie (chorobná chuť k jídlu)  
**bun** sladká žemle (někdy s rozinkami)  
**butter** máslo  
**cabbage** zelí  
**caffeine** ['kæfi:n] kofein  
**calf**, **calves** tele  
**cake** koláč; dort  
**canapés** ['kænəpeɪz] chuťovky, jednohubky  
**candlelight** osvětlení svíčkami  
**candy floss** (GB) cukrová vata  
**capercaillie** [,kæpə'keɪljɪ] tetřev velký  
**capon** ['keɪpən] kapoun  
**cappuccino** [,kæpu'tʃi:nəʊ] kapučíno  
**caraway** kmín  
**carnivore** masožravec  
**carrot** mrkev  
**carryout** (US) restaurace s prodejem jídla přes ulici  
**casserole** ['kæsəreɪl] kastrol, rendlík; jídlo vařené nebo podávané v rendlíku  
**cassia** ['kæsiə] hrubá, nekvalitní skořice  
**catfish** sumec  
**cauliflower** ['kɒlɪˌflaʊə] květák  
**caviar** ['kæviɑ:] kaviár  
**celeriac** celer (bulva)  
**celery** celer (řapíky)  
**cereal** ['siəriəl] obilnina, potravina z obilovin  
**champagne** [ʃæm'peɪn] šampaňské, sekt  
**cheddar** ['tʃedə] čedar (sýr)  
**chef** [ʃef] šéfkuchař, vrchní kuchař  
**cherry** třešeň  
**chicken noodle soup** kuřecí polévka s nudlemi  
**chillies** čili (koření)  
**chips** (GB) hranolky, pommes frites  
**chocolate** čokoláda  
**chop** sekát; kotleta  
**chunks** kusy, kousky  
**cider** (GB) ['saɪdə] nápoj vyrobený z jablek (mírně alkoholický)  
**cinnamon** skořice  
**clove** hřebíček; stroužek  
**(club) soda** (US) soda  
**coconut** kokos  
**coffee** káva  
**contaminate** nakazit, znečistit

**cook** vařit, péci; kuchař  
**cooking** vaření; kuchyně  
**cornflour** kukuřičná mouka  
**cottage cheese** tvaroh, tvarohový sýr  
**courgette** (GB) [kɔ:'ʒet, kuə'ʒet] cuketa  
**courtship** dvoření se, námluvy  
**crackers** (US) sušenky  
**cream** smetana; krémová polévka  
**crisps** (GB) bramborové lupínky  
**cruet** (GB) ['kru:ɪt] karafa  
**crumbles** drť, drobky  
**crumpet** (GB) placka (z bílého chlebového těsta s dírkami, jí se s máslem)  
**crush** rozmačkat, rozdrtit  
**cucumber** okurka (salátová)  
**cuisine** [kwi:'zi:n] kuchyně (způsob vaření)  
**cumin** ['kju:mɪn, 'kʌmɪn] římský kmín, šabrej  
**currants** rybíz  
**curry powder** kari  
**custard** tekutý pudinkový krém (jako šodó)  
**cutlery** příbory  
**decaf** (inform) káva bez kofeinu  
**desirable** [dɪ'zaɪərəbl] vhodný, potřebný, žádoucí  
**dessert** [dɪ'zɜ:t] zákusek, moučník  
**dice** nakrájet na kostky  
**dill** kopr  
**dip** namočit, ponořit  
**dish** mísa, nádoba; jídlo  
**dissolve** [dɪ'zɒlv] rozpustit  
**dough** [daʊ] kynuté těsto  
**doughnut** kobliha  
**duck** kachna, kačena  
**dumplings** knedlíky  
**Edam** ['i:dæm] eidam (eidamský sýr)  
**eel** úhoř  
**eggplant** lilek, baklažán  
**expresso** espresso (káva)  
**extras** (GB) přílohy  
**fattening** způsobující tloustnutí  
**feast on st** pochutnávat si na něčem  
**figs** fíky  
**fillet** plátek, řízek  
**fish** ryba, ryby  
**flavouring** koření, esence, aróma, příchut'  
**foody** milovník jídla, labužník

**fork** vidlička; vidle  
**franchise** ['fræntʃaɪz] udělit povolení, licenci  
**fry** smažit, opékat  
**game** zvěřina  
**garlic** česnek  
**gelatine** ['dʒeləti:n] želatina  
**goose** husa  
**gooseberries** angrešt  
**gourmand** [gɔ:'mɑ:d] velký jedlík; gurmán  
**gourmet** ['gɔ:meɪ] gurmán, labužník  
**grains** obilniny  
**grapefruit** grapefruit  
**gratuity** [grə'tju:əti] spropitné  
**gravy** šťáva z masa  
**grill** grilovat; gril, rošt  
**groats** [grəʊts] kroupy, krupky; krupice  
**grounds** kávová sedlina  
**haggis** skotské jídlo (mleté skopové nebo telecí vnitřnosti s ovesnou moukou vařené ve skopovém žaludku)  
**ham** šunka  
**hors d'oeuvre** [ɔ:'dɜ:v] předkrm  
**horseradish** křen  
**inaccessible** [ɪnək'sesɪbl] nedostupný  
**inn** zájezdní hostinec; hospoda  
**jam** (GB), **jelly** (US) džem, zavařenina (ne z citrusových plodů)  
**jello** (US), **jelly** (GB) želé, rosol  
**juniper** ['dʒu:nɪpə] jalovec  
**kidneys** ledvinky  
**knife, knives** ['naɪf] nůž  
**kohlrabi** [,kɒl'ra:bi] kedlubna  
**lager** ['lɑ:gə] ležák, pivo  
**lamb** ['læm] jehně; jehněčí  
**landlord** (GB) hostinský; domácí  
**latte** (US) ['lɑ:tei] káva s horkým mlékem  
**lean** libový  
**leek** pórek  
**lemon** citrón  
**lemonade** limonáda  
**lentils** čočka  
**lettuce** hlávkový salát  
**liqueur** [lɪ'kjuə] likér  
**liquor** (US) ['lɪkə] destilát  
**liver balls** játrové knedlíčky  
**luncheonmeat** nářez, na plátky nakrájené maso nebo uzenina

**malt** [mɒlt] slad; karamelový nápoj  
**marinate** marinovat  
**marmalade** zavařenina (obvykle z citrusového ovoce)  
**mashed potatoes** šťouchané brambory; bramborová kaše  
**meat-eater** ten, kdo jí maso  
**medium** ['mi:diəm] středně propečený (o bifteku)  
**microwave** připravit v mikrovlnné troubě  
**milk jug** konvička na mléko  
**milkshake** (GB) mléčný koktejl  
**mince (meat)** [mins] mleté maso; mlít (zvl. hovězí)  
**mix** míchat, namíchat  
**mixers** nealkoholické nápoje (k přípravě míchaných nápojů, např. tonic)  
**muffin** sladký koláček  
**mug** hrnek, džbánec  
**mushroom** houba  
**mustard** ['mʌstəd] hořčice  
**mutton** skopové maso  
**muzak** ['mju:zæk] reprodukováná hudba (jako kulisa v obchodě a restauraci)  
**nachos** ['nætʃəʊz] kukuřičné placičky  
**napkins** ubrousky  
**nectarine** nektarinka  
**noodles** nudle  
**nourishment** ['nʌrɪʃmənt] výživa  
**nutmeg** muškátový oříšek  
**nutritional** výživný  
**offal** ['ɒfəl] vnitřnosti  
**onion** cibule  
**open sandwich** ['sæn(d)wɪtʃ] obložený chlebiček  
**orange** pomeranč  
**oregano** dobromysl  
**oust** [aʊst] vytlačit, vystřadit, vypudit  
**oven** [ʌv(ə)n] trouba; pec  
**overcooked** rozvařený, převařený  
**pancakes** palačinky  
**paprika** paprika (koření)  
**parsnip** pastinák  
**party** večírek  
**peach** broskev  
**peanuts** burské oříšky  
**peas** hrášek  
**peel** loupat, oloupat  
**pepper** paprika (zelenina)

**pheasant** [fezənt] bažant  
**pickle** nakládat (zeleninu)  
**pie** koláč s náplní uvnitř; piroh  
**pineapple** ananas  
**pinch of salt** špetka soli  
**pint** [paɪnt] pinta (asi půl litru)  
**plum** švestka  
**poach** hodit do vroucí vody a krátce povařit  
**poisoning** otrava (např. jídlem)  
**pop** ochucený nealkoholický nápoj s bublinkami  
**pop out** odskočit si ven (do restaurace, obchodu apod.)  
**pork** vepřové  
**potatoes** brambory  
**poultry** drůbež  
**preservatives** konzervační prostředky  
**price** cena  
**pub** hospoda  
**pudding** (GB) ['puːdɪŋ] moučník; náky  
**pulses** [pʌlsɪz] luštěniny  
**pure** [pjʊə] čistý  
**purée** ['pjʊəreɪ] rozmačkat na pyré  
**quality** kvalita  
**quarter** nakrájet na čtvrtky, rozčtvrtit  
**quinine** ['kwɪni:n] chinin  
**rabbit** králík  
**radishes** ředkvičky  
**raisins** rozinky  
**rare** krvavý (o bifteku)  
**raspberries** maliny  
**recipe(for)** ['resəpi] recept (na)  
**refectory** jídelna  
**rhubarb** ['ru:bɑ:b] rebarbora  
**risotto** [rɪ'zɒtəʊ] rizoto  
**roast** péci (maso)  
**rosemary** rozmarýn  
**rump** kýta  
**salami** salám  
**salmon** ['sæmən] losos  
**salt** [sɔ:lt] sůl  
**sanctions** postihy, sankce, protipatření  
**sandwiches** obložené chleby, sendviče  
**sardines** sardinky  
**satsuma** druh mandarinky  
**sauce** omáčka  
**saucepan** hluboká pánev, rendlík, kastrol

**saucer** podšálek  
**sauerkraut** kyselé zelí  
**sauté** ['səuteɪ] rychle opéci, osmažit  
**savour** vychutnat, pochutnat si; okořenit  
**savoury** pikantní, ostré chuti; chutný  
**scone** (GB) [skɒn, skəʊn] bochánek či buchta  
**scramble** míchat, zamíchat  
**seafood** mořské ryby, mořští korýši nebo měkkýši  
**seasonings** koření  
**shake** (US) mléčný koktejl  
**sheep** ovce  
**short** (GB), **shot** (US), **tot** sklenička, panák (alkoholického nápoje)  
**simmer** povařit na mírném ohni  
**sirloin** ['sɜ:lɔɪn] svíčková  
**skimmed milk** odtučněné, odstředěné mléko  
**slice** krájet na plátky; plátek  
**snack** malé občerstvení; svačina  
**soda (pop)** (US) limonáda  
**soda (water)** (GB) ['səʊdə] soda  
**spirits** lihoviny  
**spirits** (GB) destiláty  
**spoon** lžíce  
**squash** nápoj z rozmačkaného ovoce (zejm. citrónů, obvykle se ředí vodou)  
**starter** předkrm  
**steam** vařit v páře; pára  
**stew** dusit; dušené maso  
**stewed fruit** ovocný kompot  
**stir** míchat  
**stir-fries** čínská jídla připravovaná na pánvi  
**stock cube** kostka bujónu  
**strawberries** jahody  
**sugar bowl** cukřenka  
**sundae** ['sʌndeɪ] zmrzlinový pohár s ovocem  
**surroundings** prostředí  
**sweetcorn** sladká kukuřice  
**tablecloth** ubrus  
**tangerine** mandarinka  
**tart** (GB) ovocný košíček  
**taste** chuť, příchut'; ochutnat; vkus  
**teapot** čajová konvice  
**tearoom** čajovna  
**teaspoon** kávová lžička  
**teetotaler, teetotaler** (US) [ti:'təʊtələ] abstinent



**tender** jemný, měkký (o mase)  
**thicken** zahustit  
**tip** spropitné  
**toast** připít; připítek  
**toffees** ['tɒfɪz] karamely  
**tomatoes** rajčata  
**tough** [tʌf] tuhý (o mase)  
**trifle** (GB) zákusek (piškot máčený ve víně, s ovocem, šodó a šlehačkou)  
**tripe** dršťky  
**trout** [traʊt] pstruh  
**turkey** krocan  
**Turkish** turecký  
**tut** [tʌt] ts (zvuk vyjadřující netrpělivost, rozhořčení)  
**TV dinner** polotovar pro rychlou večeři  
**undercooked** nedovařený  
**vanilla** vanilka  
**veal** telecí (maso)  
**vegan** ['vi:gən] vegan (vegetarián, který nejí ani vejce a mléčné výrobky)  
**vegetables** zelenina  
**vegetarian** vegetarián  
**venison** ['venɪsən] maso vysoké zvěře, zvěřina  
**vinegar** ocet (vinný)  
**vintage wine** ['vɪntɪdʒ] archivní víno  
**waitress** číšnice  
**warrior** válečník  
**watermelon** vodní meloun  
**well-done** propečený (o bifteku)  
**whip** šlehat  
**whiskey** (US & Irish), **whisky** (GB) whisky  
**wholefood** (GB) zdravá výživa (potravin v přírodním stavu)  
**(wild) boar** divočák, divoký kanec  
**wine** víno (nápoj)  
**winebar** vinárna  
**wintergreen** libavka položená (olej z této rostliny)  
**yoghurt** ['jɒgət] jogurt  
**zucchini** (US) [zu'ki:ni] cuketa

## SHOPS

**ad, advert** (infml) inzerát  
**advertise** inzerovat  
**advertising** inzerce, reklama  
**affordable** [ə'fɔ:dəbl] dostupný, za slušnou cenu  
**allspice** nové koření; jamajský pepř  
**antiques, antique shop /dealer's** starožitnictví  
**attendant** obsluha  
**auction** ['ɔ:kʃən] aukce, dražba  
**baker's** pekařství, pekárna  
**bakery** pekařství, pekárna  
**banknote** (GB) bankovka  
**bargain** ['bɑ:gɪn] dobrá koupě, výhodná koupě  
**be in / out of stock** být / nebýt na skladě  
**beware of** dát si pozor na, mít se na pozoru před  
**bill** (US) bankovka  
**billboard** (US) velká reklamní tabule, plakátovací plocha  
**billfold** (US) náprsní taška; peněženka  
**bookshop** (GB), **bookstore** (US) knihkupectví  
**bottled** lahvé, v lahvi  
**braid** (US) [breɪd] cop  
**brand-new** zbrusu nový, úplně nový  
**butcher(s)** ['bʊtʃə(z)] řezník, řeznictví  
**can** (US) plechovka, konzerva  
**cart** (US) nákupní vozík  
**carton** krabice; lepenka, karton  
**cash desk** pokladna  
**cashier** pokladník  
**chain store** jedna prodejna obchodního řetězce; filiálka  
**cheap** levný, laciný  
**checkout (counter)** pokladna (v supermarketu)  
**chemist(s)** ['kemɪsts] drogerie, lékárna  
**chignon** ['ʃi:njɔ:] uzel vlasů v týle, drdol  
**china shop** obchod s porcelánem  
**close down** zrušit obchod  
**clothes** [kləʊðz] oblečení, šaty  
**cobbler** švec, opravář obuvi  
**come across st** náhodou na něco narazit  
**commercial** reklama (v rádiu nebo v televizi)  
**confectioner's** cukrárna

**consumer** spotřebitel  
**crate** přepravník, bedna  
**curlers** natáčky  
**customer** zákazník  
**cut-price** za sníženou cenu, zlevněný  
**deli** lahůdkářství  
**delicatessen** lahůdkářství (US též teplá jídla)  
**demand** poptávka; požadovat, požadovat se  
**discount** sleva; snížit cenu  
**dress a shop window** udělat výlohu, upravit výlohu  
**drugstore** (US) lékárna a drogerie  
**dye** nabarvit  
**exhibit** výstava; exponát; vystavovat  
**expensive** drahý, nákladný  
**extravagant** marnotratný; předražený  
**faulty goods** ['fɔ:ltɪ] vadné zboží  
**fishmonger's** (GB) ['fɪʃməŋgəz] prodejna ryb, rybárna  
**florist(s)** květinářství  
**flower-stand** stánek s květinami  
**fly-poster** plakát nebo leták vyvěšený bez povolení (Výraz pochází z vazby „to do st on the fly“, t.j. nelegálně.)  
**flyer** prospekt, reklamní leták  
**folder** složka  
**furniture** nábytek  
**garage** ['gærɑ:ʒ, 'gærɪdʒ, gə'ra:ʒ] autoopravná; garáž  
**giftshop** dárky, suvenýry (obchod)  
**glassware** obchod se sklem  
**greengrocer's** obchod se zeleninou a ovocem  
**grocer's** obchod s potravinami, smíšené zboží, koloniál  
**guaranteed** [gærən'ti:d] se zárukou  
**haberdasher's** [hæbə'dæʃəz] galanterie (GB); pánské oděvy (US)  
**hair spray** lak na vlasy  
**hairelip** sponka do vlasů, pinetka  
**hairdo** účes  
**hairstylist** kaderník  
**hairdryer** vysoušeč vlasů, fén  
**hairpin** sponka do vlasů  
**handout** prospekt, reklamní leták  
**hardware** (US) železářství  
**healthfood shop** zdravá výživa (obchod)  
**highlights** melír  
**hoarding** (GB) ['hɔ:dɪŋ] reklamní tabule (např. na sportovním stadionu)

**inexpensive** levný, nijak drahý  
**inferior goods** podřadné zboží  
**instalment, installment** (US) splátka, část, díl, pokračování  
**INVENTORY** (US) INVENTURA  
**ironmonger's** (GB) ['aɪən,mʌŋgəz] železářství  
**irresistible** neodolatelný  
**jar** zavařovací sklenice, nádoba  
**jeweller's** klenotnictví  
**lacquer** ['lækə] lak na vlasy  
**laund(e)rette / laundromat** (US) [ˌlɔːn'dret] samoobslužná prádelna  
**leaflet** leták, prospekt  
**line up** (US) postavit se do fronty  
**line** (US) fronta  
**loaf, loaves** bochník  
**locker** (US) mrazicí box, který si lze pronajmout ke skladování většího množství potravin  
**manicure** ['mænikjʊə] manikúra  
**market** trh  
**market stall** prodejní stánek na trhu  
**marketplace** tržiště  
**milk-shop** mlékárna  
**milkman** mlékař  
**milkround** trasa denní roznášky mléka  
**miller** ['mɪlə] mlynář  
**moderate** ['mɒdərət] mírný, umírněný  
**nail polish** lak na nehty  
**napkin** ubrousek  
**newsagent's** obchod s novinami  
**note** (GB) bankovka  
**notion's** (US) galanterie  
**off-licence** (GB) obchod s povolením prodávat lihoviny přes ulici  
**optician's** optika, obchod s brýlemi  
**packet, pack** balíček, krabička, sáček  
**payment** platba  
**perfume** parfém  
**perm(anent waves)** trvalá (ondulace)  
**pharmacy** (US) lékárna  
**pickpocket** kapesní zloděj, kapsář  
**pipe** dýmka  
**plait** (GB) [plæt] cop, vrkoč  
**poster** plakát  
**pricelist** ceník  
**purchase** ['pɜːtʃəs] koupit; koupě  
**quality goods** kvalitní zboží  
**queue** (GB) [kjuː] fronta  
**queue up for...** (GB) postavit se do fronty na...

**reasonable** rozumný, slušný, přijatelný  
**receipt** [rɪ'siːt] stvrzenka, lístek, paragon  
**record shop / music shop** obchod s gramodeskami / hudebními nosiči  
**reduce a price** snížit cenu  
**reduction** sleva  
**refund** [rɪ'fʌnd] vrátit peníze; ['rɪ:fʌnd] vrácení peněz, náhrada  
**retail price** maloobchodní cena  
**rip sb off** (coll) natáhnout, okrást někoho  
**rollers** natáčky  
**run out of st** vyčerpat zásobu něčeho, dojit  
**sale** prodej, výprodej  
**sales gimmicks** ['gɪmɪks] reklamní obchodní triky  
**salesman** (US) prodáváč; obchodní cestující  
**saleswoman** (US) prodáváčka; obchodní cestující  
**sandwich** sendvič, chlebiček  
**seconds** kazové zboží, zboží druhé jakosti  
**shampoo** [ʃæm'puː] umýt vlasy; šampon  
**shoemaker** obuvník, švec  
**shoeshop** obchod s obuví  
**shop for st** nakupovat, shánět něco  
**shop** (GB) obchod  
**shop-soiled** zboží zašpiněné v obchodě  
**shopkeeper** majitel obchodu, obchodník  
**shoplifter** zloděj, který kradе v obchodě  
**shopper** zákazník v obchodě  
**shopwindow** výklad  
**short-change** ošidit při vrácení drobných  
**shrink-wrapped** zabaleno do ochranné folie  
**sold out** vyprodáno  
**sponsorship** sponzorování, finanční podpora  
**sports goods** sportovní zboží  
**stationer's** papírnictví  
**stay open** být otevřený  
**steak** [steɪk] biftek, řízek  
**STOCKTAKING** (GB) INVENTURA  
**store** (US) obchod  
**string bag** síťka, síťovka (na nákup)  
**supermarket** supermarket  
**superstore** velký obchod, který prodává téměř vše

**supplies** dodávky; zásoby  
**supply** dodat, dodávat, zásobovat; nabídka  
**sweetshop** cukrárna  
**tablecloth** ['teɪbl,klɒθ] ubrus  
**take in sb** podvést, napálit někoho  
**take st back** vzít něco zpět  
**thrifty** šetrný  
**throw away** zahodit, vyhodit  
**tightwad** (US) ['taɪtwɒd] skrblik, držgrešle  
**till** příruční pokladna; zásuvka na peníze v pokladně  
**tin** (GB) konzerva  
**tint one's hair** udělat si přeliv  
**tobacconist's** tabák  
**toyshop** hračkářství  
**trolley** (GB) ['trɒli] nákupní vozík; servírovací stolek; vozík  
**used goods** použité zboží  
**VAT (value added tax)** DPH (daň z přidané hodnoty)  
**wallet** (GB) ['wɒlɪt] náprsní taška, pánská peněženka  
**warranty** ['wɒrənti] záruka  
**wholefood** ['həʊl,fuːd] biopotraviny  
**wholesale price** velkoobchodní cena  
**wholesaler** velkoobchodník  
**wig** paruka  
**wrapper** ['ræpə] obal



## CLOTHES

**alterations** [ˌɒltə'reɪʃən] přešívání oděvů  
**amber** ['æmbə] jantarový, jantarově žlutý; jantar  
**ankle-length** ['æŋklɪleŋθ] po kotníky; kotníčkový  
**anorak** (GB) nepromokavá větrovka s kapucí  
**apron** ['eɪprən] zástěra  
**aquamarine** [ˌækwəmə'reɪn] akvamarinový, akvamarin  
**armhole** průrámek  
**baggy** ['bæɡɪ] příliš volný, plandavý; vytažený  
**barred** pruhovaný, proužkovaný, s širšími pruhy  
**bathrobe** (US) koupací plášť  
**batik** ['bætik, bə'ti:k] batikovaný; batika  
**beaded** ['bi:diɪd] s perličkami, s korálky  
**bellbottoms** zvonové kalhoty  
**belt** pásek  
**bib and braces** kalhoty s laclem  
**bikini** bikini  
**bleach** [bli:tʃ] bělit; odbarvovat  
**bodysuit** body, elastický oděv  
**boots** vysoké boty, kotníčkové boty  
**bra** podprsenka  
**bracelet** náramek  
**braces** (GB) šle  
**brassiere** (fml) ['bræziə] podprsenka  
**briefs** spodní kalhotky, pánské slipy  
**brocade** [brə'keɪd] brokát  
**brogues** [brəʊgz] perforované pánské polobotky  
**brooch** [brəʊtʃ] brož  
**brownish** dohněda  
**buckle** přezka, spona  
**cagoule** (GB) [kə'ɡu:l] nepromokavá bunda s kapucí  
**calf-length** po lýtku  
**camo(uflage)** maskáče  
**cane** hůl; rákoska  
**cardigan** zapínací pletená vesta; svetr na zapínání  
**carmine** ['kɑ:mɪn] karmín  
**casual** ['kæʒuəl] neformální, ležérní  
**change into st** převléci se do něčeho  
**change out of st** vysvléci se z něčeho  
**check** kostkovaný; pepito  
**checked** kostkovaný; pepito

**chequered** ['tʃekəd] kostkovaný  
**chintz** [tʃɪnts] pestře potištěný kartoun  
**clash** neladit, tlouci se (o barvách)  
**clasp** spona, sponka; přezka; háček  
**clean** čistit  
**clip earrings** ['lɪpɪŋz] klipsy  
**clogs** dřeváky  
**colourfast** stálobarevný  
**conceited** domýšlivý  
**cord(uroy)** manšestr; manšestrový  
**costume jewellery** bižuterie  
**cotton** bavlna; bavlněný  
**court shoes** lodičky  
**couturier** ['ku:tjuəriɪ] návrhář moderního dámského oblečení, krejčí  
**cowneck** límec s kapucí  
**crease-resistant** nemačkový  
**crew neck** výstřih ke krku  
**crimson** karmínový  
**crocodile** krokodýlí (kůže)  
**cuff** manžeta rukávu  
**cufflink** manžetový knoflíček  
**cuffs** (US) záložky kalhot  
**culottes** [kju:'lɒts, ku'lɒts] kalhotová sukně  
**curious** zvědavý; zvědavý  
**cut out (a garment)** stříhnout látku na oděv  
**cut-offs** uštížené džínsy  
**darn** štepovat, látat, vyspravit; ztraceně  
**denim** džínsovína  
**dotted** tečkovaný, puntíkový  
**double-breasted suit** dvouřadový oblek  
**down jacket** péřová bunda  
**drainpipes** (coll) trubky  
**dress** dámské šaty; obléci  
**dress up** obléci se svátečně  
**dress up as...** převléci se za...  
**drip-dry** prádlo, které není třeba žehlit; vypere se a pověsí, aby uschlo  
**dungarees** (GB) [ˌdʌŋɡə'ri:z] monterky  
**elasticated** elastický, pružný  
**embroider** vyšívat  
**embroidered** vyšíváný; zdobený  
**face mask** maska na obličej (ochranná, plet'ová...)  
**faded** vybledlý  
**fashionable** moderní  
**fashions** móda

**fawn** [fɔ:n] žlutohnědý, světle hnědý  
**felt** plst  
**fit** dokonale padnout; hodit se  
**flannel** vlněný flanel; žínka  
**flannels** flanelové kalhoty  
**flares** zvonové kalhoty  
**flat-heeled /low-heeled** s nízkým podpatkem  
**floral** květinový  
**flowered** květovaný, posetý květinami  
**foldaway umbrella** skládací deštník  
**footwear** obuv  
**fur** [fɜ:] kožesína  
**gabardine** ['gæbədi:n] gabardén  
**gaiters** štulpny, návleky  
**galoshes** galoše  
**garment** oblečení; část oděvu, prádla  
**gaudy** ['ɡɔ:di] křiklavý  
**gem** drahokam  
**gloves** rukavice  
**goatskin** koží kůže, kozina, kozinka  
**goggles** ['ɡɒɡlz] ochranné brýle (lyžařské, potápěčské...)  
**gown** ['ɡaʊn] róba; talár; dlouhé splyvavé šaty  
**greyish** šedavý, našedlý; prošedivělý  
**gumboots** gumové holínky, gumáky  
**handbag** (GB) kabelka  
**handkerchief** kapesník  
**hand-me-downs** oděvy po někom  
**hankie** (infml) kapesník  
**hat** klobouk  
**headband** čelenka  
**heavy** silný, masivní, pevný  
**heavy-duty** pevný, trvanlivý  
**heel** podpatek; podrazit  
**hem** obroubit, olemovat; obruba, lem  
**hemline** dolní lem  
**herringbone** vzor rybí kost  
**homespun** ručně tkaná látka z hrubé mykané příze  
**ill-fitting** nepadnoucí, špatně sedící  
**informal** neformální  
**iron** žehlit; žehlička  
**jersey** svetřík s dlouhým rukávem; triko; nátělník; fotbalový dres; cyklistický trikot  
**jockstrap** suspenzor  
**jumper** (GB) lehký svetr  
**jumper** (US) šatová zástěra bez rukávů  
**jumpers** (US) dupačky, dětské pyžamo vcelku

<b>jumpsuit</b> kombinéza	<b>off-the-peg</b> (GB) konfekční	<b>rolled up</b> ohrnutý
<b>karakul</b> [kærəku:l] kožešina jehňat karakulské ovce	<b>off-the-rack</b> konfekční	<b>roughly-spun</b> ['rʌfli spʌn] hrubě tkaný
<b>kerchief</b> šátek	<b>oilskins</b> nepromokavý oděv (např. pro rybáře)	<b>round neck</b> kulatý výstřih
<b>kidskin</b> kůzlečí kůže, kozinka	<b>overalls</b> (US) montérky; pracovní kombinéza	<b>sable</b> sobol
<b>kilt</b> skotská sukně; kilt	<b>overcoat</b> svrchník, převlečník, zimník	<b>safety helmet</b> ochranná přilba
<b>knee-length</b> po kolena	<b>overshirt</b> volná košile	<b>sandals</b> sandály
<b>kneesocks</b> [ni:sɒks] podkolenky	<b>pads</b> vycpávky	<b>satin</b> satén
<b>knickerbockers</b> (US) ['nikə,bɒkəz] pumpky	<b>paisley</b> ['peɪzli] kašmírový vzor	<b>scarf</b> šátek; šála
<b>knickers</b> (GB) ['nikəz] spodní kalhotky	<b>paisley tie</b> vázanka s kašmírovým vzorem	<b>separates</b> ['sepəreɪts] jednotlivé samostatné části oblečení, které lze kombinovat
<b>knitwear</b> pletené zboží	<b>pajamas</b> (US) [pe'dʒɑ:məz] pyžamo	<b>sew</b> [səʊ] šít
<b>lace</b> krajka; tkanička	<b>panties</b> (US), <b>pants</b> (GB) spodní kalhotky	<b>shades</b> (coll) sluneční brýle
<b>lambskin</b> jehněčí kožešinka, beránek; vydělaná jehněčí kůže	<b>pants</b> (US) kalhoty	<b>shine</b> lesknout se; leštit
<b>lapel</b> [lə'pel] klopa	<b>pantyhose</b> (US) punčocháče	<b>shirt</b> košile
<b>leather</b> kůže	<b>parka</b> ['pɑ:kə] kabátek po kolena s kapucí lemovanou kožešinou	<b>shoelace</b> tkanička
<b>leggings</b> kamaše	<b>parka</b> (US) nepromokavá větrovka s kapucí	<b>short-sleeved</b> s krátkými rukávy
<b>leotard</b> ['li:ətɑ:d] baletní, cvičební, gymnastický trikot	<b>pattern</b> ['pætən] vzor; střih	<b>shorts</b> šortky, kraťasy
<b>let out</b> vypustit	<b>pendant</b> přívěšek	<b>shrink</b> srazit se
<b>lightweight</b> lehký, odlehčený	<b>petticoat</b> spodnička	<b>silk</b> hedvábí
<b>limegreen</b> žlutozelený	<b>pigskin</b> vepřovice, vepřová kůže	<b>singlet</b> (GB) nátělník, tílko
<b>line-dry</b> sušit na šňůře	<b>pleated skirt</b> ['pli:tɪd skɜ:t] skládaná sukně	<b>size</b> velikost
<b>linen</b> ['lɪnɪn] plátno	<b>plimsolls</b> (GB) ['plɪmsɒlz] tenisky; plátěné boty	<b>slacks</b> volné kalhoty
<b>lingerie</b> ['læ:nʒəri] jemné prádlo, prádélko	<b>plush</b> [plʌʃ] plyš; plyšový	<b>sleeve</b> rukáv
<b>lining</b> podšívka, vložka	<b>polish</b> leštit; krém	<b>slip</b> dámské kombiné
<b>loafers</b> mokasíny	<b>polka-dot</b> s bílými puntíky, puntíko- vaný, puntíkatý	<b>slip off</b> rychle se svléci
<b>loose</b> [lu:s] volný; vypustit	<b>poloneck</b> (GB) rolák	<b>slip-ons</b> boty, do kterých se pouze vklouzne
<b>loosen</b> ['lu:sən] povolit, uvolnit	<b>polyester</b> polyester, polyesterový	<b>slippers</b> pantofle
<b>loud</b> křiklavý, řvavý, nápadný	<b>(precious) gems</b> drahokamy	<b>slit</b> rozparek
<b>lukewarm</b> vlažný; lhostejný	<b>preshrunk</b> předsrážený, přepraný	<b>snakeskin</b> hadí kůže, hadinka
<b>mac</b> plášť do deště	<b>prêt-à-porter</b> konfekce	<b>sole</b> podrážka; podrazit
<b>mackintosh</b> plášť do deště	<b>prickly</b> pichlavý, kousavý; popudlivý	<b>spats</b> [spæts] psí dečky, návleky
<b>maroon</b> [mə'ru:n] kaštanový	<b>pullover</b> (GB) pulovr, silnější svetr oblékaný přes hlavu	<b>speckled</b> kropenatý, stříkaný
<b>match</b> hodit se	<b>pumps</b> pánské lakové střevíce; dám- ské lodičky	<b>spectacles, specs</b> [spektəklɪz, speks] (dioptrické) brýle
<b>material</b> látka	<b>purple</b> ['pɜ:pl] nachový, purpurový	<b>spin-dry</b> ždímat v odstředivce
<b>mauve</b> [məʊv] lila, slabě nafialovělý	<b>put st on</b> obléci si něco	<b>sportswear</b> sportovní oblečení
<b>mending</b> spravování, opravy	<b>pyjamas</b> (GB) [pe'dʒɑ:məz] pyžamo	<b>starch</b> škrobit; škrob
<b>miniskirt</b> minisukně	<b>quilted</b> ['kwɪltɪd] prošíváný	<b>stitch</b> šít, sešít, steh; oko (při pletení)
<b>mink</b> norek	<b>rack</b> (US) věšák; přihrádka; police	<b>stilettos</b> [sti'letəʊz] boty na jehlovém podpatku
<b>mittens</b> palčáky	<b>raincoat</b> plášť do deště	<b>stockings</b> punčochy
<b>moccasins</b> mokasíny	<b>ready-to-wear</b> konfekční	<b>strap</b> pásek, řemínek
<b>model</b> model(ka), manekýn(ka)	<b>rinse</b> vymáchat, propláchnout; vy- pláchnout	<b>stretch</b> natahovat
<b>nastiness</b> nevlídnost, protivnost	<b>rip-zip</b> (coll) suchý zip	<b>striped</b> [straɪpt] pruhovaný, prouž- kovaný
<b>necklace</b> ['nekləs] náhrdelník	<b>roll up</b> vyhrnout, vykasat	<b>studs</b> [stʌdz] cvočky; náušnice jako knoflíčky
<b>nickname</b> přezdívka		<b>stylish</b> stylový
<b>nightdress</b> (GB), <b>nightgown</b> (US), <b>nightie</b> noční košile		<b>suede</b> [sweɪd] jemná hlazená kůže, semiš
<b>nutria</b> nutrie		
<b>observant</b> všímavý, pozorný		



## CLOTHES

**suit** slušet; oblek  
**sunglasses** sluneční brýle  
**suspenders** (US) šle  
**sweater** (US) ['swetə] silnější vlněný svetr oblékaný přes hlavu  
**sweatpants** ['swetpænts] tenké tepláky  
**sweatshirt** mikina  
**sweatsuit** tepláková souprava  
**T-shirt** tričko  
**tacky** nevkusný, kýčovitý, vyšlý z módy  
**tailor** krejčí  
**tailor's** krejčovství  
**tailor-made** šitý na míru  
**take in** zabrat  
**take up** zabrat, zvednout, zkrátit  
**tan** světlehnědý  
**tank top** vestička s výstřihem  
**tape measure** (krejčovský) metr; (měřicí) pásmo  
**tawny** ['tɔ:ni] hnědožlutý  
**tepid** vlažný, odražený  
**terry (cloth)** ['teri] froté  
**thimble** ['θɪmbl] náprstek  
**tie** vázanka, kravata; zavázat  
**tie-dyed** batikovaný (vyvazováním)  
**tiepin** jehlice do kravaty  
**tight** těsný  
**tights** (GB) punčochové kalhoty  
**tissues** ['tɪʃu:z; 'tɪʃu:z] papírové kapesníky  
**toiletries** toaletní potřeby  
**tracksuit** tepláky  
**trainers** tenisky  
**trenchcoat** trenčkot, nepromokavý kabát  
**trendy** módní, hypermoderní  
**trousers** (GB) kalhoty  
**try on** vyzkoušet  
**tumble-dry** ['tʌmbl draɪ] usušit v sušičce  
**tumble-dryer / drier** sušička na prádlo  
**tunic** ['tju:nɪk] tunika  
**turn-up collar** stojáček  
**turnups** (GB) záložky nohavic  
**turquoise** ['tɜ:kwoɪz] tyrkysový  
**turtleneck** (GB) ['tɜ:tɪnek] stojáček  
**turtleneck** (US) rolák  
**tweed** tvíd  
**twill** kepr

**twinset** souprava dámského pulovru a vesty, obvykle téže barvy  
**umbrella** deštník  
**underpants** (GB) trenky, slipy (pánské spodní prádlo)  
**undershirt** (US) podvlékačí tričko  
**underwear** spodní prádlo  
**undress** vysvléci se  
**V-neck** výstřih ve tvaru V, věčko  
**veil** závoj  
**velcro** ['velkrəu] suchý zip  
**velour** [və'luə] velur, tkanina s hustým vlasem, aksamit, samet  
**velvet** samet  
**vermilion** [və'mɪliən] rumělka  
**vest** (GB) nátlčník  
**vest** (US) vesta  
**waistcoat** (GB) vesta  
**waterproofs** oblečení do deště  
**wearer** ten, kdo nosí (nějaké oblečení)  
**wool** vlna  
**woollen** ['wʊlən] vlněný, vyrobený z vlny  
**working** pracovní  
**worn-out** obnošený  
**wristbands** nátepníčky; náramky; manžety  
**wristwatch** ['rɪstwɒtʃ] náramkové hodinky  
**yellowish** do žluta  
**zigzag** [zɪgzæg] cikcak, klikatá čára; klikkovat; klikatit se; entlovací

## WORK & LEISURE

**account** [ə'kaʊnt] účet, konto; zpráva  
**account (for)** být zodpovědný (za); způsobit, zapříčinit  
**accountant** účetní  
**accounting** účetnictví  
**addiction to st** závislost na něčem; narkomanie, návyk  
**address** adresa; oslovit  
**advanced** pokročilý  
**aftershave** voda po holení  
**agricultural** zemědělský  
**alternative** alternativa  
**amusing** zábavný  
**antiques** [æn'ti:ks] starožitnosti  
**aperture (f-stop)** ['æpətʃə] clona; světlost; otvor, šterbina  
**application (form)** přihláška (formulář)  
**apply (for)** podat žádost, zažádat; ucházet se  
**apprenticeship** učení, učňovská léta  
**artist** umělec, zvl. malíř  
**attitude to(wards) st or sb** postoj, přístup k něčemu nebo někomu  
**autograph** ['ɔ:təgrɑ:f] autogram; rukopis díla  
**badge** odznak, znak; medaile  
**banknote / bill** (US) bankovka  
**barefoot(ed)** bosý  
**beehive** úl; včelín  
**beekeeper** včelař  
**betting shop** sázková kancelář  
**bilingual** [baɪ'lɪŋɡwəl] dvoujazyčný, bilingvální  
**blackjack** (US) jednadvacet (hazardní hra)  
**bleary-eyed** ['bliəriəɪd] ne docela probuzený; mající kalné, zarudlé oči; uslzený  
**bloodthirsty** ['blʌd,θɜ:sti] krvelačný  
**blue-collar** manuálně pracující, dělnický  
**boozier** (GB coll) putyka  
**building society** (GB) stavební spořitelna  
**busking** [bʌskɪŋ] hraní na hudební nástroj za peníze (na ulici apod.)  
**bustling** rušný, kypící životem  
**butcher** ['bʊtʃə] řezník  
**camcorder** videokamera  
**carpentry** tesařina; tesařská práce  
**cartridge** nábojnice, patrona; náboj  
**cashier** [kæ'ʃɪə] pokladník, pokladník

**casino** [kə'si:nəʊ] kasino  
**charity** ['tʃærəti] dobročinná organizace, dobročinnost  
**check** (US) účet, účtenka; šek; kontrola; odškrtnout, zatrhnout  
**checking account** (US) běžný účet (v bance)  
**chemin-de-fer** [ʃə'mæn də 'feə] druh bakaratu  
**cheque** (GB) šek  
**china** porcelán  
**clock in** označit dobu příchodu na píchacích hodinách  
**clock out** označit dobu odchodu na píchacích hodinách  
**cloth** [klɒθ] látka; utěrka; hadr  
**coin** mince  
**collector** sběratel  
**consciously** ['kɒnʃəsli] vědomě; úmyslně  
**conscript** (GB) povinně odvedený do armády, branec  
**conscription** (GB) povinná vojenská služba, branná povinnost  
**counterfeit** ['kauntəfɪ:t] padělek; padělaný, falešný  
**craftsman** řemeslník, umělec, mistr svého oboru  
**craps** hra v kostky s dvěma kostkami  
**crochet** ['krəʊʃeɪ] háčkovat; háčkování  
**current account** (GB) běžný účet (v bance)  
**curriculum vitae** (c.v.) [kəˌrɪkjʊləm'vi:tai, 'vɑiti:] životopis  
**darkroom** temná komora  
**day off** volný den  
**dealer** krupiéř; prodejce  
**degree** akademická hodnost, titul  
**deliberately** úmyslně, schválně, záměrně  
**developer** vývojka  
**dice** kostka; kostky; krájet na kostky  
**die** (US) hrací kostka; lisovadlo; zemřít  
**diligence** ['dɪlɪdʒəns] píle, pracovitost, přičinlivost  
**disenchanted** rozčarováný, zbavený iluzí  
**doctor** doktor, lékař  
**doctorate** doktorát  
**dole** (GB coll) podpora v nezaměstnanosti  
**doll** panenka  
**doze / drop off** usnout, zdřímnout si

**draft** (US) povinná vojenská služba, branná povinnost; koncept  
**drafter** (US) povinně odvedený do armády  
**dressmaker** švadlena, dámská/ý krejčí  
**dressmaking** šití dámských šatů, dámské krejčovství  
**drop in on sb** zastavit se u někoho na návštěvu  
**drowsy** ['drauzi] ospalý, mátožný  
**early riser** ranní ptáče  
**education** vzdělání  
**elementary** základní  
**elevenes** (GB) desátka, dopolední svačina; přesnídávka  
**embroidery** [ɪm'brɔɪdərɪ] výšivka; vyšívání  
**employer** zaměstnavatel  
**employment office** (US) úřad práce  
**enlistee** dobrovolník  
**enterprise** podnik; podnikání; podnikavost  
**equipment** zařízení, vybavení  
**example** příklad, vzor  
**exchange** výměna; vyměnit  
**experience** praxe  
**fail** neudělat, neuspět  
**female** žena, ženský  
**file** pořadač; soubor; složka; dokumenty  
**fill in / out (a form)** vyplnit (formulář)  
**fixer** ustalovač  
**fluent** plynulý  
**focus** ohnisko; zaostřit  
**forgery** podvrh, zfalšovaná kopie; padělek  
**freelance** na volné noze  
**full-time** na plný úvazek  
**genuine** opravdový, pravý  
**golden handshake** (GB) odměna udělená významnému zaměstnanci (při propuštění nebo odchodu, odstupné)  
**go on strike** začít stávkovat  
**hard-hat worker** stavební dělník  
**have st on** mít něco domluveného  
**health insurance, health plan** (US), **health scheme** (GB) nemocenské pojištění  
**hobby** koníček, hobby  
**honeycomb** ['hʌnikəʊm] plástek  
**hustle** ['hʌsl] ruch, shon; spěchat, honit se  
**incompetence** [ɪŋ'kɒmpɪtənts] neschopnost, nezpůsobilost

**individuality** osobitost; individualita  
**initiative** [ɪ'nɪʃɪətɪv, ɪ'nɪʃɪətɪv] iniciativa  
**insomniac** [ɪn'sɒmni,æk] osoba trpící nespavostí  
**intermediate** středně pokročilý  
**interview** přijímací pohovor  
**interviewee** dotazovaná osoba  
**in the black** být v plusu, mít zisk  
**in the red** v červených číslech, zadlužený  
**involved** angažovaný  
**jackpot** bank v pokeru; stále zvyšovat vklad až do výhry  
**jobless** nezaměstnaný  
**journalist** ['dʒɜːnəlɪst] novinář  
**knitting** ['nɪtɪŋ] pletení  
**lay off** propustit (dočasně nebo trvale)  
**laziness** lenost  
**loathe st** [lʌʊð] mít odpor, averzi vůči něčemu; hnusit si něco  
**lottery** loterie  
**male** muž(ský)  
**managerial** manažerský, vedoucí  
**manual** manuální, pracující rukama nebo tělesně  
**mask** (GB) kryt obličeje pro včelaře  
**military service** vojenská služba  
**moonlighting** (coll) melouchaření  
**mortgage** ['mɔːɡɪdʒ] hypotéka; zatížit hypotékou, zastavit  
**night shift** noční směna  
**obedience** [ə'biːdiəns] poslušnost  
**obsession with st** posedlost něčím; utkvělá představa  
**occupation** povolání, zaměstnání  
**odd-jobs** příležitostná zaměstnání  
**office-worker** administrativní pracovník  
**on income support** (US), **on welfare** (US), **on the dole** (GB coll) (žít) z podpory, (být) na podpoře  
**on social security** (žít) z podpory (ze sociálních dávek)  
**overdraft** debetní saldo (poukaz na částku přesahující hotovost); dočasný úvěr  
**overdraw** vybrat víc než je vklad, přecerpat  
**overdrawn** přecerpaný  
**overexposed** přeexponovaný  
**oversleep** zaspát  
**overtime** práce přes čas  
**part-time** na částečný úvazek



**passionately** zaníceně, zaujatě;  
vášnivě

**pastime** zábava; hra, sport; rekreace

**pattern** stříh; vzor; vzorek; model

**phone bill** účet za telefon

**phoney** (US) ['fəʊni] falešný

**pin** špendlík; kolík; čep

**pink-collar** týkající se povolání, které  
obvykle vykonávají ženy (např.  
zdravotní sestry, sekretářky)

**plumber** ['plʌmə] instalatér

**poker** poker (karetní hra)

**pontoon** (GB) [pɒn'tu:n] oko, jedna-  
dvacet (karetní hra)

**precious** ['preʃəs] drahocenný,  
vzácný

**predecessor** ['pri:di:sesə] před-  
chůdce; předek

**priceless** nesmírně cenný, neocenitelný

**probation period** zkušební lhůta

**procrastination**

[prəʊ,kraɪstɪ'neɪʃən] otálení, vá-  
hání, odkládání povinností

**professional (e.g. doctor, lawyer)**  
vysokoškolsky vzdělaný odborník  
(např. lékař, právník)

**promotion** povýšení; propagace,  
reklama

**prospects** vyhlídky do budoucna

**prune** prořezat, ořezat (strom)

**punctuality** [ˌpʌŋktju'ælɪti] přes-  
nost, dochvilnost

**qualifications** předpoklady, schop-  
nosti, kvalifikace, způsobilost

**recession** [rɪ'seʃən] hospodářský  
pokles, recese

**redundancy payment** (GB) odstupné  
tomu, kdo byl propuštěn

**re-enlistment** (US) dobrovolné naru-  
kování vojáků v záloze

**repossess st** [ˌri:pə'zes] vzít si něco  
zpět

**reputation** pověst, reputace

**responsible for st, sb** zodpovědný za  
něco, někoho

**résumé** (US) ['rezju:meɪ, 'rezumeɪ]  
životopis

**riot** nepokoje, povstání

**roulette** [ru:'let] ruleta

**sabbatical** roční volno, vědecká  
dovolená univerzitního profesora,  
opakující se nejdříve po šesti letech

**sack** vyhodit, vyrazit (ze zaměstnání)

**salary** plat

**savings and loan bank / association**  
(US) stavební spořitelna

**schedule** ['ʃedju:l, 'skedju:l] plán,  
program; rozvrh hodin; jízdní,  
letový řád

**(a pair of) scissors** ['sɪzəz] nůžky

**seamstress** švadlena, šička

**set up st** založit, zřídit něco

**severance pay** (US) ['sevərəns]  
odměna udělená významnému  
zaměstnanci při propuštění nebo  
nuceném odchodu, odchodné

**sewing** ['səʊɪŋ] šití

**sewing machine** šicí stroj

**sex** pohlaví; sex

**shave** holit se, oholit

**shortlist** zařadit do užšího výběru

**shortlisted for** v užším výběru

**sick pay** nemocenská (peníze)

**sickness benefit** (GB) nemocenské  
dávky

**sideline** vedlejší nebo druhé zaměst-  
nání

**sign on** vstoupit do zaměstnání a uza-  
vřít zaměstnaneckou smlouvu

**similarities** podobné nebo společné  
rysy; analogie

**situations vacant (ads)** (GB) volná  
místa (inzerční rubrika)

**sleep in** spát dlouho; zaspát

**sleepwalk** chodit ve spaní; být námě-  
síčný

**sleepy** ospalý

**snore** chrápat

**sociability** ['səʊʃəbɪləti] schopnost  
vycházet a bavit se s lidmi

**socialise** společensky se stýkat; chodit  
do společnosti

**specimen** vzorek

**stamp** známka; razítko

**standing order** trvalý příkaz

**stressful** stresující

**strike against st, for st** stávkovat  
proti něčemu, za něco

**suggestion** návrh, podnět

**suitable for sb** vhodný pro někoho

**surname** příjmení

**swap** výměna

**swarm** [swɔ:m] roj; rojit se

**tailor** krejčí; udělat na míru, na  
zakázku

**teller** (US) bankovní úředník (u pře-  
pážky)

**temp** přechodně zaměstnaný člověk,  
výpomoc (obvykle zprostředkuje  
agentura)

**tidy up** uklízet; dát věci do pořádku

**timetable** rozvrh; jízdní, letový řád  
**toy** hračka

**tripod** ['traɪpɒd] trojnožka; stojan,  
stativ

**trophy** trofej; památník

**underexposed** podexponovaný

**unemployed** nezaměstnaný

**unions** odbory

**unpaid leave** neplacená dovolená

**vacation** (US) prázdniny, dovolená

**valuable** cenný, hodnotný

**vary in st** ['veəri] lišit se, odlišovat se

**veil** (US) kryt obličej pro včelaře

**vice-versa** a naopak

**viewfinder** hledáček

**vocation** [vəʊ'keɪʃən] povolání;  
poslání

**volunteer** dobrovolník; přihlásit se  
dobrovolně

**wage** mzda

**wake (up) with a start** náhle se  
probudit

**waking** bdění

**waste** odpad; plýtvat

**weaver** ['wi:və] tkadlec

**weeding** plení

**weight** váha

**white-collar worker** úředník

**wiped out** vymýcený

**woodwork** práce s dřevem; výrobky  
ze dřeva

**workaholic** neúporný pracovník,  
člověk, který nemůže být bez práce

**worthless** bezcenný, zbytečný

**yell** řvát, křičet, ječet

# COMMUNICATION

## adhesive (postage stamp)

[əd'hi:sv] lepicí (poštovní známka)

**aerogramme** ['eərəʊgræm] speciální letecký dopis, aerogram

**answer, pick up the phone** vzít, zvednout telefon

**answering machine** záznamník

**answerphone, ansaphone** telefon se záznamníkem; záznamník

**@ at @** zavináč

**blame** být zodpovědný za něco, způsobit něco

**busy signal** (US) obsazovací tón

**cancel** zrušit; orazítkovat (známku)

**cellotape** průsvitná samolepicí páska, izolepa

**coin-operated** (fungující) na mince

**collect** vybrat

**collect call** (US) hovor na účet volaného

**collection** vybírání poštovní schránky

**cordless phone** bezšňůrový telefon

**cut off, disconnected** přerušený (telefonické spojení)

**cyberspace** ['saɪbəspeɪs] kybernetický prostor, kyberprostor

**datalink** datové spojení, datový okruh

**denomination** nominální, jmenovitá hodnota

**determined by st** určen něčím

**dial(ling) tone** oznamovací tón

**Directory Assistance** (US) informace o telefonních číslech

**Directory Enquiries** (GB)[di'rektəri, daɪ-] informace o telefonních číslech

**disconnect** přerušit, odpojit

**earpiece** sluchátko

**enclosure** příloha

**engaged tone** (GB) obsazovací tón

**envelope** obálka

**excess postage** doplatek poštovního

**extension( number)** klapka, linka

**facsimile** [fæk'sɪmɪli] fax

**fax** [fæks] fax

**fax sb** poslat někomu fax

**fragile** ['frædʒaɪl, 'frædʒəl] křehké (označení na balících)

**franked envelope** ofrankovaná obálka

**greeting** pozdrav; oslovení (v dopisu)

**guarantee** zaručit; záruka

**handset** telefonní sluchátko

**hang up** zavěsit

**hold the line** nezavěšujte

**ID (identification card)** průkaz totožnosti; občanský průkaz

**illegible handwriting** nečitelný rukopis

**inland** vnitrostátní

**insure** pojistit

**interface** rozhraní, interface

**invention** vynález

**issue** ['ɪʃu:, 'ɪʃju:] vydat

**knighted** povýšen do šlechtického stavu

**letter-box** schránka na dopisy v domě, na dveřích; veřejná poštovní schránka

**letterhead** záhlaví dopisu, hlavička

**log in, log on** přihlásit se; připojit se

**log into the net** přihlásit se do sítě

**log off, log out** odhlásit se; odpojit se

**loudspeaker** reproduktor

**lump sum** odstupné (jednorázová částka vyplacená propuštěným pracovníkům)

**make a call** zavolat, zatelefonovat (si)

**mail** (US) pošta

**mail-box** (US) schránka na dopisy v domě, na dveřích; veřejná poštovní schránka

**mailman** (US) listonoš, poštovní doručovatel

**mic, mike** (inform) [mark] mikrofon

**modem** modem

**mouthpiece** mluvítko, mikrofon telefonního přístroje

**networking** vytváření sítě (i společenské, navazování profesních kontaktů)

**networks** sítě

**notebook (computer)** notebook

**operator** spojovatel, telefonista

**package** balík, balíček

**packet** balíček, krabička (např. cigaret)

**padded envelope** protinázorová obálka

**parcel** balíček, balík, zásilka

**partition** [pɑ:'tɪʃən] přepážka; příčka, dělící stěna

**pen-friend, pen-pal** známý, přítel k dopisování

**philatelist** filatelista

**phone book** telefonní seznam

**pillar box** (GB) poštovní schránka (červená ve tvaru válce)

**plug into st** připojit se do, k něčemu

**poison-pen letter** anonymní dopis

**postal clerk** poštovní úředník

**postal order** (GB) poštovní poukázka

**postal rates** poštovní sazby

**post-box** poštovní schránka

**postcard** pohlednice

**poste restante** (GB) [ˌpəʊst'restɑːnt] poste restante

**postman** (GB) listonoš, poštovní doručovatel

**postmark** poštovní razítko

**postmaster** poštovní, přednosta poštovního úřadu

**postmistress** poštovní, přednostka poštovního úřadu

**precedent** ['presɪdənt, -ədɛnt] tradice; precedent

**printed matter** tiskoviny

**proof of identity** prokázání totožnosti

**push-button telephone** tlačítkový telefon

**receiver** telefonní sluchátko; přijímač

**recorded delivery (important letters)** doporučené (důležité dopisy)

**registered post** cenné psaní; doporučené

**regulated by sb, st** řízen, regulován někým, něčím

**remote microphone / mike** přenosný mikrofon; mikrofon, který je součástí telefonního přístroje (je možno mluvit z dálky, ne do sluchátka)

**ringing tone** vyzváněcí tón

**rotary telephone** telefon s kruhovým číselníkem

**rough copy** [raf] koncept

**R.S.V.P. = please reply to an invitation** prosím o odpověď (z francouzštiny: répondez s'il vous plait)

**scale(s)** váha, váhy

**seal a letter** zalepit, zapečetit dopis

**sealing wax** [wæks] pečetní vosk

**sellotape** průsvitná samolepicí páska, izolepa

**sign for st** podepsat něco

**sorting office** třídárna (poštovních zásilek)

**sound** zvuk

**stationery** psací potřeby; opisní papír

**stamped addressed envelope (s.a.e.)** ofrankovaná obálka s adresou

**string** provázek, motouz



**sub-post office** (GB) pošta, zvl. na venkově, kterou vede poštmistr nebo poštmistrová, kteří jsou samostatnými zaměstnanci pošt

**subsequent** ['sʌbsɪkwənt] následující, následný

**telephone** telefon, telefonní přístroj

**trunk call** meziměstský telefonický hovor

**typing** psaní na stroji, na počítači

**universe** svět; vesmír

**urgent** naléhavý; pilný, spěšný

**videophone** videofon

**weigh** [wei] vážit, zvážit

**window** okénko; okno

## TOWN &amp; COUNTRY

**abduct sb** unést někoho

**accident** nehoda; autonehoda

**accused of st** obviněný z něčeho

**acquitted of st** zproštěn něčeho

**algae bloom** ['ælgɪ:, 'ældʒi:] přemnožení vodních řas

**alley** ulička

**amber** (GB) oranžová (dopravní světlo)

**ambulance** sanitní vůz, sanitka

**amusement park** zábavní park, lunapark

**annoy** obtěžovat, rušit, jít na nervy, vadit

**appliance** zařízení, přístroj, spotřebič pro domácnost

**apprehend** zadržet, zatknout, vzít do vazby

**arcade** pasáž, průchod s obchody

**arrest** zatknout, vzít do vazby; zatčení, vazba

**arrested** zatčen; ve vazbě

**assault** násilné napadení, přepadení

**avenue** alej, široká třída

**back road** vedlejší silnice

**back street** boční, vedlejší ulice

**backward areas** zaostalé, nerozvinuté oblasti

**banned** zakázaný

**barrack(s)** kasárna

**barrister** (GB) právník, který je oprávněn vést obhajobu u vyššího soudu

**biodegradable** schopný rozkladu působením mikroorganismů

**blackmail** vydírat

**blame st on st** svádět (něco) na něco

**blind alley** slepá ulička

**bobby** (GB coll) strážník, policajt

**book** (US coll) zatknout, uvalit vazbu; vazba

**boot** (US) botička (při zaparkování na nesprávném místě)

**bootleg** nezákonně vyráběný, pašovaný, pirátský; pirátská nahrávka

**bottle bank** kontejner na ulici pro sběr prázdných lahví

**boulevard** ['bu:ləvɑ:d] bulvár

**break down** zhroutit se

**brewery** ['bruəri] pivovar

**bribe** uplatit; úplatek

**bribery** úplatkářství, korupce

**bring about** způsobit, přivodit, přinést

**browse / surf the Internet / web / net** surfovat po internetu

**budget** rozpočet

**burglar** zloděj, který se vloupá do domu

**burglary** loupež, vloupání

**busker** (GB) pouliční zpěvák, hudebník, komik apod.

**bypass** vnější (dopravní) okruh, obchvat

**carriageway** (GB) vozovka, pruh vozovky

**casualties** ['kæʒjuəltiz] ztráty na životech při dopravních nehodách

**cathedral** [kə'thi:drəl] katedrála, dóm, chrám

**cemetery** hřbitov

**census** ['sensəs] sčítání lidu

**change to...** přestoupit na...

**chapel** kaple

**charge sb with st** obvinít koho z čeho

**cheat** podvádět, ošidit

**church** kostel; církev

**circus** (GB) kulaté náměstí

**climbing frame** prolézačka

**close to st** blízko něčeho; téměř, skoro u

**collar sb** (coll) dopadnout, chytit někoho

**community church** společný, ekumenický (mezicírkevní) kostel

**con** ošidit, obalamutit; obrát

**confess** přiznat, doznat

**confuse** zmást, splést

**contraflow** (GB) jízda v obou směrech v jednom pruhu kvůli opravám nebo dopravní nehodě

**conurbation** městská aglomerace, souměstí

**conveniences** veřejné toalety

**cop** (US coll) policajt, polda

**copper** (GB coll) policajt, polda, fízl

**courtroom** soudní síň

**cover up** zamaskovat

**crescent** ['kresənt] obloukovitá, půlkruhovatá ulice

**criminal** zločinec

**crook** podvodník, lump, darebák, gauz; zloděj; profesionální zločinec

**crooked streets**

['krʊkɪd (GB) 'krʊkəd (US)] křivolaké ulice

**crossroads** (GB) křižovatka

**cul-de-sac** ['kʊldə,sæk, 'kʌldə,sæk] slepá ulice; slepá ulička

<b>culprit</b> ['kʌlprɪt] pachatel, viník	<b>gamekeeper</b> hajný	<b>jail</b> vězení, věznice
<b>curb</b> (US) obrubník, obrubní kámen, okraj chodníku	<b>gaol</b> [dʒeɪl] vězení, věznice, trestnice	<b>jaywalk</b> neukázněně přecházet silnici (mimo přechod)
<b>custody</b> (vyšetřovací) vazba	<b>garbage</b> (US) odpadky	<b>jewellery</b> klenoty, šperky
<b>deal with st</b> vyrovnat se, vypořádat se s něčím	<b>gasworks</b> plynárna	<b>judge</b> soudce
<b>declare goods</b> přihlásit zboží k proclení	<b>get away</b> utéci, uniknout, uprchnout, dostat se pryč	<b>junction</b> křižovatka
<b>defence</b> (GB), <b>defense</b> (US) obrana, obhajoba	<b>get away with</b> vyváznout, uniknout potrestání, projít komu co	<b>jury</b> ['dʒʊ(ə)rɪ] porota
<b>defend</b> hájit; vystupovat jako obhájce, vést obhajobu	<b>gentry</b> ['dʒentri] nižší venkovská šlechta; vyšší střední vrstvy na venkově	<b>kerb</b> (GB) obrubník, obrubní kámen, okraj chodníku
<b>defendant</b> obžalovaný	<b>give directions</b> říci, popsat cestu	<b>kidnap</b> unést
<b>defibrillator</b> přístroj k obnovení srdeční činnosti elektrickými šoky	<b>give evidence</b> svědčit, vypovídat u soudu	<b>kidnapper</b> únosce
<b>detective</b> detektiv	<b>ghetto</b> ghetto	<b>kidnapping</b> únos
<b>developed over</b> zastavěný	<b>graffiti</b> nápisy a kresby na zdech, výtvary sprejerů	<b>kirk</b> (Scots) kostel
<b>dial</b> vytočit telefonní číslo	<b>graveyard</b> hřbitov	<b>labour</b> práce; dělnictvo, pracující
<b>dishonest</b> [dɪs'ɒnɪst] nečestný, nepoctivý	<b>gridlock</b> dopravní zácpa (vozidla se nemohou hnout z místa)	<b>labourer</b> dělník
<b>diversion</b> (GB) [dɪvɜːʃən] objížďka	<b>guilty</b> vinen	<b>ladder</b> žebřík
<b>dock</b> lavice obžalovaných	<b>gurdwara (for Sikhs)</b> modlitebna sikhů (členů indické náboženské sekty)	<b>landowner</b> majitel pozemku
<b>downtown</b> (US) střed města; v centru města	<b>gutter</b> okap; příkop; stoka	<b>lane</b> ulička, úzká ulice
<b>drain</b> odpad, odtok; drenáž; kanál	<b>harbour</b> přírodní přístav	<b>lax</b> laxní, nedbalý, nedůsledný
<b>drought</b> [draʊt] sucho, období sucha	<b>headquarters</b> velitelství; ředitelství	<b>lawyer</b> právník, právní zástupce, advokát
<b>dustbin</b> (GB) popelnice, nádoba na odpadky	<b>homelessness</b> bezdomovectví	<b>licence</b> povolení, oprávnění, licence
<b>dustcart</b> (GB) vůz na odvoz odpadků	<b>hooligan</b> chuligán	<b>litter</b> odpadky
<b>dustman</b> (GB) popelář, sběrač odpadků	<b>hose</b> hadice	<b>litter-bin</b> (GB) odpadkový koš
<b>embankment</b> (GB) nábreží	<b>hospitalised</b> hospitalizován, umístěn do nemocnice	<b>louse, pl. lice</b> veš, vši
<b>enforcement</b> vynucení, vymáhání	<b>hosepipe ban</b> zákaz zalévání hadicí (připojenou k vodovodní síti)	<b>lumberjack</b> (US) dřevař, dřevorubec
<b>entertainment</b> zábava	<b>hurt</b> zranit	<b>magistrate</b> soudce pro drobné pře-stupky; smírčí soudce
<b>escape</b> uniknout	<b>hydrant</b> ['haɪdrənt] hydrant, vodo-vodní kohout	<b>manhunt</b> pátrání
<b>extinguish</b> uhasit	<b>hypermarket</b> velký supermarket, hypermarket	<b>manslaughter</b> ['mæn,slɔ:tə] zabití (neúmyslné)
<b>facilities</b> vybavení, vybavenost, pří-slušenství, zařízení	<b>illegal dumping</b> nepovolená skládka odpadu	<b>mayor</b> [meɪə] starosta
<b>fight</b> rvačka	<b>incinerator</b> [ɪn'sɪnəreɪtə] spalovna	<b>migration</b> stěhování, migrace
<b>fire brigade</b> (GB) hasičský sbor, hasiči	<b>inflammable</b> [ɪn'flæməbl] hořlavý	<b>minister</b> duchovní, pastor
<b>fire escape</b> nouzový východ v případě požáru	<b>inner city</b> vnitřní město, centrum	<b>mosque</b> [mɒsk] mešita
<b>fire extinguisher</b> hasicí přístroj	<b>innocent</b> nevinný	<b>mugging</b> násilné přepadení (a okra-dení)
<b>floods</b> záplavy	<b>in plain clothes</b> v civilu	<b>mulch</b> materiál k mulčování; mul-čovat
<b>fly-tipping</b> nepovolená skládka odpadu	<b>insist on st</b> trvat na něčem	<b>murder</b> vražda
<b>flyover</b> nadjezd	<b>inspector</b> policejní inspektor; do-zorce; kontrolor	<b>museum</b> muzeum
<b>forester</b> lesník, polesný, revírník	<b>intersection</b> (US) křižovatka	<b>neglected area</b> zanedbaná, zchátralá část města
<b>forge</b> kovárna; kovářská výheň	<b>in the middle of nowhere</b> tam, kde lišky dávají dobrou noc, daleko od civilizace	<b>neighbourhood</b> (US) městská čtvrť, okolí, sousedství
<b>fork</b> rozcestí	<b>involved in st</b> přítomen, účasten něčeho	<b>newspapers</b> noviny
<b>freeway</b> (US) dálnice		<b>next to st</b> vedle něčeho
<b>frontier</b> hranice; pohraničí		<b>nick sb</b> (coll) sebrat
<b>funfair</b> zábavní park, lunapark		<b>opposite st</b> naproti něčemu; protiklad
<b>fuzz</b> (US coll) policajt, chlupek		<b>ordeal</b> [ɔː'diəl] martyrium, muka
		<b>outsider</b> cizí člověk
		<b>overcome by smoke</b> přidušený, přiot-rávený kouřem



**overcrowded** přeplněný, přelidněný, přepláný  
**overpass** mimoúrovňový přechod, nadjezd  
**overtake** (GB) předjet, předjíždět  
**packaging** obalová, balicí technika, balení  
**parks** parky, sady  
**pass** (US) předjet, předjíždět  
**passer-by** kolemjdoucí  
**patrol boat** hlídkový člun  
**patrol car** (US) policejní vůz  
**pavement** (GB) chodník  
**pavement** (US) vozovka, jízdní dráha  
**peace and quiet** klid  
**perjury** ['pɜ:dʒəri] křivá přísaha; vědomá lež  
**pickpocket** kapesní zloděj, kapsář  
**pileup** (GB) řetězová srážka vozidel  
**plastic bottles** plastové láhve  
**playground** hřiště  
**poacher** ['pəʊtʃə] pytlák  
**policeman** policista, policajt  
**pollute (water)** znečišťovat (vodu)  
**pollution** znečištění  
**port** přístav  
**pottery** hrnčířská dílna; hrnčířské výrobky; hrnčířství (činnost)  
**pour** [pɔ:] lít, nalít  
**priest** kněz, pastor  
**prison** vězení, věznice, trestnice  
**prosecutor** žalobce, prokurátor  
**prove** dokázat, prokázat; potvrdit  
**provincial town** provinciální, zastalé město  
**public** veřejnost; veřejný, státní, městský, obecní  
**public conveniences** veřejné záchodky  
**pull over** zastavit u krajnice; zastavit někoho  
**punishment** trest; postih  
**put out a fire** uhasit požár, oheň  
**quaint** [kweɪnt] malebný; starodávný, starobylý  
**rape** znásilnění; znásilnit  
**rat** krysa; potkan  
**recruitment** nábor, posila  
**rector** farář, hlava farnosti, pastor; rektor  
**recycle** [ri:'saɪkl] recyklovat  
**recycled** recyklovaný  
**regulation** směrnice, nařízení, dohled  
**result in st** mít za následek něco, vést k něčemu

**reuse** znovu použít  
**rip sb off** (coll) vzít na hůl, natáhnout, oškat, okrást někoho  
**road** (GB) vozovka, jízdní dráha  
**road works** práce na silnici  
**robbery** loupež  
**roundabout** kruhový objezd  
**row** ulice (rovná)  
**rubbish** odpadky, smetí  
**rule** rozhodnout, vynést rozsudek, odsoudit  
**rundown** zchátralý, na spadnutí; vyčerpaný  
**safety** bezpečnost  
**sandpit** pískoviště  
**sanitation** hygiena; ozdravění  
**scared** vyděšený, vystrašený  
**scrap-heap** (GB) smetiště, skládka  
**set up** postavit; založit, zřít  
**sewer** [suə] stoka, kanál  
**shanty town** chudinská čtvrt s chatrčemi  
**shoplifter** zloděj, který krade v obchodě  
**sidewalk** (US) chodník  
**siren** ['saɪərən] siréna  
**skip** velký kontejner na odpadky  
**skyscraper** mrakodrap  
**sleeping policeman** (GB) příčný práh, retardér (vyvýšený pás napříč vozovkou nutící řidiče zpomalit jízdu)  
**slide** skluzavka (pro děti na hřišti)  
**slum** brloh, chudinská čtvrt  
**smithy** kovárna  
**smuggle** pašovat  
**sneak away** vytratit se, vykrást se  
**soldier** ['səʊldʒə] voják  
**solicitor** (GB) právní poradce, právní zástupce, advokát  
**spaghetti junction** složitý systém mimoúrovňových křižovatek  
**speed bump /ramp** (US) příčný práh, retardér  
**speeding** příliš rychlá jízda, překročení rychlostního limitu  
**spread** šířit, šířit se, rozšířit se  
**square** náměstí  
**steal** krást, ukrást  
**stolen** kradený, ukradený  
**straight on** přímo, rovně  
**stretcher** nosítka pro nemocné  
**styrofoam** ['stairəfəʊm] polystyren  
**suburb** ['sʌbɜ:b] předměstí

**subway** (GB) podchod  
**subway** (US) podzemní dráha, metro  
**synagogue** synagoga  
**T-junction** křižovatka ve tvaru T  
**temple** templ; chrám, svatyně (hinduistická); chrám Božího hrobu v Jeruzalémě  
**terrace** (GB) řada domů na svahu  
**testify** svědčit, vypovídat u soudu  
**throw out** vyhodit  
**tip** (US) skládka  
**toilets** toalety  
**tow away** [tau ə'wei] odtáhnout (auto)  
**toxic waste** toxický odpad  
**trial** soud  
**trick** podvést, napálit, obelstít; podvod  
**twisting** křivolaký  
**underground** (GB) podzemní dráha, metro  
**undermanned** [ˌʌndə'mænd] s nedostatečným počtem pracovních sil  
**underpass** podchod, podjezd  
**undeserved** nezasloužený  
**uninhabitable** neobyvatelný  
**unintentionally** neúmyslně; bezděčně  
**vandal** vandal  
**vandalism** vandalismus  
**vermin** drobný obtížný hmyz, paraziti, havěť  
**vicar** farář, vikář  
**violence** násilí  
**wanted** hledaný  
**warehouse** ['weəhaʊs] skladiště; prodej ze skladu  
**waste refrigerants** chladicí směsi na skládkách  
**waterworks** vodárna  
**well-kept** dobře udržovaný, pěstěný  
**width** [wɪðθ] šířka, šíře  
**winding** klikatý; točitý  
**witness** svědek  
**woodcutter** dřevorubec, dřevař  
**yellow** (US) oranžová (dopravní světlo)

## SIGHTSEEING

- abandon** opustit
- abbey** opatství, chrám při opatství
- abound in, with st** oplývat něčím
- aisle** [aɪl] boční, vedlejší loď chrámu; ambit; ulička mezi sedadly
- altar** ['ɔ:lta] oltář
- altarpiece** oltářní obraz
- ancient** ['eɪnʃənt] starobylý; starý, letitý; starověký
- announce** oznámit
- appreciate st** oceňovat; uvědomovat si něco, být si vědom něčeho
- arboretum** [ˌa:bə'ri:təm, ˌabə'ri:təm] arboretum
- archaeological** archeologický
- armour** ['ɑ:mə] brnění, pancíř, krunýř
- Art Nouveau** [ɑ: nu:'vəu] secese
- astronomical clock** orloj
- attractiveness** půvab; přitažlivost
- aurochs** ['ɔ:roks] pratur
- banishment** vypovězení do vyhnanství
- bank** břeh
- baptize** [ˌbæp'taɪz] křtít, pokřtít
- Baroque** [bə'roʊk] barokní, barokový
- basilica** [bə'zɪlɪkə] bazilika
- bastion** ['bæstɪən] bašta
- battleground** bojiště
- battlement** cimbuří
- Beijing** [bei'dʒɪŋ] Peking
- belfry** ['belfri] zvonice
- bell** zvon, zvonek
- besiege** [bi'si:dʒ] obléhat
- bishopric** biskupství, diecéze
- breathtaking** ['breθ'teɪkɪŋ] úžasný; beroucí dech
- burn down** vyhořet, shořet, lehnout popelem; vypálit
- Cairo** [kaɪrəu] Káhira
- candlestick** svícen
- castle** zámek; hrad
- catacombs** ['kætəku:mz] katakomby; podzemní pohřebiště
- cathedral** [kə'thi:drəl] katedrála, dóm, chrám
- cave** jeskyně
- certainty** jistota
- chalet** ['ʃæleɪ] horská chata
- chancel** ['tʃɑ:nsəl] oltářní prostor, zpravidla oddělený mřížkou, kněžiště
- chasm** ['kæzm] propast, rokle, strž
- chivalry** ['ʃɪvəlri] rytířství; rytířskost; rytířstvo
- choir** [kwaɪə] kůr, kněžiště; pěvecký sbor, zejm. chrámový; taneční skupina
- clubland** městská část, v níž jsou kluby, zejm. v Londýně
- cobbled** vydlážděný kulatými dlažebními kostkami (tzv. kočičí hlavy)
- cobblestone** dlažební kostka, kočičí hlava
- colonnade** [ˌkɒlə'neɪd] kolonáda; stromořadí
- column** ['kɒləm] sloup
- compound** směs, složení; spojení
- conducted tour** prohlídka pamětihodností s průvodcem
- confessional** zpovědnice
- conquer st, sb** ['kɒŋkə] přemoci, zvítězit nad, podrobit si, dobýt něco, někoho
- consecrated** vysvěcený
- convent** ženský klášter
- courier** ['kuriə] průvodce zahraniční skupiny turistů; kurýr
- courtyard** dvůr, nádvoří, dvorek
- cross** kříž
- crucifix** ['kru:sɪfɪks] krucifix, kříž
- crypt** krypta, podzemní hrobka
- cultural heritage** kulturní dědictví
- date back to / from** pocházet z (doby)
- dedicated to st, sb** věnovaný něčemu, někomu
- demolished** zbourán, stržen
- desensitisation** [di,sensɪtaɪ'zeɪʃn] únava, nezájem při prohlížení památek; znecitlivění, snížení citlivosti
- destroyed** zničený
- disaster** neštěstí
- dome** kupole, klenba
- drawbridge** padací most, zvedací most
- drop in at (a place)** zastavit se v (někde)
- drop in on sb** zastavit se u někoho
- dungeon** žalář, hradní kobka; hlavní hradní věž
- eagle-eyed** bystrozraký
- earldom** [ˌɜ:ldəm] titul, panství hraběte
- early** raný
- embrasure** [ɪm'breɪzə] výklenek u okna, dveří; střílna
- Empire** empír (sloh)
- enhanced by st** umocněn, zesílen něčím
- entrance to** ['entrəns] vchod do
- ethnographic** etnografický
- evolve from st** vyvinout se z něčeho
- extinction** zániknutí, zánik, vyhynutí; uhašení, vyhasnutí
- falconry** sokolnictví
- fan vaulting** vějířová klenba
- fascination** půvab, kouzlo
- fencing** šermování, šerm
- Florence** ['flɒrəns] Florencie
- flying buttress** ['batrəs] opěrný oblouk s opěrným pilířem, obloukový pilíř
- font** křtitelnice, kropenka
- footpath** stezka, pěšina
- fortifications** opevnění
- fossil** zkamenělina, fosilie
- founder** zakladatel
- fountain** fontána; kašna; vodotrysk
- fresco** freska
- fun races** zábavné závody, soutěže
- Georgian** ['dʒɔ:dʒən, 'dʒɔ:dʒjən] georgiánský
- gondolas** gondoly
- Gothic** ['gɒθɪk] gotický; gotika
- grove** háj, hájek, lesík; skupina stromů
- guide** průvodce; vedoucí zájezdu
- gunsmith** puškař, zbrojář; výrobce zbraní
- haunt** [haʊnt] strašit (kde); pronásledovat, znepokojovat
- heat** horko, vedro
- heraldry** heraldika; slavnostní historická pompa; erby; předběžná publicita
- highlands** vysočina, vrchovina
- hill-fort** pevnost s ochrannými valy a příkopy na vrcholu kopce
- historic** [hɪ'stɒrɪk] historický, epochální, dějinný
- historical re-enactment** [hɪ'stɒrɪkəl] znázornění historických událostí v dobových kostýmech (např. Bitva u Slavkova)
- holy** ['həʊli] svatý, posvátný; zbožný
- impregnable fortress** nedobytná pevnost
- in the rear of st** v zadní části něčeho
- inclusion of st** zahrnutí, zařazení něčeho
- joust** [dʒaʊst] rytířský turnaj
- karst (the Moravian Karst)** kras (Moravský kras)
- knight** [naɪt] rytíř



**lace-making** výroba krajek  
**late** pozdní  
**lodge** (lovecká) chata  
**lookout tower** rozhledna, vyhlídková věž  
**mammoth** mamut  
**mansion** velký obytný dům, panské sídlo, zámek  
**medi(a)eval** středověký  
**memorial** památník, pomník  
**merely** pouze, jenom  
**moat** vodní příkop, hradní příkop  
**monastery** mužský klášter  
**monument** památník  
**narrow** úzký  
**nave** [neiv] hlavní (střední) loď chrámu  
**Neo-Renaissance** [ni:əu rə'neɪsə:ns, rə'neɪsə:ns] novorenesanční; novorenesance  
**neogothic** neogotický, novogotický  
**niche** [ni:f, nitʃ] výklenek, nika  
**nunnery** ['nʌnəri] (lit) klášter (ženský)  
**objective** cíl; plán; úkol  
**overload** přetížení  
**package tour / holiday** turistický zájezd s programem, jehož cena zahrnuje vše  
**palace** ['pælɪs] palác  
**palisade** [ˌpæli'seɪd] palisáda, ohrada z kůlů nebo železných tyčí  
**panorama** vyhlídka, rozhled do krajiny, panoráma  
**paperweight** těžítka  
**Paris** Paříž  
**parish** farnost  
**parkland** rozlehlý park  
**pass** průsmyk, soutěska, úžina  
**passers-by** kolemjdoucí  
**pensioner** důchodce, penzista  
**pew** [pju:] kostelní lavice  
**pipers** dudáci  
**plague column** ['pleɪg 'kɒləm] morový sloup  
**porch** krytý vchod, přístřešek; veranda  
**portcullis** [ˌpɔ:t'kʌlɪs] padací mříž  
**predict** předvídat  
**priory** ['praɪəri] převorství (klášter)  
**priority** priorita  
**prosper** prosperovat, vést si dobře  
**Protestant** protestant; protestantský  
**provide with st** opatřit něčím

**pulpit** ['pʊlpɪt] kazatelna  
**range from... through... to st** sahát od... přes... až k... něčemu  
**rapids** peřeje, slapy  
**rebuilt** přestavěný  
**reference library** příruční knihovna (pouze prezenční)  
**Regency** ['ri:dʒənsi] sluh začátku 19. stol. v Británii odpovídající empiru v Evropě (princ regent, George IV, vládl v letech 1811–20)  
**regret st** litovat něčeho  
**reliance** jistota; důvěra, spolehnutí  
**relic** ['reɪlɪk] památka, pozůstatek  
**remarkable** pozoruhodný, nevšední  
**Renaissance** [rə'neɪsə:ns, rə'neɪsə:ns] renesance  
**resent st** nesnášet něco  
**rich in st** bohatý na něco  
**Rococo** rokokový; rokoko  
**Romanesque** [ˌrəʊmə'nesk] románský; románský styl  
**rotunda** [rəʊ'tʌndə] rotunda  
**ruins** trosky, zřícenina  
**scarf, pl. scarves** šátek; šála  
**sculpture** ['skʌlptʃə] socha  
**sculptural group** sousoší  
**settlement** osada, sídliště  
**shell** kostra domu, vnější zdi, skořepina  
**shrine** schránka s ostatky; hrob světce; svatyně  
**sort out** roztrždit  
**spa** lázně s léčivými prameny; minerální pramen, léčivý pramen  
**spire** špičatá věž, zužující se kostelní věž; špička kostelní věže  
**stained glass** vitráž (barevné sklo v oknech kostela)  
**start at st** začít někde  
**statue** socha  
**stay over in...** zůstat přes noc v...  
**steeple** věž; kostelní věž; vysoká štíhlá věžička; špička na věži  
**stop over in...** zastavit se (na noc) v...  
**swarming with st** být plný něčeho; hemžící se něčím  
**sword** [sɔ:d] meč; šavle; dýka  
**take sb round** provést někoho  
**televised** vysílán v televizi  
**temper** povaha; duševní rozpoložení; podrážděnost, rozčilení, zlost, vztek  
**the Highlands** Skotská vysočina  
**theatre** ['θiətə] divadlo

**theme park** ['θi:m] turistická atrakce v přírodě, např. skanzen, Disneyland...  
**through** přes, skrz  
**tilting** rytířské turnaje s dřevci  
**tiredness** únava  
**tomb** [tu:m] hrob, hrobka; náhrobek  
**tourist fatigue** ['tʊərɪst, 'tɔ:-, 'tʊərɪst fə'ti:g] únava způsobená příliš náročným programem při poznávacích cestách  
**tourist information** informace, turistická informační kancelář  
**tournament** ['tuənəmənt, 'tɔ:-] turnaj, klání  
**tower** věž; bašta  
**transept** ['trænssept, 'trɑ:n-] transept, příčná loď kostela  
**tribute to sb** uctění někoho  
**Tudor** tudorský, tudorovský; Tudor, Tudorovec  
**twisty** klikatý, křivolaký, zatáčející  
**under reconstruction** v rekonstrukci  
**unique** jedinečný  
**uplands** vysočina, vrchovina  
**vault** klenba, klenutí; hrobka, krypta  
**vehemently** silně, prudce, důrazně  
**Venice** Benátky  
**ventilation** větrání, ventilace  
**vestry** sakristie  
**via** [vaɪə, 'vi:ə] přes, skrz  
**Victorian** viktoriánský  
**visit, visitor to** návštěva, návštěvník (čeho)  
**watchtower** strážní věž, pozorovatelna  
**waterfall** vodopád  
**winding** klikatý, křivolaký, zatáčející  
**woodcarver** [wʊd'kɑ:və] řezbář  
**zoo** [zu:, zu] zoo, zoologická zahrada

## TRAVEL

**accelerate** zrychlit, zvýšit rychlost  
**accelerator** pedál plynu v autě  
**accessories** doplňky; příslušenství  
**accommodation** ubytování  
**aileron** ['eɪləron] křídélko na nosných plochách letadla  
**airborne** ['eəbɔ:n] ve vzduchu, v letadle; roznášený vzduchem  
**airbus** airbus (velké dopravní letadlo)  
**aircraft** letadlo, letadla  
**airliner** dopravní letadlo (létající na pravidelné lince)  
**airsick** trpící nevolností v letadle  
**aisle** [aɪl] ulička mezi sedadly  
**alien** ['eɪliən, 'eɪljən] cizí, zahraniční, odlišný; cizinec; vetřelec  
**announcement** oznámení; hlášení; prohlášení  
**Armco** (GB) svodidlo  
**automobile** (US) ['ɔ:təmə.bi:l] auto(mobil)  
**back up** (US) couvat, jet zpátečkou  
**backpack** (US) batoh, ruksak; cestovat s batohem  
**battery** ['bæt(ə)ri] baterie  
**bellhop** (US) hotelový poslíček; pikolík  
**bench** lavička, sedátko  
**bend** (GB) zatáčka  
**bendy bus** housenka; kloubový autobus  
**berth** ['bɜ:θ] lůžko (na lodi, ve vlaku)  
**bicycle** jízdní kolo  
**bigotry** ['bɪgətri] bigotnost; přehnaná zbožnost  
**bivouacking** ['bɪvʊækɪŋ] bivakování  
**board** stravování; paluba  
**boat** člun  
**bonnet** (GB) kapota  
**boot** (GB) zavazadlový prostor v autě, kufr  
**bow** [bau] příď, přední část lodi  
**brake** brzda  
**brake liquid / fluid** brzdová kapalina  
**breakdown** porucha, defekt, havárie  
**breathalyser** ['breθəlaɪzə] balónek (na zkoušku alkoholu v krvi)  
**bridge (where the helm is)** můstek (velitelské stanoviště, kde je kormidlo)  
**briefcase** aktovka; kufřík  
**brochure** ['brəʊʃə, brəʊʃjʊə, brou'ʃʊr] brožura, reklamní leták

**broken line** přerušovaná čára  
**bumper** nárazník (u automobilu)  
**bunk** (bed) patrové lůžko  
**cabin** (US) chata; bouda, chýše  
**caboose** (US) [kə'bu:s] služební vůz (vlaku); lodní kuchyně  
**campsite** tábořiště, kemp, autokemp  
**canoe** [kə'nu:] kánoe  
**captain** ['kæptɪn, -tən] hlavní pilot; kapitán  
**car** (GB) vagón, železniční vůz; auto  
**caravan** (GB) ['kærəvæn] obytný přívěs  
**cargo ship** ['kɑ:gəʊ] nákladní loď  
**carriage** (GB) osobní železniční vagón  
**chain** řetěz  
**chalet** (GB) ['ʃæleɪ] horská chata; salaš, horská bouda  
**chambermaid** pokojská  
**change down** zařadit nižší rychlostní stupeň, podřadit  
**change up** zařadit vyšší rychlostní stupeň  
**change up or down** řadit nahoru nebo dolů  
**charter** pronájem lodi nebo letadla  
**check in** přihlásit se při příchodu (v hotelu, na letišti)  
**check out** odejít a zaplatit (v supermarketu, v hotelu)  
**checklist** úplný seznam  
**choke** [tʃəʊk] sytič karburátoru  
**climb** [klaɪm] lézt; stoupat  
**clover-leaf junction** ['kləʊvəlɪ:f 'dʒʌŋkʃən] mimoúrovňová křižovatka  
**clutch** [klaʊtʃ] spojka  
**coach** [kəʊtʃ] dálkový autobus, auto-kar; vagon, železniční vůz (GB)  
**cockpit** kabina pilota, sedadlo řidiče  
**come across st, sb** narazit na něco, někoho  
**commissionaire** [kə,mɪʃə'neə] vrátný hotelu, kina, baru; portýr  
**commute** [kə'mju:t] dojíždět pravidelně do práce  
**commuter** člověk pravidelně dojíždějící do práce  
**compartment** kupé  
**condenser** kondenzátor  
**conductor** průvodčí  
**congested** [kən'dʒestɪd] zacpaný; přeplněný  
**consulate** ['kɒnsjʊlət] konzulát

**contraflow** dočasné převedení dopravy do protějšího jízdního pruhu  
**corridor** chodba; letecký koridor  
**couchette** [ku:'ʃet, ku'ʃet] lehátko (ve vlaku)  
**crane (on the quay)** [ki:] jeřáb (na přístavní hrázi)  
**crossroads** (GB) křižovatka; rozcestí  
**cruise liner, cruise ship** výletní loď  
**cruise** [kru:z] výletní plavba lodí (z místa na místo)  
**curb** (US) [kɜ:b] obrubník; okraj chodníku  
**curve** (US) [kɜ:v] zatáčka  
**decelerate** zpomalit, snížit rychlost  
**deck** paluba  
**delayed** zpožděný  
**derrick (on the ship)** otočný jeřáb (na lodi)  
**destination** místo určení, cíl cesty  
**DETOUR** (US) ['di:tʊə, 'di:tʊr] objížďka  
**diner** (US) ['daɪnə] jídelní vůz; malá levná restaurace  
**disembark** (US) [ˌdɪsɪm'bɑ:k] vylodit se; vystoupit z dopravního prostředku  
**DIVERSION** (GB) [daɪ'vɜ:ʃən, dɪ'vɜ:r-] odklonění dopravy, objížďka  
**diverted to...** [daɪ'vɜ:tɪd, dɪ'vɜ:rtɪd] (letadlo) odkloněno na (jiné místo) přistání)  
**dock** dok, molo  
**dock at...** ležet v přístavu, u přístavní hráze; zajet do doku  
**domestic flight** vnitrostátní let  
**doorman** vrátný v hotelu (v livreji)  
**drive-in** (US) restaurace, kino, banka, prodejna určená pro motoristy, kteří zůstanou sedět ve vozidle  
**driveway** soukromá příjezdová cesta k domu  
**duty-free** osvobozený od cla, bezcelní  
**economical** hospodárný, úsporný  
**embarkation** nalodění, naložení; vstup do lodi, letadla  
**embassy** velvyslanectví, ambasáda  
**engine** lokomotiva; motor  
**exceed** [ɪk'si:d] překonat, přesáhnout, překročit  
**exit** ['eksɪt, 'egzɪt] východ; výjezd z dálnice; výjezd ze země  
**fare** [feə] jízdné  
**fatal to sb** osudný pro někoho  
**fender** (US) nárazník (u automobilu)



- ferry (boat)** převoz, trajekt  
**fill up** (US) nabít (baterii)  
**first-aid kit** příruční lékárnička  
**flap** startovací, přistávací klapka  
 křídla  
**flyover** nadjezd  
**flysheets** tropiko (tropická střecha  
 stanu)  
**foglights** světla do mlhy; mlhovky  
**footpump** nožní hustilka  
**fork** rozdvojení cest, rozcestí  
**fork junction** křižovatka ve tvaru Y  
**freeway** dálnice  
**freight train** (US) [freɪt] nákladní  
 vlak  
**funnel** ['fʌnəl] komín (lodí, lokomo-  
 tivy, ...)  
**fuselage** ['fjuːzələʒ] trup letadla  
**gangplank** ['gæŋplæŋk] můstek na  
 loď  
**gangway** chodbička, ulička; můstek  
 na loď  
**garage** (GB) [gə'raːʒ, 'gær-  
 ɪdʒ] servis, automobilová opravna,  
 dílna; čerpací stanice se servisem;  
 garáž  
**gas** (US) benzín, pohonná hmota;  
 plynový pedál; plyn  
**get into a slide / skid** dostat smyk  
**glass-calm** velmi klidné moře bez vln  
 (jako sklo)  
**goods train** (GB) nákladní vlak  
**grease** namazat; usadnit, ulehčit,  
 napomoci  
**greasy spoon** (coll) putyka  
**gridlock** dopravní zácpa (vozidla se  
 nemohou hnout z místa)  
**groundsheet** samostatná nepromo-  
 kavá podlážka (stanu)  
**guard** (GB) průvodčí  
**gutter** strouha, škarpa  
**handlebars** řídítka  
**harbor** (US), **harbour** (GB) přírodní  
 přístav  
**hatchback** auto s dvířky kufru ote-  
 víracími se nahoru a s prostorem  
 kufru neodděleným pevnou přepáž-  
 kou od prostoru pro cestující  
**haze** opar; lehká mlha  
**headlights** přední světla, reflektory  
**heavy traffic** silný silniční provoz  
**(helicopter)** vrtulník, helikoptéra  
**helm (steering wheel)** kormidlo,  
 kormidelní páka  
**helmsman** muž u kormidla, kormi-  
 delník  
**high season** hlavní sezóna  
**highway** silnice; dálnice, rychlostní  
 komunikace  
**hijack** přepadnout a unést (často pod  
 hrozbou zabití rukojmí)  
**hike** chodit na pěší výlety, pěstovat  
 turistiku  
**hitchhike** stopovat; jezdit (auto)sto-  
 pem  
**hitchhiker** stopař  
**hold** nákladový prostor (v lodi,  
 v letadle)  
**holdall** velká cestovní taška, objemná  
 kabelka  
**hood** (US) kapota, kryt motoru  
**horn** klakson, houkačka  
**hostage** ['hɒstɪdʒ] rukojmí  
**hovercraft** ['hɒvəkrɑːft] vznášedlo,  
 vznášedlová loď  
**hug** sevření v náručí, objetí; objímat  
**hull** trup lodí, letadla; korba tanku;  
 kostra balónu  
**hut** chata, bouda  
**hydrofoil** ['haɪdrəʊfɔɪl] křídlový  
 člun, mořská raketa  
**igloo tent** samonosný stan (ve tvaru  
 iglú)  
**immigration** přistěhovalectví, imi-  
 grace  
**indicate** označovat, dávat znamení,  
 signalizovat  
**indicator** (GB) ukazatel směru, blinkr  
**inebriated** ['ɪnɪːbrɪetɪd, ɪ'nɪbrɪːetɪd]  
 (formal) opilý  
**insurance** pojištění  
**intersection** (US) křižovatka  
**interstate** (US) dálnice  
**intoxicated** (formal) pod vlivem  
 alkoholu, opilý  
**intrusive** dotěrný, neodbytný; rušivý  
**jack** zvedák, hever  
**junction** křižovatka  
**kerb** (GB) obrubník, okraj chodníku  
**label** označit nálepkou, označit;  
 nálepka  
**land** přistát  
**languish** ['læŋgwɪʃ] ochabnout; nýt,  
 melancholicky se dívat  
**launch** vyhlídkový motorový člun;  
 zahájit  
**lay-by** (GB) rozšířená krajnice pro  
 nouzové parkování; odstavná plo-  
 cha; odpočívadlo  
**layover** přerušení jízdy, přestávka na  
 cestě  
**licence** povolení, oprávnění, licence  
**license plate** (US) státní poznávací  
 značka, SPZ  
**lifeboat** záchranný člun  
**liftboy** hotelový poslíček  
**limousine** [ˌlɪməˈziːn] limuzína  
**liner** pravidelný (zaoceánský) parník;  
 pravidelné dopravní letadlo  
**lollipop lady, man** (GB) osoba převá-  
 dějící děti přes ulici  
**look out onto** mít výhled na (pokoj)  
**lorry** (GB) nákladní auto  
**lounge** [laʊndʒ] hala; společenská  
 místnost  
**maintenance** udržování, údržba  
**mallet** ['mæɪlɪt] dřevěná palička  
 (např. k zatloukání stanových  
 kolíků)  
**manager** ředitel, manažer  
**mast** stěžeň, stožár  
**Mediterranean (the)**  
 [medɪtə'reɪniən] Středozeří; Stře-  
 dozemní moře  
**mirror** zrcadlo  
**motel** [məʊ'tel] motel  
**motorcycle** motocykl  
**motorway** (GB) dálnice  
**mudguard** blatník  
**multiple crash** hromadná srážka  
**notice** oznámení, vyhláška; upozor-  
 nění, varování, výstraha  
**numberplate** (GB) státní poznávací  
 značka (automobilu)  
**oblique** [əʊ'blɪːk] lomítko  
**odometer** (US) [əʊ'dɒmɪtə] počítač  
 mil (kilometrů)  
**off-season** mimo sezónu  
**overcharged** přetížený; předražený  
**overdrive** zrychlující převod v auto-  
 mobilu  
**overheat (in heavy traffic)** přehřát se  
 (v silném provozu)  
**overlook st** s výhledem na (pokoj)  
**overpass** přechod; nadjezd  
**overtake** (GB) předjet, předjíždět  
**pannier** ['pæniə] velká sedlová  
 brašna motocyklu  
**pass** (US) předjet, předjíždět  
**passenger train** osobní vlak  
**passport** cestovní pas  
**pavement** (GB) chodník  
**pavement** (US) vozovka, jízdní dráha  
**pedals** pedály  
**pelican crossing** ['pelɪkən] přechod  
 se signalizací a tlačítky pro chodce

**penknife** víceúčelový kapesní nůž  
**penthouse** luxusní ubytování pod střechou; nástavba; ateliérový byt  
**pickup** malý otevřený dodávkový vůz; malé nákladní auto  
**pileup** (GB) řetězová srážka vozidel  
**pilot** pilot; lodivod; kormidelník  
**pitch** houpat se (o lodi) z přídě na zád  
**platform** nástupiště  
**plug** zapalovací svíčka  
**pole** tyč  
**pollution** znečištění  
**port** přístav; levobok  
**porter** nosič; vrátný  
**porthole (window)** kruhový otvor v boku lodi, letadla (okénko)  
**potholer** jeskyňář, speleolog  
**prejudice** předsudek, zaujatost, předpojatost  
**pull away** odtáhnout  
**pull over** zastavit u krajnice  
**pup tent** pochodový stan  
**purser** lodní hospodář, pokladník  
**pushbike** (GB) jízdní kolo  
**put on the brake** brzdit  
**quay (side)** ['ki:(saɪd)] nábreží; (umělé) přístaviště  
**rail** kolejnice, kolej  
**raingear** oblečení do deště  
**reckless** bezohledný, nezodpovědný  
**registration number** státní poznávací značka, SPZ  
**request stop** zastávka na znamení  
**rescue boat** záchranný člun  
**reserved** rezervovaný; zamluvený  
**return ticket** (GB) zpáteční lístek, jízdenka  
**reverse** (GB) couvat  
**rigging** ['rɪŋɪŋ] výstroj lodi; lanová; oplachtování; příprava lodi k plavbě  
**road** (GB) cesta, silnice  
**roadside restaurant** restaurace při silnici, motorest  
**roll** houpat se (o lodi) kolem podélné osy  
**roof** střecha  
**roof-rack** nosič, zahrádka na střeše auta  
**RORO (roll on, roll off)** ['rəʊərəʊ] nákladní loď nebo trajekt pro dopravu nákladních aut s náklady (auto najede a sjede)  
**rotor** ['rəʊtə] rotor; nosná vrtule vrtulníku

**round-trip ticket** (US) zpáteční lístek, jízdenka  
**rucksack** (GB) ['rʌksæk] batoh, ruksak  
**rudder** ['rʌdə] kormidlo; směrovka  
**ruins** trosky, zřícenina  
**run over sb** srazit někoho, přejet někoho  
**saddle** sedlo, sedátko; osedlat  
**sail** plavit se; plachtit; plachta  
**seasick** trpící mořskou nemocí  
**seat** sedlo, sedadlo (u dvoustupých vozidel)  
**self-catering** s vlastním stravováním  
**semi** návěs  
**sit facing the engine / backwards** sedět po / proti směru jízdy  
**sharp bend** (GB), **curve** (US) ostrá zatáčka  
**sheet** plachta  
**ship** loď  
**shuttle** kyvadlová doprava; raketo-plán  
**sidewalk** (US) chodník  
**skid** smyk; dostat smyk  
**sleepers** lůžkový vůz; pražec  
**slippery road** kluzká vozovka  
**smuggle** pašovat  
**solid line** plná čára  
**spaghetti junction** [spə'ʃetɪ] složitý systém mimoúrovňových křižovatek  
**spares** náhradní díly  
**speed** zrychlit; rychlost  
**speed limit** povolená rychlost  
**speed up** zrychlit, zvýšit rychlost  
**speeding** překračování povolené rychlosti  
**speedometer** [spi:'dɒmɪtə] rychlo-měr, tachometr  
**spokes** hvězdicové dráty jízdního kola  
**spotlight** reflektor (kuželový); ostré světlo  
**staff** zaměstnanci, pracovníci, personál  
**standpoint** stanovisko, hledisko  
**stateroom** luxusní soukromá kajuta; vládní salónek na nádraží  
**steering wheel** volant; kormidlo  
**stern** zadní část lodi, zád  
**steward** stevard  
**stewardess** letuška  
**stickshift** (US) řadicí páka  
**stop** zastávka, přerušení cesty; zastávka, stanice

**subway** (GB) podchod  
**subway** (US) podzemní dráha  
**suitcase** kufr  
**suite** [swi:t] apartmá (v hotelu)  
**sunroof** posuvná střecha  
**superstructure** nástavba  
**swimwear** plavecké oblečení  
**T-junction** křižovatka ve tvaru T  
**tachometer** (US) otáčkoměr  
**tailgate sb** (US) jet v závěsu za někým  
**taillight** (US) koncové (brzdové) světlo  
**take off** vzlétnout, odstartovat, vznést se  
**tandem** sedadla za sebou  
**tentpeg** stanový kolík  
**tire** (US) pneumatika  
**toilet articles** toaletní potřeby  
**tollroad** (GB) ['təʊlroʊd] **tollway** (US) silnice, na níž se vybírá mýto, poplatek  
**toolkit** brašna na nářadí; souprava nářadí  
**touch down** přistát; přistání  
**towbar** ['təʊbɑ:] tažná tyč  
**towel** ručník, osuška  
**towing** závěsné zařízení  
**trailer** přívěs  
**travel light** cestovat na lehkó (bez zavazadel)  
**trek** pěstovat pěší turistiku v přírodě  
**truck** (US) nákladní auto  
**trunk road** hlavní silnice  
**trunk** (US) kufr, zavazadlový prostor  
**tube (the)** (GB) metro, podzemní dráha  
**tug** vlečná loď, remorkér; vlečné letadlo; vlečné lano  
**turbulence** ['tɜ:bʊləns] turbulence, vířivost; neklid, vzrušení  
**turnpike** (US) dálnice, na níž se platí poplatek  
**twisting country lane** klikatá venkovská cesta  
**underground (the)** (GB) metro, podzemní dráha  
**underpass** (US) podjezd, podchod  
**under the influence of** pod vlivem  
**unexpectedly** neočekávaně  
**van** dodávka; nákladní vagon  
**vehicle** vozidlo; dopravní prostředek  
**vending machine** prodejní automat  
**verge on st** [vɜ:dʒ] hraničit s něčím; být na pokraji něčeho



**vessel** ['vesəl] plavidlo, loď; letadlo, vzducholod'; nádoba

**view of** výhled na

**voyage** ['vɔɪdʒ] cesta, plavba

**wagon** železniční vůz, vagon (US); otevřený nákladní vagón (GB); dodávkový vůz, dodávka, stejšn, kombi

**wagon-lit** spací vůz, lůžkový vůz

**walk (in the hills, etc.)** jít, chodit (po horách atd.)

**windscreen wipers** stěrače

**windscreen** (GB) přední sklo motorového vozidla

**windshield** (US) přední sklo motorového vozidla

**wing** křídlo; blatník auta

**yacht** [jɒt] jachta

**YIELD** (US) [ji:ld] DEJ PŘED-NOST V JÍZDĚ

## FARMING

**abyssal** [ə'bisl] hlubinný

**allotment** parcela; pozemek

**arable land** orná půda

**baler** balíkovač slámy

**bark** štěkat; štěkot; kůra stromu

**barley** ječmen

**barn** stodola

**battery farming** chov drůbeže

**bee** včela

**billy-goat** kozel

**bitch** fena; potvora, mrcha

**bleat** bečet, mečet (ovce, koza)

**boar** divočák, kanec

**bray** hýkat

**breeding** pěstování, chov; rozmnožování

**bull** býk

**bullock** (GB) vůl, vykleštěný býk

**buzz** [bʌz] bzučet

**cage** klec

**calf, pl. calves** tele

**carcass** ['kɑ:kəs] mršina, zdechlina

**castrated** vykastrovaný

**cattle** dobytek, skot

**champion** přeborník, mistr, vítěz

**chicken coop** kurník

**chirp** [tʃɜ:p] švitořit, cvrlikat

**clean up** (US) vykydat, vyčistit (stáj apod.)

**cluck** kvokat, kdákat (slepice)

**cock(ere)** (GB) kohoutek, mladý kohout

**colt** [kəʊlt] hříbě, hřebeček

**contaminate** [kən'tæmɪneɪt] znečišťovat, znečistit

**coop** kurník, klec pro drůbež

**corn** obilí

**corn** (US) kukuřice

**cornfield** obilné, kukuřičné pole

**cow** kráva

**cowman** kovboj; rančer (US)

**cowshed** kravín, chlív

**cricket** cvrček

**croak** skřehotat; krákat; kvákat

**destructive** ničivý, destruktivní

**domesticated** ochočený, zdomácnělý

**donkey** [dɒŋki] osel

**drake** kačer

**duck** kachna

**duckling** káčátko

**ewe** [ju:] ovce

**famine** ['fæmɪn] hladomor, hlad

**farm-labourer** zemědělský dělník

**farmer** sedlák, hospodář, farmář, zemědělec

**farmhouse** farma, statek

**farmyard** dvůr statku

**feed** krmit

**ferret** fretka

**fertile** ['fɜ:taɪl, 'fɜ:təl] úrodný, plodný

**fertilisers** ['fɜ:tɪlaɪzəz] hnojiva

**field** pole

**filly** ['fɪli] mladá klisna

**foal** [fəʊl] hříbě

**foreman** mistr, předák

**forest** les

**fowl** drůbež; slepice; kuře

**free-range eggs** vejce od slepic z volného výběhu

**frog** žába

**gander** ['gændə] houser

**gelding** ['geldɪŋ] valach

**goose, pl. geese** husa

**gosling** ['gɒzliŋ] house

**grain** zrnó, zrní, obilí, pšenice (US)

**grain elevator** (US) silo, sýpka

**grapes** hrozny

**graze** pást se

**grazing** pastvina, pastvisko

**groundwater** spodní voda

**grunt** chrochtat; vrčet, bručet

**hare** zajíc

**harmful** škodlivý

**harrow** brány

**harvest** žně, úroda; sklízet úrodu

**hay** seno

**haystack** kupka sena

**he-goat** kozel

**hee-haw** hýkat

**heifer** ['hefə] jalovice

**henhouse** kurník

**hiss** syčet

**hog** (US) prase, vepř

**hoot** houkat; hučet

**hops** chmel

**hormones** hormony

**horse** kůň

**horseshoe** podkova

**hum** hučet; bzučet; vrčet; broukat si

**hutch** králíkárna, kotec

**illegal** nezákonný, nelegální

**irrigation** zavlažování

**kennel, doghouse (US)** psí bouda  
**kid** kůzle; dítě  
**kitten** kotě  
**ladder** žebřík  
**lamb** ['læm] jehně  
**lay eggs** snášet, klást vejce  
**leaching** vyluhování  
**leaf, pl. leaves** list, lístek  
**leak down** prosakovat  
**livestock** dobytek  
**loose box** stání pro koně  
**lorry (GB)** nákladní auto  
**(machine)-milk** dojit (strojově)  
**maize (GB)** kukuřice  
**manor** panské sídlo, zámek  
**mare** klisna  
**meadow** ['medəʊ] louka  
**miaow** [,mi:'əʊ] mňau; mňoukat; mňoukání  
**mistreat** špatně zacházet, týrat  
**monoculture** monokultura  
**mouse, pl. mice** myš  
**mow** sekat, žnout, kosit  
**muck out (GB)** vykydat, vyčistit  
**muckspreading** hnojení, rozhazování hnoje  
**mulching** mulčování  
**nanny-goat** koza  
**neigh** [nei] ržát  
**nitrate** [naɪtraɪts] dusičnany, nitridy  
**oats** oves  
**orchard** ['ɔ:tʃəd] sad  
**overproduction** nadvýroba, nadprodukce  
**ox, pl. oxen** vůl  
**paddock** výběh pro koně; padok  
**parasite** ['pærəsart] parazit, příživník  
**pasture** pastvina  
**pathway** cesta, chodník; cesta (k něčemu)  
**pellets** granule, pelety  
**pear tree** [peə] hrušň  
**pesticide** ['pestɪsaɪd] pesticid, prostředek k hubení hmyzu  
**pests** škůdci  
**pick** sbírat, trhat (květiny, ovoce)  
**pig** prase, vepř  
**pigsty** prasečí chlívek  
**pigeon** holub  
**piglet** sele  
**plough (GB)** [plau] pluh; orat  
**plumage** ['plu:mɪdʒ] opeření, pera

**pony** poník  
**potato** brambor  
**poultry** drůbež  
**purr** [pɜ:] příst  
**pussy(cat)** kočka, čiča  
**quack** [kwæk] káchat, kvákat (kačena)  
**quest for st** pátrání po něčem, hledání  
**rake** hrábě; hrabat, uhrabat  
**ram** beran  
**reap** žít, žnout, kosit, sklízet  
**recklessly** bezohledně  
**recklessness** bezohlednost  
**rooster (US)** kohout  
**roots** kořeny  
**runoff** dešťová voda, zvl. přívalová  
vymývajcí živiny  
**rye** žito  
**salivation** ['sæliveɪʃən] slinění  
**scattering** rozptylování  
**scythe** [saɪð] kosa  
**seedbed** záhon připravený k setí; semenišť  
**seep down** prosakovat  
**she-cat** kočka  
**she-goat** koza  
**shear sheep** stříhat ovce  
**sheep, pl. sheep** ovce  
**shortage of st** nedostatek něčeho  
**silo (GB)** ['saɪləʊ] silo  
**sing** zpívat, cvrlikat  
**slaughter** porážka; zabít  
**slaughtered** zabitý, poražený (dobytka)  
**snake** had  
**soil** půda, zem; země  
**sow** [sau] svině, prasnice  
**sow seeds** [səʊ] sít, zasít semena  
**squawk** [skwɔ:k] skřehotat, vřeštět (pták)  
**squeak** kvičet, pištět  
**squeal** [skwi:l] řičet, vřeštět  
**stable** stáj  
**stack** stoh; kupka  
**stallion** hřebec  
**steer (US)** mladý vůl, býček  
**store** skladovat  
**straw** sláma  
**stubble** ['stʌbl] strniště, strnisko (pole i vousy)  
**stud** hřebec (přen. sexuálně aktivní jedinec)  
**sty** chlív, chlívek

**subsidy, subsidize** dotace; dotovat  
**tomcat** kocour  
**top-dressing** svrchní hnojení, hnojení na list  
**topsoil** horní vrstva půdy, ornice  
**tractor** traktor  
**turnip** tuřín, vodnice  
**twitter** švitořit, štěbetat, cvrlikat  
**vine** [vaɪn] vinná réva; popínavá rostlina  
**vinegar** ['vɪnɪgə] ocet (vinný)  
**vineyard** ['vɪnjɑ:d, -jərd] vinice  
**vixen** liška (samice)  
**watchdog** hlídací pes  
**wetland** mokřina, bažina, močál  
**wheat** pšenice  
**whine** kňučet, kňourat  
**whinny** zaržát, zářehat (radostně)  
**yap** ňafat, bafnout, štěkat



## CLIMATE

aerosol aerosol

**albedo** [æ'l'bi:dəu] albedo (množství slunečního světla odrážející se zpět do vesmíru)**anemometer** větroměr, anemometr**April showers** dubnové přeháňky**arid** ['ærid] suchý, vyprahlý; suchopárný, nezáživný**asterisk** hvězdička (\*, grafická značka)**authorities** úřady**avalanche** ['ævə,lɑ:nʃ] lavina, příval**barometer** tlakoměr, barometr**beat down** pražit, prát (slunce); lít (déšť)**blizzard** blizzard (sněhová bouře)**blow** foukat; silný vítr**blustery (day)** bouřlivý, větrný (den)**boiling** žhavý, horký**breeze** vánek, větřík; vát**breezy** svěží**broily (GB)** paraple, deštník**burst pipes** prasklé potrubí**CFCs (chlorofluorocarbons)** [ˌsi:ɪf'si:z] freony**changeable** proměnlivý**chilly** chladný, studený, mrazivý; prochládlý, zkrhlý; hrůzný, nahánějící husí kůži**cirrus** ['sɪrəs] cirus, řasovitý nebo závojitý oblak**clear the snow** odklízet sněh**clear up** vyjasnit se (obloha)**cloudbank** hradba nízkých mraků**cloudy** oblačný, zamračený; oblačno, zamračeno; nezřetelný, nejasný**cold** studený; zima, chladno**continental** vnitrozemský, kontinentální**crisp snow** křupavý sněh (vrzající pod nohama)**cumulonimbus** [kju:mjʊləu'nimbəs] kumulonimbus**cumulus** ['kju:mjʊləs] kumulus, kupa, kupovitý oblak**dam** údolní přehrada (hráz)**downpour** ['daʊnpɔ:] liják**downwind** po větru**drizzle** mrholit, mžít; mrholení**drought** [draʊt] sucho, období sucha**dump** vysypat, vyklopit (na skládku)**dust** prach**equable** ['ekwəbl] stálý, neměnný**equinox** ['ekwɪnɒks] rovnodennost**extreme** extrémní; nejvyšší stupeň, míra**filtration** filtrování, filtrace**fleecy** pokrytý beránky**flood** potopa, záplava, povodeň; zaplavit**flooded** zaplavený**flurry of snow** náhlá metelice, příval sněhu**flying** létání, cestování letadlem**foggy** mlhavý; mlhavo**fossil fuel** fosilní palivo (uhlí, ropa, zemní plyn)**freezing point** bod mrazu**frosty** mrazivý, ledový, ledově studený**get sunburned / sunburnt** spálit se na slunci**ghastly** ['gɑ:stli] strašný, hrozný, příšerný**glare** ostré sluneční světlo, prudké slunce**globe** zeměkoule, glóbus, koule**gravity** přitažlivost, zemská tíže**greenhouse effect** skleníkový efekt**gusty** nárazový, prudký (vítr); větrný, bouřlivý (počasí)**hail(stones)** kroupy; krupobití**halo** ['heɪləʊ] kruh kolem měsíce; svatozář**haze** lehká mlha, kouřmo**headwind** protivítr, přední vítr**hoar frost** jinovatka**hospitable** příznivý; pohostinný**hot** horko; horký**humid** vlhko; vlhký**humidity** vlhkost**hurricane** ['hʌrɪkən, 'hʌrɪkeɪn, 'hʌrɪkeɪn] hurikán, uragán, orkán, vichřice**icicle** rampouch**inhospitable** nehostinný; nepohostinný, nevlidný**insular** ['ɪnsjʊlə] ostrovní**inundation** [ɪnʌn'deɪʃən] záplava**ionosphere** [aɪ'ɒnəʃfɪə] ionosféra**island** ['aɪlənd] ostrov; ostrovní**landslide** sesuv půdy; drtivé vítězství ve volbách**light** slabý, lehký**lightning** blesk**melting** tání**mirage** [mɪ'rɑ:ʒ] zrcadlení na silnicích ve velkém vedru; fata morgána**mist** lehká mlha, opar**misty** mlhavo**nitrous oxides** ['naɪtrəs 'ɒksaɪdɪz] oxidy dusíku**moderate** ['mɒdərət] mírný**moist** vlhký, provlhlý, mírně mokrý; deštivý**nimbus** ['nɪmbəs] nimbus (dešťový oblak)**outlook for...** předpověď na...**overcast** zataženo**overflowing** přetečení, vylití**oxygen** kyslík**packed snow** nafoukaný, ztvrdlý, udusaný sněh**plague** [pleɪɡ] sužovat, trápit**prompts** nápověda**pour** [pɔ:] lít, prudce pršet; nalít, nasypat**powdery snow** prachový sněh**rainbow** duha**raindrop** dešťová kapka**rainstorm** bouře doprovázená lijákem**rainy** deštivý**rationing** přidělový systém**reflection** odraz, zrcadlení**reflective** hloubavý, přemítavý**refrigerants** freony**replenish** doplnit, znovu naplnit**rivers in spate (GB)** rozvodněné řeky**saturated** úplně promočený**scattered showers** občasné (misty) přeháňky**scorcher (coll)** pařák, horký den**seaboard** mořské pobřeží; přímořský; záchranný námořní člun**season** roční období**settled** ustálený, stále pěkný (počasí)**severe** [sɪ'vɪə] prudký, ostrý, krutý**skid** dostat smyk**sleet** plískanice, déšť se sněhem; zmrzlý déšť**slide (into)** sklouznout (do)**slip over on st** uklouznout na něčem**slush** rozbředlý sněh; řídké bahno, břečka**smoggy** plný smogu**snowdrift** závěj; sněhová vichřice, metelice, fujavice**snowfall** sněžení**snowflake** sněhová vločka; bledule jarní**snowplough** sněhový pluh; pluh (lyžařský styl)

**snowstorm** sněhová bouře  
**soaked to the skin** promoklý na kůži  
**squall** náraz větru, poryv; bouře  
**steady rain** vytrvalý déšť  
**storm** bouře  
**storm off to st** vyřítit se směrem někam  
**stratosphere** stratosféra  
**stratus** [streitəs] stratus, vrstva oblaků, oblačná vrstva  
**sultry** [ˈsʌltri] dusný, parný  
**sulphur dioxide (SO<sub>2</sub>)** [ˈsʌlfə daɪˈɒksaɪd] oxid siřičitý  
**sun-stroke** úžeh, úpal  
**sunburn** opálení, spálení sluncem  
**suntan** opálení sluncem  
**swollen rivers** rozvodněné řeky  
**tailwind** vítr vanoucí do zad (ve směru plavby)  
**temperate** mírný  
**tempestuous** [temˈpestjuəs] bouřlivý  
**thawing** [θɔːɪŋ] tání  
**thermometer** [θəˈmɒmɪtə] teploměr  
**threat** [θret] hrozba  
**threatening** hrozící, hrozivý  
**thunder** hrom  
**thundercloud** bouřkový mrak  
**thunderhead** mrak objevující se před bouřkou  
**thunderstorm** bouřka, bouře, hromobití  
**tornado** [tɔːˈneɪdɔʊ] smršť, tornádo, orkán  
**trapped** uvězněn v pasti  
**twister** (inform. US) tornádo; větrná, vodní smršť  
**typhoon** [taɪˈfuːn] tajfun  
**unbroken** celistvý, souvislý  
**unpredictable** nepředvídatelný  
**upwind** proti větru  
**unsettled** [ʌnˈsetld] nestálý, nejistý (počasí); neobydlený; nevyřízený  
**wane** ubývat (o měsíci)  
**wax** [wæks] přibývat, dorůstat (o měsíci)  
**weathercock** korouhvička  
**whirlwind** [ˈwɜːlwɪnd] vzdušný vír, tornádo, cyklón, vichr, smršť, větrná bouře  
**windy** větrný

## NATURE

**acorn** [ˈeɪkɔːn] žalud  
**adaptable** přizpůsobivý  
**adder** [ˈædə] zmije  
**alligator** [ˈælɪɡeɪtə] aligátor  
**Alsatian** [æɪˈseɪʃən] německý ovčák, vlčák  
**amphibian** obojživelník; obojživelný  
**anaconda** anakonda; velký nejedovatý had škrtič  
**anemone** [əˈneməni] sasanka  
**angler** rybář lovíci na udici; sportovní rybář  
**ant** mravenec  
**antlers** parohy  
**ape** opice, lidoop  
**aquarium** akvárium  
**Arab** Arab, kůň arabský  
**archipelago** [ɑːkɪˈpeləɡəʊ] souostroví  
**ash** jasan; jasanové dřevo; popel  
**asp** bolen (ryba); osika; brejlovec egyptský; jakýkoli jedovatý had  
**asterisk** hvězdička (\*, polygrafický znak)  
**atmosphere** atmosféra, ovzduší  
**attain st** dosáhnout něčeho  
**back down** ustoupit, vzdát se  
**backbone** páteř; hřbet knihy  
**badger** jezevec  
**bait** návnada, vnaidlo  
**bale** balík sena; žok  
**bark** kůra stromu; štěkot, štěkání  
**bass** [bæs] okoun; lípa americká  
**basset (hound)** baset  
**bat** netopýr  
**bay** záliv; kotlina; bobkový list  
**bayou** (US, Louisiana, Texas) [ˈbaɪuː] bažinaté rameno řeky; pomalu tekoucí voda  
**beak** zobák  
**bear** [beə] medvěd  
**beaver** bobr  
**beech** buk  
**beechmast** bukvice  
**berries** bobule  
**beware of...** pozor na...  
**big cats** velké šelmy kočkovité  
**bill** zobák  
**binoculars** dalekohled  
**birch** bříza  
**bison** (GB) zubr evropský  
**bison** (US) bizon americký

**bit** udidlo (uzdy)  
**blackbird** kos  
**black widow** černá vdova (jedovatý pavouk)  
**blind** (US) posed  
**bluff** útes; strmý sráz  
**boar** [bɔː] divočák  
**boardwalk** chodník z prken  
**bog** bažina, močál, slatina  
**bordering on st** hraničící s něčím  
**bough** [bau] hlavní, silná větev stromu  
**brambles** ostružiní; ostružiny  
**branch** větev; rameno vodního toku  
**breakers** příbojové vlny; přívál přes palubu  
**bream** cejn  
**bridle** [ˈbraɪdl] uzda  
**brook** potok, říčka  
**buck** [bʌk] jelen; srnec  
**bud** pupen; poupě; pučet  
**budgerigar, budgie** [bʌdʒerɪɡaː, ˈbʌdʒi] andulka  
**buffalo** (GB) buvol (tur žijící v Asii a Africe)  
**buffalo** (US) bizon americký  
**bulb** cibule; hlíza; oddenek  
**bumblebee** čmelák  
**burdock** [bɜːdɒk] lopuch  
**buttercup** pryskyřník  
**butterfly** motýl  
**buzzard** káně  
**cactus, pl. cacti, cactuses** [ˈkæktəs] kaktus  
**cage** klec; zavřít do klece  
**camel** velbloud  
**camomile** heřmánek  
**canal** [kəˈnæl] kanál, průplav  
**canopy** klenba (stromů); příkryt jako baldachýnem nebo nebesy  
**canter** eval; poklus; cválat; klusat  
**cap** klobouček, hlavička houby  
**captive** zajatec; žijící v zajetí  
**carnivore** masožravec  
**cardinal** kardinál červený (pěnkavovitý pták)  
**carnation** hvozdík, karafiát; růžová, světle červená barva  
**carp** kapr  
**caterpillar** housenka  
**catfish (wels)** sumec; sumcovité ryby  
**catkin** jehněda, kočíčka



**cave, cavern** [keɪv, 'kævnən] jeskyně; prohlubeň  
**caviar** ['kæviə:] kaviár  
**centipede** ['sentɪpi:d] stonožka  
**cep (penny bun)** [sep] hřib  
**chamois** ['ʃæmwɑ:] kamzík  
**chanterelle** ['ʃæntə'rel] liška jedlá  
**chase** honit, pronásledovat; honička  
**chasm** ['kæzəm] rokle, propast  
**chestnut** kaštan  
**chick** kuře; ptačí mládě  
**chives** pažitka  
**chrysanthemum**  
 [kri'sænθɪməm, -'zænθ-] chryzantéma  
**clams** (US) mlži, škeble  
**claw** dráp; pařát  
**cliff** útes  
**coastline** pobřežní čára  
**coat** pokrývka těla zvířat (srst, peří)  
**cobra** kobra; mamba  
**cockle** srdcovka jedlá (mořský mlž); koukol polní; plevel  
**cockroach** šváb  
**cod** treska  
**cold-blooded** studenokrevný (živočich); chladnokrevný (kůň)  
**collar** obojek (psa)  
**collie** kolie, skotský ovčák  
**condemned** odsouzený  
**cone** šiška  
**confinement** uvěznění, omezení svobody  
**confluence** soutok  
**coniferous** [kə'nɪfərəs] jehličnatý  
**conker** (infml) kaštan (strom i plod)  
**constant** stálý  
**coot** lyska (pták)  
**copse** houští; přeměnit les v nízký porost osekáním; tvořit výhonky odspodu kmene  
**corgi** ['kɔ:gi] korgi (psí rasa)  
**cormorant** ['kɔ:mərənt] kormorán  
**cornflower** chřpa  
**couch-grass** pýr plazivý  
**cougar** (US) ['ku:gə] kuguár, puma  
**cowardice** ['kaʊədɪs] zbabělost  
**cowslip** (GB) ['kaʊslɪp] prvosienka jarní  
**cowslip** (US) blatouch bahenní  
**coyote** [kaɪ'əʊti, kəɪəʊti] kojot, stepní vlk  
**crab** krab; lovit kraby

**cranberries** brusinky  
**crayfish** rak; langusta  
**creek** (GB) úzká zátoka; záliv  
**creek** (US) přítok, říčka; rovina mezi horami  
**creepy-crawly** (infml) hmyz, brouk; nahánějící hrůzu  
**crocodile** krokodýl  
**crocus** krokus, šafrán  
**crop up** objevit se, vynořit se  
**cross-breed** kříženec  
**crow** vrána; kokrhát  
**crown** koruna (stromu)  
**cruel** krutý, nelidský  
**cub** mládě šelmy; mládě žraloka  
**cubs** vlčata; Vlčata (mladí skauti)  
**cuckoo** ['kuku:] kukačka  
**cuddle** obětí, sevření v náručí; objímat; hýčkat  
**current** vodní tok, proud  
**cutting** řízek (rostliny)  
**cypress** ['saɪprəs] cypřiš, tisovec  
**dachshund** ['dæksənd, 'dækshund] jezevčík  
**daddy-long-legs** sekáč (druh pavouka); tiplíce  
**daffodil** ['dæfədɪl] narcis (žlutý)  
**dahlia** ['deɪliə, 'deɪljə] jiřina, jiřinka  
**daisy** sedmikráska, chudobka  
**dandelion** ['dændɪlaɪən] pampeliška, smetanka lékařská  
**deciduous** [di'sɪdjuəs] opadavý (strom)  
**deer** jelen; vysoká  
**den** doupě, brloh, nora  
**disfigure** znetvořit, zmrzačit  
**doberman** doberman  
**doe** laň; srna  
**Dolomites, the** ['dɒlə'maɪts] Dolomity  
**dolphin** delfín  
**dormouse** plch obecný  
**dove** holubice; hrdlička  
**downs** mírná pahorkatina (obvykle porostlá trávou)  
**drey** veverčí hnízdo  
**duck** kachna  
**dyke** příkop, kanál; protipovodňová hráz, přehrada; tok  
**eagle** orel  
**earthquake** zemětřesení  
**earthworm** žížala, dešťovka; bídný červ, chudák  
**eel** úhoř

**egret** [i:gret] volavka bílá, rajka; chmýří na pampelišce  
**elephant** slon  
**elm** jilm  
**embankment** nábrežní  
**emu** ['i:mju:] emu  
**enclosure** ohrada; oplocený pozemek  
**Equator** [i'kweɪtə] rovník  
**estuary** ['estjuəri] ústí řeky  
**evergreen** jehličnatý, stále zelený  
**falcon** sokol  
**fangs** tesáky; hadí zuby  
**fawn** kolouch; smě  
**felling** kácení  
**feral** ['ferəl, 'fɪərəl] zdivočelý, potulný; divoký, volně žijící  
**fin** ploutev  
**finch** pěnkava  
**fir** jedle  
**fire at sb, st** střílet na někoho, něco  
**firebreak** ochranný průsek, příkop proti šíření lesního požáru  
**fish eagle** orlovec říční  
**fisherman** rybář  
**fishes** druhy ryb  
**fishing** rybaření, rybolov  
**flamingo, pl. flamingos or flamingoes** plamenák  
**flashy** třpytivý, blýskavý  
**fluffy** chlupatý, pokrytý peřím; nadýchaný  
**foe** [fəʊ] nepřítel  
**foothills** předhůří  
**footprint** stopa, otisk nohy, šlépěj  
**for kicks** z legrace, pro zábavu  
**ford** brod; přebrodit  
**forelegs** přední nohy  
**forestry** lesnictví, lesní hospodářství; zalesněná krajina, lesy  
**forget-me-not** pomněnka  
**fox** liška  
**foxtail** náprstník červený  
**foxhunt** hon na lišku koňmo; pořádat hon na lišku  
**frog (eggs are spawn, young are tadpoles)** žába (vajíčka jsou jikry, mláďata jsou pulci)  
**fungus, pl. fungi, funguses** ['fʌŋɡəs, 'fʌŋɡaɪ, 'fʌndʒaɪ, 'fʌndʒɪ] houba  
**gaff** [ɡæf] harpuna  
**gallop** trysk, zkrácený cval; cválat  
**gamekeeper** hajný, myslivec  
**gather** sklídit, sbírat, shromažďovat

**gentle** mírumilovný, jemný  
**geography** zeměpis  
**geranium** [dʒə'reiniəm] pelargónie  
**gills** [gɪlz] žábry; lupeny na spodku klobouku hub  
**gin-trap** (GB) talířová železa  
**giraffe** žirafa  
**girth** podbřišník, podpěnka  
**gold-seekers** hledači zlata  
**gorilla** gorila  
**grassland** lučiny, pastviny; step  
**grass snake** užovka  
**gregarious** [grɪ'geəriəs] stádovitý; společenský, družný  
**greyhound** ['greɪhaʊnd] chrt  
**guinea pig** ['ɡniːpiɡ] morče  
**gull** [ɡʌl] racek  
**hake** štikozubec (ryba příbuzná treskám)  
**hamster** křeček  
**hare** (GB) zajíc  
**haw** [hɔ:] hložinka (plod hlohu)  
**hawk** [hɔ:k] jestřáb, krahujec  
**hawthorn** ['hɔ:θɔ:n] hloh  
**hay(making)** seno(seč)  
**hazelnut** lískový ořech  
**headwater(s)** pramen řeky; horní tok  
**hedgehog** ježek  
**herb** bylina, bylinka (léčivá, koření)  
**herbivore** ['hɜ:bɪvɔ:] býložravec  
**heron** ['herən] volavka  
**herring** ['herɪŋ] sled  
**hibernate** ['hɪbəneɪt] přezimovat  
**hide** kůže, usen  
**hillock** kopeček, hromádka  
**hind** [haɪnd] laň  
**hippo(potamus), pl. hippopotamuses or -ami** hroch  
**hit** zasáhnout  
**holt** doupe, nora (zvl. vydří)  
**hoof, pl. hoofs, hooves** kopyto  
**hook** háček  
**hoopoe** ['hu:pu:] dudek chocholatý  
**hornbeam** habr  
**hornet** sršeň  
**horns** paroží, parohy; rohy  
**horse chestnut** koňský kaštan (strom i plod)  
**hounds** lovečtí psi; smečka psů na honu  
**hunter** lovecký pes užívaný zejména pro hon na lišku; typ jezdeckého koně pro honební účely; lovec

**hunting** lov  
**hunting horn** lovecký roh, lesní roh  
**hunter** lovec  
**hyacinth** ['haɪəsɪnθ] hyacint  
**hyena** [haɪ'i:nə] hyena  
**Indian** indický; Ind; Indián; indiánský  
**inedible** nepoživatelný  
**inland sea** vnitrozemní moře  
**inquisitive** zvědavý, zvědavý, vše-tečný  
**insect(s)** hmyz  
**invertebrate** [ɪn'vɜ:tɪbrət] bezobratlý; bezpáteřný  
**iris** kosatec, iris; duhovka  
**jackdaw** ['dʒækdo:] kavka obecná  
**jay** sojka obecná  
**justify** ospravedlnit, ospravedlňovat; omlouvat  
**kangaroo** klokan  
**karst** kras  
**kayaking** jízda na kajaku  
**kestrel** poštolka obecná  
**kingfisher** ledňáček  
**kite** pták z čeledi krahujcovitých, zejm. luňák červený; přeneseně jestřáb, dravec  
**koala** koala medvídkovitá  
**labrador** ['læbrədɔ:] labradorský retrivr  
**ladybird** slunéčko sedmítečné, beruška  
**landlocked** obklopený pevninou, chráněný proti moři  
**landslide** sesuv půdy; drtivé volební vítězství  
**larch** modřín (strom i dřevo)  
**lark** skřivan polní  
**latitude** zeměpisná šířka  
**lavender** levandule (rostlina, vůně i barva)  
**lead, leash** (US) [li:f] vodítko (např. na psa)  
**leaf, pl. leaves** list  
**leafy** listnatý (les); listový (zelenina)  
**leopard** ['lepəd] levhart, leopard skvrnitý  
**leveret** ['levərɪt] mladý zajíc, zajiček  
**lice, sg. louse** vši, veš  
**lifeless** mrtvý, bez života, jako mrtvý  
**lily** lilie  
**lily-of-the-valley** konvalinka vonná  
**lime** lípa; limeta  
**limestone** vápenec  
**lion** lev

**live oak** dub virginický (stále zelený)  
**livebait** živá návnada (červi, ryby)  
**lizard** ještěrka  
**lobster** humr  
**located in st** situovaný (umístěný) někde  
**loch (Scotland)** [lɒk] jezero  
**locust** ['ləʊkəst] saranče, kobylka  
**lodge** doupe (vydry, bobra)  
**logging** těžba dřeva v lese  
**long-haired** dlouhosrstý  
**longitude** ['lɒndʒɪtju:d, 'lɒŋɡɪ-] zeměpisná délka  
**lough (Ireland)** [lɒk] jezero  
**lowland(s)** nížina  
**lumberjack** ['lʌmbədʒæk] dřevorubec, dřevař  
**lure** [ljʊə] návnada, vnadidlo; lákat, vábit  
**lynx** rys  
**mackerel** makrela  
**magpie** straka  
**maim** zmrzačit, zohavit  
**mainland** pevnina  
**mammal** savec  
**mangrove** kořenovník obecný; mangrovová dřevina  
**Manx** bezocasá kočka (původem z ostrova Man)  
**maple** javor (strom i dřevo)  
**marjoram** ['mɑ:dʒərəm] majoránka  
**marmot** svišť  
**marsh** močál, bažina, bahnisko, mokřina, blata  
**marshland** mokřina, bažina, blata  
**marsupial** [mɑ:'su:piəl] vačnatec  
**marten** kuna (zvíře i kožešina)  
**martin** jiríčka obecná  
**mast, beechmast** bukvice  
**mate** druh, družka  
**meadow** louka  
**meltwater** voda z rozpuštěného sněhu  
**menace to st, sb** ['menɪs] nebezpečí, hrozba pro něco, někoho  
**midge** [mɪdʒ] pakomár; muška  
**midwater** střední vrstva vody na otevřeném moři  
**mint** máta; mátový bonbón  
**miss** netrefit, minout cíl  
**mole** krtek  
**moleheap, molehill** krtina, krtinec  
**mongrel** ['mʌŋɡrəl] pes smíšené rasy, voříšek; bastard



**monkey** opice; opičí  
**moor(s)** nízko zarostlá pustá planina, zvl. porostlá vřesem; mokřina, slatina, blata  
**moose** [mu:s] los americký  
**morel** [mɔ'rəl] smrž jedlý  
**mosquito, pl. mosquitoes, mosquitos** [mɔ'ski:təʊ] moskyt; komár  
**moth** [mɒθ] mol šatní; můra  
**mouflon** (GB) [mu:'flɒn] muflon  
**mouse, pl. mice** myš  
**mouser** kočka, která dobře chytá myši  
**mouth** ústa, huba; ústí (řeky)  
**mudflat** nános v ústí řek; část mořského břehu zaplavovaná přílivem  
**mulberry** ['mʌlbəri] moruše (strom i plod)  
**mussel** slávka jedlá  
**muzzle** náhubek; nasadit náhubek; čenich, čumák  
**mycelium** [maɪ'si:lɪəm] podhoubí, mycélium  
**mysterious** tajemný, záhadný  
**narcissus** narcis, narciska  
**narrows** úžina; soutěska  
**nasty** zlý; nevyzpytatelný  
**nature-lover** milovník přírody  
**nest** hnízdo; udělat si hnízdo; hnízdit  
**nettle** kopřiva; hluchavka; šlehat kopřivami  
**newt** [nju:t, nu:t] mlok; čolek  
**nightingale** slavík  
**nuisance** nepřístojnost; zlořád; svízeľ; otrava  
**nuthatch** [nʌθætʃ] brhlík  
**oak** dub  
**oasis** [əu'eɪsɪs] oáza  
**octopus** chobotnice  
**offshore** pobřeží, pevninský; mimo břeh, vzdálený od pobřeží; na volném moři  
**omnivore** ['ɒmnɪvɔ:] všežravec  
**orangutan** [ɔ:'ræŋtæn, ɔ:ræŋu'tæn] orangutan  
**orchid** orchidej  
**ostrich** ['ɒstrɪtʃ] pštros  
**otter** ['ɒtə] vydra  
**owl** [aʊl] sova, výr, sýček  
**ox, pl. oxen** vůl; tur  
**oysters** ústřice  
**palm** palma  
**pampa(s)** pampy (rovinné prairie)  
**pansy** maceška, violka trojbarevná  
**parasol** bedla; slunečník, parazol

**parrot** papoušek; papouškovat, tupě opakovat  
**parsley** petržel zahradní  
**partridge** koroptev  
**paw** tlapa, tlapka, pracka, pacička  
**pedigree, purebred** čistokrevný  
**pelagic** [pe'lædʒɪk] mořský, pelagický  
**pellet** ['pelət] brok; střela; kulka  
**pelican** pelikán  
**pelt** kůže s kožešinou, kožich; surová kůže; stahovat kůži  
**penguin** ['peŋɡwɪn] tučňák  
**peninsula** poloostrov  
**peony** ['pi:əni] pivoňka  
**perch** okoun říční  
**pest** škůdce, škůdci  
**petal** ['petl] okvětní lístek, korunní plátek  
**pheasant** ['feznt] bažant  
**pigeon** holub  
**pike** štika  
**pikeperch** candát  
**pine** borovice, sosna  
**pink** hvozdík pernatý; karafiát  
**pit** jáma; díra; propast; podzemní jeskyně; uhelný důl  
**plateau, pl. plateaux, plateaus** ['plætəʊ] náhorní rovina; plošina; plató  
**poacher** pytlák  
**poisonous** jedovatý  
**polecat** tchoř  
**pollen** ['pɒlən] pyl  
**poodle** pudl  
**pool** louže, kaluž; tůň, tůňka; jezírko; rybník; stojatá voda; studánka  
**poplar** topol  
**poppy** mák; opium  
**pores** rourky zespodu klobouku houby  
**porpoise** ['pɔ:pəs] sviňucha  
**prawns** krevety; garnáti  
**predator** ['predətə] dravec  
**primrose** prvosenka jarní, petrklíč  
**puffball** pýchavka  
**pussy willow** vrba jíva, kočičky  
**python** ['paɪθən] krajta, pyton  
**quail** [kweɪl] křepelka polní  
**quarry** ['kwɒri] lom, kamenolom; lovené zvíře, kořist  
**rabbit** králík  
**rainforest** deštný prales

**rapids** peřeje  
**rat** krysa, potkan  
**rattlesnake** chřestýš  
**raven** krkavec; havran (nepřesně); plenit, drancovat  
**ravine** [rə'vi:n] strž, průrva, rokle, rozsedlina; udělat průrvu, rozbrázdit  
**ray** rejnok  
**redstart** rehek zahradní  
**reptile** plaz  
**reservoir** ['rezəvwa:] nádrž; přehradní jezero; zásobárna  
**restricted movement** omezený pohyb  
**retriever** retrívr (druh loveckého psa)  
**rhea** [ri:ə] nandu (pštrosovitý pták)  
**rhinoceros** [raɪ'nɒsərəs] nosorožec  
**rhizome** ['raɪzəm] oddenek  
**riding** jízda na koni  
**rip-tide** bouřlivý příliv a odliv  
**roach** [rəʊtʃ] plotice  
**robin** červenka, čermáček; drozd stěhovavý (US)  
**rook** havran polní  
**root** kořen; bulva; hlíza; oddenek  
**rose** růže  
**rosemary** rozmarýna lékařská  
**rowan** ['rəʊən] jeřáb (strom)  
**rowdy** ['raʊdi] hulvátský, výtržnický  
**saddle** sedlo; osedlat  
**sage** šalvěj; pelyněk  
**salamander** mlok, salamandr  
**salmon** ['sæmən] losos  
**sardine** sardinka; olejovka  
**savanna(h)** [sə'vænə] savana  
**scales** šupiny  
**scallop** ['skɒləp] hřebenatka, jedlá mušle  
**scavenger** ['skævɪndʒə] mrchožrout  
**scorpion** štír, škorpion  
**scratch** škrábat se, drbat se, drápat se  
**scrubland** krajina porostlá křovinami, klečí, kosodřevinou  
**seal** tuleň; lachtan  
**sea-lion** lvoun hřivnatý  
**seaweed** chaluha, mořská řasa  
**seed** semeno, semínko; zasít  
**sett** jezevčí nora  
**shark** žralok  
**shellfish** měkkýši, koryši (zejména jedlí)  
**shiny** lesklý, lesknoucí se  
**shoal** [ʃəʊl] hejno ryb  
**shooting** střelba, střelení

**short-haired** krátkosrstý  
**show-jumping** parkúr  
**shrimps** garnáti  
**sidekick** pomocník, parták  
**sinker** olůvko, závaží na rybářské udiči  
**skate** rejnok  
**slimy** sliznatý, slizovitý; hlenovitý; úlisný, hnusný  
**slow-worm** slepýš  
**snake** had  
**snapdragon** hledík větší  
**snare** chytat do oka, nastražit past; nástraha, osidlo  
**snowdrop** sněženka  
**solitary** osamoceně rostoucí; osamělý  
**spaniel (cocker or springer)** ['spænjəl] španěl (kokršpaněl nebo springr)  
**sparrow** vrabec  
**spawn** jikry, potěr; klást jikry, třít se  
**spectacular** působivý, atraktivní, velkolepý  
**spider** pavouk; křížák  
**spinner** třpytky  
**splendid** skvělý, nádherný, ohromný  
**spruce** smrk  
**squid** oliheň  
**squirrel** veverka  
**stalactite** ['stæləktait] stalaktit (krápník rostoucí shora dolů)  
**stalagmite** ['stæləgmait] stalagmit (krápník rostoucí zespodu nahoru)  
**stalk** [stɔ:k] stopovat, plížit se, sledovat; stopka, stéblo, stonek, lodyha  
**stalking** figura sloužící jako kryt při stopování zvěře; záminka, klamné zdání  
**starling** špaček  
**stem** kmen (stromu), stonek, lodyha (rostliny), třeň, noha (houby)  
**sticky** lepivý, lepkavý  
**stirrup** ['stɪrəp] třmen  
**stoat** [stəʊt] lasice hranostaj  
**stork** čáp  
**straits** [streɪts] průliv, úžina  
**stream** proud; říčka, potok  
**stub** (GB) pařež; nedopalek  
**stump** pařež; pahýl  
**sturgeon** ['stɜ:dʒən] jeseter  
**suckle** kojit; pít, sát; krmit, živit; vychovávat  
**sunflower** slunečnice  
**surf** příboj, vlnobítí

**swallow (one swallow does not make a summer)** ['swɒləʊ] vlaštovka (jedna vlaštovka jaro nedělá)  
**swamp** [swɒmp] močál, bažina, bahnsko, mokřina  
**swan** [swɒn] labuť  
**swift** rorýs; rychlý  
**tadpole** pulec (larva žáby)  
**tail** ocas, ohon, oháňka, chvost  
**talon** dráp, pařát, spár  
**tarantula** tarantule  
**tench** lín obecný  
**tern** rybák obecný  
**terrapin** ['terəpɪn] mořská želva  
**thaw** tání; obleva; rozmrazení; uvolnění  
**thistle** bodlák, pcháč  
**thoroughbred** ['θʌrəbred] plnokrevník, čistokrevný kůň; kultivovaný člověk  
**thrush** [θrʌʃ] drozdovitý pták, drozd  
**thyme** [taɪm] tymián; mateřídouška  
**tick** klíště  
**tickle** lechtat; svědět  
**tiger** tygr  
**tit** sýkora; struk, cecík  
**toad** ropucha obecná; mlok; žába; ještěrka  
**toadstool** jedovatá houba (zejména s velkým kloboukem); muchomůrka; prašivka  
**tom-cat** kocour  
**tortoise** ['tɔ:təs] želva; mořská želva (US)  
**traces** stopy  
**tracks** stopy vozidla  
**trap** sulka (vozik za koněm při závodu klusáků); past  
**trot** klus, poklus; klusácký závod; klusat  
**trout** pstruh  
**trunk** kmen (stromu); chobot; trup; kufr (US)  
**tulip** tulipán (květ i cibule)  
**tuna** ['tju:nə, tu:nə] tuňák obecný  
**tunnel-trap** sklopec (past s klecí, zvíře se chytí živé)  
**turtle** mořská želva  
**twig** větvička  
**undergrowth** podrost  
**undertow** spodní, zpětný proud příboje  
**veldt, velt** [velt, felt] africká step  
**venomous** ['venəməs] jedovatý; působící otravu; nenávislný, zlostný

**vermin (lice, fleas ...)** havěť (vši, blechy ...)  
**violet** fialka, violka vonná; fialový  
**viper** zmije  
**vivarium, pl. vivariums, vivaria** [vaɪ'veəriəm] vivárium, terárium  
**vixen** ['vɪksən] liška (samice)  
**vulture** sup, kondor; vydřiduch  
**wade** brodit se  
**wagtail** konipas  
**walk** jít  
**walnut** vlašský ořech  
**walrus** ['wɔ:lɹəs] mrož  
**warm-blooded** teplotekrevný  
**warren** ['wɒrən] území, kde je labyrint vzájemně propojených králíčích nor  
**wasp** [wɒsp] vosa  
**water-plants** vodní rostliny  
**watershed** vodní předěl; povodí; rozvodí  
**waterside** pobřeží  
**waterweed** vodní flóra rostoucí ve stojatých vodách; např. vodní mor kanadský  
**weasel** ['wi:zəl] lasice, lasička  
**whale** velryba  
**wildcat** divoká kočka  
**wildlife** divoká zvěř; život v přírodě  
**wolf, pl. wolves** [wʊlf] vlk  
**woodpecker** datel  
**worm** [wɜ:m] červ; žížala; smrtelník  
**wound** [wu:nd] zranit; rána  
**zander** ['zændə] candát  
**zebra** ['zebrə, 'zi:brə] zebra  
**zoo** [zu:, zu] zoo, zoologická zahrada



## THE HUMAN BODY

**abdomen** břicho, břišní dutina

**accentuated** zdůrazněný

**accomplish st** dosáhnout něčeho, uskutečnit něco

**ancestor** předek

**ankle** ['æŋkl] kotník (na noze)

**anxiety** [æŋ'zaiəti] úzkost, strach, obavy

**appendix** [ə'pendiks] slepé střevo; dodatek

**aquiline** ['ækwɪlaɪn] orlí

**arched eyebrows** klenuté obočí, obočí ve tvaru oblouku

**arm** paže, ruka

**artery** tepna, artérie

**athletic** atletický; pohyblivý

**awkward** ['ɔ:kwəd] nemotorný, neohrabaný; trapný; nepříjemný

**backbone** páteř; výdrž; morální odvaha

**bald** plešatý; lysý

**barrel-chested** robustní, jako sud

**be all ears** být jedno velké ucho, poslouchat pozorně

**be all thumbs** mít obě ruce levé, být nešikovný

**beard** [biəd] plnovous

**beer-belly** pивní břich

**belly** břicho; bříska

**big-stick policy** politika založená na hrozbách a represích

**birthmark** mateřské znaménko; velká pigmentová skvrna

**black** černý; černošský

**bladder** močový měchýř

**blink one's eyes** mrkat, mrknout

**blond** blondatý, blond

**blood** [bləd] krev

**bottom** zadní část těla, zadek

**bowels** [bauəlz] střevo; vnitřnosti, útroby

**bowlegged** [bəʊlegd] s křivýma nohama (do O)

**brain** mozek

**breast** prs, ňadro; hrud', prsa

**breastbone** hrudní kost

**bulbous** ['bʌlbəs] baňatý, bachratý, odulý, korpulentní, tělnatý

**bushy eyebrows** ['buʃi] husté obočí

**calf** lýtko

**cartilage** ['kɑ:təlɪdʒ] chrupavka

**chapped lips** rozpraskané rty

**cheek** tvář

**cheekbone** lícní kost

**chest** hrud', prsa

**chin** brada

**chunky** podsaditý, robustní

**cleft chin** brada se svislou rýhou

**clench one's teeth** zatnout zuby

**clitoris** poštěváček, klitoris

**clumsy** nemotorný, neobratný

**coccyx** ['kɒksɪks] kostrč

**collarbone** klíční kost

**colon** ['kəʊlən, 'kəʊlən] tračník (největší část tlustého střeva); dvojtečka

**concave** ['kɒŋkeɪv] vydutý dovnitř

**concave chest** vpadlý hrudník

**corpulent** ['kɔ:pjələnt] korpulentní, tělnatý, tlustý

**cracked lips** silně rozpraskané rty

**craggy** ['krægi] s ostře řezanými rysy; nerovný, hrbolatý, drsný

**cross oneself** pokřížovat se

**curly** kudrnatý; kadeřavý

**dandruff** lupy

**dark** tmavý; snědý

**determination** odhodlání

**dimple** dolíček

**dreadlocks** dredy (druh účesu)

**dummy** zavalitý

**eagerly** dychtivě, chtivě, nedočkavě

**ear** ucho

**emaciated** [ɪ'meɪsɪeɪtɪd] vyzáblý, vyhublý, kost a kůže

**enormous** obrovský, ohromný

**even teeth** rovné zuby

**extremities** končetiny; špičky prstů, nosu, brady, uší

**eyebrow** obočí

**eyelash** oční řasa

**face** obličej, tvář

**fair** plavý, světlý (o vlasech a pokožce)

**fat** tlustý

**finger** prst na ruce

**firm** pevný, tuhý

**foot, pl. feet** chodidlo, noha u člověka pod kotníkem

**forehead** ['fɒrɪd, 'fɔ:hed] čelo (část hlavy)

**freckle** piha

**fringe** ofina

**frizzy** kudrnatý, kadeřavý

**funnybone** brňavka

**furrowed** ['fʌrəʊd] vrásčitý, s hlubokými rýhami

**gapped** s mezerami

**genitals** ['dʒenɪtlz] genitálie, pohlavní orgány, pohlavní ústrojí

**gland** žláza

**glistening** lesklý, lesknoucí se, třpytící se

**goatee** ['gəʊti:] kozí bradka

**god-like** božský, podobný bohu

**gorgeous** ['gɔ:dʒəs] nádherný, skvělý, úžasný

**greasy** mastný, zamaštěný

**grey** šedý

**gross** [grəʊs] odpudivě tlustý, zavalitý, podsaditý, otlý

**growl** [graʊl] vrčet, bručet

**gullet** ['gʌlət] jícen; hltan; hrdlo

**gut** tlusté, tenké střevo

**guts** střeva, vnitřnosti; břicho; odvaha (hovorově)

**hair** vlasy

**hamstring** podkolenní šlacha

**handsome** hezký, pohledný

**have a sweet tooth** být mlsný, být na sladké

**head over heels in love** zamilovaný až po uši

**heart** srdce

**hips** boky

**hold hands** držet se za ruce

**hooked nose** [hʊkt] zahnutý nos, skoba

**hunk** (coll) vazba, kus chlapa

**janitor** školník

**jawbone** čelistní kost

**knee** koleno

**lank** hubený, vyzáblý

**larynx** ['lærɪŋks] hrtan

**layer** vrstva

**leg** noha

**lick** lízat, olizovat

**ligament** vaz; vazivo

**lined face** vrásčitý obličej

**lip** ret

**lithe** [laɪð] svižný, pružný, mrštný, ohebný

**liver** játra

**lungs** plíce

**mobile** pohyblivý

**mole** mateřské znaménko

**mohawk** [məʊhɔ:k] číro

**moustache** [moʊ'sta:ʃ, 'mʌstæʃ] knír, knírek

**mousy** (vlasy) jako myš, ucourané, barevně nevýrazné; tichý, bázlivý, nesmělý

**mouth** ústa  
**muscle** ['mʌsl] sval  
**muscular** ['mʌskjʊlə] svalnatý, svalový  
**navel** ['neɪvəl] pupek; pupík; střed  
**nod one's head** kývnout hlavou; přikývnout  
**nose** nos  
**nosey** zvědavý, dotěrný, vlezlý; nosatý  
**obese** obézní, otýlý  
**obesity** obezita, otýlost  
**pancreas** ['pæŋkriəs] slinivka  
**parting** pěšinka  
**paunch** [pɔːntʃ] velké břicho, pupek, cícha  
**pear-shaped** [peə] hruškovitý, mající tvar hrušky  
**pelvic girdle** pletenec pánevní  
**pelvis** pánev  
**penis** penis  
**pimple** pupínek, uher  
**plait** [plæt, pleɪt] cop  
**plaited** [plætid] spletený do copu  
**plucked eyebrows** vytrhané obočí  
**point with a finger** ukázat prstem  
**pointed chin** špičatá brada  
**ponytail** ohon, culík  
**portly** statný, tělnatý, korpulentní, tlustý  
**pot (-belly)** velké kulaté břicho, břicháč  
**pull someone's leg** utahovat si z někoho, tahat někoho za nos  
**rack one's brains** lámat si hlavu, usilovně přemýšlet  
**receding hairline** ustupující linie vlasů  
**red** červený, rudý; zrzavý  
**ribcage** hrudní koš  
**ribs** žebra  
**rub one's hands** mnout si ruce  
**scars** jizvy, šrámy  
**slanted eyes** šikmé oči  
**shake one's head** kroutit, vrtět hlavou  
**shin** holeně  
**short** malý (postavou)  
**short-sighted** krátkozraký  
**shoulder** rameno  
**shoulders** ramena, plece, bedra  
**shrug (one's shoulders)** pokrčit rameny  
**sideburns** kotlety  
**simile** ['sɪmɪli] přirovnání  
**skeleton** kostra; kostlivec

**skin-deep** pouze na povrchu, povrchní  
**skinny** vychrtlý, hubený, vyzáblý  
**skull** [skʌl] lebka  
**slender, slim** štíhlý, útlý  
**snub nose** nos dovrchu, tupý nos  
**spine** páteř  
**spleen** slezina; špatná nálada  
**split ends** roztřepené koncečky vlasů  
**spotty** skvrnitý, tečkovaný, kropenatý, uhrovitý  
**sprain one's ankle, wrist** vymknout si kotník, zápěstí  
**stiff** ztuhlý, strnulý  
**stomach** ['stʌmək] žaludek, břicho  
**stout** zavalitý, obtloustlý; houževnatý  
**stretch one's limbs** protáhnout si nohy a ruce  
**struggle** snažit se, usilovat, namáhat se  
**stub one's toe** narazit, nakopnout si palec  
**stunning** senzační, fantastický  
**swelling** vypoulený; vzdouvající se  
**tear a tendon** [teə] natrhnout, přetřhnout si šlachy  
**testicle** varle  
**thigh** [θaɪ] stehno  
**thumb** palec u ruky  
**tired of st, sb** unavený něčím, někým  
**tongue** jazyk  
**tooth, pl. teeth** zub, zuby  
**trim** štíhlý, elegantní; přistříhnout, zastříhnout  
**tummy** bříško, žaludek, žaloudeček  
**ugly** ošklivý, škaredý, šeredný  
**vagina** [və'dʒaɪnə] pochva, vagína  
**vein** žíla  
**veined nose** žilnatý nos, nos protkaný žilkami  
**vertebra** [vɜːtəbrə] obratel  
**vivid** živý, svěží, temperamentní, čilý  
**waist** pas  
**wart** [wɔːt] bradavice  
**wavy** vlnitý  
**well-built** silný, svalnatý, dobře stavěný (muž)  
**well-rounded** plnoštíhlá, korpulentní (žena)  
**whiskers** licousy (bez vousů)  
**windpipe** ['wɪndpaɪp] průdušnice, trachea  
**wrinkled face / forehead** vráscitá/-é tvář / čelo  
**wrist** [rɪst] zápěstí

## HEALTH

**abortion** potrat; umělé přerušování těhotenství  
**accurate** přesný  
**ache** [eɪk] bolest; bolet  
**acid** kyselý; kyselina  
**acne** ['æknɪ] truditost, akné  
**acupuncture** ['ækjʊpʌŋktʃə] akupunktura  
**addicted (to)** závislý, zvyklý (na)  
**affect** [ə'fekt] zasahovat, postihovat  
**ailment** lehké onemocnění; zdravotní potíže, problém  
**alcohol** alkohol  
**allergy to st** ['ælədʒi] alergie na něco  
**ambulance** ['æmbjʊləns] sanitka  
**annoying** protivný, otravný  
**antibiotics** [ˌæntɪbaɪ'ɒtɪks] antibiotika  
**appendicitis** [ə'pendɪ'saɪtɪs] zánět slepého střeva  
**appointment** objednání u lékaře  
**appropriately** vhodně  
**aromatherapy** [ə'rəʊmə'therəpi] aromaterapie  
**aspirin** aspirin  
**asthma** astma, záducha, dušnost  
**average** průměrný; průměr  
**bandage** ['bændɪdʒ] obvazová páska, obvaz  
**Band-Aid (US)** náplast, leukoplast  
**bad chest** katar průdušek  
**bleed** krváčet  
**blind** slepý  
**blister** puchýř  
**blow / clean one's nose** vysmrkat se  
**bone** kost  
**braces** rovnátka  
**Braille** [breɪl] slepecké písmo  
**bronchitis** [ˌbrɒŋ'kaɪtɪs] zánět průdušek, bronchitida  
**bubbles** bublinky  
**burn** popálenina  
**burp** [bɜːp] říhat, krkat; říhnutí  
**cancer** rakovina  
**capsule** ['kæpsjuːl] kapsle  
**cardiologist** kardiolog  
**caries** ['kæriːz] zubní kaz; zánět kosti  
**cavity** zubní kaz; dutina  
**chemotherapy** [ˌkiːməʊ'therəpi] chemoterapie  
**chickenpox** plané neštovice  
**childbirth** porod



- chiropractic** [ˌkaɪəˈrəʊˈpræktɪk] chiropraxe
- chiropractor** [ˈkaɪəˈrəʊpræktə] chiropraktik
- cholera** [ˈkɒləɹə] cholera
- claim** tvrdit, prohlašovat
- clay** jíl; hlína
- cocaine** [kəʊˈkeɪn] kokain
- coke** (slang) [kəʊk] koks (kokain)
- coma** [ˈkəʊmə] kóma, hluboké bezvědomí
- conception** početí, zplození dítěte
- concussion** [kənˈkʌʃən] otřes mozku; náraz, otřes
- condom** kondom, prezervativ
- confinement** porod, slehnutí; pobyt doma (zvláště na lůžku)
- constipation** zácpa
- consultant** konzultující odborník, specialista, primář
- continuously** neustále, nepřetržitě
- contract a disease** přivodit si, chytit nemoc
- contractions** stahy, kontrakce
- convey** vyjádřit, vyslovit
- cough** [kɒf] kašel; kašlat
- crack** (slang) crack (čistá krystalická forma kokainu)
- cramp** křeč
- craving for st** neodolatelná chuť na něco
- crippled** zmrzačený, poškozený; ochromený
- crutch** berla
- curious about st** zvědavý na něco
- cut back** omezit, snížit; snížení
- cuts** pořezání
- deaf** hluchý, neslyšící
- deaf-and-dumb** (GB) hluchoněmý
- deaf-mute** (US) hluchoněmý
- dental floss** dentální / zubní nit
- dentist** zubař
- dentition** chrup; prořezávání zubů
- dentures** umělý chrup
- depression** deprese
- dermatologist** kožní lékař
- diabetes** [ˌdaɪəˈbi:tɪz, -əs] cukrovka
- diarrhoea** [ˌdaɪəˈri:ə] průjem
- diphtheria** [dɪfˈθɪəriə, dɪp-] záškrt, diftérie
- disabilities** postižení
- disability** tělesná nebo duševní vada; postižení; nevýhoda, handicap
- disadvantaged** (US) postižený
- disease** onemocnění, nemoc
- dislocation** vymknutí, vykloubení, luxace
- disorder** zdravotní potíže, porucha
- donor** dárc
- dose** dávka léku
- drill** vrtačka
- drops** kapky
- drowning** [draʊnɪŋ] utopení
- drug** lék, léčivo; droga
- dumb** [dʌm] němý; hloupý
- dysentery** [ˈdɪsəntəri, -tri, -ter-] úplavice, dyzentérie
- earache** bolest ucha
- ecstasy** (E) extáze, éčko (droga)
- effective** [ɪˈfektɪv] účinný
- electrocution** [ɪˌlektɹəˈkju:ʃən] zabití elektrickým proudem; poprava na elektrickém křesle
- Emmas** (slang) hemeroidy
- encephalitis** [ˌɛnsəfəˈlaɪtɪs] encefalitida, zánět mozku
- enema** [ˈɛnɪmə] klystýr
- epidemic** epidemie
- epidural** anestetikum používané zejm. při porodu
- eventually** nakonec
- exhale** vydechnout
- exhausted** vyčerpaný
- extraction** vytržení, vytažení, extrakce
- false teeth** umělé zuby
- fart** prdnout, prdět; prd
- fatal** [ˈfeɪtəl] smrtelný
- fever** horečka; zimnice
- filling** plomba, výplň zubu
- flea** blecha
- floss** dentální nit, nit na čištění mezi-zubních prostor
- flu** chřipka
- focused on st** zaměřený na něco
- foetus** (GB), **fetus** (US) [ˈfi:təs] plod, zárodek
- food poisoning** otrava potravinami, jídlem
- forceps delivery** [fɔ:səps] porod kleštěmi
- fractures and breaks** fraktury a zlomeniny
- gargle** [ˈgɑ:ɡl] kloktat; kloktadlo
- gas** plyn
- gauze** [ɡəʊz, ɡɑ:z] gáza
- gay** homosexuál
- germ** [dʒɜ:m] bakterie; choroboplodný zárodek
- gonorrhoea** [ˌɡɒnəˈri:ə] kapavka
- grass** tráva, marijánka
- grazes** škrábnutí, odřeniny, oděrky
- gulp down** zhltnout, rychle sníst, vypít
- gums** dásně
- gynaecologist** (GB), **gynecologist** (US) [ˌɡaɪnəˈkɒlədʒɪst] gynekolog
- hallucinogen** [ˌhæluːˈsɪnədʒən, həˈluːsɪnədʒən] halucinogen (droga vyvolávající halucinace)
- handicapped** postižený, handicapovaný
- hangover** kocovina
- hash** (coll) hašiš, marihuana
- have a tooth out, pulled** (US) nechat si vytrhnout zub
- hay fever** senná rýma
- headache** bolest hlavy
- headshrinker, shrink** psychiatr
- healer** léčitel
- hepatitis** [ˌhepəˈtaɪtɪs] žloutenka, zánět jater, hepatitida
- hepatitis B** hepatitida, zánět jater (může být smrtelná, je sexuálně přenosná)
- heroin** heroin
- herpes** [ˈhɜ:pi:z] herpes, pásový opar
- heterosexual** heterosexuál
- hiccups, hiccoughs** [ˈhɪkʌps] škytavka
- homosexual** homosexuál
- hooked on st** závislý na něčem
- houseman** (GB) mladší sekundář (lékař v nemocnici)
- hygiene** [ˈhaɪdʒi:n] hygiena; zdravotvůda
- hypnosis** hypnóza
- hypnotic** hypnotický; médium (osoba podléhající hypnóze)
- illness** nemoc, onemocnění
- improvement** vylepšení, zdokonalení
- indigestion** [ˌɪndɪˈdʒestʃən] špatné trávení, porucha trávení
- induced birth** [ɪnˈdʒu:st] uměle vyvolaný porod
- infection** nákaza, infekce
- infestation** zamoření (např. hmyzem)
- inflammation** zánět, zápal
- influenza** chřipka
- infrequently** nepravidelně
- injection** injekce
- inoculate sb against...** (na)očkovat někoho proti...

<b>inoculation</b> očkování	<b>mute</b> (US) němý	<b>pimp</b> pasák, kuplíř
<b>inpatient</b> hospitalizovaný pacient	<b>nausea</b> ['nə:ziə, -siə, -zə] nevolnost, nauzea	<b>plaque</b> [plɑ:k, plæk] zubní povlak
<b>interaction</b> vzájemné působení, vzájemné ovlivňování, součinnost	<b>nauseous</b> odporný, nechutný	<b>pneumonia</b> [nju:'məʊniə] zápal plic
<b>intern</b> (US) začínající lékař (v nemocnici)	<b>needle (syringe)</b> [si'rindʒ, sɪrɪnʒ] jehla (injekční stříkačka)	<b>polio(myelitis)</b> ['pəʊliəʊ(maiə'laitis)] dětská obrna, poliomyelitis
<b>interrupt</b> přerušit	<b>neurosis</b> neuróza	<b>polypharmacy</b> podávání příliš mnoha léků, jejichž účinky se vzájemně ovlivňují
<b>invalid</b> invalidní, tělesně postižený; invalida	<b>nit</b> hnida	<b>poor</b> chudý; chudák
<b>irregular</b> nepravidelný	<b>numb</b> necitlivý, zmrtnělý; zkrhlý; ochromit; strnout	<b>pot</b> (coll) hašiš, marihuana
<b>itch</b> [ɪtʃ] svědět, svrbět; svědění	<b>nutrients</b> živiny	<b>poultice</b> ['pəʊltɪs] teplý obklad; placka; přiložit teplý obklad
<b>jab(s)</b> (coll) pichanec, injekce	<b>obstetrician</b> [ɒbstə'trɪʃən] porodník	<b>pregnancy</b> těhotenství, gravidita
<b>jaundice</b> [dʒɔ:ndɪs] žloutenka; závist, zášť	<b>oculist</b> ['ɒkjʊlɪst] optik	<b>prescription for st</b> lékařský předpis, recept na něco
<b>junkie</b> (coll) feťák, závislák	<b>off-colour</b> (GB) slabá nevolnost (necítit se ve své kůži)	<b>pressure points</b> tlakové body (body na tepnách, které je třeba stisknout pro zastavení krvácení)
<b>kiss of life</b> umělé dýchání	<b>offend sb</b> urazit, dotknout se někoho	<b>promiscuity</b> promiskuita
<b>labour (pains)</b> porodní bolesti	<b>ointment</b> mast, mazání	<b>prosthesis</b> ['prɒsθi:sɪs] protéza, protetika
<b>lice, sg. louse</b> vši, veš	<b>operate on sb</b> operovat někoho	<b>prostitute</b> prostitut(ka), nevěstka
<b>lift</b> (GB) výtah	<b>opium</b> opium	<b>psilocybin (from mushrooms)</b> [saɪlə'saɪbən] druh halucinogenní drogy (vyrobené z hub)
<b>lotion</b> roztok; pleťová voda	<b>orthodontist</b> odborník v ortodoncii (specializuje se na rovnátka)	<b>psychiatrist</b> [saɪ'kaɪətrɪst, sɪ-] psychiatr
<b>lumbago</b> [lʌm'beɪɡəʊ] bederní ústřel, houser, bolest v kříži	<b>osteopathy</b> [ɒsti'ɒpəθi] chiropraxe	<b>psychosis</b> [saɪ'kəʊsɪs] psychóza
<b>malaria</b> malárie	<b>osteoporosis</b> [ɒstiəpə'rəʊsɪs] odvápnění kostí, osteoporóza	<b>psychosomatic</b> [saɪkəʊsə'mætɪk] psychomatický
<b>malignant</b> [mə'lɪɡnənt] zhoubný, maligní	<b>outpatient</b> pacient v ambulantním ošetřování	<b>pus</b> [pʌs] hnis
<b>mania</b> ['meɪniə] mánie, zuřivost, náruživost	<b>overall</b> celkový	<b>rabies</b> ['reɪbi:z] vzteklna
<b>marijuana</b> [ˌmæri'wɑ:nə] marihuana	<b>paediatricist, paediatrician</b> dětský lékař	<b>radiologist</b> rentgenolog
<b>massage</b> [ˌmæsɑ:dʒ, mə'sɑ:dʒ] masáž, masírování	<b>pain</b> bolest, bolesti; působit bolest	<b>radiotherapy</b> radioléčba, léčení ozařováním
<b>matron</b> ['meɪtrən] vrchní sestra	<b>painkiller</b> lék proti bolesti	<b>ramps</b> rampy, nakloněné plošiny
<b>measles</b> spalničky	<b>pandemic</b> pandemie (rozšíření nemoci na obrovském území)	<b>rash</b> vyrážka
<b>medicaments</b> léky, léčiva	<b>paralysed</b> ochrnutý	<b>rate</b> ohodnotit, posoudit
<b>medicines</b> léky, léčiva	<b>paranoia</b> paranoia (duševní choroba)	<b>receptionist</b> sestra u příjmu pacientů; recepční; sekretářka
<b>meditation</b> meditace	<b>paraplegic</b> [ˌpærə'pli:dʒɪk] týkající se paraplegie; postižený paraplegií (ochrnutí spodní části těla, obvykle následkem choroby páteře)	<b>ridicule</b> vysmívat se, zesměšňovat, dělat si legraci
<b>menopause</b> přechod, klimakterium	<b>parasite</b> ['pærəsaɪt] parazit	<b>run-down</b> vyčerpaný, uhoněný, ve špatném zdravotním stavu
<b>mescaline (from cactus)</b> ['meskəlɪn] meskalin (vysoce halucinogenní droga vyráběná z kaktusu Lophophora Williamsii)	<b>peel</b> loupat se	<b>scald</b> [skɔ:ld] opařit; opařenína
<b>methamphetamine</b> [ˌmeθɪl,æm'fetəmi:n] pervitin (chemická látka obsažená v pervitinu a speedu)	<b>penicillin</b> penicilín	<b>scar</b> [ska:] jizva, šrám; trvale poznamenat, zjizvit
<b>midwife</b> porodní bába, porodní asistentka	<b>perception</b> vnímání, vjem	<b>scepticism</b> skepse, nedůvěra, pochybovačnost
<b>migraine</b> ['mi:greɪn, 'maɪ-] migréna	<b>Pervitin</b> pervitin	<b>schizophrenia</b> [ˌskɪtsə(u)'fri:niə] schizofrenie
<b>miracle</b> zázrak	<b>pharmaceutical</b> [ˌfɑ:mə'su:tɪkəl, -'sɜ:u:tɪkəl] farmaceutický	<b>sciatica</b> [saɪ'ætɪkə] ischias, zánět sedacího nervu
<b>miscarriage</b> samovolný potrat	<b>pharmaceuticals</b> léky, léčiva	<b>scissors</b> nůžky
<b>mononucleosis, mono</b> (coll) mononukleóza	<b>physical</b> (US) lékařská prohlídka, vyšetření	<b>scratch</b> škrábat se, drbat se, drápat se
<b>morphine</b> ['mɔ:fi:n] morfin, morfium	<b>physiotherapy</b> fyzikální léčba, fyzioterapie	
<b>mouth-to-mouth</b> umělé dýchání z úst do úst	<b>pickles</b> nakládané okurky, zelenina	
<b>mumps</b> příušnice; mrzutá nálada	<b>piles</b> (euph) hemeroidy	
	<b>pill</b> tabletky, prášek; antikoncepční pilulka	



**screening for** (e.g. cervical cancer, diabetes) preventivní vyšetření (např. kvůli rakovině děložního čípku, cukrovce)

**sedative** ['sedətv] lék na uklidnění, utišení bolesti, sedativum

**senility** senilita

**shedding** vypadávání zubů, proliti krve

**shoot up** píchnout si, šlehnout si (drogu)

**shot** (coll) dávka, injekce, šleh

**sick** nemocný, chorý; na zvracení

**sickness** nemoc, choroba; zvracení

**side-effect** vedlejší účinek; průvodní jev

**sign** znak; užívat znakovou řeč

**sling, arm in a sling** (zlomená) ruka v závěsu / na pásce

**slipped disc** vyhozená ploténka

**smallpox** neštovice

**smear (test)** test přítomnosti rakovinných buněk v děložním hrdle

**snakebite** hadí uštknutí

**sneeze** kýchat, kýchnout; kýchnutí

**solvent** rozpouštědlo

**sore throat** [so: θrəʊt] škrábání, bolení v krku; chrapot; zánět hrtanu

**speed** pervitin, povzbuzující droga

**splint** dlaha; dát do dlah, do sádry

**sprain** vymknutí, výron, naražení, podvrknutí; vymknout si

**stimulant** povzbuzující, stimulační prostředek

**stitch** zašít, sešít, přišít; steh

**stretcher** nosítka pro nemocné

**stroke** mozková mrtvice

**suffer from a disease** trpět nemocí

**surgeon** chirurg

**surgery** chirurgie; chirurgický zákrok, operace; operační sál; ordinace; ordinační hodiny

**surgical** chirurgický, operativní

**symptom** příznak, symptom

**syndrome** (e.g. School Phobia Syndrome) syndrom (např. syndrom strachu ze školy)

**syphilis** příjice, lues, syfilis

**syringe** [sɪ'rɪndʒ, sɪrɪndʒ] injekční stříkačka

**tablet** tableta, pilulka, prášek

**take sb to hospital** odvézt, zavést někoho do nemocnice

**text-phones** textové telefony (pro neslyšící)

**throw up** zvracet

**tobacco** tabák

**tonsillitis** [ˈtɒnsɪˈlaɪtɪs] angína

**toothache** bolest, bolení zubů

**tourniquet** ['tuənɪkeɪ, 'tɔ:-] škrtidlo (k zastavení krváčení)

**tranquilliser** ['træŋkwɪlaɪzə] uklidňující, tišící prostředek, sedativum

**trimester** čtvrtletí, období tři měsíců

**truancy** chození za školu, ulejvání

**tuberculosis** tuberkulóza, souchotiny

**tweezer** pinzeta; vytahovat pinzetou

**twist (an ankle)** vymknout, podvrtnout, vyvrtnout si (kotník)

**typhoid** ['taɪfɔɪd] břišní tyfus; tyfový, tyfózní, podobný tyfu

**typhus** ['taɪfəs] skvrnitý tyfus

**ulcer** ['ʌlsə] vřed

**unmentionables** (euph) hemeroidy

**uterus** ['ju:tərəs] děloha

**vaccination** [ˌvæksɪˈneɪʃən] očkování, vakcinace

**victim** oběť

**vomiting** zvracení, dávení, vrhnutí

**ward** nemocniční oddělení; pokoj

**weight-gain** přírůstek na váze

**wheelchair** invalidní vozík, vozíček

**white cane** bílá slepecká hůl

**whore** [hɔ:] (derog) děvka, kurva

**wind** plyn, větry (ve střevech)

**withdrawal symptoms** abstinenční příznaky, potíže při odvykání (drogám, lékům, alkoholu)

**X-ray** ['eksreɪ] rentgen, rentgenový snímek; rentgenovat

**zoonosis** [zəʊˈnɒsɪs, zəʊˈnəʊsɪs] onemocnění přenosné ze zvířat na člověka

## SPORT

**acclimatization** [əˌklaɪmətaɪˈzeɪʃən] aklimatizace, přizpůsobení se

**ace** eso (v tenisu a volejbalu)

**advantage** výhoda (bod po stavu shoda v tenisu)

**aerobics** aerobik

**aim** cíl

**all-in** zápas bez pravidel (v zápasu)

**amateur** ['æmətə] amatér

**ammunition** munice, střelivo

**apartheid** [əˈpa:tart, -teɪt] apartheid

**aperture** ['æpətʃə] hledí

**apres-ski** [ˌæpreɪˈski:] následující po celodenním lyžování; společenská zábava

**aqualung** ['ækwələŋ] akvalung, potápěčský dýchací přístroj

**archery** lukostřelba; lučištníci

**arrow** šíp

**arrowhead** hrot šípu

**athlete** ['æθli:t] atlet; sportovec

**athletics** [æθˈletɪks] (lehká) atletika

**atrocious** [əˈtrəʊʃəs] surový; krutý; odporný

**audience** publikum, diváci

**avalanche** ['ævəˌlɑ:nʃ] lavina, příval

**backboard** deska, na které je připevněn koš

**backhand** backhand (typ úderu v tenisu)

**backstroke** znak (plavecký styl)

**bail** špalík, kolík (v kriketu)

**ball** míč; míček; nadhoz, odpal (v baseballu); přihrádka (ve fotbale, v hokeji)

**ballboy** sběrač míčků při tenisu

**ban** zákaz; zakázat

**barbell** vzpěračská činka

**barrel** hlaveň (zbraně)

**baseball** baseball

**baseline** základní čára (např. tenisového dvorce)

**basket** koš

**bat** být na řadě k odpalování; páłka

**bathing cap** koupací čepice

**baton** ['bætn] štafetový kolík

**batsman, batter** pálkař (v kriketu)

**beam** kladina; trám, kláda, nosník

**beat / defeat sb** porazit někoho, vyhrát nad někým

**belly-flop** placák (skok do vody na břicho)

**belt** pásek (v bojových uměních)

**bias** ['baɪəs] šíšatost koule; závaží v kouli; faleš daná kouli v bowlingu  
**biased against sb** zaujatý proti někomu  
**biathlon (cross-country + shooting)** [baɪ'æθlən] biatlon (běh na lyžích + střelba)  
**bicycling** cyklistika  
**bike** kolo  
**biking** jízda na kole, cyklistika  
**binding** lyžařské vázání  
**birdie** ['bɜ:di] počet úderů, který je o jeden nižší než je průměrný počet úderů na jamku (v golfu)  
**blades** nože bruslí  
**block** odrazení úderu, blok; blokovat  
**blocker** blokař  
**bobsled (US), bobsleigh (GB)** ['bɒbsled; 'bɒbsleɪ] bob (závodní říditelná sáně)  
**bobsledding** boby (disciplína)  
**bodysurf** serfovat bez prkna (tělem)  
**bogey** ['bɒgi] stanovený počet úderů na hráče nebo hru (par) + jeden  
**bolt (US)** střela; šíp vystřelovaný z kuše  
**bore (GB)** kalibr, ráže  
**bounce** házet míčem (např. o zed'); odrazit míč o zem  
**boundary** pomezí čára; hod až za pomezí čáru (v kriketu)  
**bowler** kuželkář; nadhazovač v kriketu)  
**bowling** kuželky; bowling  
**bowls** kuželky  
**bowstring** tětíva luku  
**boxing** box, boxování  
**boycott** bojkot  
**braker** brzdař (při jízdě na bobech)  
**breaststroke** prsa (plavecký styl)  
**bull, bull's eye** [bʊl] zásah do terče; do středu, trefa do černého  
**bullet** ['bʊlɪt] kulka, střela, projektil; náboj  
**bunch** jet v pelotonu, běžet v klubku závodníků  
**but** pažba pušky, pistole  
**butterfly stroke** motýlek (plavecký styl)  
**butts** val, který zachycuje střely po proniknutí terčem  
**caddy, caddie** vak na golfové hole; vozík na golfové hole; nosič golfových holí  
**calculating** schopný si vypočítat, pod jakým úhlem odpálit míček

**calibre** kalibr, ráže, světlý průměr  
**callisthenics** [kælis'theniks] dívčí gymnastika, rytmika, kalestenika  
**canoeing** kanoistika  
**cartridge** nábojnice, patrona  
**cartwheel** přemet stranou, hvězda  
**catch** chycení; chytit  
**catcher** zadák, chytač, lapač (v kriketu); chytač (v baseballu)  
**cheat** podvádět  
**cheer sb on** povzbuzovat někoho  
**chop** úder shora, sek (v bojových uměních)  
**clamp** svorka; upínadlo; kramle  
**cleats** [kli:ts] kolíky na kopačkách  
**cliff(-face)** strmá kolmá stěna  
**climb st** vystoupit, vylézt, vyšplhat se na...  
**clips** spojky; spojovací skoby; karabiny (v horolezectví)  
**club** golfová hůl; hokejka; kužel; klub; noční podnik  
**cock** natáhnout kohoutek; kohoutek zbraně  
**competition** soutěž, závod, soutěžení; soupeř  
**contest** soutěž  
**corner (red, blue, neutral)** roh (červený pro jednoho, modrý pro druhého soupeře, zbývající dva jsou neutrální - v boxu)  
**counterattack** protiútok  
**court** dvorec, kurt, hřiště  
**coverage** zpravodajství, reportáž  
**cox(swain)** [kɒks(weɪn)] kormidelník závodní lodi  
**crampons** ['kræmpɒnz] mačky, horolezecká stoupací železa  
**crawl (free-style)** kraul (volný styl)  
**crease** čára; hokej; brankoviště; kriket: čára určující území házeče nebo pálkaře  
**crew for...** být členem posádky u...  
**cross-check** krosčekomat; krosček (bránění ve hře nedovoleným způsobem)  
**crossbar** příčné břevno fotbalové branky  
**crossbow** kuše, samostřil  
**cross-country skiing** běh na lyžích  
**crowd** tlačence, dav lidí  
**course** dráha, závodní dráha; hřiště (golfové)  
**court** dvorec, kurt, hřiště  
**cycle** jezdit na kole

**cyclist** [saɪklist] cyklista  
**dartboard** terč na šipky  
**dash** sprint  
**defence** obrana  
**defender** obránce  
**degree** pásek, dan (v džudu)  
**deuce** [dju:s, du:s] shoda (v tenisu)  
**discus** disk  
**dive** potápět se; skočit po hlavě / šipku  
**diving** potápění  
**division** divize  
**dojo** ['dɔʊdʒəʊ] tělocvična; žíněnka (pro bojová umění)  
**downhill** sjezdové lyžování  
**draw** remíza; tah, losování soupeřů  
**dressage** ['dresɑ:ʒ] drezúra  
**dribble** kličkovat (ve fotbalu); driblovat (v košíkové)  
**drive** odpálit míček z podstavku, odraziště (v golfu)  
**driver** hůl pro odpálení míčku na větší vzdálenost (v golfu)  
**drown** [draʊn] (u)topit se  
**eagle** jamka zahrnaná dvě rány pod par (v golfu)  
**embargo** zákaz  
**épée** ['epeɪ, e'peɪ] kord (v šermu)  
**equestrian event** [ɪ'kwɛstriən ɪ'vent] dostihy; dostihový závod; jezdecká disciplína  
**ethics** etika  
**event** závod, disciplína  
**ex-champion** bývalý šampión, přeborník, mistr  
**expel** vyloučit  
**exposure** vystavení vlivu povětrnosti, zimy; pobyt venku  
**fail a drug test** mít pozitivní dopingový test  
**fall** pád  
**fault** chybné podání (v tenisu)  
**fencing** šermování, šerm  
**field (US)** hřiště (např. pro baseball)  
**final(s)** finále  
**fire** střelba, palba; vystřelit  
**flag** prapor, vlajka  
**flight** opeření šipu  
**flippers** nožní ploutve k potápění či plavání  
**foil** fleret (šerm)  
**footballer / football player** fotbalista  
**football field, football pitch (GB)** fotbalové hřiště



- forehand** forhend (úder v tenisu)  
**forward** útočník  
**foul** odpal do autu (v baseballu); foul; faulovat  
**freestyle** zápas ve volném stylu; plavání volným způsobem  
**frost-bite** omrzlina  
**fullbore** velkorážní pistole  
**funicular** [fju'nikjələ] zubačková lanovka  
**game** hra (v tenisu)  
**game X** hru vyhrává X  
**gamesmanship** nespportovní chování; používání neetických metod k dosažení cíle (přeneseně)  
**gauge** (US) [gædʒ] kalibr, ráže (zbraně)  
**glacier** ['glæsiə] ledovec  
**glove(s)** rukavice  
**goalie** brankář  
**goalkeeper** brankář  
**goggles** potápěčské brýle  
**graceful** půvabný  
**Graeco-Roman** řeckořímský  
**grandstand** krytá tribuna s místy k sezení  
**greens** travnaté hřiště  
**gymnastics** gymnastika; tělesná výchova  
**hammer** kohoutek, úderník střelné zbraně  
**hammerless** bezkohoutkový, mající skryté kohoutky (střelná zbraň hamerleska)  
**handgun** (US) pistole, revolver  
**handicap** dát handicap komu, ztížit podmínky silnějšímu v soutěži  
**handstand** stoj na rukou  
**headfirst** po hlavě  
**headstand** stoj na hlavě  
**health penalties** zdravotní potíže způsobené např. sportem  
**heat** rozběh; rozplavba; rozjížděka  
**helmet** přilba, helma  
**hit below the belt** rána, úder pod pás  
**hit the post, crossbar** nastřelit tyč, břevno (ve fotbalu)  
**holding** držení (v hokeji)  
**holes** jamky (v golfu)  
**holster** pouzdro na pistoli  
**home-run** oběh domů (postup běžícího pálkaře po vlastním odpalu přes všechny mety až na metu domácí – v baseballu)  
**hooliganism** chuligánství  
**hoop** obruč koše, koš; dát koš, skórovat (v košíkové); obruč (v moderní gymnastice)  
**hurdles** ['hɜ:dls] běh přes překážky, překážkový běh; překážky  
**hurdlings** běh přes překážky  
**hypocrisy** [hi'pɒkɪsi] pokrytectví, přetvářka  
**hypothermia** [ˌhaɪpəu'θɜ:miə] hypotermie, nízká tělesná teplota, podchlazení  
**ice-axe** cepín (v horolezectví)  
**ice-fall** ledopád  
**ice hockey** lední hokej  
**icing** postavení mimo hru (v hokeji)  
**infield (diamond)** vnitřní hřiště, hrací pole ve kosočtverce mezi metami (v baseballu)  
**inner** zásah do předposledního mezikruží  
**inning** směna (doba, po kterou je mužstvo na pálce), podání (v baseballu, v kriketu)  
**javelin** oštěp  
**jerk up** smýknout, vymrštit nahoru  
**jeu de boules** [ʒə də bu:l] francouzské kuželky  
**jockey** [dʒɒki] žokej  
**judo** džudo  
**jumars** [dʒu:məz] jumar (svorka na laně, pohyblivá se volně, která zaklapne, je-li zatížena směrem dolů – v horolezectví)  
**jumping** skoky  
**jump the gun** vyběhnout před startovním výstřelem  
**karate** [kə'ra:ti] dřep karate  
**kayak** kajak; jet v kajaku  
**kick** kop (v bojových uměních)  
**kickoff** výkop (zahájení zápasu ve fotbalu)  
**knee bend** ['ni: bend] dřep  
**lane** dráha (závodní, plavecká...)  
**lead** vedení, čelo (závodu); náskok; vést; mít náskok  
**leap** skok; skočit  
**league** liga; svaz; spolek  
**let** odpálit míč; nový míč (v tenisu)  
**life-jacket** záchranná vesta  
**lift** vlek  
**lineout** roj (při vhazování z autu v ragby)  
**linesman** čárový rozhodčí, rozhodčí na čáře (v tenisu)  
**linesmen** pomezí rozhodčí (ve fotbalu)  
**load** nabit  
**lob** lob (hod vysokým obloukem např. v tenisu)  
**lock** závěr střelné zbraně  
**loner** samotář, člověk žijící osaměle, vyhledávající samotu  
**longbow** středověký dlouhý luk  
**long distance** **ruber** běžec na dlouhé tratě  
**lose** prohrát  
**loser** ten, kdo prohrál  
**luge** [lu:ʒ] sáně, sáňkování  
**magpie** ['mæɡpaɪ] zásah do středního kruhu terče  
**marathon** ['mærəθən] maratón  
**mask** ochranná maska  
**mat** žíněnka  
**match** zápas  
**miniature** ['mɪnɪtʃə] malorážka  
**minor** nezletilý  
**mob** (rozvážněný) dav; masy  
**modelled on st** založen na něčem, vycházející z něčeho  
**moraine** [mɒ'reɪn] moréna  
**mountaineer, mountain climber** [ˌmaʊntɪ'nɪə, ˌmaʊntɪn'klaɪmər] horolezec  
**mountaineering** horolezectví  
**mouthpiece** (US) chránič zubů (v boxu)n  
**musket** ['mʌskɪt] mušketa  
**net** síť, síťka  
**nil (no score)** nula  
**ninepins** kuželky  
**nobleman** šlechtic  
**non-professional** neprofesionální  
**novice** ['nɒvɪs] nováček  
**number 2 iron** kovaná golfová hůl  
**oars** ['ɔ:z] vesla  
**obstacles** překážky  
**obstruction** [əb'strʌkʃən] bránění ve hře  
**offside** ofsajd, postavení mimo hru (ve fotbalu)  
**outer** zásah do vnější části terče  
**outfield** vnější část hřiště (v kriketu, v baseballu)  
**overhang** převis  
**over-step** přešlap  
**padding** chránič  
**paddle** pádlo, veslo  
**parachute** ['pærəʃu:t] padák  
**pass** prohoz (v tenisu)

**pass (the ball)** přihrát míč (ve fotbalu)  
**pentathlon** [pen'tæθlɒn] pětiboj  
**periods** třetiny (v ledním hokeji)  
**photo-finish** proběhnutí (projekt) cílem v těsném sledu, takže vítěze je možno určit pouze z fotografie  
**physique** stavba těla, tělesná konstituce  
**pin** vítězství na lopatky (v zápasu)  
**pins** kuželky (nářadí)  
**pistol** (GB) pistole, revolver  
**pitcher** nadhazovač (v baseballu)  
**pitons** ['pi:tɒnz] skoby, železné hřeby s očkem k upevnění lana (v horolezectví)  
**player** hráč  
**pole vault** ['vɒ(:)lt] skok o tyči  
**pommel horse** kůň našit s madly  
**puck** [pʌk] touš, kotouč, puk  
**Pull!** [pul] Pa!  
**punch** udeřit, dát ránu pěsti  
**punishment** trest  
**push-ups** (US) kliky  
**putter** ['pʌtə] krátká golfová hůl na doklepnutí míčku do jamky (v golfu)  
**quarrel** (GB) střela, šíp vystřelovaný z kuše  
**quarter-final(s)** čtvrtfinále  
**quiver** toulec (v lukostřelbě)  
**race** běžet, letět jako o závod, závodit; závod  
**racism** rasismus  
**racket, racquet** ['rækt] raketa  
**raft** vor; jízda na raftu  
**rafting** rafting, raftování  
**rangemaster** pracovník střelnice zodpovědný za bezpečnost  
**rapier** rapír; kord (šerm)  
**referee (in the ring)** rozhodčí (v ringu)  
**regulator** regulátor (v potápění)  
**reserve** náhradník  
**return** return (úder v tenisu)  
**revenues** příjmy, výnosy  
**ribbon** stuha (v moderní gymnastice)  
**ride** jízda  
**rider** jezdec  
**rifle** puška, ručnice  
**rifle-shooting** střelba z pušky  
**rings** kruhy (tělocvičné nářadí)  
**rink** kluziště; hokejové hřiště  
**rock-climbing** lezení po skalách

**rock-fall** padání kamenů  
**roller-skating** jízda na kolečkových bruslích  
**root for sb** fandit někomu  
**rope** lano, provaz; švihadlo (v moderní gymnastice)  
**rope up** šplhat připoután na laně; jistit se  
**ropes (on the ropes)** provazy boxer-ského ringu (na provazech)  
**rowing** veslování  
**rowlocks** veslové vidlice  
**rudder** kormidlo (u lodí); kormidlovat  
**ruffian** ['rʌfɪən] surovec, rváč, násilník, brutální člověk  
**rugby** ragby  
**runner-up** závodník na druhém místě  
**runners** skluznice saní, sanice  
**running** běh  
**sabre** ['seɪbə] šavle  
**sailboard** prkno na windsurfing  
**sailboat** plachetnice  
**sailing** plachtění  
**sanctions** sankce  
**score** vstřelit branku, skórovat; skóre  
**scorekeeper** zapisovatel bodů během hry  
**scorer** střelec branky; zapisovatel výsledků  
**scrum** mlýn (zápas o míč v ragby)  
**scuba** ['sku:bə] kyslíková bomba (v potápění)  
**SCUBA (Self-Contained Underwater Breathing Apparatus)** akvalung (potápěcí dýchací přístroj)  
**sculling** ['skʌlɪŋ] veslování na moři za použití párových vesel  
**sculls** skulérské závody (od r. 1931 součástí primátorek, zúčastnit se může veslař, který dosud nezískal titul mistra v párové disciplíně)  
**self-defence** sebeobrana  
**semiautomatic** poloautomatický; samonabíjecí  
**semi-final(s)** semifinále  
**serve** podávat; podání  
**set** set (v tenisu)  
**shamateur** ['ʃæməˌtɜː, -tʃʊə, -tə] poloamatér (oficiálně nehraje za peníze, ale dostává je)  
**shin-guards** chrániče holení  
**shoot** střelit; hodit; přihrát  
**shot-putting** vrh koulí

**shotgun** brokovnice  
**shove sb** [ʃʌv] vrazit, narazit do někoho  
**shuttlecock** opeřený míček (v badmintonu)  
**sidestroke** ouško (plavecký styl)  
**silencer** tlumič (ve střelbě)  
**sin-bin** trestná lavice (v hokeji)  
**sit-ups** sedy lehy  
**skate** bruslit  
**skate-guards** chrániče na brusle  
**skater** bruslař  
**skates** brusle  
**skeet skeet** (střelba na 200 letících asfaltových holubů, terčů)  
**ski-jump** skok na lyžích; lyžařský můstek pro skok na lyžích  
**ski-lift** lyžařský vlek; lanovka  
**ski-poles, ski-sticks** lyžařské hole  
**skirack** nosič na lyže (na autě)  
**skier** lyžař  
**skiing** lyžování  
**skis** lyže  
**skittles** kuželky  
**slam** zavěsit míč (v košíkové)  
**sled** (US) sáně  
**sledge** (GB) sáně; sáně tažené psy  
**sleigh** sáně tažené koňmi  
**slope** lyžařský svah  
**smallbore** malorážka  
**snatch** trh (ve vzpírání)  
**snorkel** šnorchl (dýchací trubice)  
**snowmobile** sněžný skútr  
**soccer** evropský fotbal, kopaná  
**somersault** ['sʌməsdɔ(:)lt] salto  
**spare** srazit všechny druhým hodem (v bowlingu)  
**sparring** stínový box (naprázdno)  
**spectacle** efektní podívaná  
**spells** třetiny (v ledním hokeji)  
**spiker** smečář (volejbal)  
**spikes** tretry  
**spin** pirueta; točit se v piruetě (v krasobruslení)  
**sportsman** sportovec  
**sportsperson** sportovně založený člověk  
**sportswoman** sportovkyně  
**springboard** skokanské prkno  
**sprint** sprint  
**sprinter** sprintér  
**stadium** sportovní stadion  
**stands** tribuna na sportovním stadionu



**starting block** startovní, startovací blok

**steeplechase** steeplechase (koňský dostih s překážkami; běh na 3000 metrů překážek); terénní běh (přes polní, lesní, silniční)

**stern** záď lodi

**stick** hokejka (v ledním hokeji)

**sticks** lyžařské hole

**stock** pažba

**stopwatch** stopky

**strike** srazit všechny prvním hodem (v bowlingu)

**string out** běžet jeden za druhým (roztažený peloton)

**stroke** úder (v tenisu, v golfu)

**stump** tyčka branky (v kriketu)

**submission** neschopnost odolat soupeřovu chvatu

**substitute** náhradník

**surf** jezdit na příbojových vlnách, surfovat

**surfboard** surf, surfovací prkno

**surfing** surfování

**suspended** suspendovaný, dočasně vyloučený

**suspension** vyloučení; odložení, suspendování, sestup o třídu níž v soutěži

**swimming** plavání

**swordfighting** [sɔ:dfaitɪŋ] šerm; šermování mečem

**swordplay** [sɔ:dplei] šerm, šermování mečem; šermířský výstup; slovní šerm

**table** stůl

**tackle** bránit ve hře útočníkovi; krýt soupeře s míčem; zadržet, složit útočícího hráče v ragby

**tackling** bránění

**takeoff** odraz

**take up st** zabývat se čím; začít znovu s čím

**target** ['tɑ:ɡɪt] terč

**tee off** odpálit míč z podstavku, odrazit (v golfu)

**tennis** tenis

**terraces** tribuna k stání (ve fotbalu)

**threequarter(s)** třičtvrtka, levý nebo pravý vnitřní útočník (v ragby)

**throw** házet, hodit; hod

**throw-in** vhazování

**ticket** lístek, vstupenka

**tie-break** rozhodující hra na konci nerozhodného setu (v tenisu)

**timekeeper** časoměřič

**toboggan** nízké sáně, tobogan; dlouhé dopravní sáně; toboganová dráha

**touché** [tu:'ʃeɪ] tušé (zvolání při zásahu v šermu nebo při obratné odpovědi v debatě); zásah

**tournament** ['tuənəmənt, 'tɔ:-] turnaj

**towed by...** [təʊd] tažený, vlečený...

**towel** ['taʊəl] ručník

**transfer** přestup

**travel** udělat kroky; kroky (přestupek v košíkové)

**tremble** chvět se, třást se

**trigger** spoušť

**triple jump** trojskok

**tripping** podražení

**trunks** pánské plavky

**umpire** ['ʌmpaɪə] rozhodčí, soudce; rozhodovat, soudit

**umpires (at ringside)** rozhodčí (na vnější straně ringu)

**vault** ['vɔ:lt] přeskok (ve sportovní gymnastice)

**violent** násilný

**visor** ['vaɪzə] maska, hledí

**volley** volej (úder do míče)

**volleyball** volejbal

**water-skiing** vodní lyžování

**wax** vosk

**weightlifting** vzpírání

**wetsuit** neoprenová kombinéza

**white-water (canoeing)** divoká voda (kanoistika)

**wicket** branka (v kriketu)

**win** zvítězit, vyhrát

**win a match** vyhrát zápas, zvítězit

**windsurf** pěstovat windsurfing

**winger** hráč na křídle

**winner** vítěz

**wishbone** ráhno pro držení (v surfingu)

**wood** dřevěná golfová hůl

**wrestling** ['reslɪŋ] zápas

**yachting** ['jɒtɪŋ, 'jɑ:tɪŋ] jachtařský sport

## MEDIA

**abusive** [ə'bjʊ:sɪv] urážlivý, hanlivý

**accuse sb of st** obvinít někoho z něčeho

**advertiser** (US) reklamní noviny, které jsou distribuovány zdarma

**aerial** (GB) televizní anténa

**affect sb** [ə'fekt] ovlivnit, postihnout někoho

**agreement** dohoda

**AM** (Amplitude Modulation) střední vlny (vlnová délka)

**anchor(man)** moderátor, hlasatel

**announce** oznámit

**announcer** rozhlasový nebo televizní hlasatel; sportovní komentátor

**antenna** (GB) anténa (většinou velká, komerční)

**antenna** (US) anténa (většinou pro domácnost)

**apply a law** uplatnit, použít zákon

**article** článek

**arts** umění

**assistant editor** zástupce šéfredaktora

**attack** [ə'tæk] napadat, napadnout; útok

**attitude towards st** postoj k něčemu

**auxiliary verb** pomocné sloveso

**back** podporovat

**ban (on st)** zákaz (něčeho); zakázat

**bass** basový, hluboký; bas

**be concerned with st** zabývat se něčím

**bid for st** snaha, úsilí; usilovat o něco

**bold** tučné písmo

**book review** knižní recenze

**box** rámeček

**branding** typ reklamy, vyzdvihující jednu značku (např.: A chocolate bar is a Mars bar.)

**bribery** korupce; úplatkářství

**bribery charges** obvinění z korupce

**brightness** jas

**brilliant** vynikající, skvělý

**broadcaster** rozhlasový, televizní hlasatel; reportér; komentátor

**broadcasting** rozhlasové, televizní vysílání

**broadsheet** noviny velkého formátu

**button** tlačítko, knoflík

**by-line** novinový podtitulek se jménem autora článku

**cable** kabelová televize

**capitals** velká písmena

<b>caption</b> text pod obrázkem; nadpis, titul	<b>crosshead</b> podtitulek, mezititulek	<b>formerly</b> dříve; kdysi
<b>cartographer</b> kartograf	<b>crossword (puzzle)</b> křížovka	<b>fortnightly</b> čtrnáctideník; čtrnáctidenní; čtrnáctidenně
<b>cartoon</b> kreslený vtip, seriál; komiks; karikatura	<b>current affairs</b> současné, aktuální události	<b>freelance</b> na volné noze
<b>cassette recorder</b> kazetový magnetofon	<b>cut</b> omezení, snížení, redukce; omezit, snížit	<b>free-sheet</b> reklamní noviny, které jsou distribuovány zdarma
<b>cause</b> způsobit; důvod, příčina	<b>damage sb's reputation</b> poškodit něčí jméno, zničit dobrou pověst	<b>frequency</b> frekvence
<b>censorship</b> ['sensəʃɪp] cenzura	<b>deal</b> dohoda	<b>front page</b> první strana novin; titulní stránka knihy
<b>channel</b> televizní kanál; program (např. ČT 1, CNN...)	<b>debate, discussion</b> debata, diskuse	<b>funded from sb, st</b> financován někým, z něčeho
<b>chat show / talk show</b> (US) televizní, rozhlasová beseda (se známými osobnostmi)	<b>decency</b> ['di:sənsi] slušnost, slušné chování	<b>gadget</b> přístroj
<b>chat-show host</b> moderátor televizní, rozhlasové besedy	<b>designer</b> návrhář; výtvarník	<b>give away</b> (GB) reklamní noviny, které jsou distribuovány zdarma
<b>circulation</b> náklad; oběh	<b>despicable behaviour</b> [di'spɪkəbl] opovrženímhodné, ohavné chování	<b>glossy</b> časopis tištěný na lesklém křídovém papíru
<b>civil service</b> státní služba	<b>differ in approach to st</b> lišit se v přístupu k něčemu	<b>go downhill</b> upadat, horšit se, jít z kopce
<b>civil legal proceedings against...</b> občanskoprávní řízení s...	<b>disagreement</b> neshoda; nesouhlas	<b>graft</b> korupce; úplatkářství
<b>classified advertisements</b> inzertní část periodického tisku (rozdělená podle typu inzerátů)	<b>disc jockey / deejay</b> DJ	<b>graph</b> graf, diagram, obrazec
<b>clone</b> věrná kopie; klon	<b>dismiss</b> propustit	<b>graphics</b> užitá grafika; grafické metody, prostředky
<b>coach potato</b> pecivál, člověk, který se pořád dívá na televizi a nikam nechodí	<b>distract attention from st</b> odvádět pozornost od něčeho	<b>gutter press</b> bulvární tisk
<b>column</b> sloupec; rubrika; sloupek	<b>distract sb from st</b> odvést někoho od něčeho	<b>habitually drunk</b> alkoholik, notorik, neustále opilý
<b>comic strip</b> kreslený seriál na pokračování v periodickém tisku	<b>distributor</b> distributor; roznašeč	<b>half-truths</b> polopравdy
<b>comment</b> poznámka; kritika	<b>documentary</b> dokumentární film	<b>headline</b> novinový titulek
<b>current affairs</b> současné události	<b>due to st</b> následkem něčeho; kvůli něčemu	<b>help wanted</b> (US) volná místa (inzeráty)
<b>compact disc</b> CD, cédéčko	<b>duplicate</b> ['dju:plɪkət] kopie; duplikát	<b>host</b> (talk show) konferenciér, moderátor (v talk show)
<b>comparison with st</b> srovnání s něčím	<b>edition</b> vydání; náklad; verze	<b>image</b> obrázek; představa
<b>compere</b> ['kɒmpeə] konferenciér	<b>editorial assistant</b> člen redakce	<b>vigorously</b> ['vɪɡərəsli] důrazně
<b>competition</b> soutěžení, soutěž	<b>editorial</b> úvodník, redakční článek	<b>inadequately</b> nepřiměřeně
<b>complex</b> složitý, komplikovaný	<b>editor-in-chief</b> šéfredaktor, hlavní redaktor	<b>indifferent to st</b> lhostejný k něčemu
<b>concept</b> pojem	<b>eject</b> vysunout	<b>inquire into</b> zabývat se čím
<b>consistency of style</b> jednotnost stylu	<b>embarrassment</b> rozpaky; záležitost vzbuzující rozpaky	<b>integrity</b> mravní bezúhonnost, integrita
<b>contrast</b> kontrast	<b>encourage st, sb</b> podporovat něco, někoho; dodat někomu odvalu	<b>interference</b> interference, vzájemné rušení (příjmu rozhlasových stanic)
<b>control</b> řídit; ovládat	<b>endure</b> snášet	<b>intruding</b> obtěžování
<b>controls</b> ovládací prvky	<b>established fact</b> nepopiratelná skutečnost	<b>investigate st</b> vyšetřovat, zkoumat něco
<b>conveniently</b> bez obtíží; pohodlně; pěkně	<b>evidence</b> důkazy	<b>investigation into st</b> vyšetřování něčeho
<b>convey the message</b> sdělit zprávu, předat sdělení	<b>exaggeration</b> [ɪɡ,zædʒə'reɪʃən] nadsazování, zveličování	<b>investigative reporting</b> investigativní žurnalistika
<b>copy text</b> (např. inzerátu nebo reklamy); exemplář, výtisk; kopie	<b>fast forward</b> rychlý posun dopředu, rychlé přetáčení	<b>irresponsible</b> neodpovědný
<b>copywriter</b> reklamní textař	<b>feature</b> hlavní článek; hlavní program; uvést na význačném místě	<b>issue</b> ['ɪʃu:, 'ɪsju:] vydání, číslo; problém, otázka
<b>corporate identity</b> ['kɔ:pəreɪt aɪ'dentɪti] stavovská čest, souvazečnost	<b>fight st</b> bránit něčemu, bojovat s něčím	<b>italics</b> [ɪ'tælɪks] kurzíva
<b>creative director</b> tvůrčí vedoucí pracovník	<b>license fee</b> koncesionářský poplatek	<b>journal</b> ['dʒɜ:nəl] deník; odborný časopis
<b>critic</b> kritik, recenzent	<b>FM (Frequency Modulation) VKV</b> (velmi krátké vlny)	<b>jumble</b> přeházet; promíchat
		<b>knob</b> [nɒb] knoflík (např. rozhlasového nebo televizního přijímače)



**lapdog journalism** populistická, servilní žurnalistika

**lead story** hlavní zpráva v novinách

**leader, leading article** úvodník, redakční článek

**leave out** vynechat, vynechávat

**letter** dopis; písmeno

**libel** ['laɪbl] pomluva, urážka na cti (písemná); veřejně někoho očernit

**libellous** ['laɪbələs] nactiutrhácný, hanlivý

**licence fee** koncesionářský poplatek (za rozhlas, televizi)

**line** řádek

**live broadcast** přímý přenos, živé vysílání

**local** místní

**lonely hearts** osamělá srdce, seznámení (inzerční rubrika)

**long wave** dlouhá vlnová délka

**loom** rýsovat se; být na spadnutí

**low-grade** podřadný, méně hodnotný

**magazine** časopis

**mail-order** objednávka zboží poštou podle katalogu

**mainstream media** většinová média

**medium** střed; prostředek; médium

**medium wave** střední vlnová délka

**merger** spojení; sloučení; fúze

**miscellaneous** [ˌmɪsəl'eɪniəs] týkající se různých témat; různé

**monopoly** [mə'nɒpəli] monopol

**monthly** měsíčník; měsíční; měsíčně

**negotiations** jednání, vyjednávání, rozhovory

**newscaster** (US) hlasatel, který obvykle čte zprávy

**newsreader** (GB) hlasatel, který obvykle čte zprávy

**obituary** [ə(ʊ)'bɪtʃuəri] nekrolog

**obviously** zřejmě

**oppose st** oponovat, odporovat něčemu

**opt for st** rozhodnout se pro něco

**page 3 girls** fotografie nahých dívek na 3. straně bulvárního tisku

**paparazzi** paparazzi (senzacechtiví lovci fotografií)

**parody st** parodovat něco

**periodical** časopis; pravidelný

**personal** ['pɜːsənl] oznámení (inzerční rubrika v novinách týkající se jednotlivých osob)

**persuasion** [pə'sweɪzən] přesvědčení, smýšlení, mínění, názor

**phone-in / call-in** (US) pořad založený na telefonických dotazech posluchačů či diváků; volná tribuna

**photographer** [fə'tɒɡrəfə] fotograf

**pie chart** kruhový graf

**play** hrát; hra, drama

**playback** přehrání nahraného záznamu

**plummet** ['plʌmɪt] padat; prudce klesat

**popular press** bulvární tisk

**pornography** [pɔː'nɒɡrəfi] pornografie; sprostota

**press** tisk

**preview** předpremiéra hry, filmu; předběžná recenze (před uvedením díla); upoutávka na televizní pořad

**prime time / peak time** (US) hlavní vysílací čas

**printer** tiskař; tiskárna

**probe** vyšetřování, prošetření; hledat, zkoumat, vyšetřovat

**production editor** výrobní redaktor

**prohibit** [prəʊ'hɪbɪt] zakázat, nedovolit

**promise** slib; slíbit

**proof-reader** korektor

**public service radio** veřejnoprávní rozhlas

**publisher (owner)** nakladatel(ství); vydavatel; majitel (novin)

**quality newspaper** kvalitní, seriózní noviny (velký formát)

**quality press** seriózní tisk

**quarterly** čtvrtletník; čtvrtletní; čtvrtletně

**quit** rezignovat

**race** běžet, letět jako o závod, závodit; závod

**racist** rasistický; rasista

**radio set** radiopřijímač

**real estate** nemovitost(i), reality

**rebel forces** ['rebəl] oddíly vzbouřenců, povstalců

**receiver** (tech) přijímač; sluchátko

**recognize** dát najevo; zjistit; uznat

**record** [rɪ'kɔːd] nahrát

**reduction** omezení, snížení, redukce

**refuse** odmítat, odmítnout

**reject** odmítat, odmítnout

**reliable sources** spolehlivé, hodnověrné zdroje

**reliance on st** spoléhání na něco

**remote (control)** dálkové ovládání

**report** zpráva (novinová)

**resign** rezignovat

**responsible** odpovědný; nesoucí zodpovědnost

**restrictions on st** omezení něčeho

**review** recenze, kritika

**reviewer** recenzent, kritik

**rewind** [ri:'waɪnd] přetočit zpět

**rise** stoupnout, stoupat

**rocket** prudce vzrůst, vylétnout nahoru

**row** [raʊ] neshoda; nesouhlas; hádka

**rumours / gossip** fámy, klepy

**satellite dish** satelitní anténa (talíř)

**scan** zběžně prohlédnout, přeletět očima

**screen** obrazovka

**sensationalised** [sen'seɪʃənəlaɪzd] plné senzací

**sensitive** citlivý

**serial** seriál, dílo na pokračování

**set** připravený; ochotný

**sexist** sexistický, stranící jednomu pohlaví

**shared authorship** kolektivní autorství

**short wave** krátká vlnová délka

**sitcom** (situation comedy) situační komedie (v televizi)

**situations vacant** (GB) volná místa (inzeráty)

**skim the headlines** prolétnout (zběžně prohlédnout) titulky

**sleazy** (derog) vulgární

**small-ads** krátké inzeráty

**smear campaign** [smɪə kæm'peɪn] organizovaná očerňovací kampaň, (např. série novinových článků)

**soap (opera)** komerční seriál (rozhlasový nebo televizní, obvykle z rodinného života)

**source** zdroj, pramen

**special correspondent** zvláštní zpravodaj

**spending** výdaje

**sports editor** sportovní redaktor

**state-run** státní, řízený státem

**static** atmosférický; statický (týkající se atmosférických poruch)

**stringer** redaktor, který pracuje pro více redakcí

**strip** kreslený seriál na pokračování v periodickém tisku

**sub-editor** pomocný redaktor; spoluvydavatel

**subhead** podtitulek, mezititulek

**subscription to st** předplatné něčeho

**subtitle** podtitulek, mezititulek  
**sue sb for libel** [su:] žalovat koho pro urážku na cti  
**supplement** novinová příloha; dodatek, doplněk  
**surge** [sɜ:dʒ] prudce stoupnout, stoupat  
**survey** ['sɜ:veɪ] anketa; dotazování; přehled  
**switch the set off / on** vypnout / zapnout přijímač  
**switch** vypínač, přepínač, spínač  
**tabloid** bulvární plátek (noviny malého formátu)  
**tabloid press** bulvární tisk  
**talks** rozhovory (jednání, vyjednávání)  
**target audience** ['tɑ:ɡɪt 'ɔ:diəns] čtenářská obec určitého zaměření  
**taxation** příjem z daní; daňový systém; daně  
**tax revenues** příjmy z daní  
**the box** (coll) bedna, televize  
**the tube** (coll) bedna, televize  
**timer** časový spínač  
**trade press** noviny nebo časopisy pro odborníky, zasílané přímo (nelze je běžně koupit)  
**transmit** vysílat  
**transmitter** vysílač  
**treble** vysoká frekvence tónů, výšky  
**trigger** způsobit, odstartovat  
**tuner (hi-fi)** ['haɪfai] ladící zařízení, tuner (hi-fi: dokonale reprodukcující zvuk)  
**turn up / down** the volume zesílit / zeslabit (zvuk, hlasitost)  
**TV commercial** televizní reklama  
**TV host** televizní moderátor  
**TV set** televizní přijímač  
**type** tiskový typ, písmo; psát na stroji  
**typeface** druh písma  
**typesetter** sazeč; sázecí stroj  
**typical of st** příznačný, typický pro něco  
**ugly** škaredý, ošklivý, nehezky  
**unbiased** [ʌn'baɪəst] nezájatý, nestranný, objektivní  
**unscramble** [ʌn'skræmbəl] spojit; složit, dát dohromady  
**variety show** varietní představení  
**verbose drunkard** [vɜ:'beʊs, və-] užvaněný opilec  
**video cassette recorder (VCR)** video (rekordér)

**violence** násilí  
**volume** hlasitost  
**vow** [vaʊ] slib; slíbit, slibovat  
**want ad, wanted** krátký inzerát, kterým se hledá zaměstnání, různé předměty apod.  
**wavelength** vlnová délka  
**weekly** týdeník; týdně, každý týden  
**welfare** sociální zabezpečení

## CULTURE

**accordion** [ə'kɔ:diən] akordeon, tahací harmonika  
**accurately** přesně  
**act** akt, dějství, jednání div. hry; hrát roli  
**act st out** předvádět, hrát něco  
**adapt (for)** upravit, adaptovat (pro)  
**admire sb, st** obdivovat se někomu, něčemu  
**adulthood** dospělost  
**adventure** dobrodružství  
**advertisement** reklama, reklamní film  
**afterword** doslov  
**air** [eə] melodie, nápěv, árie  
**aisle** [aɪl] ulička mezi sedadly  
**alien** ['eɪliən] cizinec; vetřelec; cizí; nepřátelský  
**alto** ['æltəʊ] alt; altistka; altsaxofon; viola  
**an R-film (restricted) film** nepřístupný dětem  
**ancestor** ['ænsesə] předek  
**animation** animace; kreslený film  
**anthem** ['ænthəm] hymna  
**antiquarian bookseller** [ˌæntɪ'kwɛəriən] antikvariát  
**appendix, pl. appendixes, appendices** [ə'pendɪks] rejstřík, dodatek  
**applaud** [ə'plɔ:d] tleskat, aplaudovat  
**aria** ['ɑ:riə] árie  
**arrangement** hudební úprava, zpracování  
**artist** ['ɑ:tɪst] umělec, zvláště malíř  
**artiste** [ɑ:'ti:st] artista  
**assassin** [ə'sæsɪn] vrah, atentátník  
**atlas** ['ætɫəs] atlas  
**attendance** návštěvnost, počet přítomných návštěvníků  
**auditorium, pl. auditoriums, auditoria** [ˌɔ:di'tɔ:riəm] hlediště, sál  
**author's proofs** autorská korektura  
**autobiographical** [ˌɔ:təʊbaɪə'græfɪkəl] autobiografický  
**autobiography** [ˌɔ:təʊbaɪə'græfɪ] autobiografie, vlastní životopis  
**avant-garde** [ævən:'ɡɑ:d] avantgardní  
**backstage** zákulisí; zákulisní  
**bagpipes** dudy  
**balalaika** balalajka  
**balcony** balkón  
**ballad** balada



**band** kapela, hudební skupina; orchestr  
**banjo** bendžo  
**bar** taktová čára; takt  
**baritone** baryton  
**barrack** pokřikovat, povykovat, pískat na někoho  
**bass** [beɪs] basový, hluboký; kontra-bas, basa  
**bassoon** [bə'su:n] fagot  
**battle** bitva; boj; zápas  
**beheading** stětí; useknutí hlavy  
**believable** věrohodný  
**bells** zvonky; zvony  
**bibliography** [ˌbɪbli'ɒgrəfi] bibliografie, bibliologie  
**binding (cloth, leather)** knižní vazba (plátno, kůže)  
**biography** [baɪ'ɒgrəfi] životopis  
**blues** blues  
**blurb** reklama, upoutávka na záložce knihy nebo v tisku  
**boast** chlubit se, vychloubat se  
**boo** vypískat někoho; volat hanba, fuj  
**booklet** knížka, brožura  
**bookshop** knihkupectví  
**bouquet** [bu'keɪ] kytice  
**bow** [bəʊ] smyčec  
**box** lóže  
**brochure** ['brɔʃə] brožura, leták  
**brush** štětec; kartáč; smeták  
**brushes** metličky  
**bugle** ['bjʊ:gl] trubka; polnice; signální roh  
**burst into applause** začít tleskat, propuknout v potlesk  
**bust** bysta; poprsí  
**butterflies in the stomach** (coll) nervozita, tréma  
**by heart** z paměti, nazpaměť  
**cacophonous** [kə'kɒfənəs] kakofo-nický, nelibozvučný  
**cameraman** kameraman; fotoreportér  
**cantata** [kæn'tɑ:tə] kantáta  
**canvas** ['kænvəs] malířské plátno; malba, obraz  
**cartoon** [kɑ:'tu:n] kreslený seriál, komiks; kreslený vtip  
**cast list** osoby a obsazení  
**castanets** kastaněty  
**cello, pl. cellos** ['tʃeləʊ] violoncello, cello  
**chant** [tʃɑ:nt] zpěv, nápěv; liturgický zpěv; žalm; zazpívat; recitovat

**chapter** kapitola  
**charcoal** ['tʃɑ:kəʊl] kreslířský uhlí; kresba uhlím, uhlokresba; dřevěné uhlí  
**cheer** ['tʃɪə] povzbuzovat, provolávat slávu  
**chisel** ['tʃɪzəl] dláto; sekáč; majzlík; dlabat; sekát; tesat  
**choir** [kwaɪə] pěvecký sbor; skupina stejných nástrojů v orchestru  
**chorus** ['kɔ:rəs] chór (antický; postava alžbětinského dramatu); sbor (pěvecký, taneční v opeře, operetě, muzikálu); refrén  
**chronicle** ['krɒnɪkl] kronika; zaznamenat, zapsat  
**clap** (one's hands) tleskat  
**clarinet** [ˌklærɪ'net] klarinet  
**classic** klasika; klasický, tradiční  
**classical** klasický  
**classical music** vážná, klasická hudba  
**clay** jíl; sochařská, hrnčířská hlína  
**climb on the bandwagon** [klaɪm 'bænd,wægən] přidat se k vítězné straně; „chytit vítr“  
**clip** klip  
**cloakroom** ['kləʊkru:m, -ru:m] šatna; toaleta (GB); předsálí parlamentu (US)  
**close-up** záběr zblízka  
**collage** ['kɒlɑ:ʒ] koláž; dělat koláže  
**column** ['kɒləm] sloupec sazby; sloupek; sloup  
**comedian** komik; autor komedií  
**comedy** veselohra, komedie  
**complimentary ticket** volná, čestná vstupenka  
**composer** skladatel  
**concert-goer** návštěvník koncertů  
**concert-hall** koncertní síň  
**concerto** [kən'tʃeətəʊ] koncert pro sólový nástroj s doprovodem orchestru  
**conductor** dirigent  
**connoisseur** [ˌkɒnə'sɜ:] znalec  
**considerable** značný  
**contemporary** současný; současník  
**contents** obsah  
**copyright** autorské právo  
**cornet** ['kɔ:nɪt] kornet; kornetista  
**corpse** (coll) [kɔ:ps] mrtvola; zkazit divadelní výstup, vyvést herce z konceptu  
**costume designer** návrhář kostýmů  
**costumes** kostýmy

**counterpoint** kontrapunkt; zdůraznit; kontrastovat  
**country** country (hudba)  
**cover** deska; vazba  
**crayon** kreslicí uhlí, pastel  
**cunning** prohnáný, mazaný, vychytalý  
**curtain** ['kɜ:tn] opona; záclona; závěs  
**curtain call** vyvolávání účinkujících potleskem  
**cut** řezat; stříhat  
**cutting room** střižna  
**cymbalon** dulcimer (strunný nástroj připomínající cimbál)  
**cymbals** ['sɪmbəlz] činely  
**dauber** (informal) [dɔ:bə] špatný malíř, mazal  
**deadly** smrtící, vražedný; hrozný, strašný  
**dedication** věnování  
**deserve** [dɪ'zɜ:v] zasloužit si, zasluhovat  
**detective story** detektivka  
**diary** ['daɪəri] deník, zápisník  
**dictionary** slovník (kniha)  
**dilettante, pl. dilettantes, dilettanti** [ˌdɪlɪ'tænti] diletant; amatér; ochotník  
**director** [daɪ'rektə, dɪ'-] režisér; dirigent; ředitel  
**disco** diskotéka  
**discordant** disonantní; disharmonický  
**distance shot** záběr z dálky  
**distributors** distributoři; půjčovna filmů  
**documentary** dokumentární film  
**doggerel** ['dɒgərəl] kostrbatý verš, báseň psaná v kostrbatých, neumělých verších  
**dolly shot** záběr jedoucí kamerou  
**double bass** ['dʌbl beɪs] kontrabas  
**drama** divadelní hra; dramatické umění, drama  
**drawing** kresba; náčrt; výkres  
**drench** promočit, promáčet, zmáčet  
**dress circle** (GB) balkón  
**dress rehearsal** generální zkouška  
**dressing room** herecká šatna  
**drive-in** (US) kino, restaurace, banka apod., kam lze vjet autem  
**drum** buben  
**drum sb out of st** vyhnat, vyloučit někoho z něčeho  
**drum set** bicí (nástroje)

**drummer** bubeník  
**drumstick** palička na buben; pečené (drůbeží) stehno  
**dry point** suchá jehla na rytí; rytina suchou jehlou; rýt suchou jehlou  
**dubbed** dabovaný  
**dulcimer** [ˈdʌlsɪmə] dulcimer (nástroj podobný cimbálu)  
**dustjacket** obal, přebal  
**easel** [ˈiːzəl] malířský stojan  
**edit** stříhat, sestříhat; sestavit; připravit k vydání  
**educational** výchovný, vzdělávací, naučný  
**electronic** elektronický  
**elegy** elegie, žalozpěv  
**emergency exit** nouzový východ  
**emit** [ɪˈmɪt] vysílat, vydávat  
**encounter sb** [ɪnˈkaʊntə] setkat se s někým  
**encyclopaedia** [ɪnˌsɑːkləˈpiːdiə] encyklopedie; naučný slovník  
**endnote** koncová poznámka (na konci knihy nebo části knihy)  
**engraver** rytec  
**epic** [ˈepɪk] epická báseň, epos  
**epilogue** [ˈepɪlɒɡ] epilog, doslov, závěr  
**erotic** [ɪˈrɒtɪk] erotický; milostný; smyslný  
**etching** [ˈetʃɪŋ] lept  
**euphonium** [juːˈfəʊniəm] eufonium, malá tuba  
**excitement** nadšení  
**exhibit** ukázat, dát najevo; vystavovat  
**exhibition** výstava  
**expectation** očekávání, naděje  
**experimental** experimentální  
**extras** členové komparsu, statisté  
**facsimile reprint** [fækˈsɪmɪliˈriːprɪnt] dotisk v nezměněném vydání  
**fade in** zesílit zvuk; roztmívat obraz  
**fade out** zeslabit zvuk; zatmívat obraz  
**faded colours** vybledlé, vyrudlé barvy  
**failure** [ˈfeɪljə] neúspěch  
**fanfare** [ˈfænfeə] fanfára; vytroubit, vyhlásit  
**fantasy** [ˈfæntəsi] fikce; fantazie  
**farce** fraška  
**favourite** (GB), **favorite** (US) oblíbený; oblíbenec  
**fiction** beletrie; fikce  
**fiddle about, around** hrát, pohrávat si; marnit čas

**fife** píšťala, pikola  
**filthy** obscenní; špinavý; hnusný  
**fine** pokuta  
**fire curtain** bezpečnostní opona  
**first night** premiéra  
**flat** tón o půl tónu snižený (béčko)  
**flop** propadák, fiasko, neúspěch  
**flugelhorn** křídlovka  
**flute** flétna  
**flyleaf, pl. flyleaves** [ˈflaɪliːf] volný list, prázdný, krycí list  
**folk** [fauk] lidový  
**follower** stoupenec, přívrženeček  
**footnote** poznámka pod čarou  
**foreword** předmluva  
**foyer** [ˈfɔɪeɪ] kuloár, foyer  
**frame** rám (obrazu); okénko (filmu); zasazení, rámec (děje)  
**fraudulent** [ˈfrɔːdjələnt] podvodný, falešný  
**free verse** volný verš  
**French horn** lesní roh  
**full house** vyprodaný sál  
**gala performance** [ˈɡɑːlə] gala představení  
**gallery** galerie; nejvyšší balkón, pořadí v hledišti  
**gangway** (GB) ulička mezi řadami sedadel  
**genre** [ˈʒɑːnrə, ˈʒɒn-] žánr  
**grand piano** [ɡrænd piˈænoʊ] koncertní křídlo; klavír  
**graphics** grafika, grafické metody, prostředky  
**grisly** [ˈɡrɪzli] příšerný, nahánějící hrůzu  
**group** skupina; hudební skupina  
**grunge** [ɡrʌndʒ] hudební a módní styl počátku 90. let 20. století; rocková móda  
**guesswork** dohady  
**guitar** kytara  
**hammond organ** varhany Hammond (elektronické se dvěma klávesnicemi)  
**handbook** příručka, průvodce  
**happy ending** šťastný konec, happy-end  
**hardback** vázaná kniha ve tvrdých deskách  
**harmonica** [hɑːˈmɒnɪkə] foukací harmonika  
**harmonious** [hɑːˈməʊniəs] harmonický; libozvučný  
**harmony** [ˈhɑːməni] harmonie

**harp** [hɑːp] harfa; hrát na harfu  
**harp on about st** stále mluvit o něčem  
**harpisichord** [ˈhɑːpsɪkɔːd] cembalo  
**have a long run** být dlouho součástí repertoáru  
**have an ear for music** mít hudební sluch  
**head** hlava; hlavička; být v čele, vést  
**heading** záhlaví, nadpis, titul  
**heavy metal** heavy metal (druh rockové hudby); těžký kov  
**hero** [ˈhɪərəʊ] hrdina  
**heroine** [ˈherəʊɪn] hrdinka (hlavní postava díla)  
**hi-hat, high hat** šlapací činely (součást bicích)  
**hiss** vypískat  
**historical novel** historický román  
**humour** (GB), **humor** (US) [ˈhjuːmə] humor; nálada, rozpoložení  
**hymn** [hɪm] hymnus, církevní píseň, chvalozpěv  
**illustration** [ˌɪləˈstreɪʃən] ilustrace  
**improvise** improvizovat  
**in the wings** v zákulisí  
**index, pl. indices, indexes** [ˈɪndeks] seznam; rejstřík  
**instrumental** instrumentální  
**intellectual property** duševní vlastnictví  
**interior** [ɪnˈtɪəriə] interiér  
**intermission** [ˌɪntəˈmɪʃən] přestávka  
**interval** [ˈɪntəvəl] přestávka  
**intrigue** [ˈɪntriːɡ] intriky  
**introduction** úvod  
**jacket** obal, přebal, obálka  
**jazz** džez  
**jazz st up** (infml) dát něčemu šmrnc, trochu života  
**kettle drums** tympány, kotle  
**keyboard** klávesnice, klaviatura  
**keyboards** klávesové nástroje  
**lacklustre** [ˈlæk,lʌstə] fádni, bezduchý  
**landscape** krajina  
**latecomer** opozdilec  
**launch** [lɔːntʃ] uvést na trh; vypustit  
**layman** laik  
**leather binding** [ˈleðə ˈbaɪndɪŋ] kožená vazba  
**librarian** knihovník  
**limerick** limerik (pětirádková vtipná nebo nesmyslná rýmovanka)



**lino cut** ['laɪnəʊ kʌt] linoryt  
**lithograph** ['lɪθəʊɡrɑ:f] litografie  
**live theatre** [laɪv 'θiətə, θi'etə] skutečně, opravdové divadlo  
**lobby** kuloár; foyer  
**lullaby** ['lʌləbaɪ] ukolébavka  
**lyric** lyrika, lyrická báseň, píseň  
**lyrics** text, slova, zejm. populární písně  
**madman** blázen, šílenec  
**madrigal** ['mædrɪɡəl] madrigal  
**mallet** ['mælɪt] palice, dřevěná palička  
**mandolin** [ˌmændə'lɪn] mandolína  
**mankind** [mæn'kaɪnd] lidstvo  
**manual** ['mænjuəl] manuál, příručka  
**manuscript** ['mænjʊskrɪpt] rukopis  
**margin** okraj  
**market economy** [ˈrɪkənəmi] tržní hospodářství  
**mass** [mæs] mešní zpěvy; mše  
**matinée** ['mætiːneɪ, ˌmætən'eɪ] odpolední představení  
**melodious** [mə'ləʊdiəs] melodický, dobře znějící  
**melody** ['melədi] melodie, nápěv  
**memoirs** ['memwɑ:z] paměti  
**mercy** ['mɜ:si] milost, milosrdenství  
**mezzanine** (US) ['metsəni:n, 'mezə-] první balkon  
**mezzo soprano** ['metsəʊ sə'pra:nəʊ] mezzosoprán  
**Mills and Boon romance** harlekýnka  
**miniature** ['mɪnɪtʃə] miniatura; drobnokresba  
**minute detail** [maɪ'nju:t 'di:teɪl] drobný detail  
**misfit** člověk na nesprávném místě; ztracená existence  
**motif** [məʊ'ti:f] motiv  
**mouth organ** foukací harmonika  
**mouthpiece** náustek, nátrubek  
**movie** (US) film  
**musical** hudební; muzikální, hudebně nadaný; muzikál  
**musical instruments** hudební nástroje  
**mystery** detektivka  
**newsreel** týdeník (v kině)  
**non-fiction** literatura faktu; populárně naučná literatura  
**note** nota; tón; klávesa  
**novel** román; řidčeji novela  
**nudes** akty

**nursery rhyme** dětská říkanka  
**oboe** ['əʊbəʊ] hobo; varhanní rejstřík  
**obscure** nejasný  
**observe** [əb'zɜ:v] pozorovat  
**ode** [əʊd] óda  
**oil painting** olejomalba, olej  
**on location** v terénu, v realu  
**one-act play** jednoaktovka  
**open-air theatre** divadlo v přírodě  
**opera** ['ɒ(ə)pɹə] opera  
**oratorio** oratorium  
**orchestra** (US) ['ɔrkəstrə] sedadla v přízemí (v divadle)  
**orchestra pit** ['ɔ:kɪstrə] místo pro orchestr, orchestríště  
**orchestral** orchestrální  
**outdoor cinema** (GB) letní kino  
**out of tune** falešný, rozladěný  
**output** tvorba  
**overdue book** kniha s prošlou výpůjční lhůtou  
**overture** ['əʊvətʃuə, 'əʊvətʃə] předehra  
**overwrite** přepisovat, přepsat  
**painter** malíř  
**painters' supplies** malířské potřeby  
**pan** snímáči kamera; najet, zabrat, panorámovat  
**panpipes** Panova píšťala, syrx, moldánky  
**pantomime** pantomima; pohádková revue hraná o Vánocích (GB)  
**paperback** vázaná kniha v měkkých deskách  
**paragraph** odstavec; sloupek  
**part** část; díl; role  
**passage** pasáž, úryvek  
**pastel** ['pæstəl] pastel (obraz i barva); borytová modř  
**pedestal** ['pedəstəl] podstavec, stojan, piedestal, sokl  
**percussion** [pə'kʌʃən] bicí, perkuse  
**performance** představení; provedení (díla); interpretace; vystoupení  
**performer** účinkující; umělec  
**periodicals** [ˌpɪəri'ɒdɪkəlz] časopisy, periodický tisk  
**personnel** [ˌpɜ:sənəl] osazenstvo, zaměstnanci; osobní, kádrový  
**PG** (parental guidance) mládeži přístupno v doprovodu rodičů  
**physique** [fɪ'zi:k] stavba těla, postava  
**piano** [pi'ænəʊ] klavír, piáno

**piano accordion** pianová, klávesová harmonika  
**piccolo** pikola (malá flétna)  
**pick** vybrnkávat, brnkat; vybrat  
**picture gallery** galerie, obrazárna  
**plates** obrazová příloha  
**play by ear** hrát podle sluchu; improvizovat  
**play to a packed / empty house** hrát před vyprodaným / prázdným hledištěm  
**playwright** dramatik, autor divadelní hry  
**plectrum** ['plektrəm] trsátko, plektrum  
**plot** zápletky  
**pluck** vybrnkávat, brnkat  
**podium** ['pəʊdiəm] sedadlo v amfiteátru; pódium  
**poem** báseň  
**poetry** poezie  
**popular** populární  
**porcelain vase** ['pɔ:səlɪn va:z, veɪs] porcelánová váza  
**pornographic** [ˌpɔ:nə'græfɪk] pornografický  
**portrait** ['pɔ:trɪt, -treɪt] portrét, podobizna  
**practise** cvičit (hru na hudební nástroj)  
**praise oneself** chválit se  
**predictable** předvídatelný  
**preface** ['prefɪs] předmluva  
**premiere** ['premiə, premi'eə] premiéra, první provedení  
**pretentious** [prɪ'tentʃəs] pompézní; domýšlivý, sebevědomý  
**previews** (GB) ['pri:vju:z] kritiky uveřejněné před uvedením díla, filmu, atd.  
**previews** (US) ['pri:vju:z] krátké ukázky z filmů promítané jako reklama, filmové upoutávky  
**printing** tisk  
**producer** producent; režisér (GB)  
**promenade** [ˌprɒmə'nɑ:d, ˌpra:mə'nɛɪd] promenádní koncert  
**prompt** napovědět, napovídat  
**prompter** nápověda (v divadle)  
**prompter's box** nápovědní budka  
**prose** próza  
**pseudo-art** [su:'dɒu a:t] pseudo-umění  
**psychodrama** [ˌsaɪkəʊ'drɑ:mə] psychologické drama  
**publish** publikovat; vydat

**pulp** literature literární škvár  
**punk music** punková hudba  
**purple poetry** sentimentální poezie  
**put down a book** odložit rozečtenou knihu  
**quote** citovat  
**rack** police, policička, přihrádka, regál, stojan  
**rattle st off** odhrkat, odemlít, oddrmolit něco  
**read music** znát noty; umět zpívat, hrát podle not  
**reassurance** ujištění; útěcha, uklidnění  
**recital** [rɪ'saɪtəl] recitál  
**recite** [rɪ'saɪt] přednášet, recitovat, deklamovat  
**recorder** [rɪ'kɔ:də] zobcová flétna  
**reed** jazyček, plátek hudebního nástroje  
**reel st off** odříkat, oddrmolit, odhrkat něco  
**reference** reference, doporučení, vysvědčení  
**reference book** příručka, informační dílo  
**refuge** ['refju:dʒ] útočiště; útulek; záchrana  
**rehearse** [rɪ'hɜ:s] zkoušet, nacvičovat  
**rehearsal** zkouška  
**reject** odmítnout; propadnout  
**repertory, rep** (coll) ['repətəri] repertoár; repertoárové divadlo  
**requiem (mass)** ['rekwiəm mæs] rekviem, zádušní mše  
**rest** pomlka, pauza  
**rest on one's laurels** ['lɒrəlz] usnout na vavřínech  
**revert to st** vrátit se k něčemu  
**revolutionary** revoluční  
**rhyme** [raɪm] rým; rýmovat  
**rhythm** ['rɪðəm] rytmus; metrum  
**rhythm and blues (R & B)** směs rockenrollu a blues  
**ridiculous** směšný, absurdní, zasluhující si výsměch  
**rock** rock, rocková hudba  
**rock'n'roll** rokenrol  
**romance** [rəʊ'mæns, 'rəʊmæns] milostný román; rytířský román; romance (hud.)  
**royalties** autorský honorář (daný procenty z prodaných knih), tantiémy; licenční poplatek, poplatek z patentu

**rushes** promítání výsledku denního natáčení filmu  
**safety curtain** bezpečnostní (ohnivzdorná) opona v divadle  
**saga** ['sɑ:gə] sága, legenda  
**scale** stupnice; škála; rozsah hudebního nástroje  
**scan** mít správný rytmus (o verši)  
**scene** [si:n] jevištní výstup; scéna; árie  
**scenery** ['si:nəri] dekorace, kulisy, výprava  
**sci-fi film** ['saɪfaɪ] vědeckofantastický film  
**science fiction** vědeckofantastická literatura, film  
**screenplay** filmový scénář  
**script** scénář, text  
**scriptwriter** autor textu, scénárista  
**sculptor** sochař  
**sculpture** ['skʌlptʃə] socha, sousoší, skulptura; plastika  
**section** knižní arch; úsek; část; oddíl  
**secular** světský  
**sequel** ['si:kwəl] řada, série  
**serious** vážný  
**set** scéna  
**set to music** zhudebnit  
**shape** tvar, forma; podoba  
**sharp** tón zvýšený o půl tónu (křížek)  
**shoot a film** točit film  
**shot** záběr (ve filmu); snímek, fotografie  
**show sb to their seats** uvést na místa (v divadle, v kině apod.)  
**side drum** malý bubínek s dvěma paličkami  
**sight-read** umět číst, hrát z listu  
**sitar** ['sɪtɑ:] sitar (indický hudební nástroj)  
**sketch** náčrtek, náčrt, črta, skica  
**slapstick comedy** groteska; klauniáda  
**slow motion, slo-mo** (coll) zpomalený film  
**snare drum** ['sneədʒəm] malý bubínek  
**sold out** vyprodáno  
**soloist** ['səʊləɪst] sólista  
**sonata** [sə'na:tə] sonáta  
**sonnet** ['sɒnɪt] sonet, krátká lyrická milostná báseň  
**soprano** [sə'prɑ:nəʊ] soprán; sopránista, sopranistka  
**sound track** zvuková stopa, zvukový záznam

**spatula** ['spætʃʊlə] špachtle, stěrka  
**special effects** zvláštní efekty  
**spine** hřbet knihy  
**spinnet** [spi'net] spinet, krátké pianino  
**spy novel** špionážní román  
**stacks** sklad knih v knihovně  
**staff, pl. staves** notová osnova, linky  
**stage** jeviště, scéna; divadlo; drama  
**stage crew** štáb  
**stage designer** jevištní návrhář  
**stage fright** tréma  
**stage hand** kulisák  
**stage manager** hlavní inspicient  
**stage props** rekvizity  
**stand in for sb** zastoupit někoho  
**stand-in** dvojník, dubl  
**standing ovation** ovace, potlesk vestoje  
**stanza** ['stænzə] verš, strofa  
**statue** socha  
**still life** zátiší  
**stringed instruments** strunné, smyčcové nástroje  
**strum** drkat na hudební nástroj  
**studio** (malířský) ateliér; (filmové, televizní) studio  
**stunt-man / woman** dvojník, kaskadér  
**subject matter** téma, námět, obsah  
**subsidise** ['sʌbsaɪz] podporovat, subvencovat  
**subtitles** titulky  
**suite** [swi:t] suita  
**summary** shrnutí, krátký obsah  
**superstitious** [ˌsu:pə'stɪʃəs] pověřivý  
**supplement** příloha; dodatek  
**supporting part** vedlejší role  
**symphonic poem** symfonická báseň  
**symphony** symfonie  
**synthesiser** ['sɪnθesaɪzə] syntetizátor  
**take curtain calls** děkovat se před oponou  
**talkies** (historical) zvukové filmy  
**tambourine** [ˌtæmbə'reɪn] tamburína  
**tapestry** goblén, tapisérie  
**tasteless** fádňí, neslaný nemastný; nevkusný, netaktní  
**tearjerker** [ˌtɪə'dʒɜ:kə] doják, sentimentální kýč  
**technique** [tek'ni:k] způsob, postup, technika, technologie  
**techno** ['teknəʊ] techno



**tenor** ['tenə] tenor; tenorista  
**textbook** učebnice  
**theme music** hlavní melodie  
**thesaurus** [θɪ'sɔ:ɪrəs] tezaurus, tematický slovník  
**thriller** napínavý román, film, detektivka  
**title** titul, název  
**toccata and fugue** [tə'kɑ:tə, fju:ɡ] tokáta (skladba pro klávesové nástroje) a fuga  
**tone-deaf** bez hudebního sluchu  
**tongue twister** jazykolam  
**touching** dojmavý  
**traditional** [trə'dɪʃ(ə)nəl] tradiční  
**tragedian** ['trædʒɪdiən] tragéd; autor tragédií  
**tragedy** ['trædʒədi] tragédie; tragika  
**tragicomedy** tragikomedie  
**trailers** (GB) krátké ukázky z filmů promítané jako reklama, upoutávky  
**translated by BF** přeložil(a) BF  
**trapdoor** propadliště v divadle  
**trash** kýč, umělecký brak  
**travel film** cestopisný film  
**travelogue** ['trævəlɒɡ] cestopis (film, článek, kniha, přednáška s diapozitivy)  
**triangle** ['traɪæŋɡl] triangel; trojúhelník  
**trilogy** ['trɪlədʒi] trilogie  
**trombone** pozoun(ista), trombón(ista)  
**trump up** zinscenovat, zosnovat  
**trumpet** trubka, trumpet; trumpetista  
**tuba** ['tju:bə] tuba  
**tune** melodie, nápev; čistý zvuk nástroje  
**tune (up)** naladit  
**unauthorized** [ʌn'ɔ:θəraɪzd] neoprávněný; nedovolený, nepovolený  
**understudy** náhradník, záskok  
**U-film** (universal) (GB) film přístupný mládeži  
**unputdownable** (coll) poutavý (o knize)  
**upset** rozčilený  
**usher(ette)** ['ʌʃə, ʌʃə'ret] uvaděč(ka)  
**utensils** [ju'tensɪlz] nástroje; nádobí  
**variety show** [və'raɪəti] varietní představení, estráda  
**variety theatre** varieté  
**varnish** lak; politura; glazura  
**verse** verš; poezie  
**vibes** (jazz) [vaɪbz] vibrafon (džez)

**villain** ['vɪlən] zlosyn, padouch, ničema  
**viola** [vi'əʊlə] viola  
**violin** [ˌvaɪə'li:n] housle  
**vocal** vokální, hlasový  
**vocalist** ['vəʊkəlɪst] zpěvák  
**voices** (pěvecké) hlasy  
**wind instrument** [waɪnd 'ɪnstɹəmənt] dechový nástroj  
**woodcarver** řezbář  
**woodcut** dřevoryt, dřvořezba  
**woodwind instrument** dřevěný dechový hudební nástroj  
**work out** vymyslet; vypracovat  
**xylophone** ['zaɪləfəʊn] xylofon

## EDUCATION

**academic** [ˌækə'demɪk] akademický; teoretický; vědecký  
**ADD** (attention deficit disorder) porucha schopnosti se soustředit  
**admission** přijetí  
**admit** [əd'mɪt] přijímat; připustit  
**afford to do st** [ə'fɔ:d] dovolit si něco  
**A-level** závěrečná zkouška na vyšší střední škole před vstupem na univerzitu  
**analyze** ['ænəlaɪz] analyzovat, rozebrat (problém, situaci apod.)  
**apply for a scholarship** žádat o stipendium  
**appoint** jmenovat  
**apprentice school** učiliště  
**art** umění; výtvarné umění; dovednost  
**arts** humanitní, společenské vědy  
**assembly hall** školní aula  
**assistant principal** (US) zástupce ředitele  
**award a degree** udělit titul  
**BA** (Bachelor of Arts) Bc., bakalářský stupeň v humanitních vědách  
**BA (Hons)** Bc s vyznamenáním, tzv. červený diplom  
**backward** zaostalý, opožděný ve vývoji  
**beatings** bití  
**boarding school** internátní škola  
**break** (GB) přestávka  
**BSc** (Bachelor of Science) Bc., bakalář přírodních věd  
**bulletin board** (US) ['bulətɪn bɔ:d] nástěnka, vývěsní tabule  
**bully** ['bʊli] týrat, šikanovat, zstrašovat, tyranizovat  
**bunk sb for st** vyhodit, vyloučit někoho (ze školy) kvůli něčemu  
**by mistake** omylem  
**cafeteria** [ˌkæfə'tɪərɪə] jídelna (se samoobsluhou)  
**campus** ['kæmpəs] areál univerzity, kampus, akademická půda  
**certificate** [sə'tɪfɪkət] osvědčení; vysvědčení  
**chalk** křída  
**chancellor** (GB) ['tʃɑ:nsələ] rektor univerzity  
**cheat sheet** tahák  
**chemistry** ['kemɪstri] chemie  
**chess** šach  
**classics** klasická studia (zabývající se starověkým Řeckem a Římem)

**class** třída, hodina, ročník, úroveň  
**classroom** třída (místnost)  
**co-ed** pro dívky i chlapce, koedukovaný  
**college** vysoká škola, univerzita; vyšší střední škola; akademie; britská střední škola, kde se platí školné  
**collocation** kolokace, ustálené slovní spojení  
**community service** veřejně prospěšné práce  
**compared to st** v porovnání s něčím  
**complete a degree in...** dokončit studium... (čeho)  
**compulsory subjects** povinné předměty  
**computer room** počítačová učebna  
**concentrate on st** soustředit se na něco  
**confident of, about st** jistý, přesvědčený o něčem  
**cooking and housekeeping** vaření a domácí práce  
**correct** opravit, opravovat  
**course** ['kɔ:s] kurs  
**cover for sb** zastupovat někoho  
**courteous towards sb** ['kɜ:tiəs] zdvořilý k někomu  
**cram for** šprtát se, dřít, biflovat na  
**cramming** šprtání, biflování  
**credit** kredit (za dokončení předmětu); zápočet  
**crib** tahák  
**curriculum** [kə'rikjʊləm] učební plán, studijní program, učební osnovy  
**custodian** (US) [kʌs'təʊdiən] školník  
**dean** děkan  
**department head** vedoucí oddělení, katedry  
**deputy head** (GB) zástupce ředitele  
**designated** ['dezɪɡneɪtɪd] určený  
**dilemma** [dɪ'leɪnə, daɪ'leɪnə] těžké rozhodování, dilema  
**dining hall** jídelna  
**discourage st** bránit něčemu  
**distinguish st from st else** odlišovat něco od něčeho jiného  
**do one's homework** dělat úkoly  
**do research into** zabývat se výzkumem něčeho  
**dorm** (coll US, dormitory) studentské koleje; ubytovna  
**dress code** oblečení vyžadované pro určitou příležitost  
**economics** [i:kə'nɒmɪks, ekə-] ekonomie, ekonomika; ekonomická stránka

**elective subjects** volitelné předměty  
**element** ['elɪmənt] prvek  
**eligible for st** ['elɪdʒəbl] způsobilý k něčemu; kvalifikovaný; mít nárok na něco  
**emphasis on** ['empfəsɪs] důraz na  
**empowered to st** zplnomocněný k něčemu  
**endowment** [ɪn'dəʊmənt] dotace  
**enrol** (GB), **enroll** (US) zapsat se, přihlásit se; přijmout ke studiu  
**enrolment** zápis, přihlášení  
**enter higher education** jít na vysokou školu  
**entrance exam** přijímací zkouška  
**examine** zkoušet  
**exceptional** výjimečný, mimořádný, zvláštní, neobyčejný  
**expelled** [ɪk'speld] vyloučený (ze školy)  
**explore** zkoumat, bádát  
**extra-curricular activities** mimoškolní zájmová činnost  
**evening classes** večerní kursy  
**fail an exam** neuspět u zkoušky, neudělat zkoušku  
**fall behind the class** zaostávat za třídou  
**field trip** exkurze  
**first-degree course** bakalářské studium  
**focus on st** zaměřit se na něco  
**formal** formální, oficiální  
**freshman** student prvního ročníku VŠ (v USA i SŠ)  
**geography** [dʒɪ:'ɡrəfɪ]  
**go to university** navštěvovat univerzitu  
**gown** [gaʊn] talár  
**grade** známkovat, hodnotit; známka; třída  
**graduate from... with honours** ukončit střední školu (US), promovat... (GB) s vyznamenáním  
**graduate in...** (US) maturovat z...  
**graduation ceremony** promoce  
**grammar school** (GB) výběrová střední škola  
**Greek** řečtina  
**guidance counsellor** ['ɡaɪdəns 'kaʊnsələ] výchovný poradce  
**gymnasium, gym** (coll) tělocvična  
**halls of residence** (GB) studentské koleje  
**have a degree in...** mít titul, vysokoškolské vzdělání v oboru...

**headmaster, headmistress, the head** (GB) ředitel, ředitelka  
**headmaster's office** ředitelna  
**highlight** zdůraznit, vyzdvihnout (informace)  
**high school** (US) střední škola  
**history** dějiny, historie  
**home economics** [i:kə'nɒmɪks, ekə-] nauka o vedení domácnosti  
**hostel** (GB) ['hɒstəl] kolej; ubytovna; noclehárna  
**idleness** lenost  
**illiterate** ['ɪlɪtərət] negramotný, analfabet  
**in contrast to st** oproti něčemu  
**independent school** soukromá střední škola  
**influence** ovlivňovat  
**informal** neformální, neoficiální  
**insert** [ɪn'sɜ:t] vložit, připojit  
**janitor** (GB) ['dʒænitə] školník  
**jot down** poznamenat si  
**junior** student nižší střední školy  
**keep a diary** vést si deník  
**knock sb down** shodit, svalit, srazit někoho  
**lag behind the class** zaostávat za třídou  
**Latin** latina  
**learn** učit se, naučit se  
**lecture** přednášet; přednáška  
**lecture hall** posluchárna; aula  
**lecturer** vysokoškolský učitel  
**locker room** šatna s uzamykatelnými skříňkami  
**lunch room** školní jídelna  
**MA** (Master of Arts) Mgr., titul magister  
**make a mistake** udělat chybu  
**maladjusted** [ˌmælə'dʒʌstɪd] nepřízpůsobivý, neadaptabilní  
**mark** známkovat; známka  
**master** učitel, profesor  
**mathematics, maths** [ˌmæθə'mætɪks, mæθs] matematika  
**mature student** dospělý student  
**memorise** učit se z paměti  
**misconduct** špatné chování  
**mock-exam** cvičná zkouška, zkouška na zkoušku  
**mortarboard** ['mɔ:təbɔ:d] baret nošený studenty a vyučujícími při slavnostních příležitostech  
**music** hudební výchova, zpěv



**notice board** (GB) nástěnka  
**nursery school** mateřská škola  
**obligatory** povinný  
**off the roll** vyřazený ze seznamu studentů  
**open access** volný přístup  
**optional subject** nepovinný, volitelný předmět  
**oral** ['ɔ:rəl] ústní  
**Oxbridge** univerzity v Oxfordu a Cambridgi  
**paper** písemná zkouška, práce, test; kompozice; referát  
**parents' meeting** třídní schůzka  
**pass an exam** udělat, složit zkoušku  
**pay attention** dávat pozor  
**pencil case** pouzdro  
**permanent** stálý, trvalý  
**PhD** doktor přírodních věd; doktor filosofie  
**physically (or mentally) handicapped** tělesně (nebo duševně) postižený  
**physical training / education (PT, PE)** tělesná výchova, tělocvik  
**physics** fyzika  
**picking up rubbish** sbírání odpadků  
**play truant** chodit za školu  
**poor** [pɔ:, pʊə] špatný  
**precocious** [pri'kəʊʃəs] předčasně vyspělý (zejm. duševně)  
**president** (US) ['prezɪdnt] děkan, rektor  
**prevent sb from doing st** zabránit někomu, aby něco udělal  
**private schools** soukromé školy  
**professor** profesor(ka) na vysoké škole  
**public school** (GB) soukromá střední škola  
**public school** (US) státní střední škola  
**publicly-funded** dotovaný státem  
**push sb around** komandovat někoho, sekýrovat, zametat s někým  
**put up with** vyrovnat se s  
**raise finance** získat peníze  
**read** číst; studovat na univerzitě (určitý obor)  
**recess** (US) [ri'ses, 'ri:-] přestávka (ve škole)  
**recruiter** [ri'kru:tə] náborový pracovník  
**review** (US) opakovat (naučené); kritika, recenze

**revise** (GB) opakovat (naučené)  
**schedule** (US) ['ʃedju:l, 'sked-] rozvrh hodin  
**school fees** školní poplatky, školné  
**school principal** (US) ředitel školy  
**school report** vysvědčení  
**secondary school** střední škola  
**semester** (US) [si'mestə, sə'mestə] semestr  
**senior** ['si:nɪə, -njə] student vyššího ročníku  
**sent down** (euph) vyloučen  
**sit (for) an exam** dělat zkoušku  
**skip classes** chodit za školu, ulejšvat se  
**slow upstairs** trošku pomalejší (v myšlení)  
**sophomore** ['sɒfəmə:] student/ka druhého ročníku střední školy, univerzity  
**special pupil** žák zvláštní školy  
**special school** zvláštní škola  
**spoilt and ill-mannered** rozmazlený a nevychovaný  
**standardized examinations** jednotné zkoušky  
**state schools** státní školy  
**stand in for sb** zastupovat někoho  
**student** student (vysoké školy)  
**substitute for sb** suplovat za někoho, zastupovat někoho  
**suspend sb from school** vyloučit někoho ze školy  
**swot** (infrm) šprtat, biflovat, drtit se  
**syllabus** program, plán  
**take an exam in st** dělat zkoušku z něčeho  
**take attendance** dělat docházku, zjišťovat, kdo je přítomen  
**teach** učit  
**teachers' room** sborovna  
**teaching assistant (T.A.)** asistent učitele  
**term** (GB) semestr  
**timetable** (GB) rozvrh hodin  
**tough** [tʌf] drsný, tvrdý, hrubý  
**tuition (charges, fees)** [tju:'ɪʃən] školné, poplatky za vzdělávání  
**tutor** učitel; doučovatel  
**undergraduate** vysokoškolský student, posluchač, který ještě nezískal titul bakaláře  
**underachiever** neúspěšný student  
**unfamiliarity** [ʌnfə'mɪli'ærəti] neznalost, novost  
**unteachable** nevzdělatelný

**urge sb** naléhat na někoho  
**vandalise** ['vændəlaɪz] (z)ničit, (z)devastovat  
**write down** zapisovat si  
**write (il)legibly** psát (ne)čitelně  
**written** psaný, písemný

## HOLIDAYS

**a penny for the guy** pence pro figurinu představující Guy Fawkesa  
**affection** zalíbení, náklonnost, láska  
**All Fools Day** 1. duben, April  
**All Saints' Day** svátek Všech svatých  
**annual ceremony** [ˈænjuəl ˈseriməni] každoroční oslava  
**April Fools Day** April  
**Armistice** (GB) [ˈɑːmɪstɪs] Den příměří (11. 11. 1918)  
**assassinate** [əˈsæsɪneɪt] úkladně zavraždit, spáchat atentát (zvláště z politických důvodů)  
**August Bank Holiday** (GB) den pracovního volna v srpnu, státem uznaný svátek, kdy jsou zavřeny všechny banky (poslední pondělí)  
**Babes in the Wood** název pohádky (o perníkové chaloupce)  
**banging** [bæŋɪŋ] bouchání, praskání, střílení  
**bauble** [ˈbɒbl̩] cetka, tretka  
**Beauty and the Beast** Kráska a zvíře  
**become commercialised** stát se komerčním  
**Boxing Day** sv. Štěpána, 2. svátek vánoční, 26. prosinec  
**bun** (GB) [bʌn] buchtíčka; drdol  
**bunny** zajíček  
**burn bonfires** [ˈbɒnfʌɪəz] dělat ohně  
**candle** svíčka  
**carol** koleda  
**carp** kapr  
**celebrate** [ˌseləˈbreɪt] slavit, oslavovat  
**cemetery** [ˈsemətəri, ˈseməˌteri] hřbitov  
**Christian holiday** [ˈkrɪstɪfəʊn, -tɪən] křesťanský svátek  
**Christmas Day** [ˈkrɪsməs deɪ] Boží hod vánoční, 25. prosinec  
**Christmas Eve** Štědrý večer, Štědrý den, 24. prosinec  
**Christmas greetings** vánoční přání  
**Christmas tree** vánoční stromček  
**Cinderella** [ˌsɪndəˈrelə, -dəˈrel-] Popelka  
**civil rights** občanská práva  
**clergyman** duchovní, zejm. anglikánský kněz  
**colley bird** [ˈkɒli bɜːd] kos (nářečí)  
**Columbus Day** (US) Kolumbův den (připomíná 12. 10. 1492)  
**commemorate** připomínat

**common** obvyklý, běžný  
**consistently** důsledně  
**conspirator** [kənˈspɪrətə] spiklenec, konspirátor  
**convict** [ˈkɒnvɪkt] odsouzený, odsouzenec, trestanec  
**convicted** [kənˈvɪktɪd] odsouzený  
**cookies** (US) koláčky, sušenky, drobné cukroví  
**cranberry sauce** brusinková omáčka; kompot  
**dangle from** houpat se, viset na  
**declare** slavnostně, veřejně vyhlásit, prohlásit  
**decorate** zdobit, ozdobit  
**delete** vymazat, smazat  
**descent** [dɪˈsent] původ (people of ... descent)  
**do Christmas shopping** dělat vánoční nákupy  
**douse** [daʊs] polít vodou  
**dyed or painted eggs** barvená nebo malovaná vajíčka  
**Easter egg hunt** hledání velikonočních vajíček  
**Easter lamb** [læm] velikonoční beránek  
**Easter Monday** velikonoční pondělí  
**Easter Sunday** Boží hod velikonoční  
**egg nog** vaječný koňak  
**Epiphany, Twelfth-Night** [ɪˈpɪfəni, ˈeɪf-] svátek Tří králů  
**execute** [ˈeksɪkjʊːt] popravít  
**express one's affection for sb** vyjádřit svoji lásku, náklonnost k někomu  
**fairy** víla; napřirozená pohádková bytost  
**fairy tale** [ˈfeəri, ˈferi] pohádka  
**Father Christmas / Santa Claus**  
**Father's Day** (US) svátek otců  
**feast** svátek  
**firework** ohňostroj  
**flying of flags** vyvěšování praporů  
**fruit cake** biskupský chlebiček  
**full moon** úplněk  
**generous** velkorysý; štědrý; bohatý  
**ghost** [ɡəʊst] duch, strašidlo  
**gift** dar, dárek  
**give thanks for a good harvest** vzdávat díky za dobrou úrodu  
**goblin** (zlý) skřítek, šotek  
**gold ring** zlatý prsten  
**Good Friday** Velký pátek  
**goose, pl. geese** husa

**grave** [ɡreɪv] hrob; hrobka, náhrobek  
**guard-mounting ceremony** přehlídka královských stráží na koních  
**Gunpowder Plot** spiknutí, pokus vyhodit do povětří londýnský parlament 5. 11. 1605  
**Guy Fawkes Night, Bonfire Night** (GB) výročí dne 5. 11. 1605  
**Halloween** předvečer Všech svatých  
**hard-boiled eggs** vejce na tvrdo  
**hide** schovat  
**holly** [ˈhɒli] cesmína  
**Holy Saturday** [ˈhəʊli] Bílá sobota  
**homemade ornaments** doma vyrobené ozdoby  
**honour** (GB), **honor** (US) [ˈɒnə] vzdát čest; uctívat; čest  
**hot cross buns** velikonoční pečivo  
**Independence Day** (US) Den nezávislosti  
**ingredient** [ɪŋˈɡriːdiənt] složka, součást, přísada, ingredience  
**International Children's Day** Mezinárodní den dětí  
**International Students' Day** Mezinárodní den studentů  
**ironically** [aɪˈrɒnɪkli] paradoxně, ironií osudu  
**jack-o'-lantern** [dʒæk əʊ ˈlæntən] vydílaná tykev s otvory pro oči a ústa  
**Jingle Bells** Rolničky  
**Labor Day** (US, Canada) Svátek práce  
**lay wreaths** [leɪ riːθs] pokládat věnce  
**leap** [liːp] skočit, skákat  
**Liberation Day** Den osvobození  
**Little Red Riding Hood** Červená Karkulka  
**Lord Mayor's Show** (GB) [lɔːd meəz ʃəʊ] slavnostní průvod na oslavu londýnského starosty  
**maid** služka; děvečka  
**Martin Luther King Day** (US) Den Martina Luthera Kinga  
**mask** maska, škraboška; kukla  
**maundy** [mɔːndi] obřadné mytí nohou chudým na Zelený čtvrtek  
**Maundy Thursday** Zelený čtvrtek  
**May Day** 1. máj  
**May Day Bank Holiday** (GB) den pracovního volna 1. května, státem uznaný svátek, kdy jsou zavřeny všechny banky  
**maypole** májka, máj



**Memorial Day** (US) Den obětí války  
**memorial service** bohoslužba  
 k uctění památky zesnulých  
**Midsummer Day** (GB) svátek sv.  
 Jana (24. 6.)  
**mince-pie** [ˈmɪnsˈpaɪ] vánoční plněné  
 pečivo  
**mincemeat** [ˈmɪnsmi:t] nadrobno  
 nasekaná směs jablek, sušeného  
 ovoce, hrozinek, pomerančové kůry  
 s cukrem; sekané maso  
**monarch** [ˈmɒnək] panovník, -ice,  
 vládce, vladař  
**monument** památník  
**Mother's Day** Den matek  
**nativity scene / crib / creche**  
 [nəˈtɪvɪti siːn, kreiʃ, kreiʃ] jesličky,  
 betlém  
**New Year's Day** Nový rok  
**New Year's Eve** Silvestr  
**non-Christian** [ˌnɒnˈkrɪstʃən, -tʃən]  
 nikoli křesťanský  
**non-violence** nenásilí  
**observe** [əbˈzɜːv] slavít, držet (svá-  
 tek)  
**official public holiday** oficiální státní  
 svátek  
**pagan** [ˈpeɪɡən] pohan, neznaboh;  
 pohanský  
**pagan festival** [ˈfestɪvəl] pohanský  
 svátek  
**pantomime** (GB) [ˈpæntəmɪm]  
 pantomima, groteskní pohádková  
 revue hraná zejména o Vánocích;  
**paper chain** papírový řetěz  
**parade** [pəˈreɪd] přehlídka  
**pay respect to** uctívat památku  
**Peter Pan** hrdina hry J. M. Barrieho  
**piper** dudák  
**place / lay (a wreath)** [riːθ] položit  
 (věnec)  
**plait a birch rod** [plæt] plést mrs-  
 kačku  
**play a trick on sb** vystřelít si z ně-  
 koho  
**play pranks on sb** provádět žertíky  
**pram** kočárek  
**preach** kázat; mluvit veřejně  
**Presidents' Day** (US) Den prezidentů  
**pretend to be...** předstírat, že je...  
**previously** dříve, předtím  
**pumpkin pie** dýňový koláč  
**Puss in Boots** Kocour v botách  
**rank among...** patřit, náležet k, být  
 zařazen mezi...  
**regimental** patřící pluku, plukovní

**reindeer** [ˈreɪnˌdɪə] sob  
**Remembrance Sunday** (GB)  
 vzpomínka na vojáky padlé v obou  
 světových válkách  
**reveal** odhalit; prozradit; zjevit  
**rocket** rachejtle  
**scarecrow** [ˈskeəˌkrəʊ] strašák,  
 strašidlo, hastroš  
**Scots pine, Scotch fir** borovice lesní  
**Season's Greetings** formální přání  
 k svátkům vánočním a k Novému  
 roku  
**Silent Night** Tichá noc  
**shamrock** [ˈʃæmˌrɒk] trojlístek,  
 symbol Irska  
**snowman** sněhulák  
**sovereign** [ˈsɒvrɪn] panovník, -ice,  
 vladař  
**sparklers** prskavky  
**spinach** [ˈspɪnɪʃ] špenát  
**sprigs of mistletoe** [ˈmɪsɪltəʊ] vět-  
 vičky jmelí  
**Spring Bank Holiday** (GB) den  
 pracovního volna na jaře, státem  
 uznaný svátek, kdy jsou zavřeny  
 všechny banky  
**spring equinox** [ˈiːkwɪnɒks] jarní  
 rovnodennost  
**spruce** smrk  
**squib** [skwɪb] papírová trubka nebo  
 koule naplněná pyrotechnickým  
 prachem; rachejtle  
**St. George's Day** (GB) svátek sv. Jiří  
**St. Patrick's Day** (Ireland, US) svá-  
 tek sv. Patrika  
**St. Valentine's Day** svátek sv. Valen-  
 tína  
**starvation** hladovění; smrt hladem  
**string of lights** šňůra světel  
**strings of popcorn** řetězy z pražené  
 kukuřice  
**stuffed roast turkey** pečený krocan  
 s nádivkou  
**swan** [swɒn] labuť  
**sweethearts' day** den zamilovaných  
**Teachers' Day** (CZ) Den učitelů  
**Thanksgiving** (US) Den děkování  
**tinsel** [ˈtɪnsəl] cetka; lesklá, blýskavá  
 nitka  
**token** [ˈtəʊkən] znak, znamení,  
 důkaz  
**Tomb of the Unknown Soldier**  
 [tuːm] hrob Neznámého vojína  
**torture** [ˈtɔːtʃə] mučení, týrání;  
 tortura  
**treat** dárek, malá radost

**trinket** [ˈtrɪŋkɪt] maličkost, drobnost;  
 laciný šperk; cetka, ozdoba  
**Trooping the Colour, Official Birth-  
 day** (GB) slavnostní přehlídka oddílů  
 stráže s vlajkami v den oficiálních  
 narozenin královny  
**turtle dove** [ˈtɜːtl̩ˈdʌv] hrdlička  
**twig** větvička, snítka  
**unwrap** [ʌnˈræp] rozbalit, rozbalovat  
**Veterans' Day** (US) Den veteránů  
 (1. světové války)  
**veterans of military services** veteráni  
 vojenské služby  
**walnut** vlašský ořech  
**White Christmas** Bílé Vánoce  
**witch** [wɪtʃ] čarodějnice  
**wreath** [riːθ] věnec  
**Xmas** [ˈeksməs] Vánoce

## MODERN SOCIETY

<b>A-bomb</b> atomová bomba	<b>bow</b> [bau] sklonit se, sklonit hlavu; poklona	<b>constitutionally barred</b> dle ústavy nepřipustný
<b>abuse</b> [ə'bjʊ:s] zneužívat	<b>break a truce</b> [tru:s] porušit příměří	<b>contaminate</b> [kən'tæmɪneɪt] znečistit, zamořit
<b>accept terms</b> přijmout podmínky, požadavky	<b>break off</b> přerušit	<b>convert</b> [kən'vɜ:t] přeměnit, konvertovat; [kɒnvɜ:t] konvertita
<b>accuse sb of st</b> [ə'kju:z] obvinít někoho z něčeho	<b>bring down</b> svrhnout	<b>corrupt</b> [kə'rʌpt] kazit, zkažit; podplacený, zkorumpovaný
<b>achieve a marginal victory</b> ['mɑ:dʒɪnəl] zvítězit těsnou většinou	<b>bring sb to trial</b> postavit někoho před soud	<b>corruption</b> [kə'rʌpʃən] korupce, úplatkářství
<b>achieve a sweeping victory</b> dosáhnout drtivého vítězství	<b>bring in reinforcements</b> [ˌrɪːn'fɔ:smənts] přivolat posily	<b>cosmonaut</b> ['kɒzmənoʊt] kosmonaut (zvl. sovětský)
<b>activist</b> ['æktɪvɪst] aktivista	<b>by-election</b> doplňovací volby	<b>counterpart</b> protějšek
<b>acts of violence</b> násilné činy	<b>Cabinet</b> kabinet, vláda	<b>cross-party coalition</b> koalice napříč stranami
<b>administration</b> vláda; exekutiva	<b>calculator</b> kalkulačka	<b>cultural diversity</b> [daɪ'vɜ:sɪti, dɪ'vɜ:rsəti] kulturní rozdílnost, odlišnost, rozmanitost
<b>adoption</b> [ə'dɒpʃ(ə)n] adopce, osvojení	<b>call a truce</b> [tru:s] vyhlásit příměří, klid zbraní	<b>curfew</b> ['kɜ:fju:] zákaz vycházení
<b>advances in st</b> pokrok, rozvoj něčeho	<b>capture</b> ['kæptʃə] zajmout	<b>deadly (weapon)</b> smrtelný, smrtonosný (zbraň)
<b>afflict</b> [ə'flɪkt] postihnout	<b>caretaker government</b> prozatímní vláda	<b>declare a truce</b> vyhlásit příměří, klid zbraní
<b>air-cushion vehicle</b> [ə'e'kuʃ(ə)n'vi:k(ə)l] vznášedlo	<b>cast a vote</b> volit	<b>declare war on sb</b> vyhlásit někomu válku
<b>anarchist</b> ['ænəkɪst] anarchista	<b>cease-fire</b> [ˌsi:s'faɪə] příměří, klid zbraní; zastavení palby	<b>decommission</b> [ˌdi:kə'mɪʃən] odevzdání (a zneškodnění)
<b>answerphone</b> telefonní záznamník	<b>centralised</b> centralizovaný	<b>demoralisation</b> demoralizace
<b>anti-nuclear opponents</b> [ˌænti'nju:kliə] odpůrci atomové energie	<b>centrist</b> přívrženec politického středu	<b>deploy peace-keeping troops</b> rozmístit mírová vojska, mírové jednotky
<b>anti-Semitism</b> antisemitismus	<b>chairman</b> předseda	<b>deprivation</b> [ˌdeprɪ'veɪʃən] depri-vace
<b>arms race</b> závody ve zbrojení	<b>Chamber of Deputies</b> poslanecká sněmovna	<b>desperate</b> zoufalý
<b>artificial</b> umělý	<b>charged with st</b> obviněn, obžalován z něčeho	<b>despise sb</b> [dɪ'spaɪz] opovrhovat, pohrdat někým
<b>assumption</b> předpoklad, domněnka	<b>cheap labour</b> levná pracovní síla	<b>destroy local culture</b> zničit místní kulturu
<b>astronaut</b> ['æstrənoʊt] astronaut	<b>Christian Democratic Party</b> Křesťansko-demokratická unie	<b>developed country</b> průmyslová, rozvinutá země
<b>atomic / nuclear power station</b> atomová elektrárna	<b>Civic Democratic Alliance</b> Občanská demokratická aliance	<b>developing country</b> rozvojová země
<b>attack from ambush</b> [ə'tæk 'æmbʊʃ] napadnout ze zálohy	<b>Civic Democratic Party</b> Občanská demokratická strana	<b>disastrous</b> katastrofální
<b>automatic camera</b> automatický fotoaparát, kompak	<b>civil</b> občanský, občanskoprávní; státní	<b>discriminate against sb</b> diskriminovat někoho
<b>awarding ceremony</b> slavnostní předávání cen	<b>Clean Hands campaign</b> akce Čisté ruce	<b>disputes over...</b> pře, debaty...
<b>backward</b> zastaralý, zaostalý	<b>cloning</b> klonování	<b>dynamite</b> ['daɪnəmaɪt] dynamit
<b>balance of trade</b> obchodní bilance	<b>coalition</b> [kəʊə'lɪʃən] koalice	<b>economic opportunities</b> [ˌi:kə'nɒmɪk, -'nɑ:mɪk, ekə] ekonomické možnosti
<b>ballistic missiles</b> [bə'lɪstɪk 'mɪsaɪlz] balistické střely	<b>collapse</b> [kə'læps] zhroucení; konec; zhroutit se	<b>economic problems</b> [ˌi:kə'nɒmɪk 'prɒbləmz] hospodářské problémy
<b>ballot box</b> volební urna	<b>combat st</b> ['kɒmbæt] bojovat proti něčemu, potírat něco; boj, zápas	<b>economic reasons</b> ekonomické důvody
<b>ballot paper</b> hlasovací lístek	<b>commerce</b> obchod	<b>economic stability</b> hospodářská stabilita
<b>bankruptcy</b> ['bæŋkrəptsi] bankrot	<b>commit</b> páchat	<b>economical</b> (car...) [ˌi:kə'nɒmɪkəl] úsporný, hospodárný (automobil...)
<b>beat an attack</b> odrazit útok	<b>Communist dictatorship</b> komunistická diktatura	
<b>besiege in vain</b> [bɪ'si:dʒ] marně obléhat	<b>Communist Party</b> Komunistická strana	
<b>biomass</b> biomasa	<b>competitiveness</b> konkurenceschopnost	
<b>biotechnology</b> [ˌbaɪəʊtek'nɒlədʒi] biotechnologie	<b>computer technology</b> [tek'nɒlədʒi] počítačová technologie	
<b>blockade</b> blokáda; blokovat	<b>consequence</b> následek, důsledek	
<b>bombing</b> bombardování	<b>constituency</b> [kən'stɪtjuənsi] volební okrese, obvod	



<b>election(s)</b> volby	<b>hatred of, for sb</b> nenávisť k někomu	<b>lose a decisive battle</b> prohrát rozhodující bitvu
<b>electoral register, roll</b> [rəʊl] soupis, seznam voličů	<b>House of Commons</b> (GB) poslanecká sněmovna	<b>lose a seat</b> ztratit křeslo
<b>electorate</b> [ɪˈlektərət] voliči	<b>House of Lords</b> (GB) horní sněmovna, sněmovna lordů	<b>Lower Chamber</b> (GB) dolní sněmovna, poslanecká sněmovna
<b>emigrate</b> [ˈemigreɪt] emigrovat, vystěhovat se	<b>House of Representatives</b> (US) sněmovna reprezentantů	<b>lunar landing</b> [ˈluːnə ˈlændɪŋ] přistání na Měsíci
<b>enterprise</b> podnik	<b>hovercraft</b> vznášedlo	<b>majority party</b> většinová strana
<b>email</b> nést s sebou, znamenat; mít za následek	<b>hung parliament</b> parlament neschopný dojít k rozhodnutí (v němž žádná strana nemá výraznou většinu)	<b>make excuses</b> vymlouvat se
<b>engineering</b> strojírenství; strojírenský	<b>humane</b> humánní, lidský	<b>manned flight</b> let s lidskou posádkou
<b>entitled to...</b> mít nárok na...	<b>hydroelectric power station</b> vodní elektrárna	<b>market-oriented</b> tržně orientovaný
<b>environmental groups</b> ekologická sdružení, skupiny	<b>illegal</b> nelegální	<b>meteors and meteorites</b> [ˈmiːtiəz ˈmiːtiəraɪts] meteory a meteority
<b>equal opportunities / rights</b> rovné příležitosti / práva	<b>IMF - International Monetary Fund</b> MMF – Mezinárodní měnový fond	<b>methanol</b> [ˈmeθənɒl] metanol, metylalkohol
<b>ethnic minority groups</b> [ˈeθnɪk] etnické menšiny	<b>immigrate</b> [ˈɪmigreɪt] imigrovat, přistěhovat se	<b>minority party</b> menšinová strana
<b>exploitation</b> [ˌeksplɔɪˈteɪʃən] vykořisťování; zneužívání; čerpání (zdrojů)	<b>impact on the environment</b> vliv na životní prostředí	<b>mobbed</b> obklopen, napaden davem
<b>extinction</b> vyhynutí, vymření, zánik	<b>impoorish</b> ožebračit; vyčerpat (půdu)	<b>mobile (phone)</b> [ˈməʊbaɪl, ˈmɔʊbəl] mobilní telefon
<b>fax</b> [fæks] fax	<b>incentive of entry into the EU</b> [ɪnˈsentɪv] stimul vstupu do EU	<b>money laundering</b> praní špinavých peněz
<b>feel contempt for sb</b> opovrhovat někým	<b>independence</b> nezávislosť	<b>moral implications</b> etické důsledky
<b>first-past-the-post</b> většinový volební systém	<b>indict for...</b> [ɪnˈdaɪt] obvinít z...	<b>negotiate</b> jednat, vyjednat, dohodnout
<b>flee</b> uprchnout, utéci	<b>infect heavy losses</b> způsobit velké ztráty	<b>no-confidence vote</b> hlasování o důvěře
<b>flying saucer</b> [ˈsɔːsə] létající talíř	<b>information about safety measures</b> informace o bezpečnostních opatřeních	<b>Nobel Prize</b> [nəʊˈbelˌpraɪz] Nobelova cena
<b>Freedom Union</b> Unie svobody	<b>integrate into the majority community</b> integrovat se do většinové společnosti	<b>oppose st</b> být, postavit se proti
<b>gain / win a seat</b> získat křeslo	<b>intimidation</b> zastrašování	<b>oust sb from power</b> [aʊst] zbavit někoho vlády, připravit o moc
<b>gasohol</b> palivová směs benzínu (90%) a etylalkoholu (10%)	<b>invention</b> vynález	<b>outstanding</b> významný
<b>general election</b> všeobecné volby	<b>Internet (the)</b> Internet	<b>overhead projector (OHP)</b> zpětný projektor
<b>genetic engineering</b> genetické inženýrství	<b>jailed for life</b> být uvězněn na doživotí, odpykávat si doživotní trest odnětí svobody	<b>overwhelming</b> ohromný, drtivý, naprostý
<b>genetically modified foods</b> geneticky upravené potraviny	<b>jeopardise</b> [ˈdʒepədaɪz] ohrozit	<b>perceive</b> [pəˈsiːv] vnímat
<b>geothermal energy</b> geotermální energie	<b>land on the moon</b> přistát na Měsíci	<b>persecution</b> [ˌpɜːsɪˈkjuːʃən] pronásledování
<b>global street parties</b> shromáždění na ulicích proti globalizaci	<b>landslide victory</b> drtivé vítězství (ve volbách)	<b>photocopier</b> [ˈfəʊtəʊˌkɒpiə] kopírka, xerox
<b>globalisation</b> globalizace	<b>laser</b> laser	<b>pickpocketing</b> kapesní krádeže
<b>go off</b> vybuchnout	<b>lasting cease-fire</b> trvalé příměří	<b>planets</b> planety
<b>go to the polls</b> jít k volbám, jít volit	<b>launch an attack</b> [lɔːntʃ] zahájit útok	<b>plant a bomb</b> [bɒm] umístit, nastrážit bombu
<b>government</b> vláda	<b>left-wing</b> levicový	<b>Polaroid camera</b> Polaroid
<b>guerrilla movement</b> [gəˈrɪlə] partyzánské hnutí	<b>legal</b> legální	<b>political scene</b> [pəˈlɪtɪkəl siːn] politická scéna
<b>Gypsies</b> Cikáni, Romové	<b>life imprisonment</b> doživotí	<b>polling station</b> [ˈpɔʊlɪŋ ˈsteɪʃən] volební místo
<b>harvest</b> sklízet, sbírat; žně	<b>light bulb</b> žárovka	<b>pose a potential risk</b> představovat možné riziko
<b>H-bomb (hydrogen bomb)</b> [ˈeɪtʃbɒm ˈhaɪdrɪdʒən bɒm] vodíková bomba, puma	<b>local election</b> volby do místních zastupitelstev	<b>post-electoral</b> [ˌpəʊst ɪˈlektərəl] povolební
<b>hand over one's weapons</b> odevzdat zbraně	<b>Lord Chancellor</b> (GB) lord kancléř (předseda sněmovny lordů)	<b>prejudice against</b> [ˈpredʒudɪs] předsudky vůči
<b>harness</b> využít (energie), spoutat; postroj (na koně)		

**price liberalisation** [ˌlɪbəərəlaɪ'zeɪʃən] liberalizace cen  
**progress** pokrok, rozvoj, vývoj  
**propeller water turbine** vrtulová vodní turbína  
**protracted nuclear debate** [prə'træktɪd] dlouhotrvající debata o jaderné energetice  
**publicly available** veřejně dostupné  
**pursue** [pə'sju:] pronásledovat  
**Quad Coalition** [kwɒd kəʊə'lɪʃən] čtyřkoalice  
**racial discrimination** rasová diskriminace  
**racism** rasismus  
**radical right-wing** radikálně pravicový  
**refugees** [ˌrefjʊ'dʒi:z, ˌrefjʊdʒi:z] uprchlíci, utečenci, běženci  
**renewable (source of energy)** obnovitelný (zdroj energie)  
**replacement** náhrada, nahrazení  
**Republican Party** Republikánská strana  
**repulse an attack** [rɪ'pʌls] odrazit útok  
**research** [rɪ'sɜ:tʃ, ˈri:sɜ:tʃ] výzkum; zkoumat  
**resign from...** [rɪ'zaɪn] rezignovat na..., odstoupit z..., podat demisi  
**restrict immigration** omezit imigraci, přistěhovalectví  
**retaliation** [rɪ,tæli'eɪʃ(ə)n] oplata, odvěta  
**retreat** ustoupit, stáhnout se do bezpečí; ústup, útočiště  
**right to vote** volební, hlasovací právo  
**rising unemployment** rostoucí nezaměstnanost  
**Romas, Romanies** [ˈrəʊməz ˈrəʊmənɪz] Romové  
**science and technology** [tek'nɒlədʒi] věda a technika  
**seek refuge** [ˌrefjʊ:dʒ] hledat útočiště  
**Senate** ['senət] senát  
**sentence to...** odsoudit na...  
**shock therapy** ['θerəpi] šoková terapie, léčba šokem  
**shout abuse** [ʃaʊt ə'bju:s] vykřikovat urážky, nadávky, sprostá slova  
**skirmish** ['skɜ:miʃ] potyčka; výměna názorů, spor  
**Social Democratic Party** Česká strana sociálně-demokratická  
**soft contact lenses** kontaktní čočky  
**solar power / energy** sluneční energie

**solar system** sluneční soustava  
**sovereign republic** ['sɒvrɪn] nezávislá, suverénní republika  
**space flight, travel** kosmický let, let do vesmíru  
**space laboratory** [lə'bɒrətɪ, 'læbrə tɔ:ri] vesmírná laboratoř, orbitální stanice  
**space shuttle** raketoplán  
**spaceship** kosmická loď  
**Speaker (GB)** předseda Dolní sněmovny  
**split of Czechoslovakia** rozdělení Československa  
**star** hvězda  
**step down (from)** odstoupit, rezignovat (na)  
**store nuclear waste** skladovat jaderný odpad  
**strike at an enemy** zaútočit na nepřítele  
**subject to indignation** vystaven nevoli, pobouření  
**suffrage** ['sʌfrɪdʒ] volební právo  
**Sun (the)** Slunce  
**supersonic aircraft** nadzvukový letoun, letadlo  
**surrender** vzdát se, kapitulovat  
**surrender one's weapons** složit zbraně  
**take sb prisoner** zajmout někoho  
**tarnish** pošpinit  
**tension** napětí  
**terrorism** terorismus  
**test-tube babies** děti ze zkumavky  
**therapeutic** [ˌθerə'pjʊ:trɪk] léčebný  
**thermal energy** [ˈθɜ:m(ə)l] tepelná energie  
**tidal power** přílivová, slapová energie  
**tunnelled out** ['tʌnəld'aʊt] vytunelován  
**twins** dvojčata  
**UFO (unidentified flying object)** [ˌju:ef'əʊ] UFO (neidentifikovaný létající objekt), létající talíř  
**universal franchise** [ˈfræntsʃaɪz] všeobecné volební právo  
**Upper Chamber (GB)** sněmovna, sněmovna lordů  
**upsurge in crime** [ˈʌpsɜ:dʒ] nárůst zločinnosti  
**Venus probe** [ˈvi:nəs prəʊb] sonda k Venuši  
**vital to** nezbytný, životně důležitý pro  
**war and peace** válka a mír  
**war crimes** válečné zločiny

**War Crime Tribunal in the Hague** [traɪ'bju:nəl də heɪg] Mezinárodní soudní tribunál v Haagu  
**warring factions** ['wɔ:riŋ ˈfæksɪnz] válčící strany, frakce  
**watchdog body** dohlížecí, kontrolní orgán  
**weapons** ['wepənz] zbraně  
**websites** internetové stránky  
**win a decisive battle** vyhrát rozhodující bitvu  
**windmill** větrný mlýn; větrná elektrárna  
**wind power** větrná energie  
**winning party** vítězná strana  
**withdraw from...** stáhnout (se), odstoupit, odejít (odkud)  
**World Wide Web, Web (the)** Internet, světová síť Internet



# CONTENTS

<b>FAMILY</b>	<b>5</b>		
Dating	6	Accessories and jewellery	55
☛ Invitations	8	Clothes make the man (TL)	56
Weddings	10	Practice makes perfect	58
Babies	12	And more practice...	59
☛ Youth	13		
Married life	14	<b>WORK &amp; LEISURE</b>	<b>60</b>
Old age and retirement	15	The social whirl	61
Practice makes perfect	16	Jobs	62
And more practice...	17	Looking for a job	63
		Types of jobs	65
		☛ Keeping a job	66
		Leaving and losing a job	67
		Banking and finance	68
		Practice makes perfect	70
		And more practice...	71
<b>HOME</b>	<b>18</b>		
☛ Different kinds of housing	18	<b>COMMUNICATION</b>	<b>72</b>
Types of dwelling	20	Posting letters and parcels	73
Parts of a house	21	Letters	74
Building a house	22	The telephone	75
Hall	23	☛ Using the telephone	76
Bedroom	24	Computers and the Internet	77
Bathroom	25	Practice makes perfect	79
Kitchen	26	And more practice...	80
Living room	27		
Garden	28	<b>ESSAY PREPARATION</b>	<b>81</b>
Maintenance	29		
Practice makes perfect	30	<b>TOWN &amp; COUNTRY</b>	<b>82</b>
And more practice...	31	☛ The modern village	82
		☛ The modern city	84
		Waste disposal and other services	86
		Asking and telling the way	87
		Crime and punishment	88
		Practice makes perfect	90
		And more practice...	91
<b>FOOD</b>	<b>32</b>		
☛ Healthy eating	33	<b>SIGHTSEEING</b>	<b>92</b>
Cooking	35	☛ Planning a tour	93
Eating out	36	Tour sights	94
Specialities of British and American cooking	37	Practice makes perfect	96
Food for Thought (TL)	39	And more practice...	97
Practice makes perfect	40		
And more practice...	41	<b>TRAVEL</b>	<b>98</b>
		Travel abroad	98
<b>SHOPPING</b>	<b>42</b>	Air travel	99
Shops	44	☛ Sea travel	100
☛ Shopping around	45	Accommodation	101
Practice makes perfect	46	Driving	102
And more practice...	47		
<b>CLOTHES</b>	<b>48</b>		
Materials, colours, and patterns	50		
Describing clothes	51		
Footwear	52		
Dressing and undressing	53		
☛ Sportswear and working clothes	54		

The car	103	<b>SPORT</b>	<b>158</b>
🔍 Road accidents	105	Sports in the modern Summer Olympic Games	159
Public transport	106	The Olympics	161
Travelling by train	107	Winter sports	162
On two wheels or on foot	108	🔍 Keeping fit	163
Crossword puzzle	109	Professional sport	164
Practice makes perfect	110	Sports in English-speaking countries	165
And more practice...	111	The games people play	166
		Practice makes perfect	167
		And more practice...	168
<b>FARMING</b>	<b>112</b>	<b>PHRASES AND PHRASAL VERBS</b>	<b>169</b>
Modern developments	113		
Animals on and around the farm	114	<b>MEDIA</b>	<b>170</b>
🔍 The sounds of a farm	115	🔍 Newspapers	170
Practice makes perfect	116	Television	172
And more practice...	117	Radio	173
		Practice makes perfect	174
		And more practice...	175
<b>CLIMATE</b>	<b>118</b>	<b>CULTURE</b>	<b>176</b>
Talking about the weather	118	Going to the theatre	176
Rainy weather	120	Going to the cinema	178
Cold weather	121	Musical instruments	179
Hot weather	122	🔍 Going to a concert	180
Weather in general	123	Books and reading	181
🔍 Atmosphere	124	Poetry ( <i>TL</i> )	182
Practice makes perfect	125	Practice makes perfect	183
And more practice...	126	And more practice...	184
		<b>EDUCATION</b>	<b>185</b>
<b>NATURE</b>	<b>127</b>	🔍 Studying and examinations	185
In the wild	127	Secondary school	186
Classification of Animals	129	Public school	187
The countryside ( <i>TL</i> )	130	University	188
Friend or foe? ( <i>TL</i> )	132	Practice makes perfect	190
At the zoo	134	And more practice...	191
🔍 Pets	135	<b>HOLIDAYS</b>	<b>192</b>
Plants	136	🔍 Christmas	195
Practice makes perfect	138	Practice makes perfect	196
And more practice...	139	And more practice...	197
<b>EVERYDAY PHRASES</b>	<b>140</b>	<b>MODERN SOCIETY</b>	<b>198</b>
		🔍 Globalization	198
<b>THE HUMAN BODY</b>	<b>141</b>	Economic and political situation	199
First impressions	141	Discrimination	200
🔍 Head and face	142	War and peace, terrorism	201
Body and limbs	144	Progress in science and technology	202
Practice makes perfect	146	Energy	204
And more practice...	147	Practice makes perfect	205
		And more practice...	206
<b>HEALTH</b>	<b>148</b>	<b>KEY</b>	<b>207</b>
🔍 Routine illnesses and accidents	148	<b>VOCABULARY</b>	<b>248</b>
First aid	149		
Disabilities	150		
Teeth and the dentist	151		
Medicines and treatments	152		
STDs and drug abuse	153		
Other health problems	154		
Pregnancy and childbirth	155		
Practice makes perfect	156		
And more practice...	157		



Jarmila Fictumová,  
John Ceccarelli, Tony Long

**ANGLIČTINA**  
**KONVERZACE PRO POKROČILÉ**  
*Topic-based Vocabulary for Advanced Learners*

Odpovědná redaktorka Anne Johnson  
Kreslené ilustrace Lukáš Fictum  
Obálka Bohdan Lukáš  
Sazba Čestmír Kučera  
Vydala Společnost pro odbornou literaturu –  
– Barrister & Principal  
Martinkova 5, 602 00 Brno  
[www.barrister.cz](http://www.barrister.cz)  
e-mail: [distribuce@barrister.cz](mailto:distribuce@barrister.cz)  
Tel.: 545 211 015

Brno 2008  
vydání druhé, upravené  
Doporučená prodejní cena 445 Kč

**ISBN 978-80-87029-40-4**



# V čem se tato učebnice liší od jiných?

**Jde s dobou, ale současně vychází z prověřených učebních metod.**

Tato učebnice je kolektivním dílem. K jeho vytvoření přispěla celá řada českých učitelů a rodilých mluvčích, kteří v průběhu několika desetiletí řešili stejný problém – jak naučit studenty mluvit anglicky tak, aby byli schopni komunikovat v každodenních situacích a byli připraveni úspěšně splnit požadavky jazykových zkoušek na vyšší úrovni (podle Společného evropského rámce úrovně B2 až C2).

V dnešní době se stále více lidí učí angličtinu i po ukončení studia na různých typech škol. Samostudium a využití možností, které nabízí internet, se stává součástí běžného života. Je proto třeba, aby i studijní a výukové materiály „šly s dobou“ a byly šity na míru dnešním studentům. Cvičení obsažená v původním vydání učebnice byla určena převážně pro práci ve třídě. Nyní je součástí učebnice také klíč a slovníček zahrnující nejdůležitější výrazy.

Učebnice má rovněž e-learningovou podporu. Na specializovaném portálu Filozofické fakulty Masarykovy univerzity naleznete stejnojmenný kurz (<http://eldum.phil.muni.cz/course/view.php?id=19>), vytvořený v e-learningovém prostředí Moodle. Tento kurz nabízí několik možností dalšího studia slovíček k jednotlivým tématům – od běžných online cvičení na různých místech internetu přes software na procvičování slovní zásoby z učebnice (s možností jejího doplnění výrazy dle vlastní volby) až po interaktivní testy. Seznamy slovíček k jednotlivým stranám učebnice potom usnadňují přípravu na vyučování, případně slouží k opakování. Kurz je volně přístupný, učitelé si jej mohou stáhnout a používat ve vlastní instalaci systému Moodle.

Součástí učebnice je:

- CD s nahrávkami MP3 a dalšími materiály ke každému tématu;
- klíč ke cvičením a texty nahrávek;
- anglicko-český slovníček, který zahrnuje slovní zásobu (21 témat), britskou i americkou angličtinu, idiomy, fráze, metaforu a eufemismy;
- e-learningová podpora.



7150

[www.barrister.cz](http://www.barrister.cz)



Barrister & Principal